High Level Assembler for MVS® & VM & VSE

Programmer's Guide

Release 4

SC26-4941-03

High Level Assembler for MVS® & VM & VSE

Programmer's Guide

Release 4

SC26-4941-03

Note!

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information under “Notices” on page 379.

Fourth Edition (September 2000)

This edition applies to IBM High Level Assembler for MVS & VM & VSE, Release 4, Program Number 5696-234 and to any subsequent releases until otherwise indicated in new editions. Make sure you are using the correct edition for the level of the product.

Order publications through your IBM representative or the IBM branch office serving your locality. Publications are not stocked at the address below.

A form for reader's comments is provided at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, address your comments to:

IBM Corporation, Department BWE/H3
P.O.Box 49023
SAN JOSE, CA 95161-9023
United States of America

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© **Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1982, 2000. All rights reserved.**
US Government Users Restricted Rights – Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

About this Manual . . . xi
Who Should Use this Manual . . . xi
Programming Interface Information . . . xi
Organization of this Manual . . . xi
IBM High Level Assembler for MVS & VM & VSE Publications . . . xiv
Hardcopy Publications . . . xiv
Online Publications . . . xv
Related Publications . . . xv
Syntax Notation . . . xv

Summary of Changes . . . xviii

Part 1. Understanding and Using the Assembler . . . 1

Chapter 1. Introduction . . . 5
Requirements . . . 5
System Requirements . . . 5
Machine Requirements . . . 5
Storage Requirements . . . 6
Compatibility . . . 6
Assembler Language Support . . . 6
Migration Considerations . . . 7

Chapter 2. Using the Assembler Listing . . . 8
High Level Assembler Option Summary . . . 9
External Symbol Dictionary (ESD) . . . 12
Source and Object . . . 15
Relocation Dictionary (RLD) . . . 22
Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference . . . 22
Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs . . . 24
Macro and Copy Code Source Summary . . . 25
Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference . . . 25
DSECT Cross Reference . . . 29
USING Map . . . 30
General Purpose Register Cross Reference . . . 31
Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary . . . 32

Chapter 3. Controlling Your Assembly with Options . . . 38
The Sources of Assembler Options . . . 38
Precedence of Assembler Options . . . 38
Fixed Installation Default Options . . . 39
*PROCESS OVERRIDE Statement Options . . . 39
ASMAOPT Options . . . 39
Invocation Options . . . 39
*Process Statement Options . . . 40
Default Options . . . 41
Invoking the Assembler Dynamically . . . 41
Coding Rules . . . 41
Assembler Options . . . 42

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

ADATA . . . 42
ALIGN . . . 43
ASA (MVS and CMS) . . . 43
BATCH . . . 44
CODEPAGE . . . 44
COMPAT . . . 45
DBCS . . . 46
DECK . . . 47
DISK (CMS) . . . 47
DXREF . . . 47
ERASE (CMS) . . . 48
ESD . . . 48
EXIT . . . 49
FLAG . . . 52
FOLD . . . 55
GOFF (MVS and CMS) . . . 55
INFO . . . 56
LANGUAGE . . . 57
LIBMAC . . . 58
LINECOUNT . . . 58
LIST . . . 59
MXREF . . . 61
OBJECT . . . 62
OPTABLE . . . 62
PCONTROL . . . 64
PESTOP . . . 66
PRINT (CMS) . . . 66
PROFILE . . . 66
RA2 . . . 67
RENT . . . 68
RLD . . . 68
RXREF . . . 68
SEG (CMS) . . . 69
SIZE . . . 69
SYSPARM . . . 71
TERM . . . 72
TEST . . . 73
THREAD . . . 73
TRANSLATE . . . 74
USING . . . 75
XOBJECT (MVS and CMS) . . . 77
XREF . . . 78

Chapter 4. Providing User Exits . . . 79
Exit Types . . . 79
Specifying User Exits . . . 80
Loading User Exits . . . 81
Calling User Exits . . . 81
Exit Parameter List . . . 82
Request Info Pointer . . . 84
Buffer Pointer . . . 90
Error Buffer Pointer . . . 90
Exit-Specific Information Pointer . . . 90
DCB Pointer . . . 91

Static Assembler Information Pointer . . . 91
HLASM VRM . . . 91
PTF Level . . . 91
System ID . . . 92
Error Handling . . . 92
Exit-Specific Information Block . . . 92
Member Name . . . 94
Member Type . . . 94
Data Set Name . . . 94
Volume Serial . . . 94
Relative Record Number . . . 95
Absolute Record Number . . . 96
Linecount . . . 96
Current Page Number . . . 96
SOURCE Exit Processing . . . 97
OPEN . . . 97
CLOSE . . . 97
READ . . . 97
PROCESS . . . 98
LIBRARY Exit Processing . . . 99
OPEN . . . 99
CLOSE . . . 100
READ . . . 100
PROCESS MACRO or PROCESS COPY . . . 100
FIND MACRO or FIND COPY . . . 101
END OF MEMBER . . . 103
LISTING Exit Processing . . . 104
OPEN . . . 105
CLOSE . . . 106
WRITE . . . 106
PROCESS . . . 106
OBJECT (MVS and CMS) and PUNCH Exit Processing . . . 108
OPEN . . . 108
CLOSE . . . 109
WRITE . . . 109
PROCESS . . . 110
ADATA Exit Processing . . . 111
OPEN . . . 111
CLOSE . . . 112
PROCESS . . . 112
TERM Exit Processing . . . 112
OPEN . . . 113
CLOSE . . . 113
WRITE . . . 113
PROCESS . . . 114
Sample User Exits . . . 115
User Exit Coding Example . . . 115

Chapter 5. Providing External Functions . . . 135
External Function Processing . . . 135
Linkage Conventions . . . 136
External Function Parameter List . . . 136
Request Information List . . . 139
Pointer to User Work Area . . . 141

Pointer to Msg Buffer . . . 141
Pointer to Return String (SETCF) . . . 141
Pointer to Parm String *n* (SETCF) . . . 141

Chapter 6. Diagnosing Assembly Errors . . . 143
Assembly Error Diagnostic Messages . . . 143
MNOTE Statements . . . 145
Suppression of Error Messages and MNOTE Statements . . . 147
Reference Information for Statements in Error . . . 147
Abnormal Assembly Termination . . . 148
MHELP—Macro Trace Facility . . . 148

Part 2. Developing Assembler Programs on MVS . . . 149

Chapter 7. Assembling Your Program on MVS . . . 151
Input to the Assembler . . . 151
Output from the Assembler . . . 151
Invoking the Assembler on MVS . . . 151
Invoking the Assembler on TSO . . . 153
Invoking the Assembler Dynamically . . . 154
Batch Assembling . . . 156
Input and Output Data Sets . . . 157
Work Data Set: SYSUT1 . . . 160
Specifying the Source Data Set: SYSIN . . . 160
Specifying the Option File: ASMAOPT . . . 160
Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: SYSLIB . . . 160
Specifying the Listing Data Set: SYSPRINT . . . 161
Directing Assembler Messages to Your Terminal: SYSTERM . . . 161
Specifying Object Code Data Sets: SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH . . . 161
Specifying the Associated Data Data Set: SYSADATA . . . 162
Return Codes . . . 162

Chapter 8. Linking and Running Your Program on MVS . . . 163
The Program Management Binder . . . 163
The Loader . . . 165
Creating a Load Module . . . 165
Creating a Load Module on MVS . . . 165
Creating a Load Module on TSO . . . 166
Input to the Linker . . . 166
Data Sets for Linker Processing . . . 167
Additional Object Modules as Input . . . 168
Output from the Linker . . . 169
Linker Processing Options . . . 169
Specifying Linker Options Through JCL . . . 170
Specifying Linker Options Using the TSO LINK Command . . . 170
AMODE and RMODE Attributes . . . 171
Overriding the Defaults . . . 171
Detecting Linker Errors . . . 172
Running Your Assembled Program . . . 172
Running Your Assembled Program in Batch . . . 172
Running Your Assembled Program on TSO . . . 172

Chapter 9. MVS System Services and Programming Considerations . . . 173

Adding Definitions to a Macro Library . . . 173
Using Cataloged Procedures . . . 174
Cataloged Procedure for Assembly (ASMAC) . . . 174
Cataloged Procedure for Assembly and Link (ASMACL) . . . 176
Cataloged Procedure for Assembly, Link, and Run (ASMACLG) . . . 177
Cataloged Procedure for Assembly and Run (ASMACG) . . . 178
Overriding Statements in Cataloged Procedures . . . 180
Examples of Cataloged Procedures . . . 180
Operating System Programming Conventions . . . 182
Saving and Restoring General Register Contents . . . 182
Ending Program Execution . . . 183
Accessing Execution Parameters . . . 183
Object Module Linkage . . . 184
Modifying Program Modules . . . 185

Part 3. Developing Assembler Programs on CMS . . . 187

Chapter 10. Assembling Your Program on CMS . . . 188
Input to the Assembler . . . 188
Output from the Assembler . . . 188
Accessing the Assembler . . . 188
Invoking the Assembler on CMS . . . 189
Batch Assembling . . . 190
Controlling Your Assembly . . . 190
Input and Output Files . . . 191
Work file: SYSUT1 . . . 193
Specifying the Source File: SYSIN . . . 194
Specifying the Option File: ASMAOPT . . . 195
Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: SYSLIB . . . 195
Specifying the Listing File: SYSPRINT . . . 196
Directing Assembler Messages to Your Terminal: SYSTERM . . . 196
Specifying Object Code Files: SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH . . . 196
Specifying the Associated Data File: SYSADATA . . . 197
Return Codes . . . 197
Diagnostic Messages Written by CMS . . . 197

Chapter 11. Running Your Program on CMS . . . 199
Using the CMS LOAD and START Commands . . . 199
Using the CMS GENMOD Command . . . 199
Using the CMS LKED and OSRUN Commands . . . 200
Using the CMS Batch Facility . . . 201

Chapter 12. CMS System Services and Programming Considerations . . . 202
Using Macros . . . 202
Assembler Macros Supported by CMS . . . 202
Adding Definitions to a Macro Library . . . 202
Operating System Programming Conventions . . . 202
Saving and Restoring General Register Contents . . . 202
Ending Program Execution . . . 203
Passing Parameters to Your Assembler Language Program . . . 204

Part 4. Developing Assembler Programs on VSE . . . 205

Chapter 13. Assembling Your Program on VSE . . . 206
Input to the Assembler . . . 206
Output from the Assembler . . . 206
Invoking the Assembler in Batch . . . 206
Invoking the Assembler on ICCF . . . 208
Invoking the Assembler Dynamically . . . 210
Batch Assembling . . . 210
Controlling Your Assembly . . . 211
Input and Output Files . . . 212
Work File: IJSYS03 . . . 214
Specifying the Source File: SYSIPT . . . 215
Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: LIBDEF Job Control Statement 215
Specifying the Listing File: SYSLST . . . 215
Directing Assembler Messages to Your Console Log: SYSLOG . . . 215
Specifying Object Code Files: SYSLNK and SYSPCH . . . 216
Specifying the Associated Data File: SYSADAT . . . 216
Return Codes . . . 216

Chapter 14. Link-Editing and Running Your Program on VSE . . . 217
The Linkage Editor . . . 217
Creating a Phase . . . 217
Input to the Linkage Editor . . . 218
Inputting Object Modules . . . 218
Files for Linkage Editor Processing . . . 218
Inputting additional Object Modules . . . 219
Linkage Editor Control Statements . . . 219
Output from the Linkage Editor . . . 220
Running your Assembled Program . . . 221

Chapter 15. VSE System Services and Programming Considerations . . . 222
Adding Definitions to a Macro Library . . . 222
Processing E-Decks . . . 222
Operating System Programming Conventions . . . 223
Saving and Restoring General Register Contents . . . 223
Ending Program Execution . . . 224
Accessing Execution Parameters . . . 224

Appendixes . . . 225

Appendix A. Earlier Assembler Compatibility and Migration . . . 227
Comparison of Instruction Set and Assembler Instructions . . . 227
Comparison of Macro and Conditional Assembly Statements . . . 230
Comparison of Macro and Conditional Assembly . . . 233
Comparison of Language Features . . . 237
Comparison of Assembler Options . . . 239
Comparison of Assembler Listing . . . 241
Comparison of Diagnostic Features . . . 243
Other Assembler Differences . . . 244

Appendix B. Cross-System Portability Considerations . . . 246
Using Extended Architecture Instructions . . . 246
Using System Macros . . . 246
Migrating Object Programs . . . 246

Appendix C. Object Deck Output 248
ESD Record Format 249
TXT Record Format 250
RLD Record Format 251
END Record Format 252
SYM Record Format 252

Appendix D. Associated Data File Output 255
Record Types 257
ADATA Record Layouts 262
Common Header Section 262
Job Identification Record—X'0000' 264
ADATA Identification Record—X'0001' 264
ADATA Compilation Unit Start/End Record—X'0002' 265
System 370/390 Output File Information Record—X'000A' 265
Options File Information—X'000B' 268
Options Record—X'0010' 268
External Symbol Dictionary Record—X'0020' 271
Source Analysis Record—X'0030' 272
Source Error Record—X'0032' 274
DC/DS Record—X'0034' 275
DC Extension Record—X'0035' 280
Machine Instruction Record—X'0036' 281
Relocation Dictionary Record—X'0040' 281
Symbol Record—X'0042' 281
Symbol Cross Reference Record—X'0044' 282
Register Cross Reference Record—X'0045' 283
Library Record—X'0060' 283
Library Member and Macro Cross Reference Record - X'0062' 284
User-supplied Information Record - X'0070' 285
USING Map Record—X'0080' 285
Statistics Record—X'0090' 286

Appendix E. Sample Program 290

Appendix F. MHELP Sample Macro Trace and Dump 301

Appendix G. High Level Assembler Messages 309
Message Code Format 309
Message Descriptions 310
Assembly Error Diagnostic Messages 312
Message Not Known 314
Messages 315
Abnormal Assembly Termination Messages 352
ASMAHL Command Error Messages (CMS) 357

Appendix H. User Interface Macros 361

Appendix I. Sample ADATA User Exit (MVS and CMS) 362

Appendix J. Sample LISTING User Exit (MVS and CMS) 369

Appendix K. Sample SOURCE User Exit (MVS and CMS) 371

Appendix L. How to Generate a Translation Table 372

Appendix M. How to Generate a Unicode Translation Table 374

Notices 379
Trademarks 380

Glossary 381

Bibliography 386
High Level Assembler Publications 386
Toolkit Feature Publications 386
Related Publications (Architecture) 386
Related Publications for MVS 386
Related Publications for VM 387
Related Publications for VSE 387
General Publications 387

Index 388

About this Manual

This manual describes how to use the IBM High Level Assembler for MVS & VM & VSE licensed program, hereafter referred to as High Level Assembler, or simply the assembler. It is intended to help you assemble, link, and run your High Level Assembler programs. It is meant to be used in conjunction with the *HLASM Language Reference*.

Throughout this book, we use these indicators to identify platform-specific information:

- Prefix the text with platform-specific text (for example, “Under CMS...”)
- Add parenthetical qualifications (for example, “(CMS only)”)
- Bracket the text with icons. The following are some of the icons that we use:

Informs you of information specific to MVS

Informs you of information specific to CMS

Informs you of information specific to VSE

MVS is used in this manual to refer to Multiple Virtual Storage/Enterprise Systems Architecture (MVS/ESA™) and to OS/390®.

CMS is used in this manual to refer to Conversational Monitor System on Virtual Machine/Enterprise Systems Architecture (VM/ESA®).

VSE is used in this manual to refer to Virtual Storage Extended/Enterprise Systems Architecture (VSE/ESA®).

Who Should Use this Manual

The *Programmer's Guide* is for application programmers coding in the High Level Assembler language. To use this manual, you should be familiar with the basic concepts and facilities of your operating system.

Programming Interface Information

This manual is intended to help the customer create application programs. This manual documents General-Use Programming Interface and Associated Guidance Information provided by IBM High Level Assembler for MVS & VM & VSE.

General-use programming interfaces allow the customer to write programs that obtain the services of IBM High Level Assembler for MVS & VM & VSE.

Organization of this Manual

This manual is organized as follows:

Part 1. Understanding and Using the Assembler

- **Chapter 1, Introduction,** describes High Level Assembler, and defines the environmental requirements for using the assembler.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

- **Chapter 2, Using the Assembler Listing,** describes the content and format of the assembler listing.
- **Chapter 3, Controlling your Assembly with Options,** describes the assembler options that you can use to control the assembly of your program.
- **Chapter 4, Providing User Exits,** describes how you can provide user exits to compliment the assembler's data-set processing.
- **Chapter 5, Providing External Functions,** describes how to provide user-supplied routines in conditional assembly instructions to set the value of SET symbols.
- **Chapter 6, Diagnosing Assembly Errors,** describes the purpose and format of error messages, MNOTEs, and the MHELP trace facility.

Part 2. Developing Assembler Programs on MVS

- **Chapter 7, Assembling your Program on MVS,** describes the different methods of assembling your program on MVS, including invoking the assembler with job control statements, invoking the assembler on TSO/E, invoking the assembler dynamically, and batch assembling.
- **Chapter 8, Linking and Running your Program on MVS,** describes linking, creating load modules, input and output for the linkage editor and binder, detecting linking errors, and running your program on MVS.
- **Chapter 9, MVS System Services and Programming Considerations,** describes the MVS system services that you can use to maintain macro definitions in a macro library, and the cataloged procedures that are provided to help you assemble, link-edit, and run your program on MVS. This chapter also discusses programming topics such as standard entry and exit procedures.

Part 3. Developing Assembler Programs on CMS

- **Chapter 10, Assembling your Program on CMS,** describes how to invoke the assembler on CMS.
- **Chapter 11, Running your Program on CMS,** describes how to load and run your program on CMS.
- **Chapter 12, CMS System Services and Programming Considerations,** describes the CMS system services that you can use to maintain members in a macro library. It also discusses programming topics such as standard entry and exit procedures.

Part 4. Developing Assembler Programs on VSE

- **Chapter 13, Assembling your Program on VSE,** describes how to invoke the assembler on VSE.
- **Chapter 14, Link-Editing and Running your Program on VSE,** describes link-editing, creating load modules, input and output for the linkage editor, detecting link-edit errors, and running your program on VSE.
- **Chapter 15, VSE System Services and Programming Considerations,** describes the VSE system services that you can use to maintain macro definitions in a macro library, and the cataloged procedures that are provided to help you assemble, link-edit, and run your program on VSE.

This chapter also discusses programming topics such as standard entry and exit procedures.

Appendixes

- **Appendix A, Previous Assembler Compatibility and Migration,** provides a comparison of High Level Assembler and Assembler H Version 2, and High Level Assembler and the DOS/VSE Assembler.
- **Appendix B, Cross-System Portability Considerations,** contains information that helps you prepare your program for running under a different operating system.
- **Appendix C, Object Deck Output,** describes the format of the object module generated by the assembler.
- **Appendix D, Associated Data File Output,** describes the format of the associated data file records generated by the assembler.
- **Appendix E, Sample Program,** provides a sample program that demonstrates many of the assembler language features.
- **Appendix F, MHELP Sample Macro Trace and Dump,** provides a sample program listing which shows the primary functions of MHELP.
- **Appendix G, High Level Assembler Messages,** describes the error diagnostic messages, abnormal termination messages, and CMS command error messages issued by the assembler.
- **Appendix H, User Interface Macros,** lists the macros that are provided as Programming Interfaces with High Level Assembler.
- **Appendix I, Sample ADATA User Exit,** provides a description of the sample ADATA user exit supplied with High Level Assembler.
- **Appendix J, Sample LISTING User Exit,** provides a description of the sample LISTING user exit supplied with High Level Assembler.
- **Appendix K, Sample SOURCE User Exit,** provides a description of the sample SOURCE user exit supplied with High Level Assembler to read variable length input files.
- **Appendix L, How to Generate a Translation Table,** provides instructions for generating a translation table to convert the characters contained in character data constants and literals.

Glossary defines the terms used in this manual.

Bibliography lists the IBM Publications referred to within this manual.

IBM High Level Assembler for MVS & VM & VSE Publications

High Level Assembler runs on MVS, VM and VSE. These publications are described in this section.

Hardcopy Publications

The books in the High Level Assembler library are shown in Figure 1. This figure shows which books can help you with specific tasks, such as application programming.

Figure 1. IBM High Level Assembler for MVS & VM & VSE Publications

Task	Publication	Order Number
Evaluation and Planning	General Information	GC26-4943
Installation and Customization	Installation and Customization Guide	SC26-3494
	Programmer's Guide	SC26-4941
	Toolkit Feature Installation Guide	GC26-8711
Application Programming	Programmer's Guide	SC26-4941
	Language Reference	SC26-4940
	General Information	GC26-4943
	Toolkit Feature User's Guide	GC26-8710
	Toolkit Feature Interactive Debug Facility User's Guide	GC26-8709
Diagnosis	Installation and Customization Guide	SC26-3494
Warranty	Licensed Program Specifications	GC26-4944

General Information

Introduces you to the High Level Assembler product by describing what it does and which of your data processing needs it can fill. It is designed to help you evaluate High Level Assembler for your data processing operation and to plan for its use.

Installation and Customization Guide

Contains the information you need to install and customize, and diagnose failures in, the High Level Assembler product.

The diagnosis section of the book helps users determine if a correction for a similar failure has been documented previously. For problems not documented previously, the book helps users to prepare an APAR. This section is for users who suspect that High Level Assembler is not working correctly because of some defect.

Language Reference

Presents the rules for writing assembler language source programs to be assembled using High Level Assembler.

Licensed Program Specifications
Contains a product description and product warranty information for High Level Assembler.

Programmer's Guide
Describes how to assemble, debug, and run High Level Assembler programs.

Toolkit Feature Installation Guide
Contains the information you need to install and customize, and diagnose failures in, the High Level Assembler Toolkit Feature.

Toolkit Feature User's Guide
Describes how to use the High Level Assembler Toolkit Feature.

Toolkit Feature Debug Reference Summary
Contains a reference summary of the High Level Assembler Interactive Debug Facility.

Toolkit Feature Interactive Debug Facility User's Guide
Describes how to use the High Level Assembler Interactive Debug Facility.

Online Publications

The High Level Assembler publications are available in the following softcopy formats:

- *MVS Collection* CD-ROM, SK2T-0710
- *OS/390 Collection* CD-ROM, SK2T-6700
- *VM/ESA Collection* CD-ROM, SK2T-2067
- *VSE Collection* CD-ROM, SK2T-0060

For more information about High Level Assembler, see the High Level Assembler web site, at

```
http://www.ibm.com/software/ad/hlasm
```

Related Publications

See “Bibliography” on page 386 for a list of publications that supply information you might need while using High Level Assembler.

Syntax Notation

Throughout this book, syntax descriptions use the structure defined below.

- Read the syntax diagrams from left to right, from top to bottom, following the path of the line.

  The ►►— symbol indicates the beginning of a statement.

  The —► symbol indicates that the statement syntax is continued on the next line.

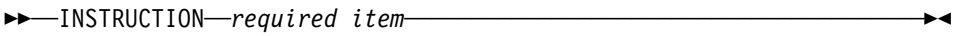
  The ►— symbol indicates that a statement is continued from the previous line.

  The —►◄ indicates the end of a statement.

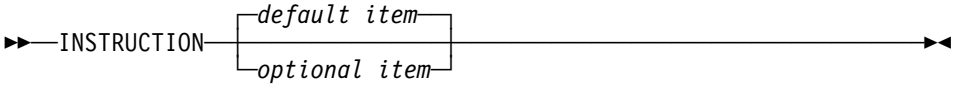
Diagrams of syntactical units other than complete statements start with the ►— symbol and end with the —► symbol.

- **Keywords** appear in uppercase letters (for example, ASPACE) or upper and lower case (for example, PATHFile). They must be spelled exactly as shown. Lower case letters are optional (for example, you could enter the PATHFile keyword as PATHF, PATHFI, PATHFIL or PATHFILE).

  Variables appear in all lowercase letters in a special typeface (for example, *integer*). They represent user-supplied names or values.
- If punctuation marks, parentheses, or such symbols are shown, they must be entered as part of the syntax.
- Required items appear on the horizontal line (the main path).

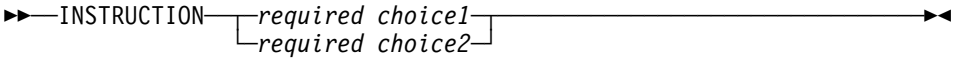


- Optional items appear below the main path. If the item is optional and is the default, the item appears above the main path.

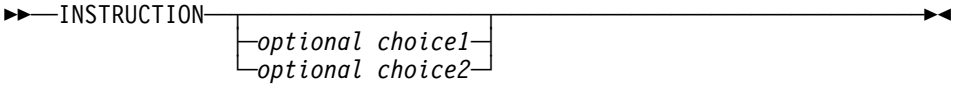


- When you can choose from two or more items, they appear vertically in a stack.

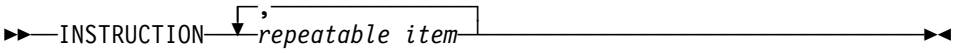
  If you **must** choose one of the items, one item of the stack appears on the main path.



  If choosing one of the items is optional, the whole stack appears below the main path.



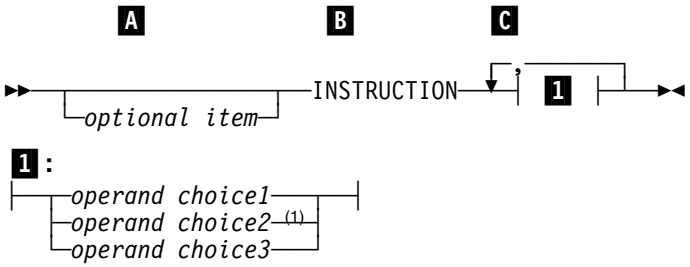
- An arrow returning to the left above the main line indicates an item that can be repeated. When the repeat arrow contains a separator character, such as a comma, you must separate items with the separator character.



  A repeat arrow above a stack indicates that you can make more than one choice from the stacked items, or repeat a single choice.

The following example shows how the syntax is used.

Format



Note:
[1] *operand choice2* and *operand choice3* must not be specified together

A The item is optional, and can be coded or not.

B The INSTRUCTION key word must be specified and coded as shown.

C The item referred to by **1** is a required operand. Allowable choices for this operand are given in the fragment of the syntax diagram shown below **1** at the bottom of the diagram. The operand can also be repeated. That is, more than one choice can be specified, with each choice separated by a comma.

Summary of Changes

Date of Publication September 2000

Form of Publication Fourth Edition, SC26-4941-03

Assembler options changes

- Options file allows options to be specified via an external file.
- *PROCESS OVERRIDE
- New options:

  THREAD

  CODEPAGE

New assembler statement

- XATTR statement allows attributes of external symbols to be specified.

Changed assembler statements

- DC new constant types:

  R PSECT address constant

  CU Unicode character constants

  AD Doubleword aligned 8-byte address

  FD Doubleword aligned 8-byte fixed point constant

  – Floating point symbolic value DMIN added
- AMODE
  – ANY31 operand added
  – 64 operand documented
- RMODE
  – 31 operand added
  – 64 operand documented

Miscellany

- Literals now always entered in literal pool
- Predefined absolute symbols may no longer be used in conditional assembly character expressions.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Part 1. Understanding and Using the Assembler

Chapter 1. Introduction 5
Requirements 5
System Requirements 5
Machine Requirements 5
Storage Requirements 6
Compatibility 6
Assembler Language Support 6
Migration Considerations 7

Chapter 2. Using the Assembler Listing 8
High Level Assembler Option Summary 9
External Symbol Dictionary (ESD) 12
Source and Object 15
Relocation Dictionary (RLD) 22
Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference 22
Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs 24
Macro and Copy Code Source Summary 25
Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference 25
Effects of LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) Options 27
DSECT Cross Reference 29
USING Map 30
General Purpose Register Cross Reference 31
Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary 32

Chapter 3. Controlling Your Assembly with Options 38
The Sources of Assembler Options 38
Precedence of Assembler Options 38
Fixed Installation Default Options 39
| *PROCESS OVERRIDE Statement Options 39
| ASMAOPT Options 39
Invocation Options 39
*Process Statement Options 40
Default Options 41
Invoking the Assembler Dynamically 41
Coding Rules 41
Assembler Options 42
ADATA 42
ALIGN 43
ASA (MVS and CMS) 43
BATCH 44
| CODEPAGE 44
COMPAT 45
DBCS 46
DECK 47
DISK (CMS) 47
DXREF 47
ERASE (CMS) 48
ESD 48
EXIT 49
FLAG 52

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

FOLD . . . 55
GOFF (MVS and CMS) . . . 55
INFO . . . 56
LANGUAGE . . . 57
LIBMAC . . . 58
LINECOUNT . . . 58
LIST . . . 59
MXREF . . . 61
OBJECT . . . 62
OPTABLE . . . 62
PCONTROL . . . 64
PESTOP . . . 66
PRINT (CMS) . . . 66
PROFILE . . . 66
RA2 . . . 67
RENT . . . 68
RLD . . . 68
RXREF . . . 68
SEG (CMS) . . . 69
SIZE . . . 69
SYSPARM . . . 71
TERM . . . 72
TEST . . . 73
THREAD . . . 73
TRANSLATE . . . 74
USING . . . 75
XOBJECT (MVS and CMS) . . . 77
XREF . . . 78

Chapter 4. Providing User Exits . . . 79
Exit Types . . . 79
Specifying User Exits . . . 80
Loading User Exits . . . 81
Calling User Exits . . . 81
Exit Parameter List . . . 82
Request Info Pointer . . . 84
Parameter List Version . . . 84
Exit Type . . . 84
Request Type . . . 84
Options . . . 85
EXITCTL*n* . . . 86
Return Code . . . 86
Reason Code . . . 87
Buffer Length . . . 88
Error Buffer Length . . . 89
Error Severity . . . 89
User-Defined Field . . . 90
Common User Field . . . 90
Buffer Pointer . . . 90
Error Buffer Pointer . . . 90
Exit-Specific Information Pointer . . . 90
DCB Pointer . . . 91
Static Assembler Information Pointer . . . 91
HLASM VRM . . . 91

| PTF Level . . . 91
| System ID . . . 92
Error Handling . . . 92
Exit-Specific Information Block . . . 92
Member Name . . . 94
Member Type . . . 94
Data Set Name . . . 94
Volume Serial . . . 94
Relative Record Number . . . 95
Absolute Record Number . . . 96
Linecount . . . 96
Current Page Number . . . 96
SOURCE Exit Processing . . . 97
OPEN . . . 97
CLOSE . . . 97
READ . . . 97
PROCESS . . . 98
LIBRARY Exit Processing . . . 99
OPEN . . . 99
CLOSE . . . 100
READ . . . 100
PROCESS MACRO or PROCESS COPY . . . 100
FIND MACRO or FIND COPY . . . 101
END OF MEMBER . . . 103
LISTING Exit Processing . . . 104
OPEN . . . 105
CLOSE . . . 106
WRITE . . . 106
PROCESS . . . 106
OBJECT (MVS and CMS) and PUNCH Exit Processing . . . 108
OPEN . . . 108
CLOSE . . . 109
WRITE . . . 109
PROCESS . . . 110
ADATA Exit Processing . . . 111
OPEN . . . 111
CLOSE . . . 112
PROCESS . . . 112
TERM Exit Processing . . . 112
OPEN . . . 113
CLOSE . . . 113
WRITE . . . 113
PROCESS . . . 114
Sample User Exits . . . 115
User Exit Coding Example . . . 115

Chapter 5. Providing External Functions . . . 135
External Function Processing . . . 135
Linkage Conventions . . . 136
External Function Parameter List . . . 136
Request Information List . . . 139
Parameter List Version . . . 139
Function Type . . . 139
Number of Parameters . . . 139

Return Code . . . 139
Flag Byte . . . 139
Reserved . . . 140
Msg Length . . . 140
Msg Severity . . . 140
Return Value (SETAF) . . . 140
Parm Value *n* (SETAF) . . . 140
Return String Length (SETCF) . . . 140
Parm String *n* Length (SETCF) . . . 141
Pointer to User Work Area . . . 141
Pointer to Msg Buffer . . . 141
Pointer to Return String (SETCF) . . . 141
Pointer to Parm String *n* (SETCF) . . . 141

Chapter 6. Diagnosing Assembly Errors . . . 143
Assembly Error Diagnostic Messages . . . 143
MNOTE Statements . . . 145
Suppression of Error Messages and MNOTE Statements . . . 147
Reference Information for Statements in Error . . . 147
Abnormal Assembly Termination . . . 148
MHELP—Macro Trace Facility . . . 148

Chapter 1. Introduction

IBM High Level Assembler for MVS & VM & VSE is an IBM licensed program that can be used to assemble assembler language programs that use the following machine instructions:

System/370™
System/370 Extended Architecture (370-XA)
Enterprise Systems Architecture/370™ (ESA/370)
Enterprise Systems Architecture/390® (ESA/390™) machine instructions

Requirements

This section describes the operating systems, the processors, and the amount of storage required to run High Level Assembler.

System Requirements

High Level Assembler runs under the operating systems listed below. Unless otherwise stated, the assembler also operates under subsequent versions, releases, and modification levels of these systems:

| OS/390 Version 1
VM/ESA Version 2 Release 2
| VSE/ESA Version 1 Release 4
| VSE/ESA Version 2 Release 3

High Level Assembler supports the operation codes available with the Extended Architecture (370-XA) mode processor and Enterprise Systems Architecture/370 (ESA/370) or Enterprise Systems Architecture/390 (ESA/390) mode processors and the new operation codes available with Enterprise System/9000® (ES/9000®) mode processors.

Machine Requirements

For assembling High Level Assembler programs: Programs written using High Level Assembler can be assembled, including use of the Extended Architecture mode processor machine instructions and Enterprise System Architecture mode processor machine instructions, on all System/370 family and its follow-on machines supporting the following operating systems:

| MVS/ESA
| OS/390
VM/ESA
VSE/ESA

You might require an operating system-specific macro library to assemble programs that run under that operating system, depending on macro usage.

For running High Level Assembler programs: A generated object program using Extended Architecture (370-XA), Enterprise Systems Architecture/370 (ESA/370), Enterprise Systems Architecture/390 (ESA/390), Enterprise Systems/9000 (ES/9000) or Vector instructions can be run only on an applicable processor under an operating system that provides the necessary architecture support for the instructions used.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Tape device: High Level Assembler is distributed on one of the following:

Standard labeled 9-track magnetic tape written at 6250 bpi
3480 tape cartridge
4mm DAT cartridge

An appropriate tape device is required for installation.

Double-byte data: Double-byte data can be displayed, entered, or both, in their national language representation on the following:

IBM 3800-8 system printer
IBM 3200 system printer
IBM 3820 remote printer
IBM PS/55 family as an IBM 3270 terminal

Storage Requirements

Virtual storage: High Level Assembler requires a minimum of 580K bytes of main storage. 380K bytes of storage are required for High Level Assembler load modules. The rest of the storage allocated to the assembler is used for assembler working storage.

Auxiliary storage space: Depending on the assembler options used, auxiliary storage space might be required for the following data sets:

System input
Macro instruction library—either system or private or both
An intermediate work file, which must be a direct-access device such as 3350, 3375, 3380, 3390, 9345 or FBA.
Print output
Object module output
Associated data output

Library space: The space requirements for the High Level Assembler load modules (or phases) and procedures are provided in the *HLASM Installation and Customization Guide*.

Installation: Please refer to *HLASM Installation and Customization Guide* for installation requirements.

Compatibility

This section describes source program compatibility and migration issues that you need to consider before using High Level Assembler.

Assembler Language Support

The assembler language supported by High Level Assembler has functional extensions to the languages supported by Assembler H Version 2 and the DOS/VSE Assembler. High Level Assembler uses the same language syntax, function, operation, and structure as these earlier assemblers. The functions provided by the Assembler H Version 2 macro facility are all provided by High Level Assembler.

Migration Considerations

Source Programs: Migration from High Level Assembler Release 1, High Level Assembler Release 2, High Level Assembler Release 3, Assembler H Version 2 or DOS/VSE Assembler to High Level Assembler Release 4, requires an analysis of existing assembler language programs to ensure that they do not contain macro instructions with names that conflict with the High Level Assembler Release 4 symbolic operation codes, or SET symbols with names that conflict with the names of High Level Assembler Release 4 system variable symbols.

With the exception of these possible conflicts, and with appropriate High Level Assembler option values, assembler language source programs written for High Level Assembler Release 1, High Level Assembler Release 2, High Level Assembler Release 3, Assembler H Version 2 or the DOS/VSE Assembler, that assemble without warning or error diagnostic messages, should assemble correctly using High Level Assembler Release 4.

Object Programs: Object programs generated by High Level Assembler Release 4 in any one of the supported operating systems can be migrated to any other of the supported operating systems for execution.

The object programs being migrated must be link-edited in the target operating system environment before execution.

You should be aware of the differences in the code generated by system macros in the supported operating systems. Operational facilities available on the source operating system but not available on the target operating system should not be specified for any program which is required to be compatible, either during assembly or link-edit.

Chapter 2. Using the Assembler Listing

This chapter tells you how to interpret the printed listing produced by the assembler. The listing is obtained only if the option LIST is in effect. Parts of the listing can be suppressed by using other options; for information on the listing options, refer to Chapter 3, “Controlling Your Assembly with Options” on page 38.

The High Level Assembler listing consists of up to twelve sections, ordered as follows:

- High Level Assembler Option Summary
- External Symbol Dictionary (ESD)
- Source and Object
- Relocation Dictionary (RLD)
- Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference
- Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs
- Macro and Copy Code Source Summary
- Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference
- DSECT Cross Reference
- USING Map
- General Purpose Register Cross Reference
- Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary

The following assembler options are used to control the format, and which sections to produce, of the assembler listing:

ASA (MVS and CMS) Allows you to use American National Standard printer control characters, instead of machine printer control characters.

DXREF Produces the DSECT Cross Reference section.

ESD Produces the External Symbol Dictionary section.

EXIT(PRTEXIT(*mod3***))**
Allows you to supply a listing exit to replace or complement the assembler's listing output processing.

LANGUAGE
Produces error diagnostic messages in the following languages:

- English mixed case (EN)
- English uppercase (UE)
- German (DE)
- Japanese (JP)
- Spanish (ES)

When you select either of the English languages, the assembler listing headings are produced in the same case as the diagnostic messages.

When you select either the German language or the Spanish language, the assembler listing headings are produced in mixed case English.

When you select the Japanese language, the assembler listing headings are produced in uppercase English.

The assembler uses the installation default language for messages produced in CMS by the ASMAHL command.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

LINECOUNT
Allows you to specify how many lines should be printed on each page.

LIST Controls the format of the Source and Object section of the listing. NOLIST suppresses the entire listing.

MXREF Produces one, or both, of the Macro and Copy Code Source Summary and Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference sections.

PCONTROL
Controls which statements are printed in the listing, and overrides some PRINT instructions.

RLD Produces the Relocation Dictionary section.

RXREF Produces the General Purpose Register Cross Reference section.

USING(MAP)
Produces the Using Map section.

XREF Produces one, or both, of the Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference and the Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs sections.

The following additional options can be specified when you run the assembler on CMS:

LINECOUN
An abbreviation of the LINECOUNT option.

PRINT The assembler listing is written to the virtual printer instead of to a disk file.

The sections in the listing are described on the following pages.

High Level Assembler Option Summary

High Level Assembler provides a summary of the options current for the assembly, including:

- A list of the overriding parameters specified in the ASMAOPT file (MVS and CMS) or library member ASMAOPT.USER (VSE).
- A list of the overriding parameters specified when the assembler was called
- The options specified on *PROCESS statements
- In-line error diagnostic messages for any overriding parameters and *PROCESS statements in error

You cannot suppress the option summary unless you suppress the entire listing, or you supply a user exit to control which lines are printed.

On MVS and CMS, High Level Assembler provides a sample LISTING exit that allows you to suppress the option summary or print it at the end of the listing. See Appendix J, “Sample LISTING User Exit (MVS and CMS)” on page 369.

Figure 2 shows an example of the High Level Assembler Option Summary. The example includes assembler options that have been specified in the following option sources:

- ASMAOPT file

- Invocation parameters
- PROCESS statements including an example specifying the OVERRIDE keyword.

The example shows a number of error diagnostic messages relating to the conflicts and errors in the options specified.

```
                                    High Level Assembler Option Summary                                 Page    1
                                                                                                  1             2
                                                                                          HLASM R4.0  2000/09/25 17.48
 Overriding ASMAOPT Parameters - sysparm(thisisatestsysparm),rxref
 Overriding Parameters-  NOOBJECT,language(en),size(4meg),xref(short,unrefs),nomxref,norxref,adata,noadata
 Process Statements-     OVERRIDE(ADATA,MXREF(full))
                         ALIGN
                         noDBCS
                         MXREF(FULL),noLIBMAC
                         FLAG(0)
                         noFOLD,LANGUAGE(ue)
                         NORA2
                         NODBCS
                         XREF(FULL)

     3
** ASMA400W Error in invocation parameter - size(4meg)
** ASMA438N Attempt to override ASMAOPT parameter. Option norxref ignored.
** ASMA425N Option conflict in invocation parameters.   NOADATA overrides an earlier setting.
** ASMA423N Option ADATA) in a *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement conflicts with invocation or default option.  Option is not permitted
in a *PROCESS statement and has been ignored.
** ASMA422N Option LANGUAGE is not valid in a *PROCESS statement.
** ASMA437N Attempt to override invocation parameter in a *PROCESS statement.  Suboption FULL of XREF option ignored.
   Options for this Assembly

   4
3 NOADATA
5    ALIGN
   NOASA
     BATCH
     CODEPAGE(047C)
5 NODBCS
   NODECK
     DXREF
     ESD
   NOEXIT
5    FLAG(0,ALIGN,CONT,NOIMPLEN,NOPAGE0,PUSH,RECORD,NOSUBSTR,USING0)
5 NOFOLD
   NOGOFF
   NOINFO
3    LANGUAGE(EN)
5 NOLIBMAC
     LINECOUNT(60)
     LIST(121)
1    MXREF(FULL)
3 NOOBJECT
     OPTABLE(UNI)
   NOPCONTROL
   NOPESTOP
   NOPROFILE
5 NORA2
   NORENT
     RLD
2    RXREF
     SIZE(MAX)
2    SYSPARM(thisisatestsysparm)
   NOTERM
   NOTEST
     THREAD
   NOTRANSLATE
     USING(NOLIMIT,MAP,WARN(15))
3    XREF(SHORT,UNREFS)
   5
   No Overriding DD Names
   Active Usings: None                                                                                  Page    3
   Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                  HLASM R4.0  2000/09/25 17.48
                                       6
                                    1 *PROCESS OVERRIDE(ADATA,MXREF(full)                  00001000
                                    2 *PROCESS ALIGN                                       00002000
                                    3 *PROCESS noDBCS          any text                    00003000
                                    4 *PROCESS MXREF(FULL),noLIBMAC                        00004000
                                    5 *PROCESS FLAG(0)                                     00005000
                                    6 *PROCESS noFOLD,LANGUAGE(ue)                         00006000
                                    7 *PROCESS NORA2                                       00007000
                                    8 *PROCESS NODBCS                                      00008000
                                    9 *PROCESS XREF(FULL)                                  00009000
000000              00000 00000    10 A        CSECT                                       00010000
                R:F 00000    11          USING *,15                                        00011000
```

*Figure 2. Option Summary Including Options Specified on *PROCESS Statements*

The highlighted numbers in the example are:

1 The product description. Shown on each page of the assembler listing. (You can use the TITLE instruction to generate individual headings for each page of the source and object program listing.)

2 The date and the time of the assembly.

3 Error diagnostic messages for overriding parameters and *PROCESS statements. These immediately follow the list of *PROCESS statement options. The error diagnostic messages are:

ASMA400W - The value specified as the size option is not valid. The valid option is SIZE(4M).

ASMA438N - The option RXREF is specified in the ASMAOPT file and the conflicting option NORXREF is specified as an invocation parameter. The ASMAOPT options have precedence over the invocation parameters and the NORXREF option is ignored.

ASMA425N - The ADATA option specified as an invocation parameter overrides the option NOADATA which was also specified as an invocation parameter. When conflicting options are received from the same source, the last occurrence takes precedence.

ASMA423N - The option ADATA has been specified in a *PROCESS statement with the OVERRIDE option. The option cannot be set by a *PROCESS statement, and the option conflicts with an invocation or default option. This message is printed when an option that cannot be set by a *PROCESS statement (See "*Process Statement Options" on page 40) is included in a *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement and the option conflicts with an invocation or default option. If the option does not conflict with the invocation or default option no message is printed.

ASMA422N - The option LANGUAGE is not permitted in a *PROCESS statement.

ASMA437N - The option XREF(FULL) which is specified in the last *PROCESS statement conflicts with the option NORXREF which is specified as an invocation parameter. The option XREF(FULL) is ignored.

4 A flag beside each option indicates the source of the option. This table shows the sources:

Figure 3. Flags used in the Option Summary

Flag	Meaning
1	The option came from a *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement.
2	The option came from the ASMAOPT options file (MVS and CMS) or ASMAOPT.USER library member (VSE).
3	The option came from the invocation parameters.
4	The permanent job control options set by the VSE command STDOPT.
5	The option came from a *PROCESS statement.
(blank)	The option came from the installation defaults.

5 On MVS and CMS, if the assembler has been called by a program and any standard (default) ddnames have been overridden, both the default ddnames and the overriding ddnames are listed. Otherwise, this statement appears:

```
No Overriding DD Names
```

6 The *PROCESS statements are written as comment statements in the Source and Object section of the listing.

External Symbol Dictionary (ESD)

This section of the listing contains the external symbol dictionary information passed to the linkage editor or loader, or DFSMS/MVS® binder, in the object module.

This section helps you find references between modules in a multimodule program. The ESD may be particularly helpful in debugging the running of large programs constructed from several modules.

The ESD entries describe the control sections, external references, and entry points in the assembled program. There are eight types of ESD entries (SD, ED, LD, ER, PC, CM, XD, and WX). Figure 4 shows the ESD entries when you specify the NOGOFF option. Figure 5 shows the ESD entries when you specify the GOFF option. For each of the different types of ESD entries, an X indicates which of the fields have values.

Figure 4. Types of ESD Entries when NOGOFF Option Specified

SYMBOL	TYPE	ID	ADDR	LENGTH	LD ID	FLAGS
X	SD	X	X	X		X
X	LD		X		X	
X	ER	X				
	PC	X	X	X		X
X	CM	X	X	X		X
X	XD	X	X	X		
X	WX	X				

Figure 5. Types of ESD Entries when GOFF Option Specified

SYMBOL	TYPE	ID	ADDR	LENGTH	LD ID	FLAGS
X	SD	X				
X	ED	X	X	X	X	X
X	LD	X	X		X	X
X	ER	X			X	
X	CM	X	X		X	X
X	XD	X	X	X		
X	WX	X			X	

Figure 6 on page 13 is an example of the *External Symbol Dictionary* generated with the GOFF assembler option, and is followed by a description of its contents.

```
SAMP01                                  External Symbol Dictionary                                  Page    2
 1       2    3     4        5         6       7    8
Symbol   Type   Id     Address  Length     LD ID  Flags Alias-of                    HLASM R4.0      2000/09/25 17.48
SAMP01    SD 00000001
B_PRV     ED 00000002                     00000001
B_TEXT    ED 00000003 00000000 000000E4   00000001   00
SAMP01    LD 00000004 00000000            00000003   00
ENTRY1    LD 00000005 00000000            00000003   00
KL_INST   SD 00000006
B_PRV     ED 00000007                     00000006
B_TEXT    ED 00000008 00000000 00000000   00000006   00
KL_INST   CM 00000009 00000000            00000008   00
          SD 0000000A
B_PRV     ED 0000000B                     0000000A
B_TEXT    ED 0000000C 000000E8 00000000   0000000A   00
Date0001  ER 0000000D                     0000000A       RCNVDTE
RCNVTME   ER 0000000E                     0000000A
```

Figure 6. External Symbol Dictionary Listing

1 The name of every external dummy section, control section, entry point, external symbol, and class. If the external dummy section, control section, entry point or external symbol has a corresponding ALIAS instruction, the symbol shows the operand of the ALIAS instruction.

When you specify the GOFF assembler option on MVS or CMS, the assembler generates two ED entries, the first with a symbol name of B_PRV and the second with a symbol name of B_TEXT.

2 The type designator for the entry, as shown in the table:

SD Control section definition. The symbol appeared in the name field of a START, CSECT, or RSECT instruction.

LD Label definition. The symbol appeared as the operand of an ENTRY statement.

When you specify the GOFF assembler option, on MVS or CMS, the assembler generates an entry type of LD for each CSECT and RSECT name.

ER External reference. The symbol appeared as the operand of an EXTRN statement, or appeared as an operand of a V-type address constant.

PC Unnamed control section definition (private code). A CSECT, RSECT, or START statement that commences a control section that does not have a symbol in the name field, or a control section that is commenced (by any instruction which affects the location counter) before a CSECT, RSECT, or START.

When you specify the GOFF assembler option, on MVS or CMS, the assembler does not generate an entry type of PC. For private code, the assembler creates an SD entry type with a blank name.

CM Common control section definition. The symbol appeared in the name field of a COM statement.

XD External dummy section. The symbol appeared in the name field of a DXD statement or the operand of a Q-type address constant.

The external dummy section is also called a pseudo register in the applicable *Linkage Editor and Loader* manual, and the *OS/390 DFSMS Program Management* manual.

WX Weak external reference. The symbol appeared as an operand in a WXTRN statement.

ED Element definition (one for each class). The symbol appeared as an operand in a CATTR statement.

When you specify the NOGOFF assembler option, on MVS or CMS, the assembler does not generate an entry type of ED.

For further information, refer to the *OS/390 DFSMS Program Management* manual.

3 The external symbol dictionary identification number (ESDID). The number is a unique 8-digit hexadecimal number identifying the entry.

4 The address of the symbol (in hexadecimal notation) for SD- and LD-type entries, and blanks for ER- and WX-type entries. For PC- and CM-type entries, it indicates the beginning address of the control section. For XD-type entries, it indicates the alignment with a number one less than the number of bytes in the unit of alignment. For example, 7 indicates doubleword alignment.

5 The assembled length, in bytes, of the section, element, or DXD (in hexadecimal notation).

6 The ESDID of the control section in which the LD ID is the ESDID of the following, depending on the type:

LD The control section in which the label is defined.

ED The control section to which this element belongs.

CM The control section in which the common control section is defined.

ER The control section in which the external reference was declared.

7 For SD-, PC-, and CM-type entries, this field contains the following flags:

```
Bit 2:    0  = use the RMODE bit (5)
          1  = RMODE is 64
Bit 3:    0  = use the AMODE bits (6-7)
          1  = AMODE is 64
Bit 4:    0  = Section is not an RSECT
          1  = Section is an RSECT
Bit 5:    0  = RMODE is 24
          1  = RMODE is 31
Bits 6-7: 00 = AMODE is 24
          01 = AMODE is 24
          10 = AMODE is 31
          11 = AMODE is ANY
```

8 When symbol **1** is defined in an ALIAS instruction, this field shows the name of the external dummy section, control section, entry point or external symbol of which symbol **1** is an alias.

Source and Object

This section of the listing documents the source statements of the module and the resulting object code.

This section is the most useful part of the listing because it gives you a copy of all the statements in your source program (except listing control statements) exactly as they are entered into the machine. You can use it to find simple coding errors, and to locate and correct errors detected by the assembler. By using this section with the Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference section, you can check that your branches and data references are in order. The location counter values and the object code listed for each statement help you locate any errors in a storage dump. Finally, you can use this part of the listing to check that your macro instructions have been expanded properly.

On MVS and CMS, the assembler can produce two formats of the Source and Object section: a 121-character format and a 133-character format. To select one, you must specify either the LIST(121) assembler option or the LIST(133) assembler option. Both sections show the source statements of the module, and the object code of the assembled statements.

The 133-character format shows the location counter, and the first and second operand addresses (ADDR1 and ADDR2) as 8-byte fields in support of 31-bit addresses. This format is required when producing the generalized object format data set (see “GOFF (MVS and CMS)” on page 55). The 133-character format also contains the first eight characters of the macro name in the identification-sequence field for statements generated by macros. Figure 7 on page 16 shows an example of the Source and Object section of the listing. This section shows the source statements of the module, and the object code of the assembled statements.

High Level Assembler lets you write your program, and print the assembler listing headings, in mixed-case. Diagnostic messages are printed in the language you specify in the LANGUAGE assembler option described in “LANGUAGE” on page 57.

Figure 7 shows an example of the Source and Object section in 121-character format, and in mixed-case.

```
1       2
SAMP01   Sample Listing Description                                                                    Page    3
  Active Usings: None
  3      4              5       6        7                                          8             9
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                  HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
000000                00000 000E0     2 Samp01   Csect                                                      00002000
                                      3          Sav   (14,12)                 Save caller's registers       00003000
 10 ** ASMA057E Undefined operation code - SAV
 11 ** ASMA435I Record 3 in FIG6     ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
                                                 ⋮
                                     23 Entry1    SAMPMAC  Parm1=YES                                         00023000
000000 18CF                          24+Entry1    LR 12,15                                                   01-SAMPM
                 12
                R:C  00000           25+         USING Entry1,12               Ordinary Using               01-SAMPM
000002 0000 0000            00000    26+         LA Savearea,10                                             01-SAMPM
** ASMA044E Undefined symbol - Savearea
** ASMA029E Incorrect register specification - Savearea
 13 ** ASMA435I Record 5 in TEST     MACLIB   A1(SAMPMAC) on volume: ADISK
000006 50D0 A004             00004    27+         ST 13,4(,10)                                               01-SAMPM
00000A 50A0 D008             00008    28+         ST 10,8(,13)                                               01-SAMPM
00000E 18DA                           29+         LR 13,10                                                   01-SAMPM
               R:A35  00010           30+         USING *,10,3,5                Ordinary Using,Multiple Base 01-SAMPM
                                                                                                             14
** ASMA303W Multiple address resolutions may result from this USING and the USING on statement number 25
** ASMA435I Record 9 in TEST     MACLIB   A1(SAMPMAC) on volume: ADISK
                                                 ⋮
                                     42+         DROP 10,3,5                   Drop Multiple Registers      01-SAMPM
                                     43          COPY  SAMPLE                                               00024000
                                     44=*        Line from member SAMPLE                                    00001000
               C 02A  00000 0002A    45          Using IHADCB,INDCB            Establish DCB addressability 00025000
               C 07A  00000 0007A    46 ODCB     Using IHADCB,OUTDCB                                        00026000
                                     47          push  using                                                00027000
                        15
                 R:2  00000          48 PlistIn  Using Plist,2                 Establish Plist addressability 00028000
                 R:3  00000          49 PlistOut Using Plist,3                                              00029000
SAMP01   Sample Listing Description                                                                    Page    4
 16  Active Usings (1):Entry1(X'1000'),R12  IHADCB(X'FD6'),R12+X'2A'  PlistIn.Plist(X'1000'),R2
  PlistOut.Plist(X'1000'),R3  ODCB.IHADCB(X'F86'),R12+X'7A'
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                  HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
000010 1851                          50 ?Branch  LR    R5,R1                 Save Plist pointer               00030000
** ASMA147E Symbol too long, or first character not a letter - ?Branch
** ASMA435I Record 30 in FIG6     ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
000012 5825 0000             00000    51          L     R2,0(R5)              R2 = address of request list   00031000
000016 47F0 C022             00022    52          B     Open                                                 00032000
                                                 ⋮
                                    697          End                                                        00050000
0000D0 00000001                     698               =f'1'
0000D4 00000000                     699               =v(Rcnvdte)
0000D8 00000000                     700               =v(Rcnvtme)
0000DC 00000002                     701               =f'2'
```

Figure 7. Source and Object Listing Section—121 Format

1 The deck identification, if any, consisting of 1–8 characters. It is obtained from the name field of the first named TITLE statement. The assembler prints the deck identification and date on every page of the listing except the Options Summary.

2 The information taken from the operand field of a TITLE statement.

3 Location field. This is the value of the location counter that represents the assembled address (in hexadecimal notation) of the object code.

- For ORG statements, the value of the location counter before the ORG is placed in the location column, and the value of the location counter after the ORG is placed in the Addr2 field.
- If the END statement contains an operand, the operand value (requested entry point) appears in the location field.
- In the case of LOCTR, COM, CSECT, RSECT, and DSECT statements, the location field contains the current address of these control sections.
- In the case of EXTRN, WXTRN, ENTRY, and DXD instructions, the location field and object code field are blank.
- For LTORG statements, the location field contains the location assigned to the literal pool.

If, at the time of the page eject, the current control section being assembled is a COM section, the heading line starts with C-LOC. If, at the time of the page eject, the current control section being assembled is a DSECT, the heading line starts with D-LOC. If, at the time of the page eject, the current control section being assembled is an RSECT, the heading line starts with R-LOC.

4 The object code produced by the source statement. The entries, which are shown left-justified and in hexadecimal notation, are machine instructions or assembled constants. Machine instructions are printed in full with a blank inserted after every 4 digits (2 bytes). Only the first 8 bytes of a constant appears in the listing if PRINT NODATA is in effect, unless the statement has continuation records. The whole constant appears if PRINT DATA is in effect. (See the PRINT assembler instruction in the *HLASM Language Reference*.)

This field also shows the base registers for ordinary USING instructions, and the base register and displacement for dependent USING instructions. See **12** and **15** for more details.

5 Effective addresses (each the result of adding a base register value and a displacement value):

- The field headed Addr1 contains the effective address for the first operand of an instruction (if applicable). It may also contain the following:
  - For a USING instruction, the Addr1 field contains the value of the first operand.
  - For a CSECT, START, LOCTR, or RSECT instruction, the Addr1 field contains the start address of the control section.
  - For an ORG instruction, the Addr1 field contains the value of the location counter before the ORG.
  - For an EQU instruction, the Addr1 field contains the value assigned.
- The field headed Addr2 contains the effective address of the last operand of any instruction referencing storage.
  - For a USING instruction, the Addr2 field contains the value of the second operand.
  - For a CSECT, START, LOCTR, or RSECT instruction, the Addr2 field contains the end address of the control section.
  - For an ORG instruction, the Addr2 field contains the next address as specified by the operand field.
  - For an EQU instruction, the Addr2 field contains the length assigned.

If the assembler option LIST(121) is in effect, both address fields contain 6 digits; however, if the high-order digit is 0, it is not printed. If the assembler option LIST (133) is in effect, both address fields contain 8 digits. For USING and EQU instructions, the Addr2 field may contain up to 8 digits.

6 The statement number. The column following the statement number may contain the following values:

- A plus sign (+) indicates that the statement was generated as the result of macro call processing.

- An unnumbered statement with a plus sign (+) is the result of open code substitution.
- A minus sign (–) indicates that the statement was read by a preceding AREAD instruction.
- An equals sign (=) indicates that the statement was included by a COPY instruction.
- A greater-than sign (>) indicates that the statement was generated as the result of a preceding AINSERT instruction. If the statement is read by an AREAD instruction, this will take precedence and a minus sign will be printed.

7 The source program statement. The following items apply to this section of the listing:

- Source statements are listed, including those brought into the program by the COPY assembler instruction, and including macro definitions submitted with the main program for assembly. Listing control instructions are not printed, except for PRINT, which is printed unless the NOPRINT operand is specified.
- Macro definitions obtained from a library are not listed, unless the macro definition is included in the source program by means of a COPY statement, or the LIBMAC assembler option was specified.
- The statements generated as the result of a macro instruction follow the macro instruction in the listing, unless PRINT NOGEN is in effect. If PRINT GEN is in effect and PRINT NOMSOURCE is specified, the printing of the source statements generated during macro processing and conditional assembly substitution is suppressed, without suppressing the printing of the generated object code of the statements. If PRINT MCALL is in effect, nested macro instructions including all parameters are printed. When the PRINT NOGEN instruction is in effect, the assembler prints one of the following on the same line as the macro call or model statement:
  - The object code for the first instruction generated
  - The first 8 bytes of generated data from a DC instruction

  When the assembler forces alignment of an instruction or data constant, it generates zeros in the object code and prints only the generated object code in the listing. When you use the PRINT NOGEN instruction the generated zeros are not printed.

  Diagnostic Messages and Generated Data: If the next line to print after a macro call or model statement is a diagnostic message, the generated data is not shown.
- Assembler and machine instruction statements in the source program that contain variable symbols are listed twice: first, as they appear in the source input, and second, with values substituted for the variable symbols. See Figure 8 on page 19 for an example of this.
- All error diagnostic messages appear in line except those suppressed by the FLAG option. Chapter 6, “Diagnosing Assembly Errors” on page 143 describes how error messages and MNOTEs are handled.

- Literals that have not been assigned locations by LTORG statements appear in the listing following the END statement. Literals are identified by the equal sign (=) preceding them.
- Whenever possible, a generated statement is printed in the same format as the corresponding macro definition (model) statement. The starting columns of the operation, operand, and comments fields are preserved, unless they are displaced by field substitution, as shown in Figure 8.

```
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
                                      1 &A SETC 'abcdefghijklmnop'                                          00001000
                                      2 &A       LA   4,1      Comment                                     00002000
000000 4140 0001           00001      +abcdefghijklmnop LA 4,1                                             X00002000
                                      +                       Comment
                                      3 &b SETC 'abc'                                                       00003000
                                      4 &b       LA   4,1      Comment                                     00004000
000004 4140 0001           00001      +abc       LA   4,1      Comment                                     00004000
```

Figure 8. Source and Object Listing Section

It is possible for a generated statement to occupy ten or more continuation lines on the listing. In this way, generated statements are unlike source statements, which are restricted to nine continuation lines.

8 The release level of High Level Assembler.

9 The date and time at the start of the assembly.

10 The error diagnostic messages immediately follow the source statement in error. Many error diagnostic messages include the segment of the statement that is in error. You can use the FLAG assembler option to control the level of diagnostic messages displayed in your listing.

11 The informational message, ASMA435I, that describes the origin of the source statement in error. This message is only printed when you specify the FLAG(RECORD) assembler option.

12 The Addr1 and Addr2 columns show the first and second operand addresses in the USING instructions. The base registers on an ordinary USING instruction are printed, right justified in the object code columns, preceded by the characters “R:”.

13 The informational message, ASMA435I, that describes the origin of the source statement in error. Conditional assembly statements and comment statements contribute to the record count of macro definitions, as suggested by the record number which is greater than the number of generated statements.

14 The identification-sequence field from the source statement. For a macro-generated statement, this field contains information identifying the origin of the statement. The first two columns define the level of the macro call, where a level of `01` indicates statements generated by the macro specified within the source code, and higher level numbers indicate statements generated from macros invoked from within a macro.

For a library macro call, the last five columns contain the first five characters of the macro name. For a macro whose definition is in the source program (including one read by a COPY statement or by the LIBMAC assembler option), the last five characters contain the line number of the model statement in the definition from which the generated statement is derived. This information can be an important diagnostic aid in analyzing output resulting from macro calls within macro calls.

15 The Addr1 and Addr2 columns show the first and second operand addresses in the USING instructions. The resolved base displacement for a dependent USING instruction is printed in the object code columns, as *register displacement*, where *register* is shown as a hexadecimal value.

16 The current PUSH level is printed after the heading and before the first active USING. If the PUSH level is zero, it is not shown.

If PRINT UHEAD or PCONTROL(UHEAD) has been specified, a summary of current active USINGs is printed on up to four heading lines, following the TITLE line on each page of the source and object section. The USINGs listed are those current at the end of the assembly of the last statement on the previous page of the listing, with the following exceptions:

- The USINGs summary shows the effect of the USING instruction when:
  - It is the first statement in the source input data set, or
  - It is the first statement on the new page
- The USINGs summary shows the effect of the DROP instruction when:
  - It is the first statement in the source input data set, or
  - It is the first statement on the new page

Current active USINGs include USINGs that are temporarily overridden. In the following example the USING for base register 12 temporarily overrides the USING for base register 10. After the DROP instruction, the base register for BASE1 reverts to register 10.

```
USING BASE1,10
USING BASE1,12        Temporarily overrides register 10
LA    1,BASE1         Uses base register 12
DROP  12
LA    1,BASE1         Uses base register 10
```

The summary of active USINGs heading lines have the format:

`Active Usings (n): label.sectname+offset(range),registers`

where:

n Is the current PUSH level. If the PUSH level is zero, it is not shown.

label Is the label name specified for a Labeled USING. If the USING is not labeled, this field is omitted.

sectname Is the section name used to resolve the USING. The section name is listed as (PC) if the section is an unnamed CSECT, (COM) if the section is unnamed COMMON, and (DSECT) if the section is an unnamed DSECT.

offset Is the offset from the specified section that is used to resolve the USING. This field is omitted if it is zero.

(range) Is the total range for the USING. For example, if you specified 3 registers and allowed the range to default, then the range value displayed would be X'3000'.

registers Is the register or registers specified on the USING statement.

For dependent USINGs, the register is printed as *register+offset* where *register* is the register used to resolve the address from

the corresponding ordinary USING, and *offset* is the offset from the register to the address specified in the dependent USING.

If there are more active USINGs than can fit into four lines, the summary is truncated, and the character string 'MORE ...' is appended to the last line.

In Figure 9, the USINGs at statements 25 and 30 are ordinary USINGs. The USING at statement 45 is a dependent USING, and that at statement 46 is a labeled dependant USING. The USINGs at statements 48 and 49 are labeled USINGs.

Figure 9 also shows an example of the *Source and Object* section when the same assembly is run with assembler option LIST(133), and is followed by a description of differences with respect to Figure 7 on page 16:

```
SAMP01   Sample Listing Description                                                                  Page    3
  Active Usings: None
  1
  Loc    Object Code      Addr1    Addr2    Stmt  Source Statement                        HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
00000000                00000000 000000E0      2 Samp01   Csect                                                    00002000
                                               3          Sav   (14,12)                 Save caller's registers         00003000
** ASMA057E Undefined operation code - SAV
** ASMA435I Record 3 in FIG8     ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
                                                          ⋮
                                            23 Entry1   SAMPMAC  Parm1=YES                                            00023000
00000000 18CF                               24+Entry1   LR 12,15                                                     01-SAMPMAC
                          2
                   R:C 00000000             25+         USING Entry1,12             Ordinary Using                  01-SAMPMAC
00000002 0000 0000              00000000     26+         LA Savearea,10                                              01-SAMPMAC
** ASMA044E Undefined symbol - Savearea
** ASMA029E Incorrect register specification - Savearea
** ASMA435I Record 5 in TEST     MACLIB   A1(SAMPMAC) on volume: ADISK
00000006 50D0 A004              00000004     27+         ST 13,4(,10)                                                01-SAMPMAC
0000000A 50A0 D008              00000008     28+         ST 10,8(,13)                                                01-SAMPMAC
0000000E 18DA                                29+         LR 13,10                                                    01-SAMPMAC
                                                                                                          3
                 R:A35 00000010              30+         USING *,10,3,5              Ordinary Using,Multiple Base    01-SAMPMAC
** ASMA303W Multiple address resolutions may result from this USING and the USING on statement number 25
** ASMA435I Record 9 in TEST     MACLIB   A1(SAMPMAC) on volume: ADISK
                                                          ⋮
                                            42+         DROP 10,3,5                 Drop Multiple Registers         01-SAMPMAC
                                            43          COPY  SAMPLE                                                00024000
                                            44=*        Line from member SAMPLE                                     00001000
                 C 02A 00000000 0000002A    45          Using IHADCB,INDCB          Establish DCB addressability    00025000
                 C 07A 00000000 0000007A    46 ODCB     Using IHADCB,OUTDCB                                         00026000
                                            47          push  using                                                 00027000
                   R:2 00000000             48 PlistIn  Using Plist,2               Establish Plist addressability  00028000
                   R:3 00000000             49 PlistOut Using Plist,3                                               00029000
SAMP01   Sample Listing Description                                                                  Page    4
  Active Usings (1):Entry1(X'1000'),R12  IHADCB(X'FD6'),R12+X'2A'  PlistIn.Plist(X'1000'),R2
  PlistOut.Plist(X'1000'),R3  ODCB.IHADCB(X'F86'),R12+X'7A'
  Loc    Object Code      Addr1    Addr2    Stmt  Source Statement                        HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
00000010 1851                               50 ?Branch  LR    R5,R1                 Save Plist pointer              00030000
** ASMA147E Symbol too long, or first character not a letter - ?Branch
** ASMA435I Record 30 in FIG8     ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
00000012 5825 0000              00000000     51          L     R2,0(R5)              R2 = address of request list    00031000
00000016 47F0 C022              00000022     52          B     Open                                                  00032000
                                                          ⋮
                                            697         End                                                         00050000
000000D0 00000001                           698               =f'1'
000000D4 00000000                           699               =v(Rcnvdte)
000000D8 00000000                           700               =v(Rcnvtme)
000000DC 00000002                           701               =f'2'
```

Figure 9. Source and Object Listing Section—133 Format

1 The Addr1 and Addr2 columns show 8-character operand addresses.

2 The assembled address of the object code occupies 8 characters.

3 The first 8 characters of the macro name are shown in the identification-sequence field.

Relocation Dictionary (RLD)

This section of the listing describes the relocation dictionary information passed to the linkage editor or loader, or DFSMS/MVS binder, in the object module.

The entries describe the address constants in the assembled program that are affected by relocation. This section helps you find relocatable constants in your program.

```
SAMP01                                  Relocation Dictionary                                  Page   17
    1        2        3        4
   Pos.Id   Rel.Id   Flags    Address                                          HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
  00000001 00000001    0C    000000E0
  00000001 00000004    1C    000000DC
  00000001 00000005    1C    000000E4
  00000001 00000006    1C    000000E8
  00000001 00000007    1C    000000EC
```

Figure 10. Relocation Dictionary (RLD) Listing

1 The external symbol dictionary ID number assigned to the ESD entry for the the external symbol whose value will be used to relocate the address constant.

2 The external symbol dictionary ID number assigned to the ESD entry for the control section in which the referenced symbol is stored.

3 The RLD data byte contains the following information:

`1... ....` In load modules, indicates an unresolved reference
`.b.. ....` If 1, add 4 to the length indicated by the LL bits
`..aa ....` Indicates adcon type (00=A, 01=V, 10=Q, 11=CXD)
`.... LL..` Length-1 of the adcon
`.... ..S.` Sign of relocation: 0=+, 1=–
`.... ...T` 1 means following RLD item has same R and P pointer

4 The assembled address (in hexadecimal notation) of the field where the address constant is stored.

Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference

This section of the listing concerns symbols and literals that are defined and used in the program.

```
                              Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference                          Page   20
1        2        3        4    5  6    7    8
Symbol   Length   Value    Id    R Type   Defn References                          HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
ASMAXINV      1 00000000 00000001     J     152  170U  185U  190U
AXPABSREC
              4 00000404 FFFFFFFC     F     781  473
AXPCEND       2 00000408 FFFFFFFC     H     782  789
AXPDSN      255 00000200 FFFFFFFC     C     776  267M
AXPERRL       4 0000002C FFFFFFFD     F     761  279M  508M
                    ⋮
fl12nd        1 00000080 FFFFFFFF A   U     622  414   416
FullStatement
             80 00000000 FFFFFFFA     C    1371  343M  344   344M  344   461M  464M
IHADCB        1 00000000 FFFFFFFB     J     799  189U  203U  249M  879   928   999  1124  1131  1147  1154  1167  1265
                                            1271  1298  1317  1318  1324  1365  1366
IOError       2 00000490 00000001     H     489  252   569
jfcb        176 00000058 FFFFFFFF     X     599  256   600
jix           1 00000000 00000000 C   U     214  215
                    ⋮
WA                    00000001 A    U     202  203U  206D  206   207
=a(a5,x)      4 00000078 00000001     A     251  133
```

Figure 11. Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference

1 Shows each symbol or literal. Symbols are shown in the form in which they are defined, either in the name entry of a machine or assembler instruction, or in the operand of an EXTRN or WXTRN instruction. Symbols defined using mixed-case letters are shown in mixed-case letters, unless the FOLD assembler option was specified.

If a symbol name is used as a literal more than once in a program, and the form of the symbol name is coded differently, for example `=V(symbol)` and `=V(SYMBOL)`, and the symbol is not defined in the program, the symbol is listed in the form of the first reference. In the following example the assembler lists the symbol name as `inPUT`, because the third statement is the first occurrence of the symbol, and the symbol was not previously defined.

```
test     csect
         using     *,15
         la        1,=v(inPUT)        third statement
         la        1,=v(INPUT)
         end
```

In the following example the assembler lists the symbol name `inPUT`, because the third statement defines `inPUT` as an external symbol. The assembler also lists the symbol name `INput`, because the fifth statement defines `INput` as an ordinary symbol.

```
test     csect
         using     *,15
         la        1,=v(inPUT)        third statement
         la        1,=v(INPUT)
INput    dc        cl4' '             fifth statement
         END
```

2 Shows, in decimal notation, the byte length of the field represented by the symbol. This field is blank for labeled USINGs (see symbol `WA`).

3 Shows the hexadecimal address assigned to the symbol or literal represents, or the hexadecimal value to which the symbol is equated. This field is blank for labeled USING symbols.

4 For symbols and literals defined in an executable control section or a dummy section, this field shows the external symbol dictionary ID (ESDID) assigned to the ESD entry for the control section in which the symbol or literal is defined. For external symbols, this field indicates the ESDID assigned to ESD entry for this symbol. For symbols defined in a dummy control section, this field indicates the control section ID assigned to the control section. For symbols defined using the EQU statement, if the operand contains a relocatable expression, this field shows the external symbol dictionary ID of the relocatable expression. Otherwise, it contains the current control section ID.

5 Column title R is an abbreviation for “Relocatability Type”. Symbols `fl2nd` and `WA` are absolute symbols and are flagged “A” in the R column. Symbol `jix` is the result of a complex relocatable expression and is flagged “C” in the R column. Symbol `IOerror` is simply relocatable and is not flagged.

6 Indicates the type attribute of the symbol or literal. Refer to the *Language Reference* manual for details.

7 Is the statement number in which the symbol or literal was defined.

8 Shows the statement numbers of the statements in which the symbol or literal appears as an operand. Additional indicators are suffixed to statement numbers as follows:

B The statement contains a branch instruction, and the relocatable symbol is used as the branch-target operand address.

D The statement contains a DROP instruction, and the symbol is used in the instruction operand.

M The instruction causes the contents of a register represented by an absolute symbol, or a storage location represented by one or more relocatable symbols, to be modified.

U The statement contains a USING instruction, and the symbol is used in one of the instruction operands.

X The statement contains an EX machine instruction, and the symbol in the second operand is the symbolic address of the target instruction.

In the case of a duplicate symbol this column contains the message:

```
****DUPLICATE****
```

A symbol name may appear in the cross reference section as both an external symbol name and an ordinary symbol name. In this situation there is no duplication.

The following notes apply to the cross reference section:

Notes:

1. Cross reference entries for symbols used in a literal refer to the assembled literal in the literal pool. Look up the literals in the cross reference to find where the symbols are used.
2. A PRINT OFF listing control instruction does not affect the production of the cross reference section of the listing.
3. In the case of an undefined symbol, the columns Length (2) and Value (3) contain the message:

   ```
   ****UNDEFINED****
   ```

Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs

This section of the listing shows symbols that have been defined in CSECTs but not referenced. This helps you remove unnecessary data definitions, and reduce the size of your program. The list of symbols are shown in symbol name order. To obtain this section of the listing, you need to specify the XREF(UNREFS) assembler option.

```
SAMP01                          Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs                                  Page   19
  1       2
 Defn  Symbol                                                                  HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
   47  ODCB
   49  PlistIn
   50  PlistOut
    7  R0
   10  R3
   16  Unreferenced_Long_Symbol
```

Figure 12. Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTS

1 The statement number that defines the symbol.

2 The name of the symbol.

Macro and Copy Code Source Summary

This section of the listing shows the names of the macro libraries from which the assembler read macros or copy code members, and the names of the macros and copy code members that were read from each library. This section is useful for checking that you have included the correct version of a macro or copy code member.

```
SAMP01                                  Macro and Copy Code Source Summary                                Page   27
  1    2                                          3        4
 Con Source                                      Volume    Members                        HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
     PRIMARY INPUT                                       A        AINSERT_TEST_MACRO         AL       L        MAC1
                                                         N        O        SL       ST       TYPCHKRX X
  L1 TEST     MACLIB   A1                        ADISK     SAMPLE   SAMPMAC  XIT1     XIT3
  L2 DSECT    MACLIB   A1                        ADISK     XIT2
  L3 OSMACRO  MACLIB   S2                        MNT190    DCBD     IHBERMAC SAVE
```

Figure 13. Macro and Copy Code Source Summary

1 Contains a number representing the concatenation order of macro and copy code libraries. (This number is not shown when the Source **2** is “PRIMARY INPUT”.) The number is prefixed with “L” which indicates Library. The concatenation value is cross-referenced in the Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference section.

2 Shows either the name of each library from which the assembler reads a macro or a copy code member or, for in-line macros, the words “PRIMARY INPUT”.

3 Shows the volume serial number of the volume on which the library resides.

4 Shows the names of the macros or copy members that were retrieved from the library.

You can suppress this section of the listing by specifying the NOMXREF assembler option.

LIBRARY User Exit: If a LIBRARY user exit has been specified for the assembly, and the exit opens the library data set, the exit can return the name of the library to the assembler. In this case the *Macro and Copy Code Source Summary* lists the library names returned by the user exit.

Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference

This section of the listing shows the names of macros and copy code members and the statements where the macro or copy code member was called. You can use the assembler option MXREF(XREF) or MXREF(FULL) to generate this section of the listing.

```
SAMP01                                  Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference                              Page   28
 1        2   3                 4     5
Macro     Con  Called By        Defn  References                                 HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
A              PRIMARY INPUT     826  971, 973, 998
AINSERT_TEST_MACRO
               PRIMARY INPUT       3  16
AL             PRIMARY INPUT     873  981, 983
DCBD       L3  PRIMARY INPUT       -  113
IHBERMAC   L3  DCBD                -  113
L              PRIMARY INPUT     816  966, 968
MAC1           PRIMARY INPUT      28  36
N              PRIMARY INPUT     933  991
O              PRIMARY INPUT     953  993
SAMPLE     L1  PRIMARY INPUT       -  85C  6
SAMPMAC    L1  PRIMARY INPUT       -  64
SAVE       L3  PRIMARY INPUT       -  42
SL             PRIMARY INPUT     883  986, 988
ST             PRIMARY INPUT     836  976, 978
TYPCHKRX       PRIMARY INPUT     745  775, 845, 892
X              PRIMARY INPUT     943  996
XIT1       L1  PRIMARY INPUT       -  30C
XIT2       L2  PRIMARY INPUT       -  32C
XIT3       L1  PRIMARY INPUT       -  34C
```

Figure 14. Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference

1 The macro or copy code member name.

2 Shows the value representing the input source concatenation, as listed in the Macro and Copy Code Source Summary (refer to Figure 13 on page 25) and under the sub-heading “Datasets Allocated for this Assembly” in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary (refer to Figure 23 on page 33).

3 Shows either the name of the macro that calls this macro or copy code member, or the words “PRIMARY INPUT” indicating the macro or copy code member was called directly from the primary input source. If you use the COPY instruction to copy a macro definition, then references to the macro are shown as called by “PRIMARY INPUT”.

4 Either:

- The statement number for macros defined in the primary input file,

or

- A dash (–) indicating the macro or copy code member was retrieved from a library.

5 The statement number that contains the macro call or COPY instruction.

Lookahead Processing: If a COPY instruction is encountered during lookahead, this is the number of the statement that causes lookahead processing to commence.

PCONTROL(MCALL) Assembler Option: If you specify the PCONTROL(MCALL) assembler option, and you copy a macro definition from an inner macro, the number shown against the copied member is one less than the statement number containing the inner macro call instruction. See “Effects of LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) Options” on page 27 for examples of assemblies using different combinations of the LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) options.

6 Statement numbers have a suffix of “C” when the reference is to a member named on a COPY instruction.

Figure 15 on page 27 shows the format of the Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference when you specify the assembler option, LIBMAC.

```
SAMP01                                  Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference                              Page   81
Macro     Con  Called By       Defn  References                                 HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
                                 1
A             PRIMARY INPUT    3667  3812, 3814, 3839
AINSERT_TEST_MACRO
              PRIMARY INPUT       3  16
AL            PRIMARY INPUT    3714  3822, 3824
DCBD       L3 PRIMARY INPUT     224X 2329
IHBERMAC   L3 DCBD             2331X 2954
L             PRIMARY INPUT    3657  3807, 3809
MAC1          PRIMARY INPUT      28  36
N             PRIMARY INPUT    3774  3832
O             PRIMARY INPUT    3794  3834
SAMPLE     L1 PRIMARY INPUT       -  195C
SAMPMAC    L1 PRIMARY INPUT     153X 174
SAVE       L3 PRIMARY INPUT      43X 130
SL            PRIMARY INPUT    3724  3827, 3829
ST            PRIMARY INPUT    3677  3817, 3819
TYPCHKRX      PRIMARY INPUT    3586  3616, 3686, 3733
X             PRIMARY INPUT    3784  3837
XIT1       L1 PRIMARY INPUT       -  30C
XIT2       L2 PRIMARY INPUT       -  32C
XIT3       L1 PRIMARY INPUT       -  34C
```

Figure 15. Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference—with LIBMAC Option

1 The "X" flag indicates the macro was read from a macro library and imbedded in the input source program immediately preceding the invocation of that macro. For example, in Figure 15, you can see that SAMPMAC was called by the PRIMARY INPUT stream from LIBRARY L1, at statement number 174, after being imbedded in the input stream at statement number 153. See "Effects of LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) Options" for examples of assemblies using different combinations of the LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) options.

You can suppress this section of the listing by specifying the NOMXREF assembler option.

Effects of LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) Options

When you specify different combinations of the LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) assembler options to assemble the same source program, the definition statement and reference statement numbers can be different in each assembly listing.

The example that follows shows how these options affect the output from an assembly of the same source program. The source program is coded as follows:

```
MACOUTER
END
```

The assembly of this program uses the following library members:

MACOUTER: A macro definition that issues a call to macro MACINNER.

MACINNER: A macro definition that copies member COPYCODE.

COPYCODE: A member containing an MNOTE instruction.

The following four figures illustrate the effects of using the various combinations of the LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) assembler options.

Figure 16 on page 28 shows the output when you specify the LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) options.

```
                                                                                                  Page    2
 Active Usings: None
 Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
                                    1          MACRO                                                        00001000
                                    2          MACOUTER                                                     00002000
                                    3          MACINNER                                                     00003000
                                    4          MEND                                                         00004000
                                    5          MACOUTER                                                     00001000
                                    6          MACRO                                                        00001000
                                    7          MACINNER                                                     00002000
                                    8          COPY COPYCODE                                                00003000
                                    9          MNOTE *,'MNOTE FROM MEMBER COPYCODE'                         00001000
                                   10          MEND                                                         00004000
  This line produced because  ---->11+         MACINNER                                                     01-00003
  PCONTROL(MCALL) specified        12+*,MNOTE FROM MEMBER COPYCODE                                         02-00008
                                   13          END                                                          00002000

                                        Macro and Copy Code Source Summary                                  Page    3
 Con Source                                      Volume    Members                       HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
  L1 TEST     MACLIB   A1                        ADISK     COPYCODE MACINNER MACOUTER

                                        Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference                                 Page    4
Macro     Con  Called By        Defn  References                                      HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
COPYCODE   L1  MACINNER            -  8C
MACINNER   L1  MACOUTER            7X 11
MACOUTER   L1  PRIMARY INPUT       2X 5
```

Figure 16. Assembly with LIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) Options

Figure 17 shows the output when you specify the LIBMAC and NOPCONTROL options.

```
                                                                                                  Page    2
 Active Usings: None
 Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
                                    1          MACRO                                                        00001000
                                    2          MACOUTER                                                     00002000
                                    3          MACINNER                                                     00003000
                                    4          MEND                                                         00004000
                                    5          MACOUTER                                                     00001000
                                    6          MACRO                                                        00001000
                                    7          MACINNER                                                     00002000
                                    8          COPY COPYCODE                                                00003000
                                    9          MNOTE *,'MNOTE FROM MEMBER COPYCODE'                         00001000
                                   10          MEND                                                         00004000
                                   11+*,MNOTE FROM MEMBER COPYCODE                                         02-00008
                                   12          END                                                          00002000

                                        Macro and Copy Code Source Summary                                  Page    3
 Con Source                                      Volume    Members                       HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
  L1 TEST     MACLIB   A1                        ADISK     COPYCODE MACINNER MACOUTER

                                        Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference                                 Page    4
Macro     Con  Called By        Defn  References                                      HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
COPYCODE   L1  MACINNER            -  8C
MACINNER   L1  MACOUTER            7X 10
MACOUTER   L1  PRIMARY INPUT       2X 5
```

Figure 17. Assembly with LIBMAC and NOPCONTROL Options

Figure 18 shows the output when you specify the NOLIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) options.

```
                                                                                                  Page    2
 Active Usings: None
 Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
                                    1          MACOUTER                                                     00001000
  This line produced because  ---->2+          MACINNER                                                     01-MACOU
  PCONTROL(MCALL) specified        3+*,MNOTE FROM MEMBER COPYCODE                                          02-MACIN
                                   4          END                                                          00002000

                                        Macro and Copy Code Source Summary                                  Page    3
 Con Source                                      Volume    Members                       HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
  L1 TEST     MACLIB   A1                        ADISK     COPYCODE MACINNER MACOUTER

                                        Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference                                 Page    4
Macro     Con  Called By        Defn  References                                      HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
COPYCODE   L1  MACINNER            -  1C
MACINNER   L1  MACOUTER            -  2
MACOUTER   L1  PRIMARY INPUT       -  1
```

Figure 18. Assembly with NOLIBMAC and PCONTROL(MCALL) Options

Figure 19 on page 29 shows the output when you specify the NOLIBMAC and NOPCONTROL options.

```
                                                                                                    Page    2
  Active Usings: None
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0      2000/09/25 17.48
                                    1          MACOUTER                                                    00001000
                                    2+*,MNOTE FROM MEMBER COPYCODE                                         02-MACIN
                                    3          END                                                         00002000

                                        Macro and Copy Code Source Summary                                  Page    3
 Con Source                                   Volume    Members                          HLASM R4.0      2000/09/25 17.48
  L1 TEST     MACLIB   A1                     ADISK     COPYCODE MACINNER MACOUTER

                                        Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference                                 Page    4
Macro     Con  Called By        Defn  References                                        HLASM R4.0      2000/09/25 17.48
COPYCODE   L1  MACINNER            -  1C
MACINNER   L1  MACOUTER            -  1
MACOUTER   L1  PRIMARY INPUT       -  1
```

Figure 19. Assembly with NOLIBMAC and NOPCONTROL Options

DSECT Cross Reference

This section of the listing shows the names of all internal or external dummy sections defined in the program, and the number of the statement where the definition of the dummy section began.

```
                                        Dsect Cross Reference                                       Page   26
 1        2          3         4
Dsect     Length     Id        Defn                                          HLASM R4.0      2000/09/25 17.48
AXPRIL    0000003C   FFFFFFFD    655
AXPSIL    00000410   FFFFFFFC    771
AXPXITP   00000014   FFFFFFFE    641
IHADCB    00000060   FFFFFFFB    799
Statement
          00000050   FFFFFFFA   1370
WORKAREA  000001A8   FFFFFFFF    595
```

Figure 20. DSECT Cross Reference

1 Shows the name of each dummy section defined in your program.

2 Shows, in hexadecimal notation, the assembled byte length of the dummy section.

3 For external dummy sections, this field indicates the external symbol dictionary ID assigned to the ESD entry for the external dummy section. For internal dummy sections, this field indicates the control section ID assigned to the dummy control section. You can use this field in conjunction with the ID field in the Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference (see Figure 11 on page 22) to relate symbols to a specific section.

4 Shows the number of the statement where the definition of the dummy section began.

You can suppress this section of the listing by specifying the NODXREF assembler option.

USING Map

This section of the listing shows a summary of the USING, DROP, PUSH USING, and POP USING instructions used in your program.

```
                                        Using Map                                                 Page   27
                                                                                        HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
 1     2        3     4     5          6        7         8        9  10     11   12
Stmt  -----Location----- Action ----------Using---------- Reg Max    Last  Label and Using Text
        Count      Id           Type          Value    Range     Id        Disp   Stmt
  170  00000000  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 00000001  15 02A     171  asmaxinv,r15
  175  00000030  00000001 DROP                                          15              r15
  185  00000034  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 00000001  12 000           asmaxinv,r12
  186  00000034  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 FFFFFFFD   7 034     508  axpril,r07
  187  00000034  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 FFFFFFFA   8 048     464  Statement,r08
  188  00000034  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 FFFFFFFC  10 404     474  axpsil,r10
  189  00000034  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 FFFFFFFB  11 052     465  ihadcb,r11
  190  00000034  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 00000001  12 589     519  asmaxinv,r12
  202  0000004E  00000001 USING  LABELED     00000000 00001000 FFFFFFFF   1 000          WA.WorkArea,r01
  203  0000004E  00000001 USING  LAB+DEPND  +0000014A 00000EB6 FFFFFFFB   1              local.ihadcb,WA.mydcb
  204  0000004E  00000001 PUSH
  205  00000054  00000001 DROP                                           1              local
  212  0000006A  00000001 POP                                            1              WA
  213  0000006A  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 FFFFFFFF  13 14A     527  WorkArea,r13
  214  0000006A  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000
```

Figure 21. USING Map

1 Shows the number of the statement that contains the USING, DROP, PUSH USING, or POP USING instruction.

2 Shows the value of the location counter when the USING, DROP, PUSH USING, or POP USING statement was encountered.

3 Shows the value of the ESDID of the current section when the USING, DROP, PUSH USING or POP USING statement was encountered.

4 Shows whether the instruction was a USING, DROP, PUSH, or POP instruction.

5 For USING instructions, this field indicates whether the USING is an ordinary USING, a labeled USING, a dependent USING, or a labeled dependent USING.

6 For ordinary and labeled USING instructions, this field indicates the base address specified in the USING. For dependent USING instructions, this field is prefixed with a plus sign (+) and indicates the hexadecimal offset of the address of the second operand from the base address specified in the corresponding ordinary USING.

7 Shows the range of the USING. For more information, see the description of the USING statement in the *HLASM Language Reference*.

8 For USING instructions, this field indicates the ESDID of the section specified on the USING statement.

9 For ordinary and labeled USING instructions, and for DROP instructions, this field indicates the register or registers specified in the instruction. There is a separate line in the USING map for each register specified in the instruction. If the DROP instruction has no operands, all registers and labels are dropped and this field contains two asterisks (**).

For dependent USING instructions, the field indicates the register for the corresponding ordinary USING instruction that is used to resolve the address. If the corresponding ordinary USING instruction has multiple registers specified, only the first register used to resolve the address is displayed.

10 For each base register specified in an ordinary USING instruction or a labeled USING instruction, this field shows the maximum displacement calculated by the assembler when resolving symbolic addresses into base-displacement form using that base register.

11 For ordinary and labeled USING instructions, this field indicates the statement number of the last statement that used the specified base register to resolve an address. Where an ordinary USING instruction is used to resolve a dependent USING, the statement number printed reflects the use of the register to resolve the dependent USING.

12 For USING and DROP instructions, this field lists the text specified on the USING or DROP instruction, truncated if necessary. For labeled USING instructions, the text is preceded by the label specified for the USING.

If a DROP instruction drops more than one register or labeled USING, the text for each register or labeled USING is printed on the line corresponding to the register that is dropped.

You can suppress this section of the listing by specifying either of the assembler options, USING(NOMAP) or NOUSING.

General Purpose Register Cross Reference

This section of the listing shows all references in the program to each of the general registers. Additional flags indicate the type of reference. This is a useful tool in checking the logic of your program; it helps you see if your use of registers is in order.

```
                                    General Purpose Register Cross Reference                Page    8
Register  References (M=modified, B=branch, U=USING, D=DROP, N=index)          HLASM R4.0      2000/09/25 17.48
   1       2
    0(0)  115
    1(1)  118  120  121  122  124  126  127  128  130  131  133  135  136  137
    2(2)   36   37   38   39   40   41   42   43   44M  45   46   47   48   49   50   51
           52M  53   54   55M  56   57   58   59M  60   61   62   63   64   65   66   67
           68   69   70   71   72M  73   74   75   76   77   78   79   80   81   82   83
           84   85   86   87   88   89M  90   91   92   93M  94   95   96   97   98   99
          100  101  102  103  104  105  106  107  108  109  110  111  112
    3(3)  (no references identified)   3
    4(4)   16M 281
    5(5)  283
    6(6)   66N 167N 170  171  174  178  180N 190  192  193  194  197  199  200  201N
    7(7)  283
    8(8)  283
    9(9)  224  225  226  227
   10(A)  255U 342D
   11(B)  237  238  239N 240  241  242  243N 244  245N 271
   12(C)    8U
   13(D)  261  262  263  264  265  266
   14(E)  209  210  211  212  213  214  215  216
   15(F)   34  144
```

Figure 22. General Purpose Register Cross Reference

1 Lists the sixteen general registers (0–15).

2 The statements within the program that reference the register. Additional indicators are suffixed to the statement numbers as follows:

(blank) Referenced

M Modified

B Used as a branch address

U Used in USING statement

D Used in DROP statement

N Used as an index register

3 The assembler indicates when it has not detected any references to a register.

Note: The implicit use of a register to resolve a symbol to a base and displacement does not create a reference in the General Purpose Register Cross Reference.

Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary

This section of the listing summarizes the error diagnostic messages issued during the assembly, and provides statistics about the assembly.

The sample listing shown in Figure 23 on page 33 contains a combination of MVS and CMS data sets to show examples of the differences in data set information.

Note: For a complete list of the diagnostic messages issued by the assembler, see Appendix G, “High Level Assembler Messages” on page 309.

```
                           Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary                 Page    9
                                                                                 HLASM R4.0  2000/09/25 17.48
Statements Flagged
        1
    1(P1,0), 3(P1,3), 4(P1,4), 5(P1,5), 6(P1,6), 7(P1,7), 8(P1,8), 170(L3:DCBD,2149)

  2  8 Statements Flagged in this Assembly       16 was Highest Severity Code
HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER, 5696-234, RELEASE 4.0  3
SYSTEM: CMS 11                    JOBNAME: (NOJOB)     STEPNAME: (NOSTEP)   PROCSTEP: (NOPROC)  4
Datasets Allocated for this Assembly  5
 Con DDname   Dataset Name                                  Volume  Member
  A1 ASMAOPT  XITDIS   OPTIONS  A1                         ADISK
  P1 SYSIN    XITDIS   ASSEMBLE A1                         ADISK
  L1 SYSLIB   TEST     MACLIB   A1                         ADISK
  L2          DSECT    MACLIB   A1                         ADISK
  L3          OSMACRO  MACLIB   S2                         MNT190
  L4          OSMACRO1 MACLIB   S2                         MNT190
 6  SYSLIN   XITDIS   TEXT     A1                         ADISK
    SYSPRINT XITDIS   LISTING  A1                         ADISK

External Function Statistics  7
 ----Calls----  Message   Highest  Function
 SETAF   SETCF    Count  Severity  Name
     3       1        5        22  MSG
     1       0        2         8  MSG1
     1       0        1         0  MSG2
 8
Input/Output Exit Statistics
Exit Type  Name      Calls  ---Records---  Diagnostic
                            Added Deleted  Messages
LIBRARY    CTLXIT      258      0       0        2
LISTING    ASMAXPRT    195      0      52        0

 9 4622K allocated to Buffer Pool,      10 489K would be required for this to be an In-Storage Assembly
 11   16 Primary Input Records Read      13 3072 Library Records Read            15 0 Work File Reads
 12    1 ASMAOPT Records Read            14  141 Primary Records Written         16 0 Work File Writes
 17    2 Punch Records Written           18    0 ADATA Records Written
Assembly Start Time: 12.06.06 Stop Time: 12.06.07 Processor Time: 00.00.00.1771  19
Return Code 016
```

Figure 23. Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary

1 The statement number of a statement that causes an error message, or contains an MNOTE instruction, appears in this list. Flagged statements are shown in either of two formats. When assembler option FLAG(NORECORD) is specified, only the statement number is shown. When assembler option FLAG(RECORD) is specified, the format is: *statement(dsnum:member,record)*, where:

statement is the statement number as shown in the source and object section of the listing.

dsnum is the value applied to the source or library dataset, showing the type of input file and the concatenation number. “P” indicates the statement was read from the primary input source, and “L” indicates the statement was read from a library. This value is cross-referenced to the input datasets listed under the sub-heading “Datasets Allocated for this Assembly” **5** .

member is the name of the macro from which the statement was read. On MVS, this may also be the name of a partitioned data set member that is included in the primary input (SYSIN) concatenation.

record is the relative record number from the start of the dataset or member which contains the flagged statement.

2 The number of statements flagged, and the highest non-zero severity code of all messages issued. The highest severity code is equal to the assembler return code.

If no statements are flagged, the following statement is printed:

```
No Statements Flagged in this Assembly
```

If the assembly completes with a non-zero return code, and there are no flagged statements, it indicates there is a diagnostic message in the Option Summary section of the listing (see Figure 2 on page 10).

For a complete discussion of how error messages and MNOTEs are handled, see Chapter 6, "Diagnosing Assembly Errors" on page 143.

3 The current release of High Level Assembler and the last PTF applied.

4 Provides information about the system on which the assembly was run. These are:

- The name and level of the operating system used to run the assembly.
- The jobname for the assembly job. If the jobname is not available, "(NOJOB)" is printed.
- The stepname for the assembly job. If the stepname is not available, "(NOSTEP)" is printed.
- The procedure name for the assembly job. If the procedure name is not available, "(NOPROC)" is printed.

5 On MVS and CMS, all data sets used in the assembly are listed by their standard ddname. The data set information includes the data set name, and the serial number of the volume containing the data set. On MVS, the data set information may also include the name of a member of a partitioned data set (PDS).

If a user exit provides the data set information, then the data set name is the value extracted from the Exit-Specific Information block described in the *HLASM Programmer's Guide*.

The "Con" column shows the concatenation value assigned for each input data set. You use this value to cross-reference flagged statements, and macros and copy code members listed in the Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference section.

MVS: On MVS, the data set name for all data sets is extracted from the MVS job file control block (JFCB). If the data set is a JES2 spool file, for example, the data set name is the name allocated by JES2. If the data set is allocated to DUMMY, or NULLFILE, the data set name is shown as NULLFILE.

CMS: On CMS, the data set name is assigned one of the values shown in Figure 24.

Figure 24. Data Set Names on CMS

File Allocated To:	Data Set Name
CMS file	The 8-character filename, the 8-character filetype, and the 2-character filemode of the file, each separated by a blank. If the data set is a disk file in the Shared File system, the volume serial number contains "**SFS".
Dummy file (no physical I/O)	DUMMY
Printer	PRINTER
Punch	PUNCH
Reader	READER
Labeled tape file	The data set name of the tape file
Unlabeled tape file	TAP*n*, where *n* is a value from 0 to 9, or from A to F.
Terminal	TERMINAL

VSE: On VSE, the data set name is assigned one of the values shown in Figure 25.

Figure 25. Data Set Names on VSE

File Allocated To:	Data Set Name
Disk	The file-id
Job stream (SYSIPT)	None
Library (Disk). The ddname is shown as *LIB*.	The file-id
Printer	None
Punch	None
Labeled tape file	The file-id of the tape file
Unlabeled tape file	None
Terminal (TERM)	None

6 Output data sets do not have a concatenation value.

7 The usage statistics of external functions for the assembly. The following statistics are reported:

SETAF function calls	The number of times the function was called from a SETAF assembler instruction.
SETCF function calls	The number of times the function was called from a SETCF assembler instruction.
Messages issued	The number of times the function requested that a message be issued.
Messages severity	The maximum severity for the messages issued by this function.
Function Name	The name of the external function module.

8 The usage statistics of the I/O exits you specified for the assembly. If you do not specify an exit, the assembler does not produce any statistics. The following statistics are reported:

Exit Type	The type of exit.
Name	The name of the exit module as specified in the EXIT assembler option.
Calls	The number of times the exit was called.
Records	The number of records added and deleted by the exit.
Diagnostic Messages	The number of diagnostic messages printed, as a result of exit processing.

All counts are shown right justified and leading zeroes are suppressed, unless the count is zero.

9 The amount of storage allocated to the buffer pool.

10 The minimum value for the SIZE option that the assembler estimates would result in the assembly being performed in storage. This may be less than the amount of storage allocated to the assembler. If the amount of storage in the buffer pool is not enough for an in-storage assembly, this value contains the assembler's approximation of the amount of storage required.

11 The number of primary input records read by the assembler. This count does not include any records read or discarded by the SOURCE user exit.

12 The number of records read from the ASMAOPT file (MVS and CMS) or the Librarian member (VSE) by the assembler.

13 The number of records read from the libraries allocated to SYSLIB on MVS and CMS, or assigned to the Librarian on VSE. This count does not include any records read or discarded by the LIBRARY user exit.

14 The count of the actual number of records generated by the assembler. If you have used the SPACE *n* assembler instruction, the count may be less than the total number of printed and blank lines appearing in the listing. For a SPACE *n* that does not cause an eject, the assembler inserts *n* blank lines in the listing by generating *n*/3 blank records, rounded to the next lower integer if a fraction results. For a SPACE 2, no blank records are generated. The assembler does not generate a blank record to force a page eject.

This count does not include any listing records generated or discarded by the LISTING user exit.

15 The number of reads from the work file (SYSUT1).

16 The number of writes to the work file (SYSUT1).

17 The number of object records written. This count does not include any object records generated or discarded by the OBJECT or PUNCH user exits.

18 The number of ADATA records written to the associated data file.

19 On VSE, the assembly start and stop times in hours, minutes and seconds.

On MVS and CMS, the assembly start and stop times in hours, minutes and seconds and the approximate amount of processor time used for the assembly, in hours, minutes, and seconds to four decimal places.

The assembly start time does not include the time used during assembly initialization, which allocates main storage and data sets and processes the

assembler invocation parameters. The assembly stop time does not include the time used during assembly termination, which deallocates main storage and data sets.

On MVS and CMS, High Level Assembler provides a sample listing exit which allows you to suppress the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary. See Appendix J, “Sample LISTING User Exit (MVS and CMS)” on page 369.

Chapter 3. Controlling Your Assembly with Options

High Level Assembler offers a number of optional facilities. For example, you can suppress printing of the assembly listing or parts of the listing, and you can specify whether you want an object module or an associated data file. There are two types of options:

- Simple pairs of keywords: A positive form (such as OBJECT) requests a facility, and an alternate negative form (such as NOOBJECT) excludes the facility.
- Keywords, such as LINECOUNT(50), that permit you to assign a value to a function.

High Level Assembler accepts options from five different sources:

- External file (MVS and CMS)
- Library member (VSE)
- Invocation parameter
- JCL Option (VSE)
- *PROCESS statement

This chapter describes the different sources for assembler options, each assembler option, and when you can use the options. Each option has a default value that the assembler uses if you do not specify an alternative value. The way in which the default values are arrived at is explained under “Default Options” on page 41.

The Sources of Assembler Options

This section describes in detail the different sources of assembler options, and the general rules for specifying the options.

Before describing the sources, the section sets out the rules of precedence by which the assembler works out what to do when an option is specified two or more times with differing values.

Precedence of Assembler Options

Assembler options are recognized in this order of precedence (highest to lowest):

1. Fixed installation default options
2. Options on *PROCESS OVERRIDE statements
3. Options in the ASMAOPT file (CMS or MVS) or library member (VSE)
4. Invocation options
   a. Options on the JCL PARM parameter of the EXEC statement on MVS and VSE, or the ASMAHL command on CMS
   b. Options on the JCL OPTION statement (VSE)
   c. Options specified via the STDOPT (Standard JCL Options) command (VSE)
5. Options on *PROCESS statements
6. Non-fixed installation default options

You can specify an option as often as you want, and in as many sources as you want. However, this may mean that you have specified the positive and negative form of an option (for keyword pairs), or two or more different values (for a value keyword). These option specifications are “conflicting” options. If all specifications

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

of a particular option are at the same level of precedence, the last specification takes effect, and a warning message is issued. If some conflicting specifications are at different levels of precedence, then the specification at the higher order of precedence takes effect, and (in general) the assembler issues a warning message for each option that is not accepted. A warning message is not issued if the higher level of precedence is a *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement, unless the option cannot be set by a *PROCESS statement.

Fixed Installation Default Options

If an option was specified on the DELETE operand of the ASMAOPT macro during installation, you cannot change the option when you invoke the assembler.

*PROCESS OVERRIDE Statement Options

If the keyword OVERRIDE is added to a process (*PROCESS) statement, then the nominated assembler option is not overridden by specifications at a lower level of precedence. Furthermore, if there is a conflicting specification at a lower level of precedence, the assembler does *not* issue a warning message.

If an option specified on the process statement is an option listed in "*Process Statement Options" on page 40, and a different value is supplied as an ASMAOPT or invocation option, then the ASMAOPT or invocation value is accepted, and the assembler issues a warning message.

ASMAOPT Options

High Level Assembler accepts options from an external file (MVS and CMS) with the DDname ASMAOPT or library member (VSE) with the name and type ASMAOPT.USER. The file or library member may contain multiple records. All records are read from the file or library member.

The contents of each record are used to build an internal buffer containing the complete option list. Each record is processed until the first space is encountered, unless the option being processed is a SYSPARM option which is enclosed in quotes. The assembler appends the options string from each record, separating the strings with commas. For example, these records:

```
ADATA,MXREF
SYSPARM(TESTPARM)
XREF(FILL)
```

generate this option list:

```
ADATA,MXREF,SYSPARM(TESTPARM),XREF(FULL)
```

Invocation Options

The way you specify the invocation options depends on the environment in which High Level Assembler is running.

MVS On MVS batch, you select the options by specifying them in the PARM field of the JCL EXEC statement that invokes the assembler. For example:

```
//ASSEMBLE EXEC PGM=ASMA90,PARM='LIST(133),DBCS'
```

You can also use catalogued procedures to invoke the assembler. To override options in a cataloged procedure, you must include the PARM field in the EXEC

statement that invokes the procedure. If the cataloged procedure contains more than one step, you must also qualify the keyword parameter (PARM) with the name of the step within the procedure that invokes the assembler. For example:

```
//   EXEC    ASMACG,PARM.C='LIST(133),DBCS'
```

For more examples on how to specify options in a cataloged procedure, see "Overriding Statements in Cataloged Procedures" on page 180.

On TSO, you select the options by specifying them in the second parameter of the TSO CALL command that invokes the assembler. For example:

```
CALL 'SYS1.LINKLIB(ASMA90)' 'LIST(133),DBCS'
```
MVS

CMS You select the options by specifying them after the left parenthesis on the CMS ASMAHL command that invokes the assembler. For example:

```
ASMAHL filename (LIST(133) DBCS[])
```
CMS

VSE In batch, you select the options by specifying them in the PARM field of the EXEC JCL statement that invokes the assembler. You can also specify some of the options on the JCL OPTION statement. For example:

```
// OPTION TERM
// EXEC ASMA90,SIZE=ASMA90,PARM='LIST,DBCS'
```

VSE ICCF: On ICCF, you select the options by specifying them in the PARM field of the job entry statement /LOAD that invokes the assembler. For example:

```
/LOAD ASMA90 PARM='LIST,DBCS'
```
VSE

*Process Statement Options

Process (*PROCESS) statements let you specify assembler options in your assembler source program. You can include them in the primary input data set or provide them from a SOURCE user exit.

| If you add the OVERRIDE keyword, then the option has a higher precedence than
| values set as default and invocation options (see "*PROCESS OVERRIDE Statement Options" on page 39).

Some options cannot be set by a process statement. These are:

ADATA	LANGUAGE	PRINT (CMS)
ASA (MVS and CMS)	LINECOUNT	SIZE
DECK	LIST	SYSPARM
DISK (CMS)	NOPRINT (CMS)	TERM
EXIT	OBJECT	TRANSLATE
GOFF (MVS and CMS)	OPTABLE	XOBJECT (MVS and CMS)

If you specify one of these options on a normal process statement, the assembler issues a warning message.

Refer to the *Language Reference* for a description of the *PROCESS statement.

Default Options

When High Level Assembler is installed, each assembler option is preset to a default. The IBM-supplied default options are shown above the main path of the syntax diagrams in the description of the assembler options that follow. However, these might *not* be the default options in effect at your installation; the defaults could have been changed when High Level Assembler was installed. For example, NOADATA is an IBM-supplied default, and ADATA might be the default at your installation. During an assembly you cannot override default options that were fixed during installation (see "Fixed Installation Default Options" on page 39). The assembler issues a message if you try to override a fixed option.

PESTOP: If the PESTOP option was specified during installation, and an error is detected in the options you specify at run time, the assembly stops.

Invoking the Assembler Dynamically

Assembler options can be passed in a parameter list when the assembler is invoked dynamically from an executing program. For further information, refer to "Invoking the Assembler Dynamically" on page 154 (for the MVS platform) or "Invoking the Assembler Dynamically" on page 210 (for the VSE platform).

Coding Rules

The rules for coding the assembler options are:

- You can specify the options in any order.
- If you specify an incorrect option the assembler issues a diagnostic message, and sets the return code to 2 or higher. You can prevent the setting of the return code by using the FLAG option.

  CMS If you specify two or more options, the options can be separated by spaces or execution. CMS

  MVS If you specify two or more options, the list of options must be enclosed within single quotation marks or parentheses. Each option must be separated by a comma.
- If you specify only one option and it does not include any special characters, the enclosing single quotation marks or parentheses can be omitted.
- All options that have suboptions must be within single quotation marks because they contain special characters.
- If you need to continue the PARM field onto another record, the entire PARM field must be enclosed in parentheses. However, any part of the PARM field enclosed in single quotation marks must not be continued on another record. MVS

  VSE You must enclose the options in single quotation marks and separate each option with a comma.
- If you need to continue the PARM field onto another record, place any character in column 72 of the record you wish to continue, and continue in column 16 on the following record.
- The operating system passes to the assembler any spaces you code in the PARM=JCL parameter, including those implied in a continuation. For example:

```
// EXEC ASMA90,SIZE=(ASMA90,50K),PARM='RENT,SIZE(MAX-500K),EXIT(LIBEXIT/
               (EDECKXIT))'
```

is not equivalent to:

```
// EXEC ASMA90,SIZE=(ASMA90,50K),PARM='RENT,SIZE(MAX-500K),           /
               EXIT(LIBEXIT(EDECKXIT))'
```

The second example results in this diagnostic message:

```
** ASMA400W ERROR IN INVOCATION PARAMETER - EXIT (LIBEXIT(EDECKXIT)).
```

VSE

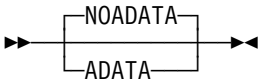
Additional rules for coding the assembler options in the external file or library member are:

- Trailing spaces are ignored.
- If two or more options are specified in a record they must be separated by a comma.
- Only a SYSPARM options enclosed in quotes may be continued on another record.
- If a SYSPARM options contains embedded spaces it must be enclosed in quotes.
- The maximum length of the options list including the delimiting commas inserted by the assembler is 32766.

Assembler Options

Here are descriptions of the assembler options. The IBM-supplied default value for each option is shown above the main path in the syntax diagram. Your installation may have a different default (see “Default Options” on page 41).

ADATA



Default
NOADATA

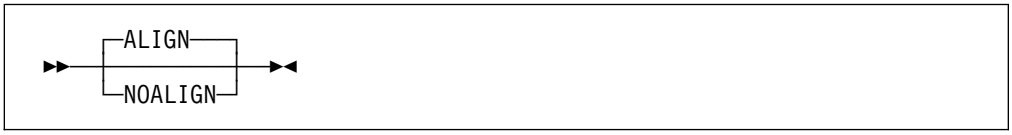
Abbreviations
None

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

ADATA
Specifies that the assembler collect associated data and write it to the associated data file. You define the associated data file with the SYSADATA ddname on MVS and CMS, or with the SYSADAT filename on VSE. Appendix D, “Associated Data File Output” on page 255 describes the format of the associated data file.

NOADATA
Specifies that the assembler is not to collect associated data. If you specify NOADATA, then the assembler ignores the EXIT(ADEXIT) option.

ALIGN



Default
ALIGN

Abbreviations
None

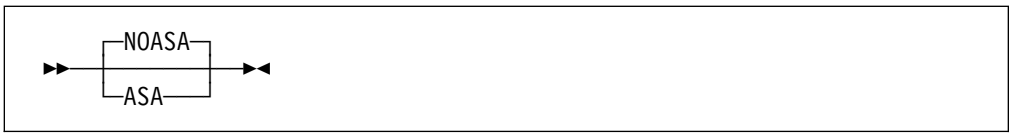
ALIGN
Instructs the assembler to check alignment of addresses in machine instructions for consistency with the requirements of the operation code type. DC, DS, DXD, and CXD are to be aligned on the correct boundaries.

NOALIGN
Instructs the assembler not to check alignment of unprivileged machine instruction data references, but still to check instruction references and privileged machine instruction data references. DC, DS, and DXD are to be aligned on the correct boundaries only if the duplication factor is 0.

Notes:

1. Specify the FLAG(NOALIGN) option to suppress the message issued when the assembler detects an alignment inconsistency.
2. If your program is assembled with data areas or DSECT for interfacing with IBM products, you should use the default (ALIGN) unless specifically directed otherwise.
3. On VSE, you can specify the ALIGN option on the JCL OPTION statement.

ASA (MVS and CMS)



Default
NOASA

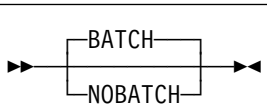
Abbreviations
None

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

ASA
Instructs the assembler to use American National Standard printer control characters in records written to the listing data set.

NOASA
Instructs the assembler to use machine printer control characters in records written to the listing data set.

BATCH



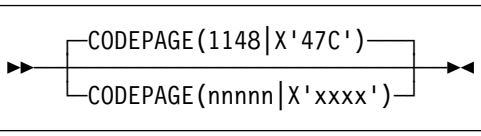
Default
BATCH

Abbreviations
None

BATCH
Instructs the assembler that multiple assembler source programs may be in the input data set. The first statement of the second and subsequent source programs must immediately follow the END statement of the previous source program. An end-of-file must immediately follow the last source program.

NOBATCH
Instructs the assembler that only one assembler source program is in the input data set.

CODEPAGE



Default
CODEPAGE(1148|X'47C')

Abbreviation
CP

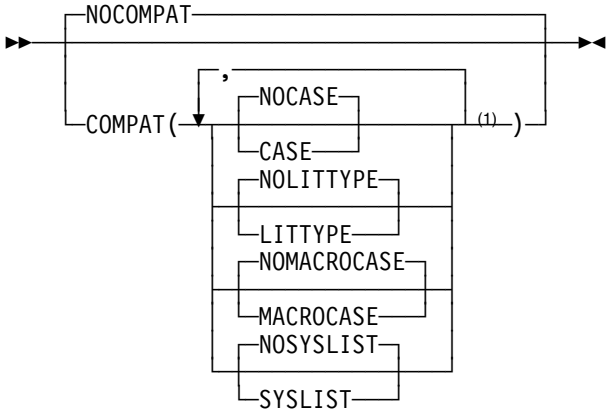
CODEPAGE(1148|X'47C')
Specifies that characters contained in the Unicode character (CU-type) data constants (DCs) are to be converted using the ECECP: International 1 Unicode-3 mappings contained in module ASMA047C.

CODEPAGE(nnnnn|X'xxxx')
Specifies that characters contained in the Unicode character (CU-type) data constants (DCs) are to be converted using the Unicode mapping table module ASMA*xxxx* where *xxxx* is the hexadecimal value of the number *nnnnn* which is the number of the code page contained in the module. The number must be in the range 1 through 64k–1.

The following Unicode-3 code pages are supported by the assembler:

Figure 26. Unicode-3 SBCS Mapping Code Pages		
Code Page	**Module Name**	**Description**
1140	ASMA0474	ECECP: USA, Canada, Netherlands, Portugal, Brazil, Australia, New Zealand
1141	ASMA0475	ECECP: Austria, Germany
1142	ASMA0476	ECECP: Denmark, Norway
1143	ASMA0477	ECECP: Finland, Sweden
1144	ASMA0478	ECECP: Italy
1145	ASMA0479	ECECP: Spain, Latin America (Spanish)
1146	ASMA047A	ECECP: United Kingdom
1147	ASMA047B	ECECP: France
1148	ASMA047C	ECECP: International 1

COMPAT



Note:
[1] Choose at least one option.

Default
NOCOMPAT

Abbreviations
CPAT(CASE, NOCASE, LIT, NOLIT, MC, NOMC, SYSL, NOSYSL) / NOCPAT

Note: You can specify the COMPAT (or NOCOMPAT) option as a parameter of the ACONTROL statement. For further details, refer to the *High Level Assembler Language Reference*.

COMPAT(CASE)
Instructs the assembler to maintain uppercase alphabetic character set compatibility with earlier assemblers. It restricts language elements to uppercase alphabetic characters *A* through *Z* if they were so restricted in earlier assemblers.

COMPAT(NOCASE)
Instructs the assembler to allow a mixed-case alphabetic character set.

COMPAT(LITTYPE)
Instructs the assembler to return “U” as the type attribute for all literals.

COMPAT(NOLITTYPE)
Instructs the assembler to provide the correct type attribute for literals once they have been defined.

COMPAT(MACROCASE)
Instructs the assembler to convert lowercase alphabetic characters (*a* through *z*) in unquoted macro operands to uppercase alphabetic characters (*A* through *Z*).

COMPAT(NOMACROCASE)
Instructs the assembler not to convert lowercase alphabetic characters (*a* through *z*) in unquoted macro operands.

COMPAT(SYSLIST)
Instructs the assembler to treat sublists in SETC symbols as compatible with earlier assemblers. SETC symbols that are assigned parenthesized sublists are treated as character strings, not sublists, when passed to a macro definition in an operand of a macro instruction.

COMPAT(NOSYSLIST)
Instructs the assembler not to treat sublists in SETC symbols as character strings, when passed to a macro definition in an operand of a macro instruction.

NOCOMPAT
Instructs the assembler to allow lowercase alphabetic characters *a* through *z* in all language elements, to treat sublists in SETC symbols as sublists when passed to a macro definition in the operand of a macro instruction, and to provide the correct type attribute for literals once the have been defined.

DBCS

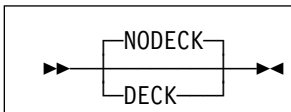
Default
NODBCS

Abbreviations
None

DBCS
Instructs the assembler to accept double-byte character set data, and to support graphic (G-type) constants and self-defining terms. The assembler recognizes X'0E' and X'0F' in character strings enclosed by single quotation marks, and treats them as Shift-Out and Shift-In control characters for delimiting DBCS data.

NODBCS
Specifies that the assembler does not recognize X'0E' and X'0F' as double-byte character set data delimiters, and does not support graphic (G-type) constants and self-defining terms.

DECK



Default
NODECK

Abbreviations
None

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

DECK
Specifies that the assembler generate object code and write it to the object data set. You define the object data set with the SYSPUNCH ddname on MVS and CMS, or with the IJSYSPH filename and by assigning SYSPCH on VSE.

NODECK
Instructs the assembler not to write the object code to SYSPUNCH on MVS and CMS, or SYSPCH on VSE.

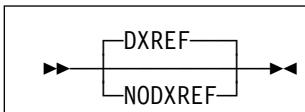
If you specify NODECK and NOOBJECT, the assembler ignores the EXIT(OBJEXIT)) option.

On VSE, you can only specify the DECK option on the JCL OPTION statement. If you specify it on the PARM operand of the JCL EXEC statement, the assembler issues message `ASMA400W`, and ignores the option.

DISK (CMS)

See “PRINT (CMS)” on page 66.

DXREF



Default
DXREF

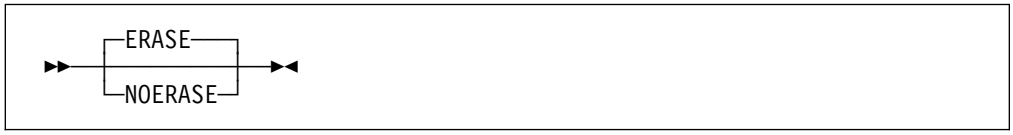
Abbreviations
DX / NODX

DXREF
Instructs the assembler to produce the DSECT Cross Reference section of the assembler listing. The DSECT cross reference includes:

- The symbolic names of all DSECTs defined in the assembly
- The assembled length of each DSECT
- The ESDID of each DSECT
- The statement number which defines the DSECT

NODXREF
Instructs the assembler not to produce the DSECT Cross Reference section of the assembler listing.

ERASE (CMS)



Default
ERASE

Abbreviations
None

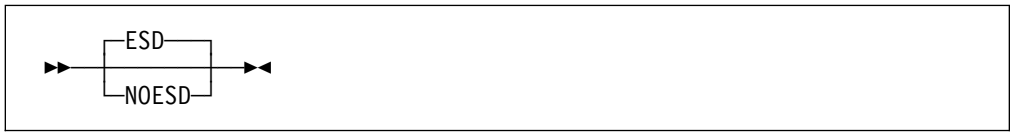
Restrictions
This option is not allowed on *PROCESS statements.

This option can only be specified when you use the ASMAHL command on CMS.

ERASE
Specifies that the existing files with a filename the same as the filename on the ASMAHL command, and a filetype of LISTING, TEXT, and SYSADATA, are to be deleted before the assembly is run. Only files on the disk on which the assembler writes the new listing, object, and associated data files are deleted.

NOERASE
Specifies that the existing LISTING, TEXT, and SYSADATA files are not to be deleted before the assembly is run.

ESD



Default
ESD

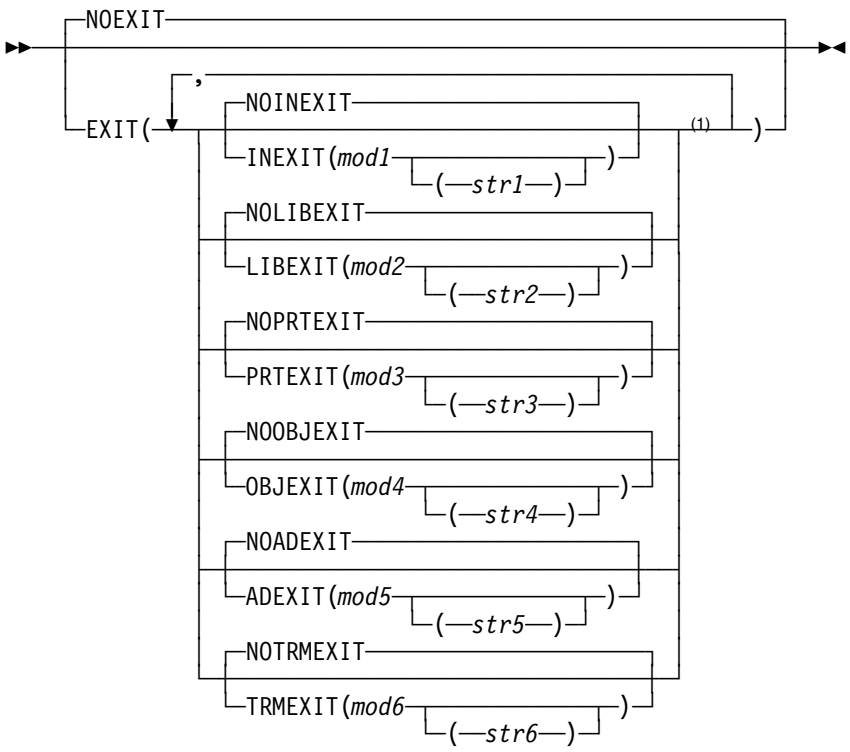
Abbreviations
None

ESD
Instructs the assembler to produce the External Symbol Dictionary section of the assembler listing. The ESD contains the external symbol dictionary information that is passed to the linkage editor or loader, or DFSMS/MVS binder, in the object module.

NOESD
Instructs the assembler not to produce the External Symbol Dictionary section of the assembler listing.

On VSE, you can specify this option on the JCL OPTION statement.

EXIT



Note:
[1] Choose at least one option.

Default
NOEXIT

Abbreviations
EX(INX, NOINX, LBX, NOLBX, PRX, NOPRX, OBX, NOOBX, ADX, NOADX, TRX, NOTRX) / NOEX

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

EXIT(INEXIT)
Specifies that the assembler use an input (SOURCE) exit for the assembly. *mod1* is the name of the load module for the exit. The assembler passes control to the load module for SOURCE type exit processing, and provides a pointer to *str1* in a parameter list when the exit is first called. For a full description, see Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79.

You can use a SOURCE exit, for example, to read variable-length source input records. See also Appendix K, “Sample SOURCE User Exit (MVS and CMS)” on page 371.

EXIT(NOINEXIT)
Specifies that there is no SOURCE exit.

EXIT(LIBEXIT)
Specifies that the assembler use a LIBRARY exit for the assembly. *mod2* is the name of the load module for the exit. The assembler passes control to the

load module for LIBRARY type exit processing, and provides a pointer to *str2* in a parameter list when the exit is first called. For a full description, see Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79.

On CMS, you can use this exit, for example, to handle non-standard libraries, or macros and copy books that are in separate CMS files instead of CMS MACLIBs.

On VSE, you can use this exit to handle edited macros from the library sublibraries.

Refer to *VSE/ESA Guide to System Functions* for a description of a LIBRARY exit to read edited macros.

EXIT(NOLIBEXIT)
Specifies that there is no LIBRARY exit.

EXIT(PRTEXIT)
Specifies that the assembler use a LISTING exit for the assembly. *mod3* is the name of the load module for the exit. The assembler passes control to the load module for LISTING type exit processing, and provides a pointer to *str3* in a parameter list when the exit is first called. For a full description, see Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79.

You can use the LISTING exit, for example, to suppress parts of the assembly listing, or provide additional listing lines. See also Appendix J, “Sample LISTING User Exit (MVS and CMS)” on page 369.

EXIT(NOPRTEXIT)
Specifies that there is no LISTING exit.

EXIT(OBJEXIT)
On MVS and CMS, specifies that the assembler use an OBJECT exit or PUNCH exit, or both, for the assembly. *mod4* is the name of the load module for the exit. The assembler passes control to the load module for OBJECT type exit processing when you specify either the OBJECT or GOFF option, and provides a pointer to *str4* in a parameter list when the exit is first called. For a full description, see Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79. The assembler passes control to the load module for PUNCH type exit processing when you specify the DECK option. The OBJEXIT suboption is ignored if you specify the assembler options NODECK and NOOBJECT.

On VSE, specifies that the assembler use a PUNCH exit for the assembly. The name of the load module for the exit is *mod4*. The assembler passes control to the load module for PUNCH type exit processing when you specify the DECK option. You can use the PUNCH exit, for example, to catalog object modules directly into a library sublibrary.

EXIT(NOOBJEXIT)
Specifies that there is no OBJECT exit or PUNCH exit.

EXIT(ADEXIT)
Specifies that the assembler use an ADATA exit for the assembly. *mod5* is the name of the load module for the exit. The assembler passes control to the load module for ADATA type exit processing, and provides a pointer to *str5* in a parameter list when the exit is first called. For a full description, see Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79. See also Appendix I, “Sample ADATA User Exit (MVS and CMS)” on page 362.

EXIT(NOADEXIT)
Specifies that there is no ADATA exit.

EXIT(TRMEXIT)
Specifies that the assembler use a TERM exit for the assembly. *mod6* is the name of the load module for the exit. The assembler passes control to the load module for TERM type exit processing, and provides a pointer to *str6* in a parameter list when the exit is first called. For a full description, see Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79.

EXIT(NOTRMEXIT)
Specifies that there is no TERM exit.

NOEXIT
Specifies that there are no exits for the assembly.

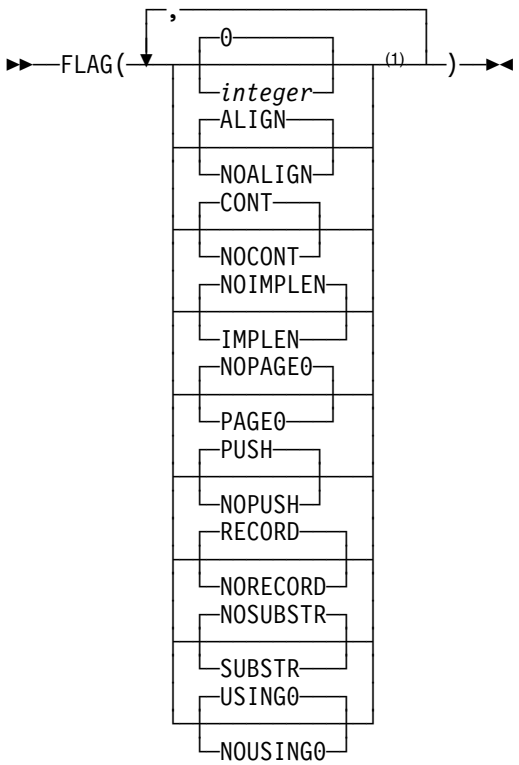
The module names *mod1*, *mod2*, *mod3*, *mod4*, *mod5*, and *mod6* can refer to the same load module.

The suboptions *str1*, *str2*, *str3*, *str4*, *str5*, and *str6* are optional. They are character strings, up to 64 characters in length, that are passed to the exit module during OPEN processing. You may include any character in a string, but you must pair parentheses. JCL restrictions require that you specify two single quotation marks to represent a single quotation mark, and two ampersands to represent a single ampersand.

For more information about the EXIT option, see Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79.

You specify these options in the installation default options using the ADEXIT, INEXIT, LIBEXIT, OBJEXIT, PRTEXIT, and TRMEXIT operands.

FLAG



Note:
[1] Choose at least one option.

Default

FLAG(0, ALIGN, CONT, NOIMPLEN, NOPAGE0, PUSH, RECORD, NOSUBSTR, USING0)

Abbreviations

AL, NOAL, IMP, NOIMP, PG0, NOPG0, PU, NOPU, RC, NORC, SUB, NOSUB, US0, NOUS0

Note: You can specify the FLAG option as a parameter of the ACONTROL statement. For further details, refer to the *High Level Assembler Language Reference*.

FLAG(*integer*)

Specifies that error diagnostic messages with this or a higher severity code are printed in the *source and object* section of the assembly listing. Error diagnostic messages with a severity code lower than *integer* do not appear in the *source and object* section, and the severity code associated with those messages is not used to set the return code issued by the assembler. Any severity code from 0 through 255 may be specified. Error diagnostic messages have a severity code of 0, 2, 4, 8, 12, 16, or 20. MNOTEs can have a severity code of 0 through 255.

When specified with the TERM assembler option, FLAG controls which messages are displayed in the terminal output.

FLAG(ALIGN)
Instructs the assembler to issue diagnostic message ASMA033I when an inconsistency is detected between the operation code type and the alignment of addresses in machine instructions. Assembler option ALIGN describes when the assembler detects an inconsistency.

FLAG(NOALIGN)
Instructs the assembler not to issue diagnostic messages ASMA033I, ASMA212W and ASMA213W when an inconsistency is detected between the operation code type and the alignment of addresses in machine instructions.

FLAG(CONT)
Specifies that the assembler is to issue diagnostic messages ASMA430W through ASMA433W when one of the following situations occurs in a macro call instruction:

- The operand on the continued record ends with a comma, and a continuation statement is present but continuation does not start in the continue column (usually column 16).
- A list of one or more operands ends with a comma, but the continuation column (usually column 72) is blank.
- The continuation record starts in the continue column (usually column 16) but there is no comma present following the operands on the previous record.
- The continued record is full but the continuation record does not start in the continue column (usually column 16).

Note: FLAG(CONT) checks only apply to statements that appear in the output listing.

FLAG(NOCONT)
Specifies that the assembler is not to issue diagnostic messages ASMA430W through ASMA433W when an inconsistent continuation is encountered.

FLAG(IMPLEN)
Instructs the assembler to issue diagnostic message ASMA169I when an explicit length subfield is omitted from an SS-format machine instruction.

FLAG(NOIMPLEN)
Instructs the assembler not to issue diagnostic message ASMA169I when an explicit length subfield is omitted from an SS-format machine instruction.

FLAG(PAGE0)
Instructs the assembler to issue diagnostic message ASMA309W when an operand is resolved to a baseless address and a base and displacement is expected. This message is only issued for instructions that reference storage. For example, a LOAD instruction generates the message but a LOAD ADDRESS instruction does not generate the message.

FLAG(NOPAGE0)
Instructs the assembler not to issue diagnostic message ASMA309W when an operand is resolved to a baseless address and a base and displacement is expected.

The FLAG suboptions PAGE0 and IMPLEN are specified in the installation default options as PAGE0WARN and IMPLENWARN respectively.

FLAG(PUSH)
Instructs the assembler to issue diagnostic warning message ASMA138W when a PUSH/POP stack is not empty at the completion of a compile.

FLAG(NOPUSH)
Instructs the assembler to suppress diagnostic warning message ASMA138W when a PUSH/POP stack is not empty at the completion of a compile.

FLAG(RECORD)
Instructs the assembler to do the following:

- Issue diagnostic message ASMA435I immediately after the last diagnostic message for each statement in error. The message text describes the record number and input data set name of the statement in error.
- Include the member name (if applicable), the record number and the input data set concatenation value with the statement number in the list of flagged statements in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the assembler listing.

FLAG(NORECORD)
Instructs the assembler to do the following:

- Not issue diagnostic message ASMA435I for statements in error.
- Only show the statement number in the list of flagged statements in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the assembler listing.

FLAG(SUBSTR)
Instructs the assembler to issue warning diagnostic message ASMA094 when the second subscript value of the substring notation indexes past the end of the character expression.

FLAG(NOSUBSTR)
Instructs the assembler not to issue warning diagnostic message ASMA094 when the second subscript value of the substring notation indexes past the end of the character expression.

FLAG(USING0)
Instructs the assembler to issue diagnostic warning message ASMA306W for a USING that is coincident with or overlaps an implied USING 0,0, when the USING(WARN) suboption includes the condition numbers 1 and/or 4.

FLAG(NOUSING0)
Instructs the assembler to suppress diagnostic warning message ASMA306W.

The FLAG suboptions ALIGN, CONT, IMPLEN, PAGE0, PUSH, RECORD, SUBSTR, and USING0 are specified in the installation default options as ALIGNWARN, CONTWARN, IMPLENWARN, PAGE0WARN, PUSHWARN, RECORDINFO, SUBSTRWARN, and USING0WARN respectively.

FOLD

Default
NOFOLD

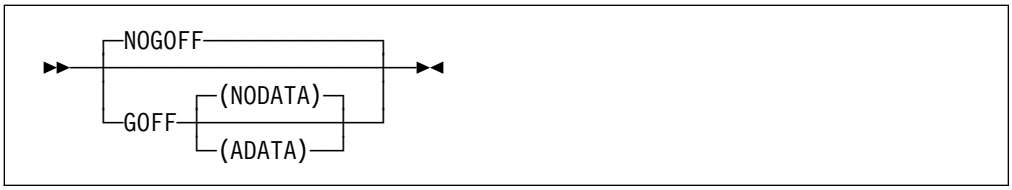
Abbreviations
None

FOLD
Instructs the assembler to convert lowercase alphabetic characters (a through z) in the assembly listing to uppercase alphabetic characters (A through Z). All lowercase alphabetic characters are converted, including lowercase characters in source statements, assembler error diagnostic messages, and assembly listing lines provided by a user exit. Lowercase alphabetic characters are converted to uppercase alphabetic characters, regardless of the setting of the COMPAT(CASE) option.

NOFOLD
Specifies that lowercase alphabetic characters are not converted to uppercase alphabetic characters.

The assembler listing headings are not affected by the FOLD option. The LANGUAGE option controls the case for assembler listing headings.

GOFF (MVS and CMS)



Default
NOGOFF

Abbreviations
None

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

GOFF
Instructs the assembler to produce a Generalized Object File format (GOFF) data set. You define this data set with the SYSLIN or SYSPUNCH ddname.

Note: For more information on the GOFF format, refer to *DFSMS/MVS Program Management*.

GOFF(NOADATA)
The same as GOFF without a suboption.

GOFF(ADATA)
Instructs the assembler to produce a Generalized Object File format data set, and include ADATA text records.

NOGOFF
Instructs the assembler not to produce a Generalized Object File format data set.

Notes:

1. You should specify the LIST(133) option when you specify the GOFF option. If the logical record length of the listing data set is less than 133, the assembler truncates the listing lines.
2. The generalized object format does not support TEST (SYM) records. If you specify the TEST option with the GOFF option, the assembler issues a diagnostic error message.
3. The assembler option XOBJECT is treated as a synonym for the GOFF option and accepts the same subparameters as GOFF.

For more information on the 133-character format, see “Source and Object” on page 15.

When the GOFF option is not specified a control section is initiated or resumed by the CSECT, RSECT, and COM statements. Any machine language text created by statements that follow such control section declarations belongs to the control section, and is manipulated during program linking and binding as an indivisible unit.

When the GOFF option is specified, the behavior of statements like CSECT is somewhat different. By default, the assembler creates a definition of a text class named B_TEXT, to which subsequent machine language text belongs if no other classes are declared. If you specify other class names using the CATTR statement, machine language text following such CATTR statements belongs to that class.

The combination of a section name and a class name defines an *element*, which is the indivisible unit manipulated during linking and binding. All elements with the same section name are “owned” by that section, and binding actions (such as section replacement) act on all elements owned by a section.

When the GOFF option is specified, and if no CATTR statements are present, then all machine language text is placed in the default class B_TEXT, and the behavior of the elements in the bound module is essentially the same as the behavior of control sections when the OBJECT option is specified. However, if additional classes are declared, a section name can best be thought of as a "handle" by which elements within declared classes are owned.

INFO

Default
NOINFO

Abbreviations
None

INFO
Instructs the assembler to copy to the list data set all product information.

The Product Information Page (see Figure 27) follows the Option Summary,

INFO(*yyyymmdd*)
Instructs the assembler not to copy to the list data set any product information which is dated prior to *yyyymmdd*.

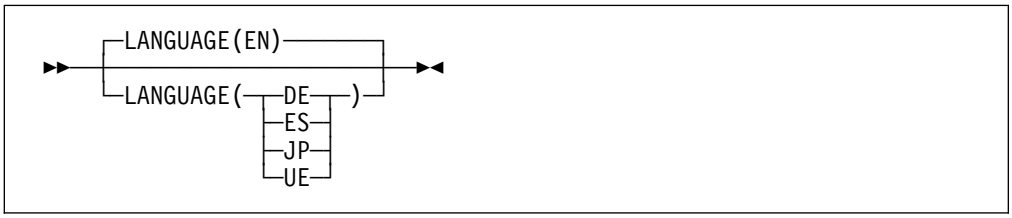
NOINFO
Instructs the assembler not to copy any product information to the list data set.

```
          High Level Assembler Product Information                                      Page    2
                                                                              HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
            The following information describes enhancements and changes to the
            High Level Assembler Product.

            The information displayed can be managed by using the following options:
            INFO           - prints all available information for this release.
            INFO(yyyymmdd) - suppresses items dated prior to "yyyymmdd".
            NOINFO         - suppresses the product information entirely.

  19981104  APAR PQ21028 Fixed
            Some machine opcodes incorrectly no longer accept literal operands.
```

Figure 27. High Level Assembler Product Information Page

(This page from a previous release of HLASM, for illustrative purposes only.)

LANGUAGE



Default
LANGUAGE(EN)

Abbreviations
LANG(EN|ES|DE|JP|UE)

Restrictions
This option is not allowed on *PROCESS statements.

LANGUAGE(EN)
Specifies that the assembler issues messages, and prints the assembler listing headings in mixed uppercase and lowercase English.

LANGUAGE(DE)
Specifies that the assembler issues messages in German. The assembler listing headings are printed in mixed-case English.

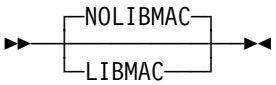
LANGUAGE(ES)
Specifies that the assembler issues messages in Spanish. The assembler listing headings are printed in mixed-case English.

LANGUAGE(JP)
Specifies that the assembler issues messages in Japanese. The assembler listing headings are printed in uppercase English.

LANGUAGE(UE)
Specifies that the assembler issues messages, and prints the assembler listing headings in uppercase English.

Note: The assembler uses the language specified in the installation default options for messages produced in CMS by the ASMAHL command.

LIBMAC



Default
NOLIBMAC

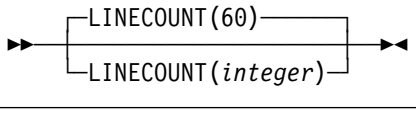
Abbreviations
LMAC / NOLMAC

Note: You can specify the LIBMAC (or NOLIBMAC) option as a parameter of the ACONTROL statement. For further details, refer to the *High Level Assembler Language Reference*.

LIBMAC
Specifies that, for each macro, macro definition statements read from a macro library are to be embedded in the input source program immediately preceding the first invocation of that macro. The assembler assigns statement numbers to the macro definition statements as though they were included in the input source program.

NOLIBMAC
Specifies that macro definition statements read from a macro library are not included in the input source program.

LINECOUNT



Default
LINECOUNT(60)

Abbreviations
LC(*integer*)

CMS Only:

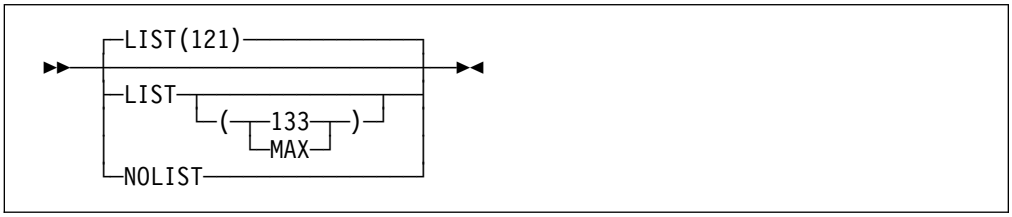
The LINECOUNT option can be abbreviated to LINECOUN.

Restrictions
This option is not allowed on *PROCESS statements.

LINECOUNT(*integer*)
Specifies the number of lines to be printed on each page of the assembly listing. *integer* must have a value of 0, or 10 to 32767. If a value of 0 is specified, no page ejects are generated and EJECT, CEJECT, and TITLE statements in the assembly are ignored.

Up to 7 lines on each page may be used for heading lines.

LIST



Default
LIST(121)

Abbreviations
None

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

LIST
Instructs the assembler to produce a listing. Specifying LIST without a suboption is equivalent to specifying LIST(121).

LIST(121) (MVS and CMS)
Instructs the assembler to produce a listing, and print the Source and Object section in the 121-character format.

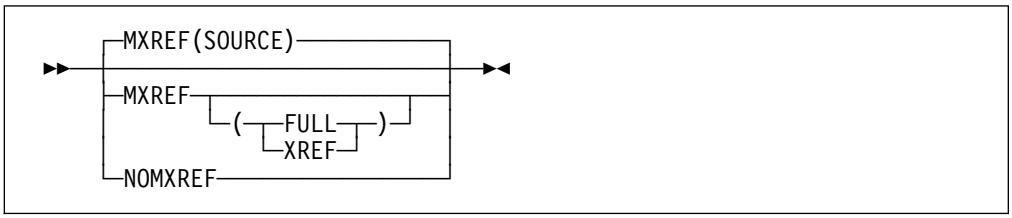
LIST(133) (MVS and CMS)
Instructs the assembler to produce a listing, and print the Source and Object section in the 133-character format. You should use this option when you specify the GOFF option.

LIST(MAX) (MVS and CMS)
Instructs the assembler to produce a listing, and print the Source and Object section in either the 121-character format or the 133-character format. If the logical record length (LRECL) of the listing data set is less than 133 then the assembler selects the 121-character format. If the LRECL of the listing data set is 133 or more then the assembler selects the 133-character format.

NOLIST
Instructs the assembler to suppress the assembly listing. When you specify NOLIST the assembler ignores the following options:

```
DXREF              PCONTROL
ESD                RLD
EXIT(PRTEXIT)      RXREF
INFO               USING(MAP)
MXREF(MAP)         XREF
```

MXREF



Default
MXREF(SOURCE)

Abbreviations
MX / NOMX

MXREF
Specifying MXREF without a suboption is equivalent to specifying MXREF(SOURCE).

MXREF(SOURCE)
Instructs the assembler to produce the Macro and Copy Code Source Summary section of the assembler listing. The macro and copy code source summary includes the name of each macro library or copy library accessed, the volume serial number of the first DASD volume on which the library resides, and the names of each member retrieved from the library.

MXREF(FULL)
Instructs the assembler to produce the Macro and Copy Code Source Summary section and the Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference section of the assembler listing.

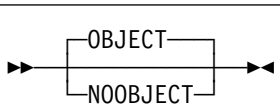
Note: See note following MXREF(XREF).

MXREF(XREF)
Instructs the assembler to produce the Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference section of the assembler listing. The Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference includes the name of each macro or copy code member referenced in the assembly, where it was referenced and where it was called or copied from.

Note: If you specify MXREF(FULL) or MXREF(XREF), you might need to review the value of the SIZE option (as both of these assembler options use considerable amounts of storage).

NOMXREF
Specifies that macro and copy code information is not generated in the assembler listing.

OBJECT



Default
OBJECT

Abbreviations
OBJ / NOOBJ

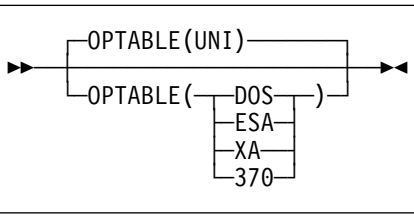
Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

OBJECT
Instructs the assembler to generate object code and write it to the object data set. You define the object data set with the SYSLIN ddname, on MVS and CMS, or with the IJSYSLN filename and by assigning SYSLNK on VSE.

NOOBJECT
Instructs the assembler not to write the object code to SYSLIN, on MVS and CMS, or SYSLNK on VSE.

On VSE, you can only specify the OBJECT option by using the LINK or CATAL option on the JCL OPTION statement. If you specify OBJECT on the PARM operand of the JCL EXEC statement, the assembler issues message `ASMA400W`, and ignores the option.

OPTABLE



Default
OPTABLE(UNI)

Abbreviation
OP

Restrictions
This option is not allowed on *PROCESS statements.

OPTABLE(DOS)
Instructs the assembler to load and use the DOS operation code table. The DOS operation code is designed specifically for assembling programs previously assembled using the DOS/VSE assembler. The operation code table contains the System/370 machine instructions, excluding those with a vector facility.

OPTABLE(ESA)
Instructs the assembler to load and use the operation code table that contains the ESA/370 and ESA/390 architecture machine instructions, including those with a vector facility.

OPTABLE(UNI)
Instructs the assembler to load and use the operation code table that contains the System/370 and System/390® architecture machine instructions, including those with a vector facility.

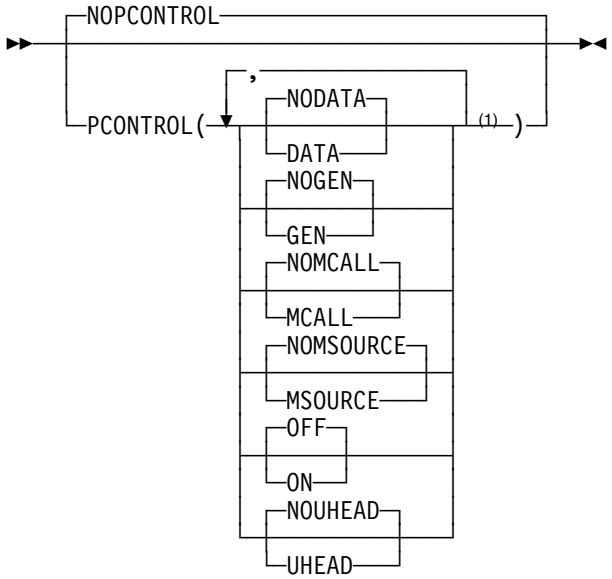
OPTABLE(XA)
Instructs the assembler to load and use the operation code table that contains the System/370 extended architecture machine instructions, including those with a vector facility.

OPTABLE(370)
Instructs the assembler to load and use the operation code table that contains the System/370 machine instructions, including those with a vector facility.

Notes:

1. These operation code tables do not contain symbolic operation codes for machine instructions that are unique to IBM 4300 Processors operating in ECPS:VSE mode.
2. The operation codes supported by High Level Assembler are described in the manuals listed under “Related Publications (Architecture)” on page 386.

PCONTROL



Note:
[1] Choose at least one option.

Default
NOPCONTROL

Abbreviations
PC(DATA, NODATA, GEN, NOGEN, MC, NOMC, MS, NOMS, ON, OFF, UHD, NOUHD) / NOPC

PCONTROL(DATA)
Specifies that the assembler is to print the object code of all constants in full, as though a PRINT DATA statement were specified at the beginning of the source program. All PRINT NODATA statements in the source program are ignored. However, specifying PCONTROL(DATA) does not override PRINT OFF or PRINT NOGEN statements in the source program.

PCONTROL(NODATA)
Specifies that the assembler is to print only the first 8 bytes of the object code of constants, as though a PRINT NODATA statement were specified at the beginning of the source program. All PRINT DATA statements in the source program are ignored.

PCONTROL(GEN)
Specifies that the assembler is to print all statements generated by the processing of a macro, as though a PRINT GEN statement were specified at the beginning of the source program. All PRINT NOGEN statements in the source program are ignored. However, specifying PCONTROL(GEN) does not override PRINT OFF statements in the source program.

PCONTROL(NOGEN)
Specifies that the assembler is not to print statements generated by the processing of a macro or open code statements with substitution variables, as though a PRINT NOGEN statement were specified at the beginning of the

source program. All PRINT GEN and PRINT MSOURCE statements in the source program are ignored.

PCONTROL(MCALL)
Specifies that the assembler is to print nested macro instructions, as though a PRINT MCALL statement were specified at the beginning of the source program. All PRINT NOMCALL statements in the source program are ignored. However, specifying PCONTROL(MCALL) does not override PRINT OFF or PRINT NOGEN statements in the source program.

PCONTROL(NOMCALL)
Instructs the assembler not to print nested macro instructions, as though a PRINT NOMCALL statement were specified at the beginning of the source program. All PRINT MCALL statements in the source program are ignored.

PCONTROL(MSOURCE)
Specifies that the assembler is to print the source statements generated during macro processing, as well as the assembled addresses and generated object code of the statements. All PRINT NOMSOURCE statements in the source program are ignored. However, specifying PCONTROL(MSOURCE) does not override PRINT OFF or PRINT NOGEN statements in the source program.

PCONTROL(NOMSOURCE)
Instructs the assembler to suppress the printing of source statements generated during macro processing, but not suppress the printing of the assembled addresses and generated object code of the statements. All PRINT MSOURCE statements in the source program are ignored.

PCONTROL(OFF)
Specifies that the assembler is not to produce the Source and Object section of the assembly listing. All PRINT ON statements in the source program are ignored.

PCONTROL(ON)
Specifies that the assembler is to produce an assembly listing unless the NOLIST option is specified. All PRINT OFF statements in the source program are ignored.

PCONTROL(UHEAD)
Specifies that the assembler is to print a summary of active USINGs in the heading lines of each page of the source and object code section of the listing, as though a PRINT UHEAD statement were specified at the beginning of the source program. All PRINT NOUHEAD statements in the source program are ignored. However, specifying PCONTROL(UHEAD) does not override PRINT OFF statements in the source program.

PCONTROL(NOUHEAD)
Instructs the assembler not to print a summary of active USINGs, as though a PRINT NOUHEAD statement were specified at the beginning of the source program. All PRINT UHEAD statements in the source program are ignored.

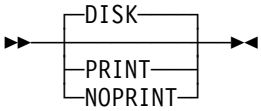
NOPCONTROL
Specifies that the assembler honor all PRINT statements in the source program. The standard PRINT operands active at the beginning of an assembly are ON, GEN, NODATA, NOMCALL, MSOURCE, and UHEAD.

NOLIST Assembler Option: The PCONTROL option cannot be used to override the NOLIST option. If the NOLIST option is specified, the PCONTROL option is ignored.

PESTOP

PESTOP is an installation-default option that instructs the assembler to terminate when an error is detected in the invocation parameters or *PROCESS statements. Refer to the *HLASM Installation and Customization Guide*, SC26-3494, for instructions how to specify this option.

PRINT (CMS)



Default
DISK

Abbreviations
PR / NOPR / DI

Restrictions
This option is not allowed on *PROCESS statements.

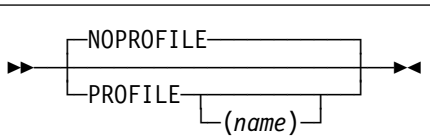
This option can only be specified when you use the ASMAHL command on CMS.

PRINT
Specifies that the LISTING file is to be written on the virtual printer.

NOPRINT
Specifies that the writing of the LISTING file is suppressed. Any diagnostic messages to be written to SYSTERM are not affected.

DISK
Specifies that the LISTING file is to be written to disk.

PROFILE



Default
NOPROFILE

Abbreviations
PROF / NOPROF

PROFILE
Instructs the assembler to copy the installation-default profile member into the source program, as if the source program contained a COPY instruction.

PROFILE(*name*)
Instructs the assembler to copy the member *name* into the source program, as if the source program contained a COPY instruction.

NOPROFILE
Specifies that the assembler is not to copy a library member into the source program.

Notes:

1. The profile member is copied into the source program immediately following an ICTL statement or *PROCESS statements, or both.
2. You specify the default profile member name in the PROFMEM parameter of the installation options macro ASMAOPT. If the PROFMEM parameter is not specified, ASMAOPT generates a default member name of ASMAPROF. Refer to the *HLASM Installation and Customization Guide* for instructions how to use the ASMAOPT macro.
3. On MVS and CMS, the assembler searches for the member in the macro and copy code libraries defined in the SYSLIB DD statement.
4. On VSE, the assembler searches for the member in the macro and copy code libraries defined in the LIBDEF job control statement.
5. The assembler processes the source statements in the profile member the same way it does for source statements obtained using the COPY instruction. Refer to the *Language Reference* for further information about the COPY instruction.

RA2

Default
NORA2

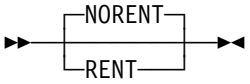
Abbreviations
None

Note: You can specify the RA2 (or NORA2) option as a parameter of the ACONTROL statement. For further details, refer to the *High Level Assembler Language Reference*.

RA2
Instructs the assembler to suppress error diagnostic message `ASMA066W` when 2-byte relocatable address constants, such as AL2(*) and Y(*), are defined in the source program.

NORA2
Instructs the assembler to issue error diagnostic message `ASMA066W` when 2-byte relocatable address constants, such as AL2(*) and Y(*), are defined in the source program.

RENT



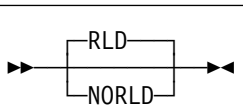
Default
NORENT

Abbreviations
None

RENT
Specifies that the assembler checks for possible coding violations of program reenterability. Non-reenterable code is identified by an error message, but is not exhaustively checked because the assembler cannot check the logic of the code. Therefore, the assembler might not detect all violations of program reenterability.

NORENT
Specifies that the assembler not check for possible coding violations of program reenterability.

RLD



Default
RLD

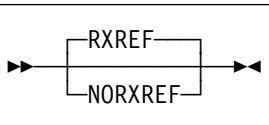
Abbreviations
None

RLD
Instructs the assembler to produce the Relocation Dictionary (RLD) section of the assembler listing. The RLD shows the relocation dictionary information that is passed to the linkage editor or loader, or DFSMS/MVS binder, in the object module.

NORLD
Instructs the assembler not to produce the RLD section of the assembler listing.

On VSE, you can specify the RLD option on the JCL OPTION statement.

RXREF



Default
RXREF

Abbreviations
RX / NORX

RXREF
Instructs the assembler to produce the General Purpose Register Cross Reference section of the assembler listing. The General Purpose Register Cross Reference includes:

- The register number
- An indicator showing the context in which the register was used.

NORXREF
Instructs the assembler not to produce the General Purpose Register Cross Reference section of the assembler listing.

SEG (CMS)

Default
None. The assembler modules are loaded from the Logical Saved Segment (LSEG). If the LSEG is not available, the assembler modules are loaded from disk.

Abbreviations
None

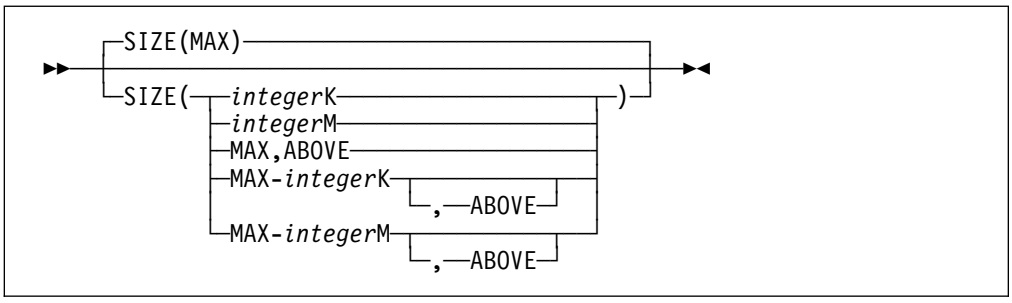
Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

You can only specify this option on CMS using the ASMAHL command.

SEG
Specifies that the assembler modules are loaded from the Logical Saved Segment (LSEG). If the LSEG is not found the assembler stops.

NOSEG
Specifies that the assembler modules are loaded from disk.

SIZE



You use the SIZE option to specify the amount of virtual storage available to the assembler to perform an in-storage assembly. If you specify an insufficient amount, the assembler uses the work data set (SYSUT1) on MVS and CMS, or the work data set (IJSYS03) on VSE, for intermediate storage.

Default
SIZE(MAX)

Abbreviation
SZ

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

SIZE(*integer*K)
Specifies the amount of virtual storage in 1024-byte (1K) increments.

The minimum acceptable value is 200K (refer to Note 2).

SIZE(*integer*M)
Specifies the amount of virtual storage in 1048576-byte (1M) increments.

The minimum acceptable value is 1M.

SIZE(MAX)
Specifies that the assembler requests all the available space (refer to Note 3) in the user region (MVS), or virtual machine (CMS) or in the partition GETVIS (VSE). When **ABOVE** is appended, the request is for storage above the 16MB line.

SIZE(MAX-*integer*K)
Specifies that the assembler requests all the available space (refer to Note 3) in the user region (MVS), virtual machine (CMS) or partition GETVIS (VSE) less the amount of *integer*K of storage (1K equals 1024 bytes). When **ABOVE** is appended, the request is for storage above the 16MB line.

The minimum acceptable integerK value is 1K.

SIZE(MAX-*integer*M)
Specifies that the assembler requests all the available space (refer to Note 3) in the user region (MVS), or virtual machine (CMS) less the amount of *integer*K of storage (1M equals 1048756 bytes). When **ABOVE** is appended, the request is for storage above the 16MB line.

The minimum acceptable integerM value is 1M.

Note:

1. The maximum storage value you can specify might not be available in the user region (MVS), virtual machine (CMS), or in the partition GETVIS (VSE), after storage has been allocated for the operating system.
2. The minimum amount of working storage required by the assembler is 200K or 10 times the work data set block size, whichever is greater.
3. When you specify the MAX suboption, the assembler releases 128K back to the user region (MVS), virtual machine (CMS), or the partition GETVIS (VSE), for system usage. When you specify the MAX suboption, there might not be enough storage remaining in the user region (MVS), virtual machine (CMS), or the partition GETVIS (VSE), to load any exits you specify, or any external functions you use in your assembly or for operating system functions that may

be required during the assembly. If the assembly does fail due to a lack of storage, then use MAX-*integer*K or MAX-*integer*M to ensure that there is sufficient free storage during the assembly for any of these functions.

4. The assembler loads user I/O exits before it obtains the working storage. If the user exit obtains storage, then it reduces the amount available for the assembler.
5. The assembler loads external function routines after it obtains working storage. If you use external functions in your program, you should reduce the value you specify in the SIZE option, to allow storage space for the external function modules, and any storage they might acquire.

High Level Assembler acquires the amount of storage you specify in the SIZE option from the user region (MVS), virtual machine (CMS), or partition GETVIS (VSE). The assembler only requires a work data set when it has insufficient virtual storage to perform an in-storage assembly. An in-storage assembly usually reduces the elapsed time needed to complete the assembly.

The statistics in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the assembly listing shows the amount of storage the assembler used and an estimate of the amount of storage it requires to perform an in-storage assembly. If you do not provide a work data set, you must specify a large enough value on the SIZE option to allow the assembler to perform an in-storage assembly.

Use the STORAGE operand of the installation default options macro, ASMAOPT, to specify the equivalent of the ABOVE suboption.

SYSPARM

Default
The &SYSPARM system variable is set to NULL.

Abbreviations
None

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

SYSPARM(*string*)
Specifies the character string the assembler assigns to the &SYSPARM system variable symbol. The character string is up to 255 characters in length. Any character may be included in the string, subject to the rules for building character strings defined in the *Language Reference*.

On an MVS or VSE invocation parameter, if the string includes blanks, commas, or parentheses, it must be enclosed in single quotation marks. Any parentheses inside the string must be balanced. You must use two single quotation marks to represent a single quotation mark, and two ampersands to represent a single ampersand. For example:

```
PARM='OBJECT,SYSPARM((&&((AM)),''EO).FY)'
```

assigns the value (&AM,'EO).FY to &SYSPARM.

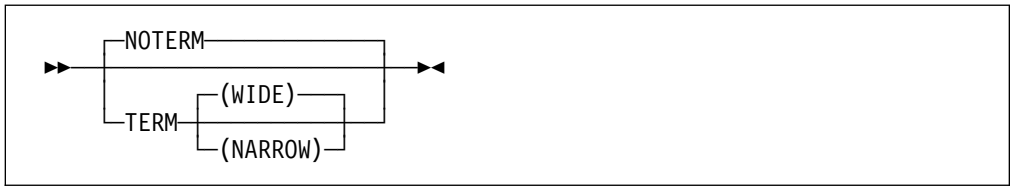
On MVS and VSE, JCL restrictions limit the length of the SYSPARM value. When you call the assembler from a problem program (dynamic invocation), you can specify a SYSPARM value up to 255 characters long. The ASMOPT file ("ASMAOPT Options" on page 39) also supports a SYSPARM value up to 255 characters long.

On CMS, you can specify SYSPARM(?). This causes the assembler to issue the following message at your terminal:

```
ENTER SYSPARM:
```

In response to this message you can enter up to 255 characters. To specify a SYSPARM value of ?, you must specify SYSPARM(?) and enter ? at the terminal prompt.

TERM



Default
NOTERM

Abbreviations
None

Restrictions
This option is not allowed on *PROCESS statements.

TERM
Is equivalent to TERM(WIDE). See the description of TERM(WIDE) below.

TERM(WIDE)
On MVS and CMS, instructs the assembler to write error messages to the terminal data set. You define the terminal data set with the SYSTERM ddname.

On VSE, instructs the assembler to write error messages to SYSLOG. SYSLOG is usually assigned at system initialization time and is assigned permanently to the system log (console).

TERM(NARROW)
The NARROW suboption instructs the assembler to compress multiple consecutive blanks into a single blank.

On MVS and CMS, instructs the assembler to write error messages to the terminal data set. You define the terminal data set with the SYSTERM ddname.

On VSE, instructs the assembler to write error messages to SYSLOG. SYSLOG is usually assigned at system initialization time and is assigned permanently to the system log (console).

NOTERM
Instructs the assembler not to write error messages to SYSTERM (MVS and CMS) or SYSLOG (VSE).

You can specify the TERM option on the JCL OPTION statement.

TEST

Default
NOTEST

Abbreviations
None

TEST
Specifies that the object module contains the special source symbol table (SYM records) required by the TSO TEST command.

NOTEST
Specifies that the object module does not contain the special source symbol table (SYM records) required by the TSO TEST command.

On MVS and CMS, if you specify the TEST option with the GOFF option, the assembler ignores the TEST option.

THREAD

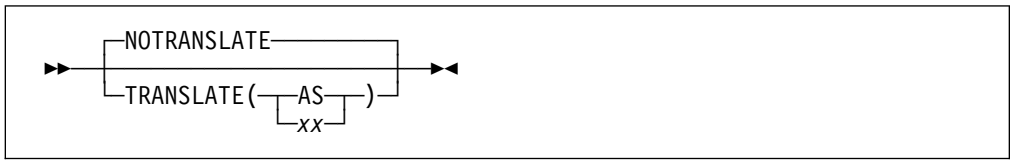
Default
THREAD

Abbreviations
THR / NOTHR

THREAD
Specifies that the assembler not reset the location counter to zero at the beginning of each CSECT.

NOTHREAD
Specifies that the assembler reset the location counter to zero at the beginning of each CSECT, except for the first CSECT.

TRANSLATE



Default
NOTRANSLATE

Abbreviations
TR / NOTR

Restrictions
This option is not allowed on *PROCESS statements.

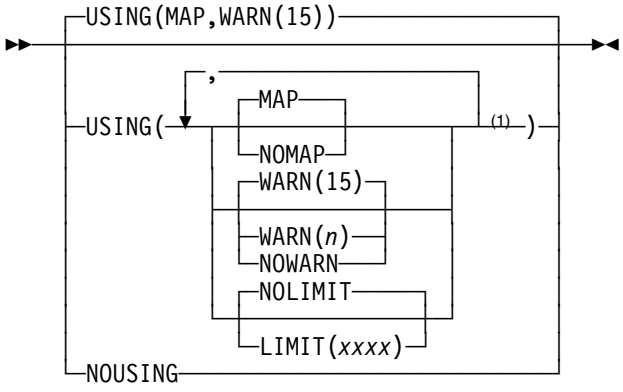
TRANSLATE(AS)
Specifies that characters contained in character (C-type) data constants (DCs) and literals are converted into ASCII characters using the ASCII translation table provided with High Level Assembler.

TRANSLATE(*xx*)
Specifies that characters contained in character (C-type) data constants (DCs) and literals are converted using a user-supplied translation table. The translation table must be named ASMALT*xx*.

Notes:

1. The assembler does not convert DBCS strings.
2. The assembler searches for the user-supplied translation table load module in the standard load module search order. See also Appendix L, “How to Generate a Translation Table” on page 372.
3. The assembler does not convert UNICODE character strings.

USING



Note:
[1] Choose at least one option.

Default
USING(MAP,WARN(15))

Abbreviations
US / NOUS

LIMIT(*xxxx*)
This suboption, when used in combination with the WARN(8) suboption, specifies the maximum displacement that base-displacement address resolution checks.

xxxx is the decimal value of the displacement, and must be less than or equal to 4095. X'xxx' may also be used to specify the value in hexadecimal. If specified, this value must be less than or equal to X'FFF'.

If more than one base register is specified in a USING statement, the value specified in the LIMIT suboption is used only to check the maximum displacement from the last specified base register. For example, if USING(LIMIT(X'F00'),WARN(8)) were specified at invocation, the messages would be issued as in Figure 28.

```
  Active Usings: None
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
000000                00000 01F82     1 EXAMPLE  CSECT                                                      00001000
               R:AB   00000           2          USING EXAMPLE,10,11                                        00002000
                                                 ⋮
00040E 47F0 AB8C            00B8C   176          B     LABEL111              1                              00176000
                                                 ⋮
                      00B8C         496 LABEL111 EQU   *                                                    00496000
                                                 ⋮
00152E 47F0 BF80            01F80   908          B     LABEL999              2                              00908000
** ASMA304W Displacement exceeds LIMIT value specified
                                                 ⋮
                      01F80        1436 LABEL999 EQU   *                                                    01436000
001F80 07FE                        1437          BR    14                                                 01437000
                                   1438          END                                                      01438000
```

Figure 28. Effect of the LIMIT Suboption

Although the resolved displacement of the instruction at **1** is greater than the specified limit, error diagnostic message ASMA304W is not issued because

register 10 was not the last specified base register. However, the instruction at **2** causes the message to be issued because register 11 was the last specified base register.

NOLIMIT
This suboption specifies that displacements are not checked. Specifying this suboption is equivalent to specifying the LIMIT suboption with a value of 4095 or X'FFF'.

MAP
This suboption instructs the assembler to produce the USING Map section of the assembler listing. For more information, see "USING Map" on page 30.

NOMAP
This suboption specifies that no USING map is produced.

WARN(*n*)
This suboption specifies the conditions under which warning error diagnostic messages are issued. Each condition has an associated condition number, *n*. The allowable values for *n* are:

0 No USING warning messages are issued.

1 **Nullified USINGs**: The assembler issues message:

- `ASMA300W` when a previous active ordinary (unlabeled) USING's range coincides with and supersedes that of the USING being processed.
- `ASMA301W` when the range of the USING being processed coincides with and supersedes that of a previous active ordinary (unlabeled) USING.
- `ASMA306W` when the range of the USING being processed coincides with the implicit USING 0,0 (for example USING 0,2).

2 **R0 based USINGs**: The assembler issues message `ASMA302W` when a USING specifies R0 as a base register, with a non-zero absolute or relocatable expression for the base address.

4 **Multiple resolutions**: The assembler issues message:

- `ASMA303W` when multiple resolutions are possible for an implicit address.
- `ASMA306W` when the range of the USING being processed overlaps the range of the implicit USING 0,0 (for example USING 16,2).

8 **LIMIT**: The assembler issues message `ASMA304W` when the calculated displacement in any valid resolution exceeds the threshold specified in the LIMIT suboption. This has no effect if the LIMIT suboption is not specified.

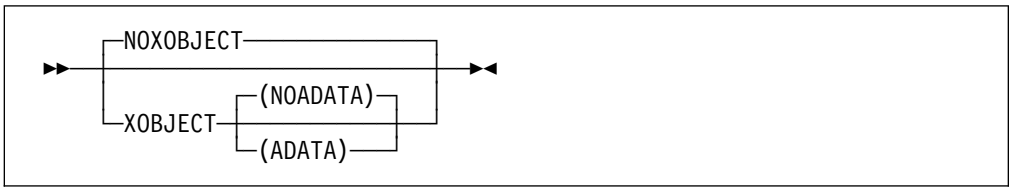
Several conditions may be combined by adding together the associated condition numbers. For example, specifying WARN(12) would request the assembler to issue warning diagnostic messages for the conditions with condition numbers 4 and 8.

NOWARN
This suboption specifies that no USING warning messages are issued.

NOUSING
NOUSING specifies that all USING suboptions are off. It is equivalent to specifying USING(NOLIMIT,NOMAP,NOWARN), or specifying in the ASMADOPT default options: LIMIT=NO,MAP=NO,WARN=NO.

The USING suboptions LIMIT, MAP, and WARN are specified in the installation default options as LIMIT, MAP, and WARN.

XOBJECT (MVS and CMS)



Default
NOXOBJECT

Abbreviations
XOBJ / NOXOBJ

Restrictions
You cannot specify this option on *PROCESS statements.

XOBJECT
Instructs the assembler to produce a Generalized Object File format (GOFF) data set. You define this data set with the SYSLIN or SYSPUNCH ddname.

Note: For more information on GOFF, refer to *DFSMS/MVS Program Management*.

XOBJECT(NOADATA)
The same as XOBJECT without a suboption.

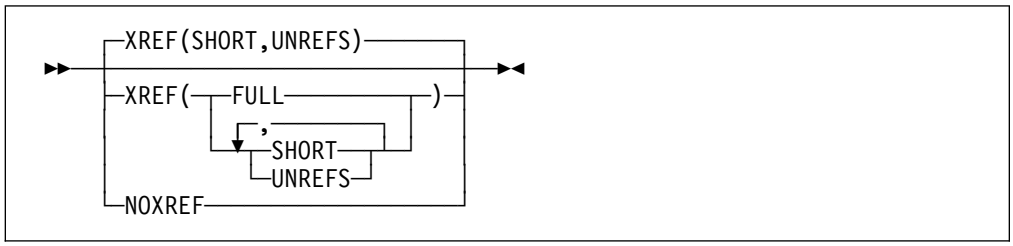
XOBJECT(ADATA)
Instructs the assembler to produce a Generalized Object File format data set, and include ADATA text records.

NOXOBJECT
Instructs the assembler not to produce a Generalized Object File format data set.

Notes:

1. You should specify the LIST(133) option when you specify the XOBJECT option. If the logical record length of the listing data set is less than 133, the assembler truncates the listing lines.
2. The generalized object format does not support TEST (SYM) records. If you specify the TEST option with the XOBJECT option, the assembler issues a diagnostic error message.
3. XOBJECT is treated as a synonym for the GOFF option and accepts the same subparameters as GOFF.

XREF



Default
XREF(SHORT,UNREFS)

Abbreviations
None

XREF(FULL)
Instructs the assembler to produce the Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference section of the assembler listing. This includes symbols that are defined, but never referred to.

XREF(SHORT)
Instructs the assembler to produce the Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference section of the assembler listing. Symbols that are defined, but not referred to, are not included in the cross reference listing. SHORT may be specified with the UNREFS suboption to produce a list of unreferenced symbols. The SHORT suboption can not be specified with the FULL suboption.

XREF(UNREFS)
Instructs the assembler to produce the Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs section of the assembler listing. The symbols are listed in symbol name order. UNREFS may be specified with the SHORT suboption to produce a cross reference list of referenced symbols. The UNREFS suboption can not be specified with the FULL suboption.

NOXREF
Specifies that symbol cross reference information is not generated as part of the assembly listing.

Any suboption you specify overrides the suboptions specified in the installation default options, unless the XREF option is fixed.

If you specify the XREF option more than once, the assembler uses the last one you specify. For example, if you specify `XREF(SHORT),XREF(UNREFS)`, the assembler uses `XREF(UNREFS)`. To use both suboptions, specify `XREF(SHORT,UNREFS)`.

On VSE, you can use the XREF option of the JCL OPTION statement to specify the XREF(FULL) assembler option, and the SXREF option of the JCL OPTION statement to specify the XREF(SHORT) assembler option.

Chapter 4. Providing User Exits

This chapter describes how you can provide user exits to complement the assembler's data set processing. It describes the type of exits, how to specify them during assembly, and the details you need to write an exit.

Exit Types

You can instruct the assembler to call the following types of exits:

SOURCE Exit: To process Primary Input records.

You use a SOURCE exit to replace or complement the assembler's primary input data set processing. You can use it to supply primary input records to the assembler, or monitor and modify records the assembler has read before the assembler processes them. The exit can supply all the primary input records, or extend the primary input by supplying additional records during the assembly. The exit can also discard records.

LIBRARY Exit: To process Library Input records.

You use a LIBRARY exit to replace or complement the assembler's macro call (MACRO) and copy code (COPY) library processing. You can use it to supply MACRO and COPY library records to the assembler, or monitor and modify records the assembler has read before the assembler processes them. The exit can supply all the MACRO and COPY library records, or extend the library input processing by supplying additional MACRO and COPY records during the assembly. The exit can also discard records.

LISTING Exit: To process Listing Output records.

You use a LISTING exit to replace or complement the assembler's listing output processing. You can use it to write the listing records the assembler supplies, or monitor and modify the records before the assembler writes them to the listing data set. The exit can write all the listing records, or supply additional listing records for the assembler to write during the assembly. The exit can also discard records.

OBJECT (MVS and CMS) and PUNCH Exit: To process Object and Punch Output records.

You use an OBJECT and PUNCH exit to replace or complement the assembler's object module output processing. You can use it to write the object module records the assembler supplies, or monitor and modify the records before the assembler writes them to the object data set. The exit can write all the object module records, or supply additional records for the assembler to write during the assembly. The exit can also discard records.

ADATA Exit: To process Associated Data Output records.

You use an ADATA exit to monitor the associated data records that are written by the assembler. The ADATA exit cannot modify the records, discard records, or provide additional records.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

TERM Exit: To process Terminal Output records.

You use a TERM exit to replace or complement the assembler's terminal output processing. You can use it to write the terminal records the assembler supplies, or monitor and modify the records before the assembler writes them. The exit can write all the terminal records, or supply additional terminal records for the assembler to write during the assembly. The exit can also discard records.

VSE The assembler writes terminal output to SYSLOG; however, you can use the exit to write the output to a disk data set. VSE

Specifying User Exits

You use the EXIT option to specify the name of one or more user exits to load, and optionally pass to the exit a character string up to 64 characters long that is processed during assembly initialization. You can use the EXITCTL assembler instruction to pass data from the assembler source program to the user exit during the assembly.

The Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the assembler listing shows the statistics for records processed by the user exits during the assembly. See “EXIT” on page 49 for the syntax of the EXIT assembler option.

The following tables lists the exit type, the EXIT suboption, the default data set *ddname* (MVS and CMS), or *filename* (VSE), that the exit corresponds to, and a Page number reference to the section that describes how the assembler processes the exit:

Figure 29. MVS and CMS Exit Types

Exit Type	**Exit Suboption**	*ddname*	**Page Number**
SOURCE	INEXIT	SYSIN	97
LIBRARY	LIBEXIT	SYSLIB	99
LISTING	PRTEXIT	SYSPRINT	104
PUNCH	OBJEXIT	SYSPUNCH	108
OBJECT	OBJEXIT	SYSLIN	108
ADATA	ADEXIT	SYSADATA	111
TERM	TRMEXIT	SYSTERM	112

Figure 30. VSE Exit Types

Exit Type	**Exit Suboption**	*filename*	**Page Number**
SOURCE	INEXIT	IJSYSIN	97
LIBRARY	LIBEXIT	Library sublibraries	99
LISTING	PRTEXIT	IJSYSLS	104
PUNCH	OBJEXIT	IJSYSPH	108
ADATA	ADEXIT	SYSADAT	111
TERM	TRMEXIT	SYSLOG	112

Loading User Exits

The assembler loads the user exits during initialization. The assembler must be able to locate the user exits as follows:

MVS The user exit must be a link-edited load module that is located in a partitioned data set in the standard search sequence. The user exit can also be located in the Link Pack Area (LPA).

If you use the same exit load module for more than one user exit type, for example as a SOURCE and LISTING exit, the load module can be loaded more than once, depending on the link edit options specified. MVS

CMS The user exit must be a MODULE that is located on one of the accessed disks. You generate the module using the CMS LOAD and GENMOD commands. When the LOAD command is issued, the RLDSAVE option must be specified to make the module relocatable. If RLDSAVE is not specified, it might result in the assembler program or data storage being overlaid.

If you use the same exit load module for more than one user exit type, for example as a SOURCE and LISTING exit, only one copy of the module is loaded. CMS

VSE The user exit must be a relocatable phase that is in a sublibrary you specify in your JCL LIBDEF phase search chain. The user exit can also be located in the Shared Virtual Area (SVA).

If you use the same exit for more than one exit type, for example as a SOURCE and LISTING exit, only one copy of the phase is loaded. VSE

The user exits may be created in any addressing mode (AMODE) and residency mode (RMODE).

Calling User Exits

The assembler calls user exits using the standard OS Linkage conventions. The user exit can be written in any language that conforms to the following:

- Can be called many times via the exit module entry point
- Retains storage for private variables across invocations

High Level Assembler provides an “anchor word” in the Exit Parameter List to allow you to maintain information across calls to the exit.

Refer to the language's *Programming Guide* to find out if you can use it to write a user exit for the assembler.

The contents of the registers upon entry to the user exit are as follows:

Register 0	Undefined
Register 1	Address of Exit Parameter List, see Figure 31 on page 83.
Registers 2 through 12	Undefined
Register 13	Address of 72 byte save area
Register 14	Return address
Register 15	Address of entry point of user exit

Exit Parameter List

The assembler passes an Exit Parameter List to the user exit. On entry to the exit, Register 1 contains the address of this parameter list. Each exit is passed a separate copy of the parameter list. The parameter list includes a pointer to an Exit-Specific block that contains information for each exit type. High Level Assembler provides macro ASMAXITP to map the Exit Parameter List and the Exit-Specific Information block. Figure 31 on page 83 describes the format of the Exit Parameter List, Figure 35 on page 93 describes the format of the Exit-Specific Information block for the LISTING exit, and Figure 36 on page 93 describes the format of the Exit-Specific Information block for the other exit types.

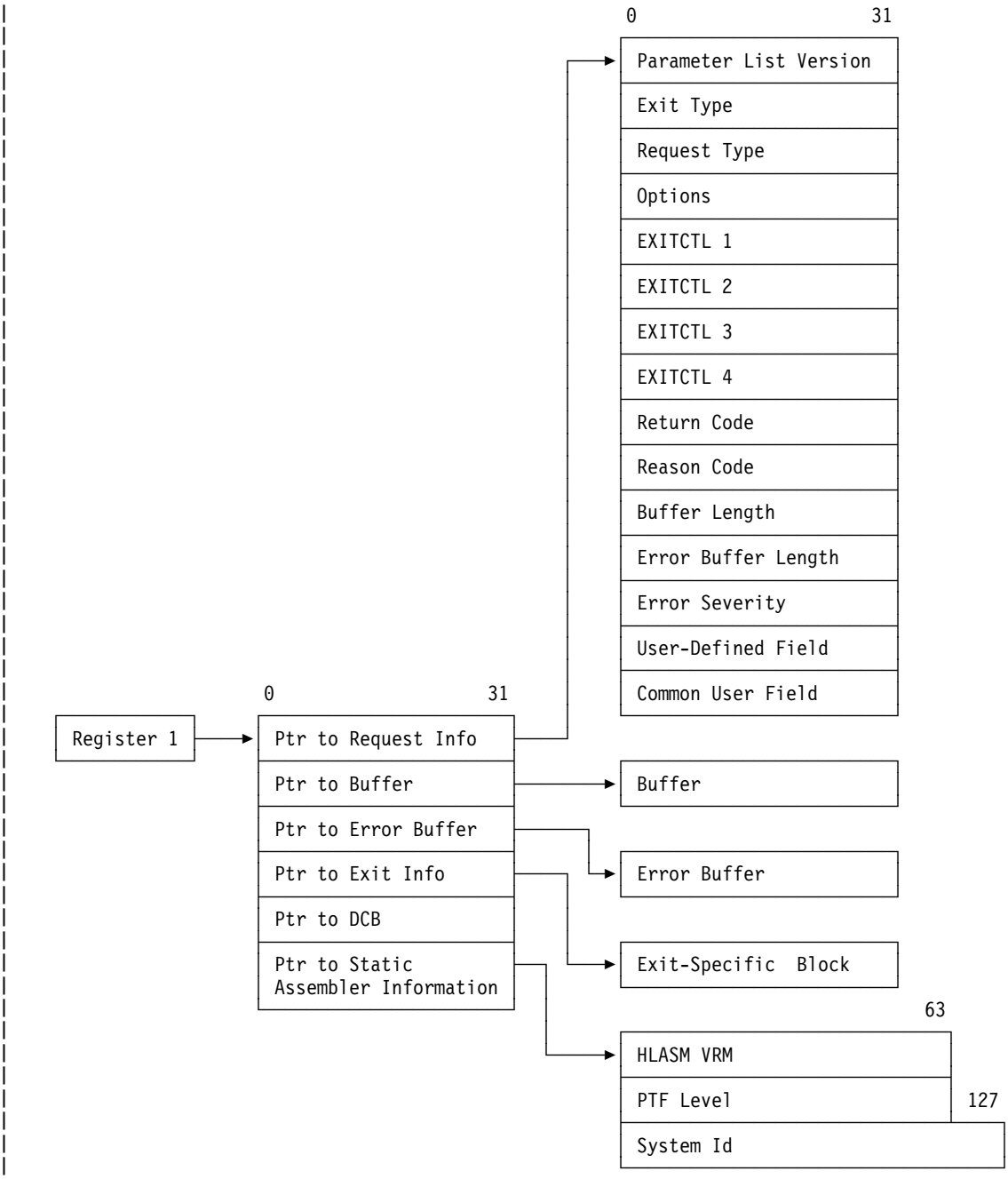


Figure 31. Exit Parameter List Format

The following sections describe the Exit Parameter List.

Request Info Pointer

The request info pointer points to a list of fullword fields that describe the exit request. The assembler sets this pointer, which is always a valid address.

Parameter List Version

A fullword identifying the version of the parameter list. For High Level Assembler Release 4 this field contains a value of 2.

Exit Type

A fullword identifying the type of exit being called. You use this field when the exit handles more than one exit type. The exit type is identified by the following values:

1 SOURCE Input

2 LIBRARY Input

3 LISTING Output

4 PUNCH Output

5 OBJECT Output

6 ADATA Output

7 TERM Output

The assembler always sets this field.

Request Type

A fullword identifying the type of processing request. The request type is identified by the following values:

1 OPEN—exit receives control before any input or output processing.

2 CLOSE—exit receives control before the assembler does any close processing.

3 READ—exit receives control to provide a record to the assembler.

4 WRITE—exit receives control to write a record provided by the assembler.

5 PROCESS (for exit types other than LIBRARY)—exit receives control to inspect or manipulate the record provided by the assembler.

5 PROCESS MACRO (LIBRARY exit type)—exit receives control to inspect or manipulate the macro definition record provided by the assembler.

6 PROCESS COPY (LIBRARY exit type)—exit receives control to inspect or manipulate the copy member record provided by the assembler.

7 FIND MACRO (LIBRARY exit type)—exit receives control to locate the specified library macro.

8 FIND COPY MEMBER (LIBRARY exit type)—exit receives control to locate the specified copy member.

9 END OF MEMBER (LIBRARY exit type)—exit receives control after the reading of a macro or copy member is completed.

The assembler always sets this field.

Options

A fullword that provides additional information to the exit.

For the SOURCE and LIBRARY Exits: The following values are provided:

0 No additional information available.

1 New information is available in the Exit-Specific Information block. The assembler updates this block whenever the primary input data set changes.

For example, the SOURCE input might be a concatenation of data sets. When the first data set is opened, and when each subsequent concatenated data set is opened, this value is set to 1 to inform the exit that a data set switch has occurred. It is also set for LIBRARY processing to inform the exit which data set in the concatenation is being used to provide the specific member.

2 For the LIBRARY exit, when the request type is FIND MACRO or FIND COPY, this indicates that the copy code or a macro should resume at the saved record position.

3 For the LIBRARY exit, when the request type is FIND MACRO or FIND COPY, this indicates that copy code or a macro definition is currently being processed. The user exit should save the position within the current member to allow it to be resumed when the new member has been processed.

See “Nesting COPY Instructions and Macro Definitions” on page 102.

For the LISTING exit: The following decimal values are provided:

00 No additional information available
10 High Level Assembler Options Summary heading line
11 High Level Assembler Options Summary detail line
15 High Level Assembler Options Summary diagnostic message
17 High Level Assembler Product Information heading line
18 High Level Assembler Product Information detail line
20 External Symbol Dictionary heading line
21 External Symbol Dictionary detail line
30 Source and Object heading line
31 Source and Object machine instruction
32 Source and Object DC/DS instruction
33 Source and Object comment
34 Source and Object statement in error
35 Source and Object diagnostic message
36 Source and Object other
40 Relocation Dictionary heading line
41 Relocation Dictionary detail line
50 Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference heading line
51 Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference detail line
52 Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs heading line
53 Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs detail line
60 Macro and Copy Code Source Summary heading line
61 Macro and Copy Code Source Summary detail line
62 Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference heading line
63 Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference detail line
70 DSECT Cross Reference heading line
71 DSECT Cross Reference detail line
80 USING Map heading line

81 USING Map detail line
85 General Purpose Register Cross Reference heading line
86 General Purpose Register Cross Reference detail line
90 Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary heading line
91 Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary detail line

For the PUNCH, OBJECT, and ADATA Exits: This field contains **0**.

The assembler sets this field.

EXITCTL*n*

Four fullword fields containing the exit-control values for this exit type. Exit-control values are set by the EXITCTL assembler instruction during the assembly.

For the SOURCE and LIBRARY Exits: The new EXITCTL values are available to the exit when the input record following the EXITCTL instruction is passed to the exit.

For the LISTING, ADATA, and TERM Exits: The new EXITCTL values are available to the exit with the output record containing the EXITCTL instruction.

For the OBJECT and PUNCH Exits: The new EXITCTL values are available to the exit when the next object module record is passed to the exit. This may happen several source statements after the EXITCTL instruction statement. A possible consequence is that one or more EXITCTL statements can be processed without the exit receiving the EXITCTL parameter values, if they occur between object records.

Return Code

A fullword, set by the exit, that indicates success or failure of the exit call, and the action taken by the assembler on return from the exit. Figure 32 summarizes the return codes.

Figure 32 (Page 1 of 2). User-Exit Return Codes

Exit	Request	RC=0	4	8	16	20
SOURCE	OPEN	Assembler to open the primary input data set[1]	Exit provides records[2]		Disable	Operation failed
	CLOSE	Operation successful				Operation failed
	READ	Exit has provided record			End-of-file indicator	Operation failed
	PROCESS	Accept record	Discard record		Disable	Operation failed
LIBRARY	OPEN	Assembler to open its library[1]	Exit has opened its library[3]	Exit has opened its library, assembler to open its library	Disable	Operation failed
	CLOSE	Operation successful				Operation failed
	READ	Exit has provided record			EOD on input source	Operation failed

Figure 32 (Page 2 of 2). User-Exit Return Codes

Exit	Request	RC=0	4	8	16	20
	PROCESS (macro or copy member)	Accept record	Discard record		Disable[6]	Operation failed
	FIND (macro or copy member)	Operation successful	Member not found; search assembler library if available			Operation failed
	END OF MEMBER	Operation successful			Disable[6]	Operation failed
LISTING PUNCH OBJECT(MVS and CMS) TERM	OPEN	Assembler opens the output data set[1]	Exit has opened its output data set[4]		Disable	Operation failed
	CLOSE	Operation successful				Operation failed
	WRITE	Exit has written record				Operation failed
	PROCESS	Accept record	Discard record		Disable	Operation failed
ADATA[5]	OPEN	Operation successful; exit has initialized successfully			Disable	Operation failed
	CLOSE	Operation successful				Operation failed
	PROCESS	Operation successful			Disable	Operation failed

Notes:

1. The assembler only uses the PROCESS and CLOSE operation codes on subsequent calls.
2. The assembler only uses the READ and CLOSE operation codes on subsequent calls.
3. The assembler only uses the READ, FIND, and CLOSE operation codes on subsequent calls.
4. The assembler only uses the WRITE and CLOSE operation codes on subsequent calls.
5. The ADATA exit can only be used to monitor records written to the associated data file. Unlike other exit types, the ADATA exit cannot be used to replace assembler I/O processing, and can not manipulate the data in the records passed to it by the assembler.
6. This return is valid from all PROCESS and END OF MEMBER requests with the following exceptions:
   a. PROCESS MACRO requests when the LIBRARY exit set the return code of 8 for the OPEN request.
   b. PROCESS COPY requests when the LIBRARY exit set the return code of 8 for the OPEN request.
   c. END OF MEMBER requests when the LIBRARY exit set the return code of 4 or 8 for the OPEN request.

Reason Code

A fullword, set by the exit, to qualify the return code. Figure 33 shows reason codes for each exit type, and which request they are checked after.

Figure 33. User Exit Reason Codes

Exit	Request	Reason Code=0	Reason Code=4
SOURCE	OPEN	No additional information	Input source information available
	READ	No additional information	Input source information available
LIBRARY	OPEN	No additional information	End of member call required
	FIND (macro or copy member)	No additional information	Input source information available
LISTING TERM	OPEN	No additional information	When return code is 0, reason code 4 indicates the exit has provided a line length in the buffer length field. When return code is 4, reason code 4 indicates the exit has provided the data set information.
SOURCE LIBRARY LISTING PUNCH OBJECT(MVS and CMS) TERM	PROCESS	No additional information	Return to exit with empty buffer
PUNCH OBJECT(MVS and CMS)	OPEN	No additional information	Exit has provided the output data set information

Buffer Length

A fullword containing the length of the area pointed to by the buffer pointer.

For OPEN Requests: This field contains the length of the optional character string you specified in the EXIT assembler option.

For WRITE and PROCESS Requests: This field contains the length of the record pointed to by the buffer pointer.

For READ Requests: This field contains the length of the area pointed to by the buffer pointer where the exit may return a record to the assembler.

All Other Requests: This field contains zero.

Setting the Length: When either the SOURCE, LIBRARY, PUNCH, or OBJECT exit is invoked for a READ, WRITE, or PROCESS request, the assembler sets the buffer length to 80.

On MVS and CMS, if you specify the GOFF assembler option, and the OBJECT exit is invoked, the buffer length might be fixed-length 80, or variable-length, depending on the JCL (MVS) you supply. The maximum value for variable-length records is 8212.

For an OPEN request the LISTING exit can use this field to pass the listing line length to the assembler. The exit indicates that it has provided a print line length by setting the return code to 0 and the reason code to 4.

CMS, MVS The line length must be in the range 121 to 255. If it is any other value, the assembler issues message `ASMA402W` and does not call the exit to process listing records. CMS, MVS

VSE If the assembler opens the listing data set and the LISTING exit provides a print line length, the line length must be 121 if SYSLST is assigned to disk, otherwise it can be any value from 121 to 133. If it is any other value, the assembler issues message ASMA402W and does not call the exit to process listing records. VSE

For all other calls to the LISTING exit, the assembler sets this field to the length determined during the OPEN call.

The TERM exit can use this field to indicate to the assembler the length of the terminal record. This may be done when the exit is invoked with an OPEN request. The exit indicates that it has provided a terminal line length by setting the Return Code to 0 and the Reason Code to 4. The value must not be zero, or negative, and must not be greater than 255 on MVS and CMS, or 125 on VSE. If the value is not correct, the assembler issues message ASMA404W and does not call the exit to process terminal records.

For all other calls to the TERM exit, the assembler sets this field to the length determined during the OPEN call.

Error Buffer Length

An unsigned fullword, set by the exit, that contains the length of the text pointed to by the error buffer pointer. The maximum length is 255 bytes. If the exit specifies a larger value, the assembler uses 255.

The assembler uses this length to determine whether to issue an error message. If the length is greater than zero, the text in the error buffer is inserted into one of the messages ASMA700I to ASMA704C. The assembler selects which message to issue by checking the value of the error severity field.

Error Severity

A fullword, set by the exit, that contains the severity code the assembler uses to determine which diagnostic message to issue.

The severity code should be a value of 0, 4, 8, 12, or 16. If the severity code is not one of these values, it is rounded up to the nearest value or, if the severity code is greater than 16, it is reset to 16.

The values 0, 4, 8, 12, and 16 correspond to the five diagnostic messages, ASMA700I through ASMA704C, respectively. For example, severity code of 4 causes the assembler to issue message ASMA701W. Figure 34 summarizes the return code values and the associated diagnostic message.

Figure 34. Error Severity and Associated Diagnostic Message

Error Severity Code Specified	Error Severity Code Used	Associated Message
0	0	ASMA700I
1–4	4	ASMA701W
5–8	8	ASMA702E
9–12	12	ASMA703S
> 12	16	ASMA704C

User-Defined Field

A fullword, set to zero by the assembler before it calls the exit with an OPEN request. The exit can use this field to store information (such as the address of acquired storage) between calls. This field is separately maintained for each exit type and is preserved across all calls until the exit is closed. The assembler does not modify or interpret this field.

Common User Field

A fullword, set to zero by the assembler. Any exit can use this to store information (such as the address of acquired storage) between calls. This field is common for all exit types and so provides a mechanism for different exits to share information. The assembler does not modify or interpret this field.

Buffer Pointer

The buffer pointer points to the area containing a record to be processed by the exit.

For OPEN Requests: This field contains the character string from the EXIT assembler option. If you did not specify a character string in the EXIT assembler option, this area contains blanks and the buffer length field is set to zero.

For READ Requests: This field points to an empty buffer area.

For PROCESS and WRITE Requests: This field points to the record supplied by the assembler.

All Other Requests: This field is set to zero.

Error Buffer Pointer

The error buffer pointer points to the error text buffer.

The assembler sets this pointer. If you want the assembler to issue a message on behalf of the exit, you must supply the text of the error messages in the area pointed to by the error buffer pointer. The text can be up to 255 characters. The exit must place the length of the text in the error buffer length field. The assembler selects a message number based on the value you place in the error severity field.

Exit-Specific Information Pointer

The exit-specific information pointer is a fullword that contains the address of the Exit-Specific Information block. The assembler sets this pointer. For more details, see “Exit-Specific Information Block” on page 92.

DCB Pointer

VSE This field is a fullword and always contains zeros. It is included to maintain compatibility with the Exit Parameter List in the MVS and CMS environments. VSE

CMS, MVS The DCB pointer is a fullword that contains the address of the Data Control Block. CMS, MVS

The assembler sets this address which points to the applicable DCB for the exit being called as follows:

Exit	DCB
SOURCE	SYSIN
LIBRARY	SYSLIB
LISTING	SYSPRINT
PUNCH	SYSPUNCH
OBJECT	SYSLIN
ADATA	SYSADATA
TERM	SYSTERM

When an exit is invoked with an OPEN request, the data set referred to by the DCB is not open, and the contents of the DCB might not be complete.

When an exit is invoked with a PROCESS request, the exit may use the DCB to obtain additional information about the data set or member being used. For example, on MVS, the exit can obtain user information from a PDS directory by using the BLDL system macro.

Static Assembler Information Pointer

The Static Assembler Information Pointer is a fullword that contains the address of the Static Assembler Information block. The block is not aligned on any particular boundary.

HLASM VRM

This is an 8 byte field which contains the version, release and modification level of the assembler being used to assemble the source module. For example, when HLASM Release 4.0 is being used, this field has the value 1.4.0. The value of the field is set to the value of the system variable &SYSVER.

PTF Level

This is an 8 byte field which contains the current PTF level of the assembler being used to assemble the source module. For example, when the last PTF applied to the assembler was UQ12345 this field will have the value: UQ12345.

System ID

This is a 16 byte field which contains the name and release of the operating system under which your source module is being assembled. For example, on MVS, the field might contain the value MVS/ESA SP 5.1.0. The value of the field is set to the value of the system variable &SYSTEM_ID.

Error Handling

Exit Failure Handling: You can signal an exit failure for any call to the exit by setting the return code field in the Exit Parameter List to 20. When the assembler receives this return code it issues message `ASMA940U`, and stops the assembly. You can provide the assembler with additional information to insert in the message text by placing the information in the error buffer pointed to by error buffer pointer, and the length of the information in the error buffer length.

If the exit sets the return code field in the Exit Parameter List to any value other than those described in Figure 32 on page 86, the assembler issues message `ASMA940U` and stops the assembly.

User Error Handling: You can instruct the assembler to produce an error message after any call to the exit by placing information in the error buffer pointed to by error buffer pointer, and the length of the information in the error buffer length. You can indicate the severity of the message by placing the severity code in the error severity field. The message is issued as a normal assembler message and, as such, can be suppressed using the FLAG assembler option.

Exit-Specific Information Block

All user exits are passed an Exit-Specific Information block pointed to by the Exit Parameter List. It contains a list of character data items which describe the data for the exit, and the absolute and relative record numbers for the record passed to the exit. The Exit-Specific Information block passed to all exits, except the LISTING exit, is shown in Figure 36 on page 93. The Exit-Specific Information block passed to the LISTING exit has additional parameters as shown in Figure 35.

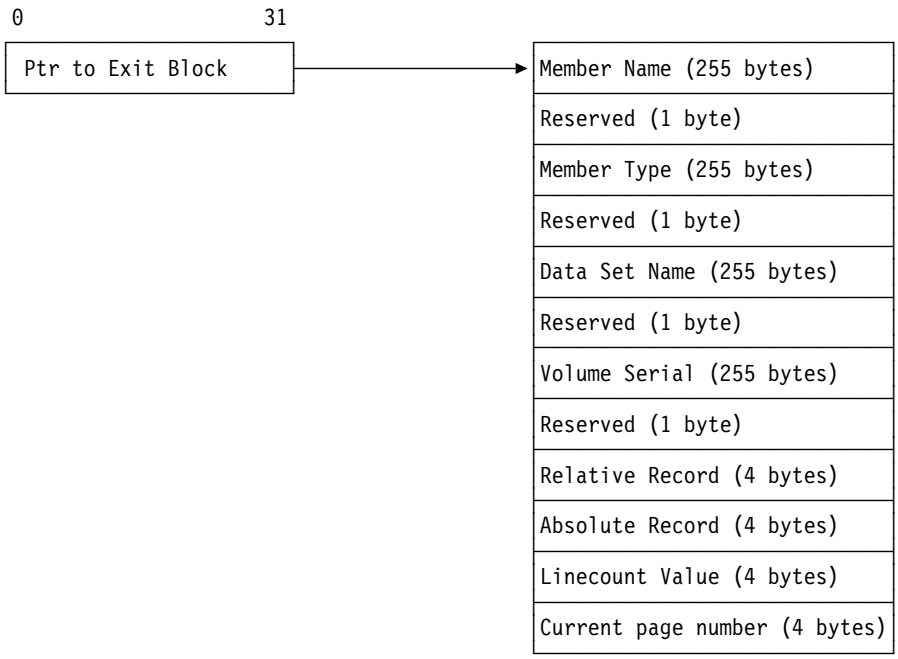


Figure 35. Exit-Specific Information Block—LISTING Exit

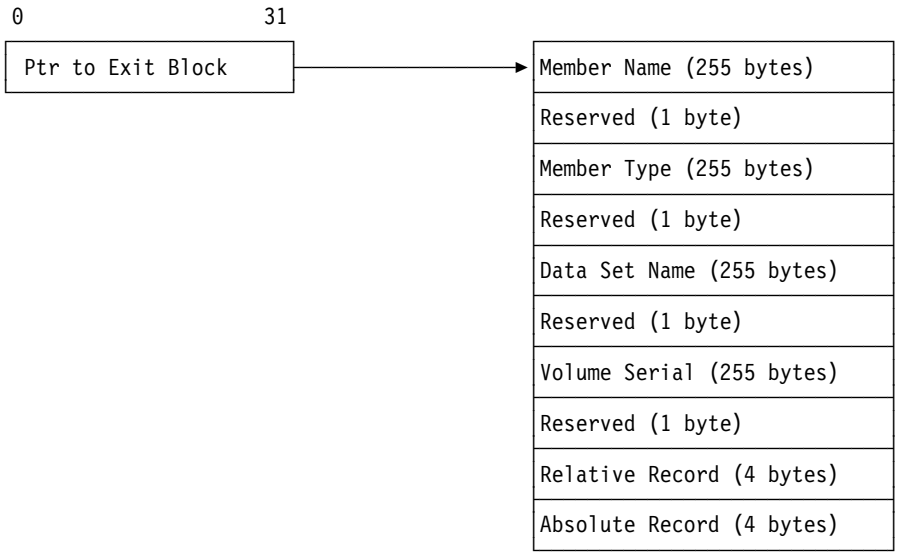


Figure 36. Exit-Specific Information Block—Other Exit Types

The Exit-Specific Information block consists of the following fields:

Member Name

Member name within the data set. It is always provided for library members and is also provided for data set members used sequentially on MVS where the data set is a partitioned data set.

The assembler also sets this field as a parameter for the FIND operation. It is left-justified and padded with blanks.

For output files, the information should not be updated after it has been set by the OPEN call.

The assembler uses this field to update the system variable symbols, as described in Figure 37 (MVS and CMS) and Figure 38 (VSE).

Member Type

CMS, MVS Always blank. This field is present to maintain compatibility with High Level Assembler running on VSE. CMS, MVS

VSE The file type of the member. This field is also set by the assembler as a parameter for the FIND operation. It is left-justified and padded with blanks. VSE

Data Set Name

The name of the data set from which the last input record was retrieved, or to which the next output record is written. It is left-justified and padded with blanks.

VSE For library data sets, the name includes the library and sublibrary name. VSE

For output files, the information should not be updated after it has been set by the OPEN call.

The assembler uses this field to update the system variable symbols, as described in Figure 37 (MVS and CMS) and Figure 38 (VSE).

Volume Serial

Volume serial where the data set is located. It is left-justified and padded with blanks.

For output files, the information should not be updated after it has been set by the OPEN call.

The assembler uses this field to update the system variable symbols, as described in Figure 37 (MVS and CMS) and Figure 38 (VSE).

Figure 37. MVS and CMS System Variable Symbols

Data Set	Member Name	Data Set Name	Volume Serial
SYSIN	&SYSIN_MEMBER	&SYSIN_DSN	&SYSIN_VOLUME
SYSLIB	&SYSLIB_MEMBER	&SYSLIB_DSN	&SYSLIB_VOLUME
SYSPRINT	&SYSPRINT_MEMBER	&SYSPRINT_DSN	&SYSPRINT_VOLUME
SYSTERM	&SYSTERM_MEMBER	&SYSTERM_DSN	&SYSTERM_VOLUME
SYSPUNCH	&SYSPUNCH_MEMBER	&SYSPUNCH_DSN	&SYSPUNCH_VOLUME
SYSLIN	&SYSLIN_MEMBER	&SYSLIN_DSN	&SYSLIN_VOLUME
SYSADATA	&SYSADATA_MEMBER	&SYSADATA_DSN	&SYSADATA_VOLUME

Figure 38. VSE System Variable Symbols

Data Set	Member Name	Data Set Name	Volume Serial
SYSIPT (IJSYSIN)	&SYSIN_MEMBER	&SYSIN_DSN	&SYSIN_VOLUME
Library	&SYSLIB_MEMBER	&SYSLIB_DSN	&SYSLIB_VOLUME
SYSLST (IJSYSLS)	&SYSPRINT_MEMBER	&SYSPRINT_DSN	&SYSPRINT_VOLUME
SYSLOG	&SYSTERM_MEMBER	&SYSTERM_DSN	&SYSTERM_VOLUME
SYSPCH (IJSYSPH)	&SYSPUNCH_MEMBER	&SYSPUNCH_DSN	&SYSPUNCH_VOLUME
SYSADAT	&SYSADATA_MEMBER	&SYSADATA_DSN	&SYSADATA_VOLUME

Relative Record Number

The relative record number is the number assigned to the current record being processed.

PROCESS Calls: For PROCESS calls, it represents the total number of records the assembler has passed to the exit for the current data set. Each time a new data set or library member is opened for input, the relative record number is reset to 1 for the first record. If the new data set is a library member, caused by a macro call or a COPY instruction, the relative record number is returned to the correct sequential number when the macro or COPY processing is complete.

LISTING Exit: The relative record number is reset to 1 for the LISTING exit whenever the assembler forces a page eject.

BATCH Assembler Option: The relative record number is reset to 1 for all output data sets prior to each assembly when the BATCH assembler option is specified.

READ and WRITE Calls: For READ calls and WRITE calls, the exit should maintain the relative record number. The assembler uses the relative record number in information messages when you specify the FLAG(RECORD) option. If you specify the ADATA option, the assembler includes the record number in the associated data file (ADATA) Source Analysis record.

Absolute Record Number

The absolute record number is the number assigned to the current record being processed. The number is incremented by 1 for each record since the assembly started. For PROCESS calls, it represents the total number of records provided to the exit for the current exit type. It starts at 1, but is not reset when the BATCH assembler option is specified to assemble multiple source programs.

For READ calls and WRITE calls, the exit should maintain the absolute record number. The number provided after READ calls is written to the associated data file (ADATA) in the Source Analysis record.

Linecount

This field is only provided for the LISTING exit.

The linecount value is set to the value of the LINECOUNT assembler option before the OPEN call to the LISTING exit. This option contains the number of lines per page in the assembler listing. The exit may change the linecount value only during the OPEN call.

For PROCESS calls, the linecount field contains the number of logical records written to the current listing page. A page eject occurs when the number exceeds the linecount value specified in the LINECOUNT assembler option or during the OPEN call.

Current Page Number

The assembler sets this field to the value of the current page number. Any change the exit makes to this number is ignored.

This field is only provided for the LISTING exit and only for the PROCESS, WRITE and CLOSE call types.

SOURCE Exit Processing

The assembler calls the SOURCE exit with the following request types:

OPEN

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 1 (OPEN) at the start of the assembly. This is the first call to the exit.

The exit may set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Instructs the assembler to open the primary input data set, and supply the primary input records to the exit in later PROCESS calls.

4 Indicates that the exit supplies the primary input records to the assembler in later READ calls. If you wish to provide the assembler with the values for the system variables &SYSIN_DSN, &SYSIN_MEMBER and &SYSIN_VOLUME, the user exit must set the reason code to 4 and place the values in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block. The assembler also shows this information in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the listing, and includes it in the associated data file Job Identification record.

16 Instructs the assembler to open the primary input data set, and make no further calls to the exit.

If you provide a character string in the *str1* suboption of the EXIT assembler option, the buffer pointer points to the character string, and buffer length contains the length of the character string. The buffer length is set to zero if there is no character string.

CLOSE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 2 (CLOSE) at the end of the assembly. The exit should close any data sets it opened and release any storage that it acquired.

READ

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 3 (READ) when the exit is supplying the primary input records.

The exit may set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 A record is supplied. The record must be placed in the area pointed to by the buffer pointer field. The record area is 80 characters in length.

The user exit should maintain the absolute record number and the relative record number. These fields are set to zero before the OPEN request. The assembler uses the relative record number in diagnostic messages when you specify the FLAG(RECORD) assembler option. If you specify the ADATA assembler option, the assembler includes both fields in the associated data file Source Analysis record.

If you wish to provide the assembler with the values for the system variables &SYSIN_DSN, &SYSIN_MEMBER and &SYSIN_VOLUME, the user exit must set the reason code to 4 and place the values in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block.

You can provide this information during the OPEN call, or whenever the exit supplies a record to the assembler. If the exit is reading records from concatenated data sets, it should supply the data set information with the first record from each data set in the concatenation.

If the exit does not supply the data set information, the system variables are set to null, and the primary input data set details are not shown in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the listing, nor are they included in the ADATA Job Identification record.

16 Indicates to the assembler that there are no more records. This is equivalent to end-of-file processing for input data sets.

PROCESS

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 5 (PROCESS) when the assembler is reading the primary input data set, and it has a record for the exit to process. The address of the record read is in the buffer pointer field, and the length is in the buffer length field. The record length is always 80.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Indicates that the record has been accepted, and the assembler is to process it. The exit may modify the record before it returns control to the assembler. The user exit may also insert extra records in the primary input by setting the reason code to 4. The assembler processes the current record and then calls the user exit with an empty buffer. The exit must place the record in the 80-byte area pointed to by the buffer pointer field. The exit can continue to supply additional records, by setting the reason code to 4. The exit must keep track of when the assembler calls it with an empty buffer, and ensure that it resets the reason code to zero to resume normal processing.

4 Instructs the assembler to discard the current record.

16 Instructs the assembler to make no further calls to the exit.

Although the user exit might insert or discard records, the assembler maintains the absolute record number and relative record number.

If the options field is set to 1 (see “Options” on page 85), the assembler has provided the exit with the current primary input data set information in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block. The assembler updates this information when it reads the first record of each data set in a data set concatenation.

Figure 39 summarizes the SOURCE exit processing.

Figure 39. SOURCE Exit Processing Summary

Request Value=Type	Exit Return Code	Action
1=OPEN	0	Assembler opens primary input.
	4	Exit supplies primary input records. If reason code=4, exit supplies data set information.
	16	Assembler opens primary input, and makes no further calls to the exit.
2=CLOSE	n/a	Exit should close any data sets it opened, and release any storage it acquired.
3=READ	0	Exit supplies record in buffer. If reason code=4, exit supplies data set information.
	16	Exit indicates end-of-file.
5=PROCESS	0	Record accepted. Exit may modify record. If reason code=4, the assembler, after processing the current record, provides an empty buffer for the exit to provide additional record.
	4	Requests assembler to discard record.
	16	Assembler makes no further calls to the exit.

LIBRARY Exit Processing

The assembler calls the LIBRARY exit with the following request types:

OPEN

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 1 (OPEN) at the start of the assembly. This is the first call to the exit.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Instructs the assembler to open the library data set, and supply the macro and copy code library input records to the exit in later PROCESS calls.

Note: A reason code of 4 indicates that the exit expects to receive END OF MEMBER calls.

4 Indicates that the exit supplies the macro and copy code library records to the assembler in later READ calls. If you wish to provide the assembler with the values for the system variables &SYSLIB_DSN, &SYSLIB_MEMBER and &SYSLIB_VOLUME, the user exit must set the reason code to 4 and place the values in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block. The assembler also shows this information in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the listing, and includes it in the associated data file Library record.

Note: A reason code of 4 indicates that the exit expects to receive END OF MEMBER calls.

8 Indicates that both the assembler and user exit supply the macro and copy code library records. On return from the exit, the assembler opens the library data set. When a macro or copy member is required, the assembler calls

the exit with a FIND request. If the member is found by the exit, the exit supplies the records in later READ calls. If the exit cannot find the member, the assembler attempts to find the member in the library data set. If the assembler finds the member, the records are passed to the exit in later PROCESS calls.

Note: A reason code of 4 indicates that the exit expects to receive END OF MEMBER calls.

16 Instructs the assembler to open the library data set, and make no further calls to the exit.

If you provide a character string in the *str2* suboption of the EXIT assembler option, the buffer pointer field points to the character string, and buffer length contains the length of the character string. The buffer length is set to zero if there is no character string.

CLOSE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 2 (CLOSE) at the end of the assembly. The exit should close any data sets it opened and release any storage that it acquired.

READ

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 3 (READ) when the exit is supplying the library records, and after a successful FIND request. For copy members, the assembler calls the exit until the exit indicates the end-of-file. For macro definitions, the assembler calls the exit until it receives a MEND statement, or the exit indicates the end-of-file.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 The exit is supplying a record. The record must be placed in the area pointed to by the buffer pointer field. The record area is 80 characters in length.

The user exit should maintain the absolute record number and the relative record number. These fields are set to zero before the OPEN request. The assembler uses the relative record number in diagnostic messages when you specify the FLAG(RECORD) assembler option. If you specify the ADATA assembler option, the assembler includes both fields in the associated data file Source Analysis record.

16 Indicates to the assembler that there are no more records. This is equivalent to end-of-file processing for input members.

PROCESS MACRO or PROCESS COPY

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 5 (PROCESS MACRO) or 6 (PROCESS COPY) when the assembler is reading members from the library data set, and it has a record for the exit to process. The exit is also called with these request types when both the assembler and the exit are supplying library records (return code 8 from the OPEN call), and the assembler is supplying the record. The address of the record read is in the buffer pointer field, and the length is in the buffer length field. The record length is always 80.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Indicates that the record has been accepted, and the assembler is to process it. The exit can modify the record before it returns control to the assembler. The user exit can also insert extra records in the library member by setting the reason code to 4. The assembler processes the current record and then calls the user exit with an empty buffer. The exit must place the record in the 80-byte area pointed to by the buffer pointer field. The exit can continue to supply additional records by setting the reason code to 4. The exit must keep track of when the assembler calls it with an empty buffer, and ensure that it resets the reason code to zero to resume normal processing.

4 Instructs the assembler to discard the current record.

16 Instructs the assembler to make no further calls to the exit. This will be disregarded by the assembler if the exit return code from the OPEN was 8.

Although the user exit can insert or discard records, the assembler maintains the absolute record number and relative record number.

If the options field is set to 1, the assembler has provided the exit with the current primary input data set information in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block. The assembler updates this information when it reads the first record of each data set in a data set concatenation.

FIND MACRO or FIND COPY

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 7 (FIND MACRO) whenever the assembler cannot find an operation code and the exit issued a return code on OPEN of either 4 or 8. The member name field contains the operation code, and is the name of the macro definition that the assembler is searching for.

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 8 (FIND COPY) whenever the assembler processes a COPY instruction and the exit issued a return code on OPEN of either 4 or 8. The member name field contains the name of the copy code member.

If the user exit is supplying the library records, the exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Indicates that the exit supplies the library records. The assembler calls the user exit with later READ calls to retrieve each record.

4 Indicates that the exit is not supplying the macro or copy member, and is equivalent to not finding the member in the library.

If both the assembler and the user exit are supplying the library records, the exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Indicates that the exit supplies the library records. The assembler calls the user exit with later READ calls to retrieve each record.

4 Indicates that the exit is not supplying the macro or copy member, and is equivalent to not finding the member in the library. On return from the exit, the assembler attempts to find the member in the library. If the assembler finds the member, it calls the user exit with later PROCESS MACRO or PROCESS COPY calls passing each record read from the library.

System Variables: If you wish to provide the assembler with the values for the system variables &SYSLIB_DSN, &SYSLIB_MEMBER, and &SYSLIB_VOLUME, the user exit must set the return code to 0, the reason code to 4, and place the values in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block.

If the exit does not supply the data set information, the system variables are set to null, and the library data set details are not shown in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the listing, nor are they included in the ADATA Library record.

Nesting COPY Instructions and Macro Definitions: The assembler lets you code COPY instructions and macro call instructions in copy code members. It also lets you code COPY instructions in macro definitions. This type of coding is described as *nesting*.

If the exit is processing a member, and supplies a record to the assembler containing a COPY instruction, or a macro call instruction, the assembler calls the exit with a request type of FIND COPY or FIND MACRO, respectively. In this case, the exit needs to save the position in the currently active member before reading the new copy code or macro member. This enables the exit to resume processing the currently active member after it finishes with the new member.

The assembler indicates that it is processing a new (or nested) member by setting the options field to 3. When the assembler finishes processing the new member and resumes the previous (or outer) member, it issues a FIND call to the exit with the options field set to 2 indicating that the previous member is resumed. After the FIND call is complete, the assembler continues with PROCESS or READ calls to the exit for the previous member.

When the assembler calls the exit with a FIND COPY or FIND MACRO request, and the options field is set to 3, the exit should save the current member control information in a stack.

When the assembler calls the exit with a FIND COPY or FIND MACRO request, and the options field is set to 2, the exit should restore the previous member control information from the stack. The next READ request expects the next record from the previous member.

The assembler does not limit the number of levels of nesting.

There is a corresponding FIND (resume) request for every successful nested FIND request, except under the following situations:

- An END instruction is found while reading a copy code member. The END instruction causes the assembly to stop.
- When the assembler issues a PROCESS call, and provides the last record in a copy code member, and the record is a macro call. In this case there are no more copy records to resume reading.
- When a macro call (outer macro) inside a copy code member in turn issues a macro call (inner macro). In this case, the assembler processes the outer macro to completion, and then begins to generate the outer macro. During generation, the assembler begins to process the inner macro, without issuing a FIND (resume) request for the outer macro or copy code member. The

assembler issues a FIND request for each nested macro call, with options set to 3. It does not issue a FIND request for the outer macro, with options set to 2, because the outer macro processing is complete.

- An error occurs during the assembly that prevents the member from being read completely.

If the FIND COPY or FIND MACRO is unsuccessful, the position in the currently active member should not be affected.

END OF MEMBER

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 9 (END OF MEMBER) whenever the reading of a macro or copy member is completed. For a macro, processing of a MEND statement indicates completion; for a copy member, an end of file condition indicates completion.

The END OF MEMBER call simplifies stack management required in coding a LIBRARY exit which contains READs and FINDs. The exit may use the information provided by this call in the handling of nested FINDs where there is usually, but not always, a corresponding resume FIND (options=2) for every nested FIND (options=3). For an example of how you can use END OF MEMBER calls to perform stack management, see page 125.

Figure 40 summarizes the LIBRARY exit processing.

Figure 40 (Page 1 of 2). LIBRARY Exit Processing Summary

Request Value=Type	Exit Return Code	Action
1=OPEN	0	Assembler opens its library for input. If reason code=4, the assembler makes END OF MEMBER calls to the exit.
	4	Exit supplies library records. If reason code=4, the assembler makes END OF MEMBER calls to the exit.
	8	Both the assembler and the exit supply library records. The assembler opens its library. If reason code=4, the assembler makes END OF MEMBER calls to the exit.
	16	Assembler opens the library data set, and makes no further calls to the EXIT.
2=CLOSE	n/a	Exit should close any data sets it opened, and release any storage it acquired.
3=READ	0	Exit supplies record in buffer. Record with MEND statement indicates end of macro member.
	16	Exit indicates end-of-file for member.

Figure 40 (Page 2 of 2). LIBRARY Exit Processing Summary

Request Value=Type	Exit Return Code	Action
5=PROCESS MACRO	0	Record accepted. Exit can modify record. If reason code=4, the assembler, after processing the current record, provides an empty buffer for the exit to provide additional record.
	4	Requests assembler to discard record.
	16	Assembler makes no further calls to the EXIT (disregarded if the EXIT return code from the OPEN is 8).
6=PROCESS COPY	0	Record accepted. Exit can modify record. If reason code=4, the assembler, after processing the current record, provides an empty buffer for the exit to provide additional record.
	4	Requests assembler to discard record.
	16	Assembler makes no further calls to the EXIT (disregarded if the EXIT return code from the OPEN is 8).
7=FIND MACRO	0	Macro member found by exit; the exit supplies the records. If options=3, the exit should save the current member position. If options=2, the exit should restore the previous member position. If reason code=4, exit supplies data set information.
	4	Macro member not found by exit; the exit does not supply the records.
8=FIND COPY	0	Copy code member found by exit; the exit supplies the records. If options=3, the exit should save the current member position. If options=2, the exit should restore the previous member position. If reason code=4, exit supplies data set information.
	4	Copy code member not found by exit; the exit does not supply the records.
9=END OF MEMBER		Exit may use the information to perform stack management.

LISTING Exit Processing

You can use the LISTING exit to override the effect of the LIST assembler option. The exit does this by indicating to the assembler that it opens the listing data set and does all listing output processing. Then, as each listing record is passed to the exit, the exit can decide whether to print the record, and where it writes the record. For instance, the exit can write the listing records to a different data set than the assembler would normally write them.

The LISTING exit is not called if you specify the NOLIST assembler option. If you wish to process the listing records in the exit but you do not want the assembler to write the records to the normal output data set, you can do one of the following:

- Instruct the assembler to discard the listing records by setting the exit return code

or

- Suppress the listing output as follows:
  MVS Provide a `//SYSPRINT DD DUMMY` JCL statement.
  CMS Issue a `FILEDEF SYSPRINT DUMMY` command.
  VSE Assign the `SYSLST` to `IGN`.

or

- Instruct the exit to issue an OPEN return code of 4

The sections of the listing that are passed to the exit depend on the assembler options you specify. For instance, if you specify the NORLD option, then no Relocation Dictionary listing records are passed to the exit.

CMS, MVS Although the assembler can write to a listing data set with a record format of variable-length, the exit is always presented with fixed-length records. CMS, MVS

The assembler calls the LISTING exit with the following request types:

OPEN

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 1 (OPEN) at the start of the assembly.

The exit may set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Instructs the assembler to open the listing data set, and supply the listing output records to the exit in later PROCESS calls.

The exit can set the record length for the listing data set by setting the reason code to 4 and the buffer length field.

CMS, MVS The buffer length field can be set to any value from 121 to 255. If the listing data set has a variable-length record format, the LRECL assigned is 4 bytes greater than the value the exit returns. If the value is less than 121 or greater than 255, the assembler issues message `ASMA402W` and does not call the exit for any further processing. CMS, MVS

VSE The buffer length field can be set to any value from 121 to 133. If the value is less than 121 or greater than 133, the assembler issues message `ASMA402W` and does not call the exit for any further processing.

If you assign SYSLST to a disk data set in your JCL, the record length must be 121. VSE

4 Indicates that the exit writes the listing records in later WRITE calls. If you wish to provide the assembler with the values for the system variables &SYSPRINT_DSN, &SYSPRINT_MEMBER, and &SYSPRINT_VOLUME, the exit must set the reason code to 4 and place the values in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block. The assembler also shows this information in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the listing, and includes it in the associated data file Output File Information record.

16 Instructs the assembler to open the listing data set, and make no further calls to the exit.

The assembler sets the linecount field to the value of the LINECOUNT assembler option. This value is the number of lines per page in the listing. The exit can change the line count to a value of 0, or any value from 10 to 32767. "LINECOUNT" on page 58 describes the LINECOUNT assembler option.

If you provide a character string in the *str3* suboption of the EXIT assembler option, the buffer pointer field points to the character string, and buffer length contains the length of the character string. The buffer length is set to zero if there is no character string.

CLOSE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 2 (CLOSE) at the end of the assembly. The exit should close any data sets it opened and release any storage that it acquired.

WRITE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 4 (WRITE) when the exit is writing the listing records. The buffer pointer field points to the listing record, and the buffer length contains the length of the record.

CMS, MVS Depending on the setting of the ASA assembler option, the record has either an American National Standard or a machine printer control character at the start of the record. CMS, MVS

The options field contains a value that represents the type of listing record that is passed. The listing record types, and their corresponding options values, are shown on page 85.

The user exit should maintain the absolute record number and the relative record number. These fields are set to zero before the OPEN request. The assembler uses the relative record number and the linecount value to determine when to start a new page in the assembler listing. A new page is started when the relative record number exceeds the line count.

PROCESS

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 5 (PROCESS) when the assembler is writing the listing records, and it has a record for the exit to process. The address of the record is in the buffer pointer field, and the length is in the buffer length field.

CMS, MVS The record has either an American National Standard or a machine printer control character at the start of the record depending on the setting of the ASA assembler option. CMS, MVS

The options field contains a value that represents the type of listing record that is passed. The listing record types, and their corresponding options values, are shown on page 85.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Indicates that the record has been accepted, and the assembler is to write it to the listing data set. The exit may modify the record before it returns control to the assembler. The user exit may also insert extra records in the listing by setting the reason code to 4. The assembler writes the current record and then calls the user exit with an empty buffer. The exit must place the additional listing record in the area pointed to by the buffer pointer field. The exit can continue to supply additional records by setting the reason code to 4. The exit must keep track of when the assembler calls it with an empty buffer, and ensure that it resets the reason code to zero to resume normal processing.

CMS, MVS The exit must also ensure that a valid printer control character is placed in the first character of the record. The printer control character may be either American National Standard or machine. The exit can check the DCB, pointed to by the DCB pointer field in the Exit Parameter List, to find out which printer control character to use. CMS, MVS

VSE The exit must also ensure that a valid American National Standard printer control character is placed in the first character of the record. VSE

4 Instructs the assembler to discard the listing record.

16 Instructs the assembler to make no further calls to the exit.

Although the user exit can insert or discard records, the assembler maintains the absolute record number and relative record number.

Figure 41 summarizes the LISTING exit processing.

Figure 41. LISTING Exit Processing Summary

Request Value=Type	Exit Return Code	Action
1=OPEN	0	Assembler opens listing data set. If reason code=4, exit supplies listing line length.
	4	Exit writes listing records. If reason code=4, exit supplies data set information.
	16	Assembler opens listing data set, and makes no further calls to the exit.
2=CLOSE	n/a	Exit should close any data sets it opened, and release any storage it acquired.
4=WRITE	0	Exit writes record.
5=PROCESS	0	Record accepted. Exit may modify record. If reason code=4, the assembler, after processing the current record, provides an empty buffer for the exit to provide additional record.
	4	Requests assembler to discard record.
	16	Assembler makes no further calls to the exit.

OBJECT (MVS and CMS) and PUNCH Exit Processing

When you specify the OBJEXIT suboption of the EXIT assembler option, the assembler calls either the OBJECT user exit or the PUNCH user exit, or both, as follows:

- CMS, MVS If you specify the OBJECT assembler option, the assembler calls the OBJECT user exit.
- If you specify the OBJECT and the DECK assembler options, the assembler calls the user exit as an OBJECT exit, and then as a PUNCH exit. CMS, MVS
- If you specify the DECK assembler option, the assembler calls the PUNCH user exit.

You can use the exit to override the effect of the DECK or OBJECT assembler options. The exit does this by indicating to the assembler that it opens the output data set and does all the output processing. Then, as each object record is passed to the exit, the exit can decide whether to write the record, and where to write the record. For instance, the exit can write the records to a different data set than the assembler would normally write them.

CMS, MVS The exit is not called if you specify the NODECK and NOOBJECT assembler options. CMS, MVS

VSE The exit is not called if you specify the NODECK assembler option. VSE

If you wish to process the object records in the exit, but you do not want the assembler to write the records to the normal output data set, you can do one of the following:

- Instruct the assembler to discard the records by setting the exit return code

or

- Suppress the object output as follows:

  MVS Provide a `//SYSLIN DD DUMMY` JCL statement, and a `//SYSPUNCH DD DUMMY` JCL statement.

  CMS Issue a `FILEDEF SYSLIN DUMMY` command, and a `FILEDEF SYSPUNCH DUMMY` command.

  VSE Assign `SYSPCH` to `IGN`.

or

- Instruct the exit to issue an OPEN return code of 4.

The assembler calls the OBJECT and PUNCH exit with the following request types:

OPEN

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 1 (OPEN) at the start of the assembly. The exit type field indicates which exit is being called. The OBJECT exit is type 5, and the PUNCH exit is type 4.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Instructs the assembler to open the object data set, and supply the object records to the exit in later PROCESS calls.

4 Indicates that the exit writes the object records in later WRITE calls. If you wish to provide the assembler with the values for the system variables &SYSLIN_DSN, &SYSLIN_MEMBER, and &SYSLIN_VOLUME, then during the OPEN call for the OBJECT exit, the exit must set the reason code to 4 and place the values in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block. If you wish to provide the assembler with the values for the system variables &SYSPUNCH_DSN, &SYSPUNCH_MEMBER, and &SYSPUNCH_VOLUME, then during the OPEN call for the PUNCH exit, the exit must set the reason code to 4 and place the values in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block. The assembler also shows the information for both object and punch data sets in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the listing, and includes it in the associated data file Output File Information record.

16 Instructs the assembler to open the object data set and make no further calls to the exit.

If you provide a character string in the *str4* suboption of the EXIT assembler option, the buffer pointer field points to the character string, and the buffer length contains the length of the character string. The buffer length is set to zero if there is no character string.

CLOSE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 2 (CLOSE) at the end of the assembly. The exit should close any data sets it opened and release any storage that it acquired.

WRITE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 4 (WRITE) when the exit is writing the object records. The buffer pointer field points to the object record, and the buffer length contains the length of the record.

CMS, MVS The record length is always 80 bytes when you specify the NOGOFF assembler option. If you specify the GOFF assembler option, the record length is 80 bytes for fixed-length output or up to 8212 bytes for variable-length output. The record length for variable-length records does not include the 4-byte length of the record descriptor word (RDW), and the buffer pointer field points at the object data, not the RDW. CMS, MVS

VSE The record length is always 80 bytes. VSE

The user exit should maintain the absolute record number and the relative record number. These fields are set to zero before the OPEN request.

PROCESS

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 5 (PROCESS) when the assembler is writing the object records, and it has a record for the exit to process. The address of the record is in the buffer pointer field, and the length is in the buffer length field.

CMS, MVS The record length is always 80 bytes when you specify the NOXOBJECT assembler option. If you specify the XOBJECT assembler option, the record length is 80 bytes for fixed-length output or up to 8212 bytes for variable-length output. The record length for variable-length records does not include the 4-byte length of the record descriptor word (RDW), and the buffer pointer field points at the object data, not the RDW. CMS, MVS

VSE The record length is always 80 bytes. VSE

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Indicates that the record has been accepted, and the assembler is to write it to the object data set. The exit can modify the record before it returns control to the assembler. The user exit can also insert extra records in the object data set by setting the reason code to 4. The assembler writes the current record and then calls the user exit with an empty buffer. The exit must place the additional object record in the area pointed to by the buffer pointer field. The exit can continue to supply additional records by setting the reason code to 4. The exit must keep track of when the assembler calls it with an empty buffer, and ensure that it resets the reason code to zero to resume normal processing.

4 Instructs the assembler to discard the record.

16 Instructs the assembler to make no further calls to the exit.

Although the user exit can insert or discard records, the assembler maintains the absolute record number and relative record number.

Figure 42 summarizes the OBJECT and PUNCH exit processing.

Figure 42. OBJECT and PUNCH Exit Processing Summary

Request Value=Type	Exit Return Code	Action
1=OPEN	0	Assembler opens object data set.
	4	Exit writes object records. If reason code=4, exit supplies data set information.
	16	Assembler opens object data set, and makes no further calls to the exit.
2=CLOSE	n/a	Exit should close any data sets it opened, and release any storage it acquired.
4=WRITE	0	Exit writes record.
5=PROCESS	0	Record accepted. Exit can modify record. If reason code=4, the assembler, after processing the current record, provides an empty buffer for the exit to provide additional record.
	4	Requests assembler to discard record.
	16	Assembler makes no further calls to the exit.

ADATA Exit Processing

When you specify the ADEXIT suboption of the EXIT assembler option, the assembler calls the ADATA user exit if you also specify the ADATA assembler option.

The ADATA exit is not called if you specify the NOADATA assembler option. If you wish to process the associated data records in the exit but you do not want the assembler to write the records to the normal output data set, you suppress the associated data output as follows:

MVS Provide a `//SYSADATA DD DUMMY` JCL statement.
CMS Issue a `FILEDEF SYSADATA DUMMY` command.
VSE Assign `SYSADAT` to `IGN`.

The assembler calls the ADATA exit with the following request types:

OPEN

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 1 (OPEN) at the start of the assembly.

If you provide a character string in the *str5* suboption of the EXIT assembler option, the buffer pointer field points to the character string, and the buffer length contains the length of the character string. The buffer length is set to zero if there is no character string.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Instructs the assembler to open the ADATA data set, and supply the object records to the exit in later PROCESS calls.

16 Instructs the assembler to open the ADATA data set and make no further calls to the exit.

CLOSE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 2 (CLOSE) at the end of the assembly. The exit should close any data sets it opened and release any storage that it acquired.

PROCESS

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 5 (PROCESS) when the assembler is writing the associated data records, and it has a record for the exit to process. The address of the record read is in the buffer pointer field, and the length is in the buffer length field. The record length for variable-length records does not include the 4-byte length of the record descriptor word (RDW), and the buffer pointer field points at the ADATA header data, not the RDW. The assembler ignores all modifications to the ADATA records.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Operation successful.

16 Instructs the assembler to make no further calls to the exit.

Figure 43 summarizes the ADATA exit processing.

Figure 43. ADATA Exit Processing Summary

Request Value=Type	Exit Return Code	Action
1=OPEN	0	Operation successful.
	16	Assembler opens ADATA data set, and makes no further calls to the exit.
2=CLOSE	n/a	Exit should close any data sets it opened, and release any storage it acquired.
5=PROCESS	0	Operation successful.
	16	Assembler makes no further calls to the exit.

Note: The ADATA exit is not called for WRITE request type.

TERM Exit Processing

You can use the TERM exit to override the effect of the TERM assembler option. The exit does this by indicating to the assembler that it opens the terminal data set and does all terminal output processing. Then, as each terminal record is passed to the exit, the exit can decide whether to write the record, and where to write the record. For instance, the exit can write the terminal records to a different data set to which the assembler would normally write them.

The TERMINAL exit is not called if you specify the NOTERM assembler option. If you wish to process the terminal records in the exit, but you do not want the assembler to write the records to the normal output data set, you can do one of the following:

- Instruct the assembler to discard the terminal records by setting the exit return code

or

- Suppress the terminal output as follows:

MVS Provide a `//SYSTERM DD DUMMY` JCL statement.
CMS Issue a `FILEDEF SYSTERM DUMMY` command.
VSE Assign `SYSTERM` to `IGN`.

or

- Instruct the exit to issue an OPEN return code of 4

The assembler calls the TERMINAL exit with the following request types:

OPEN

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 1 (OPEN) at the start of the assembly.

The exit may set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Instructs the assembler to open the terminal data set, and supply the terminal output records to the exit in later PROCESS calls.

The exit can set the record length for the terminal data set by setting the reason code to 4 and the buffer length field. The buffer length field can be set to any value from 1 to 255 on MVS and CMS, or from 1 to 125 on VSE. If the value is zero or greater than 255 on MVS and CMS, or zero or greater than 125 on VSE, the assembler issues message `ASMA404W` and does not call the exit for any further processing.

4 Indicates that the exit writes the terminal records in later WRITE calls. If you wish to provide the assembler with the values for the system variables &SYSTERM_DSN, &SYSTERM_MEMBER, and &SYSTERM_VOLUME, the exit must set the reason code to 4 and place the values in the data set name, member name, and volume serial fields of the exit-specific information block. The assembler also shows this information in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the listing, and includes it in the associated data file Output File Information record.

16 Instructs the assembler to open the terminal data set and make no further calls to the exit.

If you provide a character string in the *str6* suboption of the EXIT assembler option, the buffer pointer field points to the character string, and the buffer length contains the length of the character string. The buffer length is set to zero if there is no character string.

CLOSE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 2 (CLOSE) at the end of the assembly. The exit should close any data sets it opened and release any storage that it acquired.

WRITE

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 4 (WRITE) when the exit is writing the terminal records. The buffer pointer field points to the terminal record, and the buffer length contains the length of the record.

The user exit should maintain the absolute record number and the relative record number. These fields are set to zero before the OPEN request.

PROCESS

The assembler calls the exit with a request type of 5 (PROCESS) when the assembler is writing the terminal records, and it has a record for the exit to process. The address of the record is in the buffer pointer field, and the length is in the buffer length field.

The exit can set the return code in the Exit Parameter List to one of the following:

0 Indicates that the record has been accepted, and the assembler is to write it to the terminal data set. The exit may modify the record before it returns control to the assembler. The user exit may also insert extra records in the terminal by setting the reason code to 4. The assembler writes the current record and then calls the user exit with an empty buffer. The exit must place the additional terminal record in the area pointed to by the buffer pointer field. The exit can continue to supply additional records by setting the reason code to 4. The exit must keep track of when the assembler calls it with an empty buffer, and ensure that it resets the reason code to zero to resume normal processing.

4 Instructs the assembler to discard the terminal record.

16 Instructs the assembler to make no further calls to the exit.

Although the user exit can insert or discard records, the assembler maintains the absolute record number and relative record number.

Figure 44 summarizes the TERM exit processing.

Figure 44. TERM Exit Processing Summary

Request Value=Type	Exit Return Code	Action
1=OPEN	0	Assembler opens terminal data set. If reason code=4, exit supplies listing line length.
	4	Exit writes terminal records. If reason code=4, exit supplies system variable symbols.
	16	Assembler opens terminal data set, and makes no further calls to the exit.
2=CLOSE	n/a	Exit should close any data sets it opened, and release any storage it acquired.
4=WRITE	0	Exit writes record.
5=PROCESS	0	Record accepted. Exit can modify record. If reason code=4, the assembler, after processing the current record, provides an empty buffer for the exit to provide additional record.
	4	Requests assembler to discard record.
	16	Assembler makes no further calls to the exit.

Sample User Exits

Three sample exits are provided with High Level Assembler. They are described under:

- Appendix I, “Sample ADATA User Exit (MVS and CMS)” on page 362
- Appendix J, “Sample LISTING User Exit (MVS and CMS)” on page 369
- Appendix K, “Sample SOURCE User Exit (MVS and CMS)” on page 371

User Exit Coding Example

Figure 45 on page 117 shows how to code a user exit. The exit is called “MYEXIT”. It uses all user exit types and all request types. It uses the field AXPUSER to anchor the storage it has acquired to make it reenterable.

This user exit is not supplied with High Level Assembler. This exit is written for MVS and CMS only.

The user exit does not show examples of how to open, read, write, or close a data set when it is responsible for opening the data set. Instead, it provides source records from its own storage, and writes output records to the operator using the WTO macro.

The user exit can be invoked as the following exit types.

SOURCE Exit—INEXIT: If you specify EXIT(INEXIT(MYEXIT)), the exit allows the assembler to open the input data set. The exit issues a WTO for each record read from the input data set.

If you specify EXIT(INEXIT(MYEXIT(EXIT))), the exit opens the input data set. It passes the following records to the assembler:

```
SMALL    TITLE 'Test the assembler exits'
         MACRO
         LITTLE
         BSM   0,14  Return
         MEND
         START
         OUTER
         LITTLE
         REPRO
This is to be written to the punch data set
         COPY  TINY
         END
```

LIBRARY Exit—LIBEXIT: If you specify EXIT(LIBEXIT(MYEXIT)), the exit allows the assembler to open the library data set. The exit issues a WTO for each record read from the library data set.

If you specify EXIT(LIBEXIT(MYEXIT(EXIT))), the exit opens the library data set. It passes the records for the following macros and COPY members to the assembler:

- Macro OUTER
- Macro INNER
- COPY member TINY
- COPY member TINY1

If you specify EXIT(LIBEXIT(MYEXIT(BOTH))), the exit and the assembler opens the library data sets. The exit passes the records for the following macros and COPY members to the assembler:

- Macro OUTER
- Macro INNER
- COPY member TINY
- COPY member TINY1

LISTING Exit—PRTEXIT: If you specify EXIT(PRTEXIT(MYEXIT)), the exit allows the assembler to open the listing data set. The exit issues a WTO for the first 80 characters of each listing record.

If you specify EXIT(PRTEXIT(MYEXIT(EXIT))), the exit opens the listing data set. The exit issues a WTO for the first 80 characters of each listing record passed to the exit.

OBJECT and PUNCH Exit—OBJEXIT: If you specify EXIT(OBJEXIT(MYEXIT)), the exit allows the assembler to open the object and punch data sets. The exit issues a WTO for each object record written to the object and punch data set.

If you specify EXIT(OBJEXIT(MYEXIT(EXIT))), the exit opens the object and punch data set. The exit issues a WTO for each object record passed to the exit.

ADATA Exit—ADEXIT: If you specify EXIT(ADEXIT(MYEXIT)), the exit issues a WTO for the first 80 characters of each record written to the associated data file.

TERM Exit—TRMEXIT: If you specify EXIT(TRMEXIT(MYEXIT)), the exit allows the assembler to open the terminal data set. The exit issues a WTO for the first 68 characters of each terminal record.

If you specify EXIT(TRMEXIT(MYEXIT(EXIT))), the exit opens the terminal data set. The exit issues a WTO for the first 68 characters of each terminal record passed to the exit.

```
MYEXIT   TITLE '- EXAMPLE OF A USER EXIT'                               00001000
************************************************************************ 00002000
*                                                                      * 00003000
* This sample user exit demonstrates how to code a user exit.          * 00004000
* It has code to demonstrate the use of SOURCE, LIBRARY, LISTING,      * 00005000
* PUNCH, OBJECT, ADATA and TERM exits.                                 * 00006000
*                                                                      * 00007000
* This user exit uses the field AXPUSER to anchor the storage it has   * 00008000
* acquired to make it reenterable. If the user exit does not need to   * 00009000
* be reenterable, this code is not required.                           * 00010000
*                                                                      * 00011000
* REGISTER USAGE:                                                      * 00012000
*    R0  - WORK                                                        * 00013000
*    R1  - WORK                                                        * 00014000
*    R2  - WORK                                                        * 00015000
*    R3  - WORK                                                        * 00016000
*    R4  - WORK                                                        * 00017000
*    R5  - POINTER TO DCB (MVS/CMS) ONLY                               * 00018000
*    R6  - POINTER TO SOURCE INFORMATION                               * 00019000
*    R7  - POINTER TO ERROR BUFFER                                     * 00020000
*    R8  - POINTER TO BUFFER                                           * 00021000
*    R9  - POINTER TO REQUEST INFORMATION                              * 00022000
*    R10 - POINTER TO ORIGINAL PASSED PARAMETER                        * 00023000
*    R11 - NOT USED.                                                   * 00024000
*    R12 - PROGRAM SECTION BASE REGISTER                               * 00025000
*    R13 - SAVEAREA AND DYNAMIC STORAGE AREA                           * 00026000
*    R14 - RETURN ADDRESS OF CALLING MODULE                            * 00027000
*    R15 - ENTRY POINT OF CALLED MODULE                                * 00028000
*                                                                      * 00029000
************************************************************************ 00030000
         PRINT NOGEN                                                    00031000
         EJECT                                                          00032000
```

Figure 45 (Part 1 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
*********************************************************************** 00033000
* MYEXIT   Entry                                                       * 00034000
* - Save the registers.                                                * 00035000
* - Acquire the dynamic storage on the first entry and save the        * 00036000
*   address in AXPUSER.                                                * 00037000
* - Chain the save areas using the forward and backward pointers.      * 00038000
* - Address the data areas passed.                                     * 00039000
* - Process the required exit according to the 'Exit type' passed.     * 00040000
*********************************************************************** 00041000
MYEXIT   CSECT                                                          00042000
         STM   R14,R12,12(R13)         Save registers                   00043000
         LR    R12,R15                 Set up first base register       00044000
         USING MYEXIT,R12,R11                                           00045000
         LA    R11,2048(,R12)                                           00046000
         LA    R11,2048(,R11)          Set up second base register      00047000
         LR    PARMREG,R1              Save parameter list address      00048000
         USING AXPXITP,PARMREG                                          00049000
         L     REQREG,AXPRIP           Get address of exit parm list    00050000
         USING AXPRIL,REQREG                                            00051000
         ICM   R1,B'1111',AXPUSER      Get address of user area         00052000
         BNZ   CHAIN                   Yes, use area                    00053000
         LA    0,WORKLEN               Otherwise, get length            00054000
         GETMAIN R,LV=(0)              and getmain storage              00055000
         ST    R1,AXPUSER              Save it for later                00056000
         XC    0(WORKLEN,R1),0(R1)     Clear area                       00057000
CHAIN    DS    0H                                                       00058000
         ST    R13,4(R1)               Save previous pointer            00059000
         ST    R1,8(R13)               Save next pointer                00060000
         LR    R13,R1                  Set savearea/workarea address    00061000
         USING WORKAREA,R13                                             00062000
         SPACE 1                                                        00063000
         L     BUFREG,AXPBUFP          Get address of buffer            00064000
         USING BUFF,BUFREG                                              00065000
         L     ERRREG,AXPERRP          Get address of error buffer      00066000
         USING ERRBUFF,ERRREG                                           00067000
         L     SRCREG,AXPSIP           Get address of source info       00068000
         USING AXPSIL,SRCREG                                            00069000
         L     DCBREG,AXPDCBP          Get address of DCB               00070000
         USING IHADCB,DCBREG                                            00071000
         SPACE 1                                                        00072000
         XC    AXPRETC,AXPRETC         Zero the return code             00073000
         L     R15,AXPTYPE             Load the exit type value (1-7)   00074000
         BCTR  R15,0                   Decrement by 1                   00075000
         SLL   R15,1                   Multiply by 2                    00076000
         LH    R15,EXITADDR(R15)       Index into address list          00077000
         AR    R15,R12                 Calculate the address            00078000
         BR    R15                     Branch to applicable routine     00079000
         SPACE 1                                                        00080000
EXITADDR DC    Y(SOURCE-MYEXIT)                                         00081000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY-MYEXIT)                                        00082000
         DC    Y(LISTING-MYEXIT)                                        00083000
         DC    Y(PUNCH-MYEXIT)                                          00084000
         DC    Y(OBJECT-MYEXIT)                                         00085000
         DC    Y(ADATA-MYEXIT)                                          00086000
         DC    Y(TERM-MYEXIT)                                           00087000
         DC    Y(*-*)                                                   00088000
         EJECT                                                          00089000
```

Figure 45 (Part 2 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
************************************************************************ 00090000
* MYEXIT   Exit1                                                       * 00091000
* - Restore the callers register 13                                    * 00092000
* - Restore the registers and set the register 15 to zero.             * 00093000
* - Return to the caller.                                              * 00094000
************************************************************************ 00095000
EXIT1    DS    0H                                                      00096000
         MVC   LASTOP,AXPRTYP+3        Save last operation code        00097000
         L     R13,4(,R13)             Unchain save areas              00098000
EXIT2    DS    0H                                                      00099000
         LM    R14,R12,12(R13)         Restore callers registers       00100000
         LA    R15,0                   Set the return code             00101000
         BSM   R0,R14                  Return to caller                00102000
         SPACE 1                                                       00103000
************************************************************************ 00104000
* MYEXIT   - Free storage                                              * 00105000
* - Called on a CLOSE request.                                         * 00106000
* - Free the storage acquired and zero AXPUSER.                        * 00107000
* - Go to EXIT (after R13 is restored)                                 * 00108000
************************************************************************ 00109000
FREESTOR DS    0H                                                      00110000
         XC    AXPUSER,AXPUSER         Zero User field                 00111000
         LA    0,WORKLEN               Length of area to free          00112000
         LR    R1,R13                  Address of area to free         00113000
         L     R13,4(,R13)             Restore callers register 13     00114000
         FREEMAIN R,A=(1),LV=(0)       Free the storage acquired       00115000
         B     EXIT2                                                   00116000
         SPACE 1                                                       00117000
************************************************************************ 00118000
* MYEXIT   - Logic error                                               * 00119000
* - If an error occurred, set up the error message in the buffer       * 00120000
*   and length in AXPERRL.  Set the severity code.                     * 00121000
* - Set the return code to 20.                                         * 00122000
* - Return to the caller.                                              * 00123000
************************************************************************ 00124000
LOGICERR DS    0H                                                      00125000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCBAD)     Severe error occurred           00126000
         MVC   ERRBUFF(ERRMSGL),ERRMSG Set up error message            00127000
         MVC   AXPERRL,=A(ERRMSGL)     Set up error message length     00128000
         MVC   AXPSEVC,=A(20)          Set up error message severity   00129000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00130000
         EJECT                                                         00131000
```

Figure 45 (Part 3 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
*********************************************************************** 00132000
* SOURCE EXIT                                                         * 00133000
* - Process required request type                                     * 00134000
*********************************************************************** 00135000
SOURCE   DS    0H                                                     00136000
         L     R15,AXPRTYP            Get the request type value (1-5) 00137000
         BCTR  R15,0                  Decrement by 1                   00138000
         SLL   R15,1                  Multiply by 2                    00139000
         LH    R15,SOURCE_ADDR(R15)   Index into Address list         00140000
         AR    R15,R12                Calculate the address            00141000
         BR    R15                    Branch to applicable routine     00142000
SOURCE_ADDR DC Y(SOURCE_OPEN-MYEXIT)                                   00143000
         DC    Y(SOURCE_CLOSE-MYEXIT)                                 00144000
         DC    Y(SOURCE_READ-MYEXIT)                                  00145000
         DC    Y(SOURCE_WRITE-MYEXIT)                                 00146000
         DC    Y(SOURCE_PROCESS-MYEXIT)                               00147000
         DC    Y(*-*)                                                 00148000
         SPACE 1                                                      00149000
*********************************************************************** 00150000
* SOURCE EXIT - Process OPEN request                                  * 00151000
* - Pick up character string if it is supplied.                       * 00152000
* - Set return code indicating whether the assembler or user exit     * 00153000
*   will open the primary input data set.                             * 00154000
* - Open data set if required.                                        * 00155000
*********************************************************************** 00156000
SOURCE_OPEN     DS    0H                                               00157000
         MVI   OPENPARM,C' '          Clear open parm                  00158000
         MVC   OPENPARM+1(L'OPENPARM-1),OPENPARM                       00159000
         L     R1,AXPBUFL             Get the Buffer length            00160000
         LTR   R1,R1                  Is string length zero?           00161000
         BZ    SOURCE_NOSTR           Yes, no string passed            00162000
         BCTR  R1,0                   Decrement for execute            00163000
         EX    R1,UPPERSTR            Move and uppercase string        00164000
SOURCE_NOSTR    DS    0H                                               00165000
         CLC   OPENPARM(8),=CL8'EXIT'  Will user exit read input?       00166000
         BE    SOURCE_OPEN_EXIT       Yes                              00167000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(0)          assembler to read primary input  00168000
         B     EXIT1                  Return                           00169000
SOURCE_OPEN_EXIT DS   0H                                               00170000
         OI    OPENFLAG,EXIT          Set flag                         00171000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCOPN)    User exit to read primary input  00172000
         LA    R1,SRC1                Address first source record      00173000
         ST    R1,CURR_PTR            Set up pointer                   00174000
         B     EXIT1                  Return                           00175000
         SPACE 1                                                      00176000
*********************************************************************** 00177000
* SOURCE EXIT - Process CLOSE request                                 * 00178000
* - Close data set if required.                                       * 00179000
* - Free storage and return.                                          * 00180000
*********************************************************************** 00181000
SOURCE_CLOSE    DS    0H                                               00182000
         B     FREESTOR                                               00183000
         SPACE 1                                                      00184000
```

Figure 45 (Part 4 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
********************************************************************** 00185000
* SOURCE EXIT - Process READ request                                 * 00186000
* - Provide source information on first read.                        * 00187000
* - Read primary input record and place in buffer.                   * 00188000
* - Set return code to 16 at end of file.                            * 00189000
********************************************************************** 00190000
SOURCE_READ     DS    0H                                             00191000
         CLI   LASTOP,AXPROPN          Was last operation OPEN?       00192000
         BNE   SOURCE_READ2                                           00193000
         MVC   AXPMEMN,=CL255'Member'                                 00194000
         MVC   AXPMEMT,=CL255'None'                                   00195000
         MVC   AXPDSN,=CL255'INPUT.data set.NAME'                     00196000
         MVC   AXPVOL,=CL255'VOL001'                                  00197000
         MVC   AXPREAC,=A(AXPEISA)     Indicate source info available 00198000
         XC    AXPRELREC,AXPRELREC     Set Relative Record No. to 0   00199000
         XC    AXPABSREC,AXPABSREC     Set Absolute Record No. to 0   00200000
SOURCE_READ2    DS    0H                                             00201000
         L     R1,CURR_PTR             Get record address             00202000
         CLI   0(R1),X'FF'             Is it EOF?                     00203000
         BE    SOURCE_EOF              Yes, set return code           00204000
         MVC   0(80,BUFREG),0(R1)                                     00205000
         LA    R1,80(,R1)                                             00206000
         ST    R1,CURR_PTR             Point to next source record    00207000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                   00208000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)             Issue WTO for source record    00209000
         L     R1,AXPRELREC            Update                         00210000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                 Relative Record               00211000
         ST    R1,AXPRELREC              Number                       00212000
         L     R1,AXPABSREC            Update                         00213000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                 Absolute Record               00214000
         ST    R1,AXPABSREC              Number                       00215000
         B     EXIT1                                                  00216000
SOURCE_EOF      DS    0H                                             00217000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCEOD)     End of file on input           00218000
         B     EXIT1                                                  00219000
         SPACE 1                                                      00220000
********************************************************************** 00221000
* SOURCE EXIT - Process WRITE request                                * 00222000
* - Not valid for SOURCE exit.                                       * 00223000
* - Set return code to 20 and set up error message.                  * 00224000
********************************************************************** 00225000
SOURCE_WRITE    DS    0H                                             00226000
         B     LOGICERR                                               00227000
         SPACE 1                                                      00228000
********************************************************************** 00229000
* SOURCE EXIT - Process PROCESS request                              * 00230000
* - Exit may modify the record, have the assembler discard the       * 00231000
*   record or insert additional records by setting the return code   * 00232000
*   and/or reason code.                                              * 00233000
********************************************************************** 00234000
SOURCE_PROCESS  DS    0H                                             00235000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                   00236000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)             Issue WTO for source record    00237000
         B     EXIT1                                                  00238000
         EJECT                                                        00239000
```

Figure 45 (Part 5 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
************************************************************************ 00240000
* LIBRARY EXIT                                                         * 00241000
* - Process required request type                                      * 00242000
************************************************************************ 00243000
LIBRARY  DS    0H                                                      00244000
         L     R15,AXPRTYP            Get the request type value (1-8) 00245000
         BCTR  R15,0                  Decrement by 1                   00246000
         SLL   R15,1                  Multiply by 2                    00247000
         LH    R15,LIBRARY_ADDR(R15)  Index into Address list          00248000
         AR    R15,R12                Calculate the address            00249000
         BR    R15                    Branch to applicable routine     00250000
LIBRARY_ADDR DC Y(LIBRARY_OPEN-MYEXIT)                                 00251000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY_CLOSE-MYEXIT)                                 00252000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY_READ-MYEXIT)                                  00253000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY_WRITE-MYEXIT)                                 00254000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY_PR_MAC-MYEXIT)                                00255000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY_PR_CPY-MYEXIT)                                00256000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY_FIND_MAC-MYEXIT)                              00257000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY_FIND_CPY-MYEXIT)                              00258000
         DC    Y(LIBRARY_EOM-MYEXIT)                                   00259000
         DC    Y(*-*)                                                  00260000
         SPACE 1                                                       00261000
************************************************************************ 00262000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Process OPEN request                                  * 00263000
* - Pick up character string if it is supplied.                        * 00264000
* - Set return code indicating whether the assembler, user exit or     * 00265000
*   both will process the library.                                     * 00266000
* - Open data set if required.                                         * 00267000
************************************************************************ 00268000
LIBRARY_OPEN    DS    0H                                               00269000
         MVI   OPENPARM,C' '          Clear open parm                  00270000
         MVC   OPENPARM+1(L'OPENPARM-1),OPENPARM                       00271000
         L     R1,AXPBUFL             Get the Buffer length            00272000
         LTR   R1,R1                  Is string length zero?           00273000
         BZ    LIBRARY_NOSTR          Yes, no string passed            00274000
         BCTR  R1,0                   Decrement for execute            00275000
         EX    R1,UPPERSTR            Move and uppercase string        00276000
LIBRARY_NOSTR   DS    0H                                               00277000
         CLC   OPENPARM(4),=CL8'EXIT' Will user exit process library   00278000
         BE    LIBRARY_OPEN_EXIT      Yes                              00279000
         CLC   OPENPARM(4),=CL8'BOTH' Will Both process library        00280000
         BE    LIBRARY_OPEN_BOTH      Yes                              00281000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(0)          assembler to process library     00282000
         B     EXIT1                  Return                           00283000
LIBRARY_OPEN_EXIT DS   0H                                              00284000
         OI    OPENFLAG,EXIT          Set flag                         00285000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCOPN)    User exit to process library     00286000
         MVC   AXPREAC,=A(AXPEEOM)    EXIT to get End of member calls  00287000
         B     EXIT1                  Return                           00288000
LIBRARY_OPEN_BOTH DS   0H                                              00289000
         OI    OPENFLAG,BOTH          Set flag                         00290000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCOPL)    Both to process library          00291000
         MVC   AXPREAC,=A(AXPEEOM)    EXIT to get End of member calls  00292000
         B     EXIT1                  Return                           00293000
         SPACE 1                                                       00294000
```

Figure 45 (Part 6 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
************************************************************************ 00295000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Process CLOSE request                                 * 00296000
* - Close data set if required.                                        * 00297000
* - Free storage and return.                                           * 00298000
************************************************************************ 00299000
LIBRARY_CLOSE    DS    0H                                              00300000
         USING LIBSTACK,R2            Map stack entries                00301000
         ICM   R2,B'1111',STACKPTR    Check that stack is empty        00302000
         BZ    FREESTOR               It should be!                    00303000
LIBRARY_FREE_LOOP DS   0H                                              00304000
         LTR   R1,R2                  Load address for FREEMAIN        00305000
         BZ    FREESTOR               Finished here                    00306000
         L     R2,NEXT_MEM            Prepare for next loop            00307000
         LA    R0,LIBSTACK_LEN        Load length for FREEMAIN         00308000
         FREEMAIN R,A=(1),LV=(0)      Free the storage acquired        00309000
         B     LIBRARY_FREE_LOOP                                       00310000
         SPACE 1                                                       00311000
************************************************************************ 00312000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Process READ request                                  * 00313000
* - Read copy/macro source and place in buffer.                        * 00314000
* - Set return code to 16 at end of member.                            * 00315000
************************************************************************ 00316000
LIBRARY_READ     DS    0H                                              00317000
         ICM   R2,B'1111',STACKPTR    Is the stack empty?              00318000
         BZ    LIBRARY_STACK_ERR      It shouldn't be!                 00319000
         L     R1,MEM_PTR             Get record address               00320000
         CLI   0(R1),X'FF'            Is it EOF?                       00321000
         BE    LIBRARY_EOF            Yes, set return code             00322000
         MVC   0(80,BUFREG),0(R1)                                      00323000
         LA    R1,80(,R1)             Point to next record address     00324000
         ST    R1,MEM_PTR              and save in stack entry         00325000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                    00326000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)            Issue WTO for library record     00327000
         L     R1,AXPRELREC           Update                           00328000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                Relative Record                 00329000
         ST    R1,AXPRELREC             Number                        00330000
         ST    R1,MEM_RELREC           and save in stack entry          00331000
         L     R1,AXPABSREC           Update                           00332000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                Absolute Record                 00333000
         ST    R1,AXPABSREC             Number                        00334000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00335000
LIBRARY_EOF      DS    0H                                              00336000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCEOD)    End of file on input             00337000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00338000
         SPACE 1                                                       00339000
************************************************************************ 00340000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Process WRITE request                                 * 00341000
* - Not valid for LIBRARY exit.                                        * 00342000
* - Set return code to 20 and set up error message.                    * 00343000
************************************************************************ 00344000
LIBRARY_WRITE    DS    0H                                              00345000
         B     LOGICERR                                                00346000
         SPACE 1                                                       00347000
************************************************************************ 00348000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Process PROCESS MACRO/COPY request                    * 00349000
* - Exit may modify the record, have the assembler discard the         * 00350000
*   record or insert additional records by setting the return code     * 00351000
*   and/or reason code.                                                * 00352000
************************************************************************ 00353000
LIBRARY_PR_MAC  DS    0H                                              00354000
LIBRARY_PR_CPY  DS    0H                                              00355000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                    00356000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)            Issue WTO for library record     00357000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00358000
         SPACE 1                                                       00359000
```

Figure 45 (Part 7 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
*********************************************************************** 00360000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Process FIND MACRO/COPY request                      * 00361000
* - Search for the member.  Set the return code to indicate           * 00362000
*   whether the member was found.                                     * 00363000
* - If the member is found, the source information is returned.       * 00364000
*********************************************************************** 00365000
LIBRARY_FIND_MAC  DS   0H                                               00366000
LIBRARY_FIND_CPY  DS   0H                                               00367000
         CLC   AXPOPTS,=A(AXPORES)     Is it a resume request?          00368000
         BE    LIBRARY_RESUME          Yes, resume member               00369000
         LA    R3,MACA1                                                00370000
         CLC   AXPMEMN(8),=CL8'OUTER'                                  00371000
         BE    LIBRARY_FOUND                                           00372000
         LA    R3,MACB1                                                00373000
         CLC   AXPMEMN(8),=CL8'INNER'                                  00374000
         BE    LIBRARY_FOUND                                           00375000
         LA    R3,CPYA1                                                00376000
         CLC   AXPMEMN(8),=CL8'TINY'                                   00377000
         BE    LIBRARY_FOUND                                           00378000
         LA    R3,CPYB1                                                00379000
         CLC   AXPMEMN(8),=CL8'TINY1'                                  00380000
         BE    LIBRARY_FOUND                                           00381000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCMNF)     Indicate member not found       00382000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00383000
LIBRARY_FOUND     DS    0H                                            00384000
         ICM   R2,B'1111',STACKPTR     Is the stack empty?             00385000
         BZ    LIBRARY_GET_STACK                                       00386000
         CLC   AXPOPTS,=A(AXPONEST)    Is it a nested COPY/MACRO?      00387000
         BNE   LIBRARY_STACK_ERR           NO - report an error        00388000
LIBRARY_GET_STACK     DS    0H                                        00389000
         LA    R0,LIBSTACK_LEN         Load reg with length            00390000
         GETMAIN R,LV=(0)              and getmain storage             00391000
         XC    0(LIBSTACK_LEN,R1),0(R1) Clear the storage              00392000
NEW_LIBSTACK USING LIBSTACK,R1         Map the new stack entry         00393000
         ST    R2,NEW_LIBSTACK.NEXT_MEM Add new link to top of stack   00394000
         DROP  NEW_LIBSTACK                                            00395000
         ST    R1,STACKPTR             Re-anchor the stack             00396000
         LR    R2,R1                   Make the new entry current      00397000
         ST    R3,MEM_PTR              Save current record pointer     00398000
         MVC   MEM_NAME,AXPMEMN        Save name in stack entry        00399000
         MVC   AXPREAC,=A(AXPEISA)     Indicate source info available  00400000
         MVC   AXPMEMT,=CL255'None'                                    00401000
         MVC   AXPDSN,=CL255'LIBRARY.data set.NAME'                    00402000
         MVC   AXPVOL,=CL255'VOL002'                                   00403000
         XC    AXPRELREC,AXPRELREC     Set relative record No to zero  00404000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00405000
```

Figure 45 (Part 8 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
*********************************************************************** 00406000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Process FIND (resume) request                        * 00407000
* - Set the relative record number in the parameter list              * 00408000
* N.B. if the EXIT read the records from disk, at this point it would * 00409000
*      use the information saved in the stack to reposition itself    * 00410000
*      ready for the next read. (i.e. a FIND and POINT)               * 00411000
*********************************************************************** 00412000
LIBRARY_RESUME    DS    0H            Stack Management now in EOM call 00413000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCMNF)     Assume member not found          00414000
         ICM   R2,B'1111',STACKPTR     Is the stack empty?              00415000
         BZ    LIBRARY_CHECK_BOTH      Yes - check open option          00416000
         CLC   MEM_NAME,AXPMEMN        Compare name with stack entry    00417000
         BNE   LIBRARY_CHECK_BOTH      Not equal - check open option    00418000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(0)           Correct our assumption           00419000
         L     R0,MEM_RELREC           Get saved rel rec no from stack  00420000
         ST    R0,AXPRELREC            Set relative record No           00421000
         B     EXIT1                                                    00422000
         SPACE 1                                                        00423000
*********************************************************************** 00424000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Use End of Member calls to perform stack management  * 00425000
* - Compare member name, if equal unstack the top entry               * 00426000
*********************************************************************** 00427000
LIBRARY_EOM       DS   0H                                              00428000
         ICM   R2,B'1111',STACKPTR     Is the stack empty?              00429000
         BZ    LIBRARY_CHECK_BOTH      Yes - check open option          00430000
         CLC   MEM_NAME,AXPMEMN        Compare name with stack entry    00431000
         BNE   LIBRARY_CHECK_BOTH      Not equal - check open option    00432000
         LR    R1,R2                   Load address for FREEMAIN        00433000
         L     R2,NEXT_MEM             Get address of next entry        00434000
         ST    R2,STACKPTR              and save it.                    00435000
         DROP  R2                                                       00436000
         LA    R0,LIBSTACK_LEN         Load length for FREEMAIN         00437000
         FREEMAIN R,A=(1),LV=(0)       Free the storage acquired        00438000
LIBRARY_CHECK_BOTH DS  0H                                               00439000
         CLI   OPENFLAG,BOTH           Did EXIT open with BOTH option   00440000
         BE    EXIT1                   Yes - don't issue error msg      00441000
*********************************************************************** 00442000
* LIBRARY EXIT - Stack Error Routine                                  * 00443000
* - If an error occurred, set up the error message in the buffer      * 00444000
*   and length in AXPERRL.  Set the severity code.                    * 00445000
* - Set the return code to 20.                                        * 00446000
* - Return to the caller.                                             * 00447000
*********************************************************************** 00448000
LIBRARY_STACK_ERR DS   0H                                               00449000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCBAD)     Severe error occurred            00450000
         MVC   ERRBUFF(ERRMSGL),STKMSG Set up error message             00451000
         MVC   AXPERRL,=A(STKMSGL)     Set up error message length      00452000
         MVC   AXPSEVC,=A(20)          Set up error message severity    00453000
         B     EXIT1                                                    00454000
         EJECT                                                          00455000
```

Figure 45 (Part 9 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
*********************************************************************** 00456000
* LISTING EXIT                                                        * 00457000
* - Process required request type                                     * 00458000
*********************************************************************** 00459000
LISTING  DS    0H                                                     00460000
         L     R15,AXPRTYP             Get the request type value (1-5) 00461000
         BCTR  R15,0                   Decrement by 1                 00462000
         SLL   R15,1                   Multiply by 2                  00463000
         LH    R15,LISTING_ADDR(R15)   Index into Address list        00464000
         AR    R15,R12                 Calculate the address          00465000
         BR    R15                     Branch to applicable routine   00466000
LISTING_ADDR DC Y(LISTING_OPEN-MYEXIT)                                 00467000
         DC    Y(LISTING_CLOSE-MYEXIT)                                00468000
         DC    Y(LISTING_READ-MYEXIT)                                 00469000
         DC    Y(LISTING_WRITE-MYEXIT)                                00470000
         DC    Y(LISTING_PROCESS-MYEXIT)                              00471000
         DC    Y(*-*)                                                 00472000
         SPACE 1                                                      00473000
*********************************************************************** 00474000
* LISTING EXIT - Process OPEN request                                 * 00475000
* - Pick up character string if it is supplied.                       * 00476000
* - Set return code indicating whether the assembler or the user exit * 00477000
*   will write the listing.                                           * 00478000
* - Open data set if required.                                        * 00479000
*********************************************************************** 00480000
LISTING_OPEN    DS    0H                                               00481000
         MVI   OPENPARM,C' '           Clear open parm                00482000
         MVC   OPENPARM+1(L'OPENPARM-1),OPENPARM                      00483000
         L     R1,AXPBUFL              Get the Buffer length          00484000
         LTR   R1,R1                   Is string length zero?         00485000
         BZ    LISTING_NOSTR           Yes, no string passed          00486000
         BCTR  R1,0                    Decrement for execute          00487000
         EX    R1,UPPERSTR             Move and uppercase string      00488000
LISTING_NOSTR   DS    0H                                               00489000
         CLC   OPENPARM(4),=CL8'EXIT'  Will user exit process listing 00490000
         BE    LISTING_OPEN_EXIT       Yes                            00491000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(0)           assembler to write listing     00492000
         B     EXIT1                   Return                         00493000
LISTING_OPEN_EXIT DS   0H                                              00494000
         OI    OPENFLAG,EXIT           Set flag                       00495000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCOPN)     User exit to write listing     00496000
         MVC   AXPMEMN,=CL255' '                                      00497000
         MVC   AXPMEMT,=CL255' '                                      00498000
         MVC   AXPDSN,=CL255'LISTING.data set.NAME'                   00499000
         MVC   AXPVOL,=CL255'VOL001'                                  00500000
         MVC   AXPREAC,=A(AXPEISA)     Indicate data set info available 00501000
         XC    AXPRELREC,AXPRELREC     Set Relative Record No. to 0   00502000
         XC    AXPABSREC,AXPABSREC     Set Absolute Record No. to 0   00503000
         B     EXIT1                   Return                         00504000
         SPACE 1                                                      00505000
```

Figure 45 (Part 10 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
************************************************************************ 00506000
* LISTING EXIT - Process CLOSE request                                 * 00507000
* - Close data set if required                                         * 00508000
* - Free storage and return.                                           * 00509000
************************************************************************ 00510000
LISTING_CLOSE    DS    0H                                              00511000
         B     FREESTOR                                                 00512000
         SPACE 1                                                        00513000
************************************************************************ 00514000
* LISTING EXIT - Process READ request                                  * 00515000
* - Not valid for LISTING exit.                                        * 00516000
* - Set return code to 20 and set up error message.                    * 00517000
************************************************************************ 00518000
LISTING_READ     DS    0H                                              00519000
         B     LOGICERR                                                 00520000
************************************************************************ 00521000
* LISTING EXIT - Process WRITE request                                 * 00522000
* - Write the listing record passed.                                   * 00523000
************************************************************************ 00524000
LISTING_WRITE    DS    0H                                              00525000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                     00526000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)             Issue WTO for listing record     00527000
         L     R1,AXPRELREC            Update                           00528000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                 Relative Record                 00529000
         ST    R1,AXPRELREC              Number                         00530000
         L     R1,AXPABSREC            Update                           00531000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                 Absolute Record                 00532000
         ST    R1,AXPABSREC              Number                         00533000
         B     EXIT1                                                    00534000
         SPACE 1                                                        00535000
************************************************************************ 00536000
* LISTING EXIT - Process PROCESS request                               * 00537000
* - Exit may modify the record, have the assembler discard the         * 00538000
*   record or insert additional records by setting the return code     * 00539000
*   and/or reason code.                                                * 00540000
************************************************************************ 00541000
LISTING_PROCESS DS    0H                                              00542000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                     00543000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)             Issue WTO for listing record     00544000
         B     EXIT1                                                    00545000
         EJECT                                                          00546000
```

Figure 45 (Part 11 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
*********************************************************************** 00547000
* OBJECT EXIT                                                         * 00548000
* - Process required request type                                     * 00549000
*********************************************************************** 00550000
PUNCH    DS    0H                                                       00551000
OBJECT   DS    0H                                                       00552000
         L     R15,AXPRTYP             Get the request type value (1-5) 00553000
         BCTR  R15,0                   Decrement by 1                   00554000
         SLL   R15,1                   Multiply by 2                    00555000
         LH    R15,OBJECT_ADDR(R15)    Index into Address list          00556000
         AR    R15,R12                 Calculate the address            00557000
         BR    R15                     Branch to applicable routine     00558000
OBJECT_ADDR DC Y(OBJECT_OPEN-MYEXIT)                                    00559000
         DC    Y(OBJECT_CLOSE-MYEXIT)                                   00560000
         DC    Y(OBJECT_READ-MYEXIT)                                    00561000
         DC    Y(OBJECT_WRITE-MYEXIT)                                   00562000
         DC    Y(OBJECT_PROCESS-MYEXIT)                                 00563000
         DC    Y(*-*)                                                   00564000
         SPACE 1                                                        00565000
*********************************************************************** 00566000
* OBJECT EXIT - Process OPEN request                                  * 00567000
* - Pick up character string if it is supplied.                       * 00568000
* - Set return code indicating whether the assembler or the user exit * 00569000
*   will write the object/punch records.                              * 00570000
* - Open data set if required                                         * 00571000
*********************************************************************** 00572000
OBJECT_OPEN    DS    0H                                                00573000
         MVI   OPENPARM,C' '           Clear open parm                  00574000
         MVC   OPENPARM+1(L'OPENPARM-1),OPENPARM                        00575000
         L     R1,AXPBUFL              Get the Buffer length            00576000
         LTR   R1,R1                   Is string length zero?           00577000
         BZ    OBJECT_NOSTR            Yes, no string passed            00578000
         BCTR  R1,0                    Decrement for execute            00579000
         EX    R1,UPPERSTR             Move and uppercase string        00580000
OBJECT_NOSTR   DS    0H                                                00581000
         CLC   OPENPARM(4),=CL8'EXIT'  Will user exit process object    00582000
         BE    OBJECT_OPEN_EXIT        Yes                              00583000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(0)           assembler to write object/punch  00584000
         B     EXIT1                   Return                           00585000
OBJECT_OPEN_EXIT DS   0H                                                00586000
         OI    OPENFLAG,EXIT           Set flag                         00587000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCOPN)     User exit to write object/punch  00588000
         MVC   AXPMEMN,=CL255'Member'                                   00589000
         MVC   AXPMEMT,=CL255' '                                        00590000
         MVC   AXPDSN,=CL255'OBJECT.data set.NAME'                      00591000
         MVC   AXPVOL,=CL255'VOL001'                                    00592000
         MVC   AXPREAC,=A(AXPEISA)     Indicate data set info available 00593000
         XC    AXPRELREC,AXPRELREC     Set Relative Record No. to 0     00594000
         XC    AXPABSREC,AXPABSREC     Set Absolute Record No. to 0     00595000
         B     EXIT1                   Return                           00596000
         SPACE 1                                                        00597000
```

Figure 45 (Part 12 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
*********************************************************************** 00598000
* OBJECT EXIT - Process CLOSE request                                 * 00599000
* - Close data set if required.                                       * 00600000
* - Free storage and return.                                          * 00601000
*********************************************************************** 00602000
OBJECT_CLOSE    DS    0H                                              00603000
         B     FREESTOR                                                00604000
         SPACE 1                                                       00605000
*********************************************************************** 00606000
* OBJECT EXIT - Process READ request                                  * 00607000
* - Not valid for OBJECT exit.                                        * 00608000
* - Set return code to 20 and set up error message.                   * 00609000
*********************************************************************** 00610000
OBJECT_READ     DS    0H                                              00611000
         B     LOGICERR                                                00612000
*********************************************************************** 00613000
* OBJECT EXIT - Process WRITE request                                 * 00614000
* - Write the source record passed.                                   * 00615000
*********************************************************************** 00616000
OBJECT_WRITE    DS    0H                                              00617000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                    00618000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)             Issue WTO for object record     00619000
         L     R1,AXPRELREC            Update                          00620000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                 Relative Record                00621000
         ST    R1,AXPRELREC              Number                        00622000
         L     R1,AXPABSREC            Update                          00623000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                 Absolute Record                00624000
         ST    R1,AXPABSREC              Number                        00625000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00626000
         SPACE 1                                                       00627000
*********************************************************************** 00628000
* OBJECT EXIT - Process PROCESS request                               * 00629000
* - Exit may modify the record, have the assembler discard the        * 00630000
*   record or insert additional records by setting the return code    * 00631000
*   and/or reason code.                                               * 00632000
*********************************************************************** 00633000
OBJECT_PROCESS DS    0H                                               00634000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                    00635000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)             Issue WTO for object record     00636000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00637000
         EJECT                                                         00638000
```

Figure 45 (Part 13 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
*********************************************************************** 00639000
* ADATA EXIT                                                          * 00640000
* - Process required request type                                     * 00641000
*********************************************************************** 00642000
ADATA    DS    0H                                                       00643000
         L     R15,AXPRTYP            Get the request type value (1-5) 00644000
         BCTR  R15,0                  Decrement by 1                   00645000
         SLL   R15,1                  Multiply by 2                    00646000
         LH    R15,ADATA_ADDR(R15)    Index into Address list          00647000
         AR    R15,R12                Calculate the address            00648000
         BR    R15                    Branch to applicable routine     00649000
ADATA_ADDR DC  Y(ADATA_OPEN-MYEXIT)                                     00650000
         DC    Y(ADATA_CLOSE-MYEXIT)                                    00651000
         DC    Y(ADATA_READ-MYEXIT)                                     00652000
         DC    Y(ADATA_WRITE-MYEXIT)                                    00653000
         DC    Y(ADATA_PROCESS-MYEXIT)                                  00654000
         DC    Y(*-*)                                                   00655000
         SPACE 1                                                        00656000
*********************************************************************** 00657000
* ADATA EXIT - Process OPEN request                                   * 00658000
* - Pick up character string if it is supplied.                       * 00659000
*********************************************************************** 00660000
ADATA_OPEN    DS    0H                                                  00661000
         MVI   OPENPARM,C' '          Clear open parm                  00662000
         MVC   OPENPARM+1(L'OPENPARM-1),OPENPARM                       00663000
         L     R1,AXPBUFL             Get the Buffer length            00664000
         LTR   R1,R1                  Is string length zero?           00665000
         BZ    ADATA_NOSTR            Yes, no string passed            00666000
         BCTR  R1,0                   Decrement for execute            00667000
         EX    R1,UPPERSTR            Move and uppercase string        00668000
ADATA_NOSTR   DS    0H                                                  00669000
         B     EXIT1                  Return                           00670000
         SPACE 1                                                        00671000
*********************************************************************** 00672000
* ADATA EXIT - Process CLOSE request                                  * 00673000
* - Close data set if required.                                       * 00674000
* - Free storage and return.                                          * 00675000
*********************************************************************** 00676000
ADATA_CLOSE    DS    0H                                                 00677000
         B     FREESTOR                                                 00678000
         SPACE 1                                                        00679000
*********************************************************************** 00680000
* ADATA EXIT - Process READ request                                   * 00681000
* - Not valid for ADATA exit.                                         * 00682000
* - Set return code to 20 and set up error message.                   * 00683000
*********************************************************************** 00684000
ADATA_READ     DS    0H                                                 00685000
         B     LOGICERR                                                 00686000
*********************************************************************** 00687000
* ADATA EXIT - Process WRITE request                                  * 00688000
* - Not valid for ADATA exit.                                         * 00689000
* - Set return code to 20 and set up error message.                   * 00690000
*********************************************************************** 00691000
ADATA_WRITE    DS    0H                                                 00692000
         B     LOGICERR                                                 00693000
         SPACE 1                                                        00694000
*********************************************************************** 00695000
* ADATA EXIT - Process PROCESS request                                * 00696000
* - Exit may check the record but it may not modify the record,       * 00697000
*   discard the record or insert additional records.                  * 00698000
*********************************************************************** 00699000
ADATA_PROCESS DS    0H                                                  00700000
         MVC   WTOL+4(80),0(BUFREG)                                     00701000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)            Issue WTO for ADATA record       00702000
         B     EXIT1                                                    00703000
         EJECT                                                          00704000
```

Figure 45 (Part 14 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
************************************************************************ 00705000
* TERM EXIT                                                            * 00706000
* - Process required request type                                      * 00707000
************************************************************************ 00708000
TERM     DS    0H                                                       00709000
         L     R15,AXPRTYP            Get the request type value (1-5) 00710000
         BCTR  R15,0                  Decrement by 1                   00711000
         SLL   R15,1                  Multiply by 2                    00712000
         LH    R15,TERM_ADDR(R15)     Index into Address list          00713000
         AR    R15,R12                Calculate the address            00714000
         BR    R15                    Branch to applicable routine     00715000
TERM_ADDR DC   Y(TERM_OPEN-MYEXIT)                                      00716000
         DC    Y(TERM_CLOSE-MYEXIT)                                     00717000
         DC    Y(TERM_READ-MYEXIT)                                      00718000
         DC    Y(TERM_WRITE-MYEXIT)                                     00719000
         DC    Y(TERM_PROCESS-MYEXIT)                                   00720000
         DC    Y(*-*)                                                   00721000
         SPACE 1                                                        00722000
************************************************************************ 00723000
* TERM EXIT - Process OPEN request                                     * 00724000
* - Pick up character string if it is supplied.                        * 00725000
* - Set return code indicating whether the assembler or the user exit * 00726000
*   will write the terminal records.                                   * 00727000
* - Open data set if required.                                         * 00728000
************************************************************************ 00729000
TERM_OPEN       DS    0H                                               00730000
         MVI   OPENPARM,C' '          Clear open parm                  00731000
         MVC   OPENPARM+1(L'OPENPARM-1),OPENPARM                       00732000
         L     R1,AXPBUFL             Get the Buffer length            00733000
         LTR   R1,R1                  Is string length zero?           00734000
         BZ    TERM_NOSTR             Yes, no string passed            00735000
         BCTR  R1,0                   Decrement for execute            00736000
         EX    R1,UPPERSTR            Move and uppercase string        00737000
TERM_NOSTR      DS    0H                                               00738000
         CLC   OPENPARM(4),=CL8'EXIT'  Will user exit process records?  00739000
         BE    TERM_OPEN_EXIT         Yes                              00740000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(0)          assembler to write records       00741000
         B     EXIT1                  Return                           00742000
TERM_OPEN_EXIT DS      0H                                               00743000
         OI    OPENFLAG,EXIT          Set flag                         00744000
         MVC   AXPRETC,=A(AXPCOPN)    User exit to write records       00745000
         MVC   AXPMEMN,=CL255' '                                       00746000
         MVC   AXPMEMT,=CL255' '                                       00747000
         MVC   AXPDSN,=CL255'TERM.data set.NAME'                       00748000
         MVC   AXPVOL,=CL255'VOL001'                                   00749000
         MVC   AXPREAC,=A(AXPEISA)    Indicate data set info available 00750000
         XC    AXPRELREC,AXPRELREC    Set Relative Record No. to 0     00751000
         XC    AXPABSREC,AXPABSREC    Set Absolute Record No. to 0     00752000
         B     EXIT1                  Return                           00753000
         SPACE 1                                                       00754000
```

Figure 45 (Part 15 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
************************************************************************ 00755000
* TERM EXIT - Process CLOSE request                                    * 00756000
* - Close data set if required.                                        * 00757000
* - Free storage and return.                                           * 00758000
************************************************************************ 00759000
TERM_CLOSE       DS    0H                                              00760000
         B     FREESTOR                                                00761000
         SPACE 1                                                       00762000
************************************************************************ 00763000
* TERM EXIT    - Process READ request                                  * 00764000
* - Not valid for TERM exit.                                           * 00765000
* - Set return code to 20 and set up error message.                    * 00766000
************************************************************************ 00767000
TERM_READ        DS    0H                                             00768000
         B     LOGICERR                                                00769000
************************************************************************ 00770000
* TERM EXIT - Process WRITE request                                    * 00771000
* - Write the terminal record passed.                                  * 00772000
************************************************************************ 00773000
TERM_WRITE       DS    0H                                             00774000
         MVC   WTOL+4(68),0(BUFREG)                                    00775000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)             Issue WTO for terminal record   00776000
         L     R1,AXPRELREC            Update                          00777000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                 Relative Record                00778000
         ST    R1,AXPRELREC              Number                        00779000
         L     R1,AXPABSREC            Update                          00780000
         LA    R1,1(R1)                 Absolute Record                00781000
         ST    R1,AXPABSREC              Number                        00782000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00783000
         SPACE 1                                                       00784000
************************************************************************ 00785000
* TERM EXIT - Process PROCESS request                                  * 00786000
* - Exit may modify the record, have the assembler discard the         * 00787000
*   record or insert additional records by setting the return code     * 00788000
*   and/or reason code.                                                * 00789000
************************************************************************ 00790000
TERM_PROCESS DS       0H                                              00791000
         MVC   WTOL+4(68),0(BUFREG)                                    00792000
         WTO   MF=(E,WTOL)             Issue WTO for terminal record   00793000
         B     EXIT1                                                   00794000
STKMSG   DC    C'LIBRARY EXIT encountered a stack error'               00795000
STKMSGL  EQU   *-ERRMSG                                               00796000
ERRMSG   DC    C'Invalid EXIT type or Request type passed to exit'     00797000
ERRMSGL  EQU   *-ERRMSG                                               00798000
WTOL     WTO   '12345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890123X00799000
               678901234567890123456789',MF=L                         00800000
UPPERSTR OC    OPENPARM(*-*),0(BUFREG) Move and uppercase string      00801000
         SPACE 1                                                       00802000
```

Figure 45 (Part 16 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
SRC1     DC    CL80'SMALL    TITLE ''Test the assembler exits'''        00803000
SRC2     DC    CL80'         MACRO'                                     00804000
SRC3     DC    CL80'         LITTLE'                                    00805000
SRC4     DC    CL80'         BSM   0,14  Return'                        00806000
SRC5     DC    CL80'         MEND'                                      00807000
SRC6     DC    CL80'         START'                                     00808000
SRC7     DC    CL80'         OUTER'                                     00809000
SRC8     DC    CL80'         LITTLE'                                    00810000
SRC9     DC    CL80'         REPRO'                                     00811000
SRC10    DC    CL80'This is to be written to the punch data set'        00812000
SRC11    DC    CL80'         COPY  TINY'                                00813000
SRC12    DC    CL80'         END'                                       00814000
SRCEND   DC    X'FF'         END OF SOURCE STMTS                        00815000
         SPACE 1                                                        00816000
MACA1    DC    CL80'         MACRO'                                     00817000
MACA2    DC    CL80'         OUTER'                                     00818000
MACA3    DC    CL80'         XR    15,15'                               00819000
MACA4    DC    CL80'         INNER'                                     00820000
MACA5    DC    CL80'         LTR   15,15'                               00821000
MACA6    DC    CL80'         MEND'                                      00822000
MACAEND  DC    X'FF'         END OF MACRO STMTS                         00823000
         SPACE 1                                                        00824000
MACB1    DC    CL80'         MACRO'                                     00825000
MACB2    DC    CL80'         INNER'                                     00826000
MACB3    DC    CL80'         LR    12,15'                               00827000
MACB4    DC    CL80'         MEND'                                      00828000
MACBEND  DC    X'FF'         END OF MACRO STMTS                         00829000
         SPACE 1                                                        00830000
CPYA1    DC    CL80'TINY     DSECT               LINE 1 TINY'           00831000
CPYA2    DC    CL80'         DS    C''TINY''       LINE 2 TINY'         00832000
CPYA3    DC    CL80'         COPY  TINY1         LINE 3 TINY'           00833000
CPYA4    DC    CL80'         DS    CL10''TINY''    LINE 4 TINY'         00834000
CPYA5    DC    CL80'         DS    CL80          LINE 5 TINY'           00835000
CPYEND   DC    X'FF'         END OF COPY STMTS                          00836000
CPYB1    DC    CL80'TINY1    DSECT                 LINE 1 TINY1'        00837000
CPYB2    DC    CL80'         DS    C''TINY1''        LINE 2 TINY1'      00838000
CPYB3    DC    CL80'         DS    CL10''TINY1''     LINE 3 TINY1'      00839000
CPYBEND  DC    X'FF'         END OF COPY STMTS                          00840000
         SPACE 1                                                        00841000
```

Figure 45 (Part 17 of 18). Example of a User Exit

```
R0       EQU   0                                                    00842000
R1       EQU   1                                                    00843000
R2       EQU   2                                                    00844000
R3       EQU   3                                                    00845000
R4       EQU   4                                                    00846000
R5       EQU   5                                                    00847000
R6       EQU   6                                                    00848000
R7       EQU   7                                                    00849000
R8       EQU   8                                                    00850000
R9       EQU   9                                                    00851000
R10      EQU   10                                                   00852000
R11      EQU   11                                                   00853000
R12      EQU   12                                                   00854000
R13      EQU   13                                                   00855000
R14      EQU   14                                                   00856000
R15      EQU   15                                                   00857000
DCBREG   EQU   5                 Address of DCB                     00858000
SRCREG   EQU   6                 Address of Source Information      00859000
ERRREG   EQU   7                 Address of Error Buffer            00860000
BUFREG   EQU   8                 Address of buffer                  00861000
REQREG   EQU   9                 Address of request information     00862000
PARMREG  EQU   10                Address or parameter               00863000
         LTORG ,                                                    00864000
         SPACE 1                                                    00865000
         DCBD  DSORG=PS,DEVD=DA                                     00866000
         SPACE 1                                                    00867000
         ASMAXITP ,              Mapping for exit parameter list    00868000
         SPACE 1                                                    00869000
BUFF     DSECT ,                                                    00870000
         DS    CL255             Record buffer                      00871000
         SPACE 1                                                    00872000
ERRBUFF  DSECT ,                                                    00873000
         DS    CL255             Error message buffer               00874000
         SPACE 1                                                    00875000
WORKAREA DSECT                                                      00876000
SAVEAREA DS    18F               Save area                          00877000
OPENPARM DS    CL64              Character string passed at open time 00878000
OPENFLAG DS    X                 Type of Operation requested at OPEN 00879000
EXIT     EQU   X'80'                                                00880000
BOTH     EQU   X'C0'                                                00881000
LASTOP   DS    X                 Previous request type              00882000
CURR_PTR DS    A                 Current record pointer             00883000
STACKPTR DS    A                 Address of top of Lib status stack 00884000
WORKLEN  EQU   *-WORKAREA                                           00885000
LIBSTACK DSECT                   Library status stack entry         00886000
NEXT_MEM DS    A                 Address of entry next in stack     00887000
MEM_PTR  DS    A                 Current record pointer             00888000
MEM_RELREC DS  F                 Current relative record number     00889000
MEM_NAME DS    CL64              Stack of saved member names        00890000
LIBSTACK_LEN  EQU   *-LIBSTACK                                      00891000
         END   MYEXIT                                               00892000
```

Figure 45 (Part 18 of 18). Example of a User Exit

Chapter 5. Providing External Functions

Two conditional assembly instructions, SETAF and SETCF, let you call routines written in a programming language that conforms to standard OS Linkage conventions. The assembler calls the external function load module and passes the address of an external function parameter list in Register 1. Each differently-named external function called in the same assembly is provided with a separate parameter list.

The SETAF instruction calls an external function module, and passes to the module any number of parameters containing *arithmetic* values. The SET symbol in the instruction is assigned the fullword value returned by the external function module.

The SETCF instruction calls an external function module, and passes to the module any number of parameters containing *character* values. The SET symbol in the instruction is assigned the character string value returned by the external function module. The character string value can be up to 255 characters long.

This chapter describes the external function processing requirements, the linkage conventions for generating an external function module, and the contents of the parameter list that the assembler passes to the module

External Function Processing

The assembler calls an external function each time it processes a SETAF or SETCF instruction. The assembler loads the external function module when the first call to the module is encountered. The assembler expects the external function module to be generated in 31-bit addressing mode (AMODE 31). The external function must return to the assembler in the same addressing mode from which it was called after restoring the registers to the values they contained at the time of the call. Only one copy of the load module is loaded, so it must be serially reusable. The assembler must be able to locate the external function module as follows:

MVS The external function must be a link-edited load module in a partitioned data set, or a program object in a PDSE, that is in the standard search sequence. The external function can also be located in the Link Pack Area (LPA) MVS

CMS The external function must have a file type of MODULE and be located on one of the accessed disks. To generate the module, use the CMS LOAD and GENMOD commands. When the LOAD command is issued, specify the RLDSAVE option to make the module relocatable. If RLDSAVE is not specified, the assembler program or data storage might be overlaid during execution. CMS

VSE The external function must be a relocatable phase in a sublibrary that is specified in the LIBDEF phase search chain. The external function can also be located in the Shared Virtual Area (SVA). VSE

Using the SIZE Option to Reserve Storage: External function modules are loaded by the assembler during the assembly, which is after the assembler completes initialization. Therefore, you should allow enough virtual storage in the address space (MVS and CMS) or the partition (VSE) in which the assembler runs,

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

so that the external function modules can be loaded successfully, and for any storage that your external function might acquire. You can reserve storage for your external function modules by reducing the amount of storage the assembler uses. Use the SIZE assembler option to control the amount of storage the assembler uses.

Linkage Conventions

External function modules are called by the assembler using standard OS Linkage conventions. The external function can be written in any language that:

- Uses standard OS linkage conventions.
- Can be called many times using the module (or phase) entry point.
- Retains storage for variables across invocations and does not require a run-time environment to be maintained across invocations.

See the specific programming language *Programmer's Guide* to determine if you can use the programming language to write an external function for the High Level Assembler.

The contents of the registers upon entry to the external function are as follows:

Register 0	Undefined
Register 1	Address of external function parameter list
Registers 2 through 12	Undefined
Register 13	Address of the 72 byte register save area
Register 14	Return address
Register 15	Address of entry point of external function

External Function Parameter List

The assembler passes a parameter list to the external function module. Register 1 points to the parameter list, and macro ASMAEFNP maps the parameter list. Figure 46 on page 137 shows the SETAF parameter list, and Figure 47 on page 138 shows the SETCF parameter list. A separate copy of the external function parameter list is passed to each external function. The sections following the figures describe each of the parameters in detail.

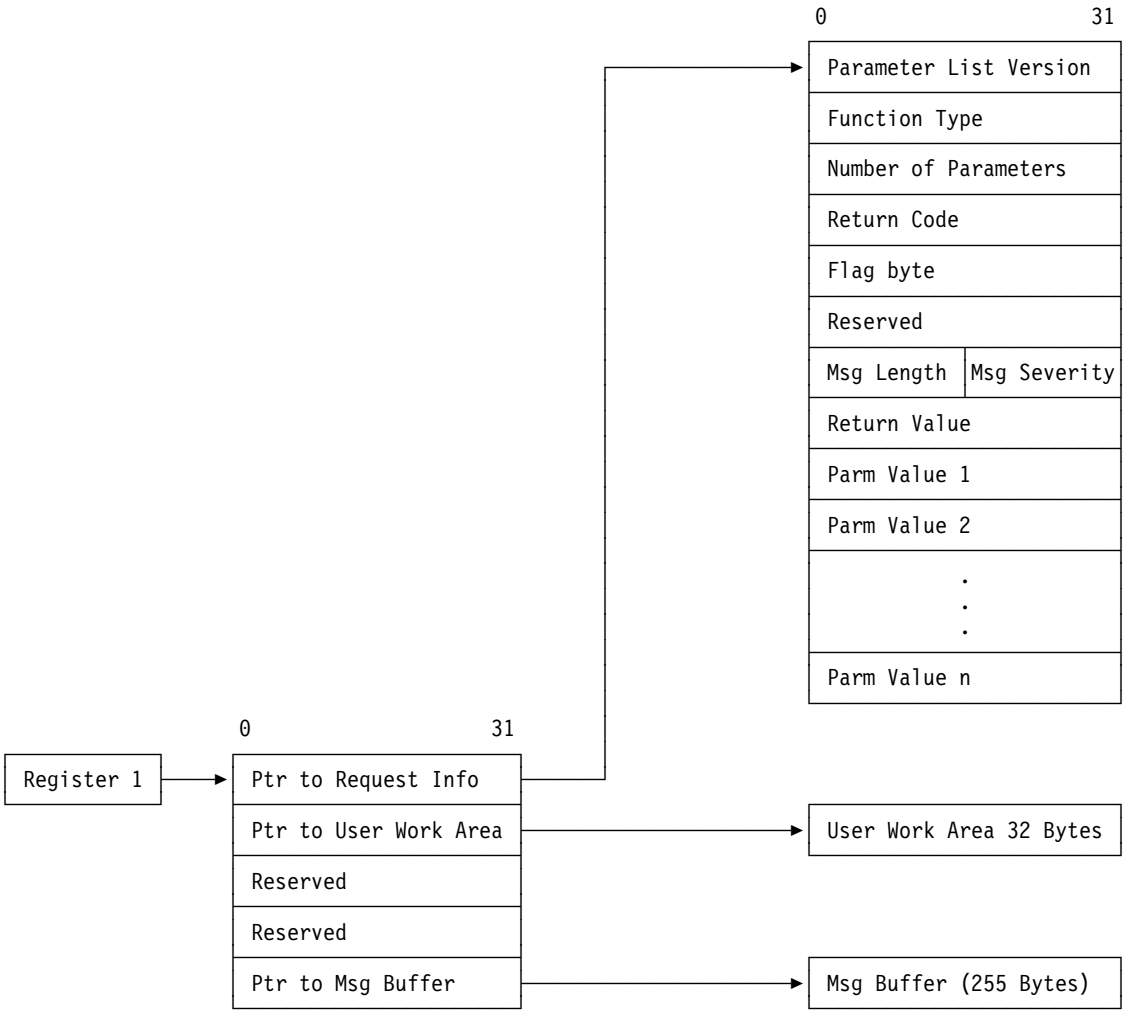


Figure 46. SETAF External Function Parameter List Format

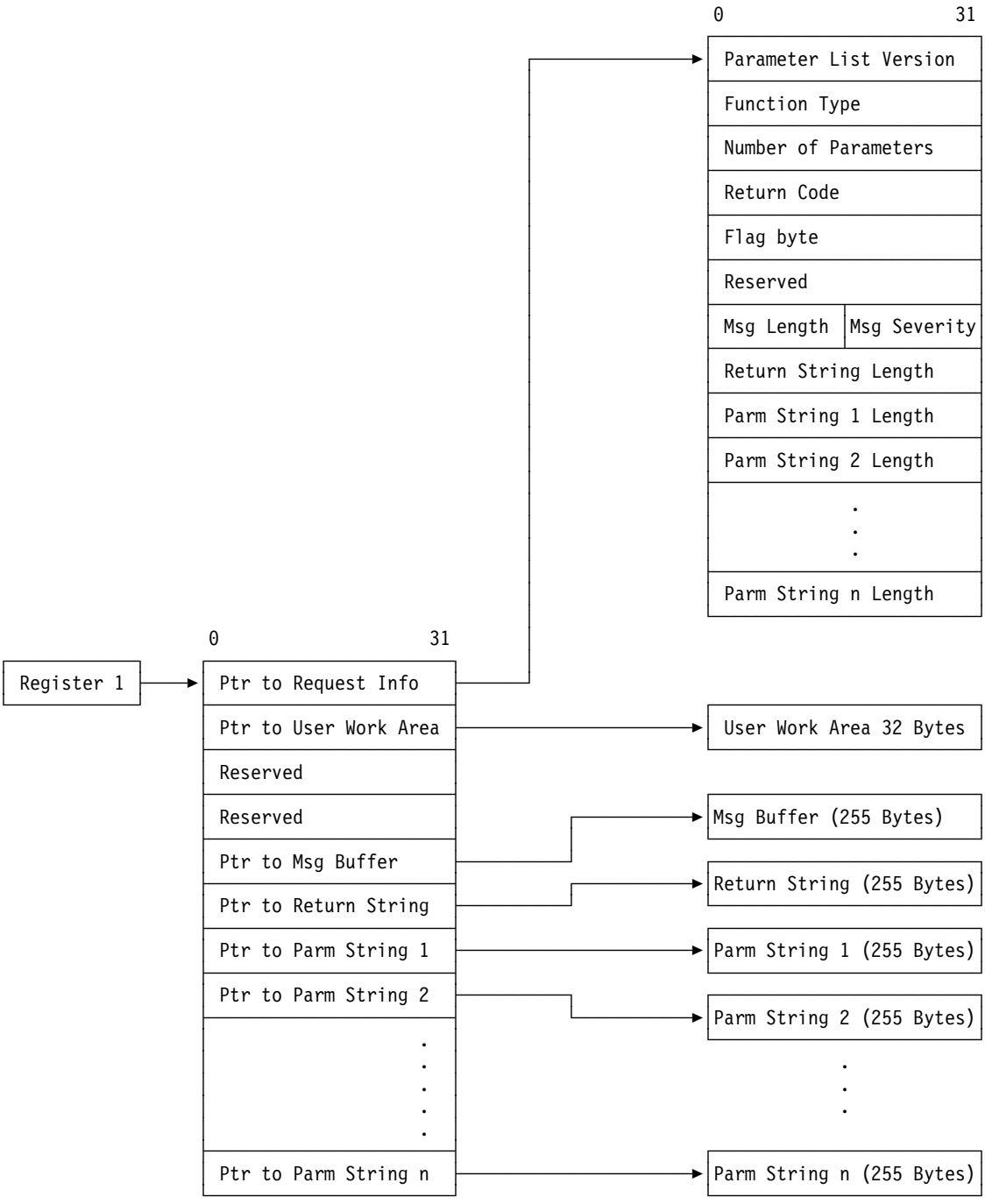


Figure 47. SETCF External Function Parameter List Format

The external function parameter list consists of the following addresses:

Request Information List

Pointer to a list of binary fullword items that describe the external function request. The assembler sets this pointer, which is always valid.

The Request Information List consists of the following fields:

Parameter List Version

A fullword identifying which version of the parameter list is provided to the external function. Only one value is allowed in this field:
2

Function Type

A fullword, set by the assembler to indicate the function type:

0 CLOSE call

1 SETAF function

2 SETCF function

Number of Parameters

A fullword indicating the number of parameters provided on the call to this external function.

The assembler always sets this field.

Return Code

A fullword, set by the external function, indicating success or failure of the operation, and action to be taken by the assembler on return from the external function:

0 Operation successful. Value or string returned.

>0 Operation failed. Request assembler to terminate immediately.

When the return code is greater than 0 the assembler issues diagnostic error message `ASMA941U`.

Flag Byte

X'80' Function requests a CLOSE call.

The CLOSE call is not enabled by default. Each time the external function is called, it is able to set (or reset) this flag to indicate that it needs to perform some extra processing (releasing storage, for example) before being deleted. The external function may therefore set the flag on one call and reset it on another.

If the flag is set at the end of the assembly, HLASM will call the function with a CLOSE code to allow it to release resources.

The assembler maintains the Flag Byte and provides it to the external function on all calls.

Reserved

This storage is reserved for future use by IBM. The external function should not use this field, nor should it rely on the contents of this field (which are liable to change without notice).

External functions can request that a message be issued on their behalf. The function provides the text of the message, and the assembler inserts the function's name and the supplied text into one of five messages. The relevant information is contained in two fields, **Message Length** and **Message Severity**:

Msg Length

A halfword, set by the external function, indicating the length of the message to be issued.

Msg Severity

A halfword, set by the external function, from which the assembler determines the associated message number. The severity code returned by the function is rounded up to a multiple of four as shown in Figure 48.

Figure 48. Message Severity and Associated Messages

Severity Code Specified	Severity Code Used	Associated Message
0	0	ASMA710I
1–4	4	ASMA711W
5–8	8	ASMA712E
9–12	12	ASMA713S
>12	16	ASMA714C

Return Value (SETAF)

A fullword, set by the external function. This field is set to zero by the assembler before the external function call.

Parm Value *n* (SETAF)

A fullword, set by the assembler, containing the value of the parameter passed to the external function.

The **Number of Parameters** field indicates the number of **Parm Value *n*** fields in the Request Information List.

Return String Length (SETCF)

An unsigned fullword, set by the external function, containing the length of the string pointed to by the **Pointer to Parm String** field.

The assembler uses this field as the length of the returned string.

If the length is greater than 255, it is reset to 255 by the assembler. The consequence of returning a string longer than 255 bytes is unpredictable.

Parm String *n* Length (SETCF)

An unsigned fullword, set by the assembler, containing the length of the string pointed to by the **Ptr to Parm String *n*** field.

The external function should use this length to determine the length of the Parm String *n* passed by the assembler.

The assembler sets this field to a value between 0 and 255 inclusive.

The **Number of Parameters** field indicates the number of **Parm String *n* Length** fields in the Request Information List.

Pointer to User Work Area

Pointer to the User Work Area.

The assembler provides four double words of storage for use by the external function. This storage is double-word aligned and the assembler initializes it to zero for the first call to the external function.

It can be used by the external function to store information (such as the address of acquired storage) between calls. The contents of this storage area are preserved across all call types (SETAF, SETCF, and CLOSE) until the assembly completes. The assembler does not use or modify the work area.

Pointer to Msg Buffer

Pointer to the “function-supplied message” area.

The assembler always sets this pointer before invoking an external function. The external function can put up to 255 bytes of message text into the area addressed by this field.

Pointer to Return String (SETCF)

Pointer to the string returned by the external function.

The assembler always sets this pointer before invoking an external function. The external function can put up to 255 bytes of character string data into the area addressed by this field.

Pointer to Parm String *n* (SETCF)

Pointer to **Parm String *n*** passed to the external function.

The assembler always sets this pointer before invoking an external function. The length of the string pointed to by this field is contained in the **Parm String *n* Length** field.

The **Number of Parameters** field in the Request Information List indicates the number of **Pointer to Parm String *n*** fields in the External Function Parameter List.

Chapter 6. Diagnosing Assembly Errors

The diagnostic facilities for High Level Assembler include:

- Diagnostic messages for assembly errors.
- A macro trace and dump facility (MHELP).
- Messages and dumps issued by the assembler if it ends abnormally.
- Diagnostic or explanatory messages issued by the source program or by macro definitions (MNOTEs).

This chapter provides an overview of these facilities. The assembly error diagnostic messages and abnormal assembly termination messages are described in detail in Appendix G, “High Level Assembler Messages” on page 309.

Assembly Error Diagnostic Messages

High Level Assembler prints most error messages in the listing immediately following the statement in error. It also prints the total number of flagged statements and their statement numbers in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the assembler listing.

The messages do not follow the statement in error when:

- Errors are detected during editing of macro definitions read from a library. A message for such an error appears after the first call in the source program to that macro definition. You can, however, bring the macro definition into the source program with a COPY statement or using the LIBMAC assembler option. The editing error messages then follow immediately after the statements in error.
- Errors are detected by the lookahead function of the assembler. (For attribute references, look-ahead processing scans for symbols defined on statements after the one being assembled.) Messages for these errors appear after the statements in which they occur. The messages may also appear at the point at which lookahead was called.
- Errors are detected on conditional assembler statements during macro generation or MHELP testing. Such a message follows the most recently generated statement or MHELP output statement.

A typical error diagnostic message is:

```
** ASMA057E UNDEFINED OPERATION CODE – xxxxxxxx
```

A copy of a segment of the statement in error, represented above by *xxxxxxxx*, is appended to the end of many messages. Normally this segment begins at the bad character or term. For some errors, however, the segment begins after the bad character or term.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

If a diagnostic message follows a statement generated by a macro definition, the following items might be appended to the error message:

- The number of the model statement in which the error occurred, or the first five characters of the macro name.
- The SET symbol, system variable, macro parameter, or value string associated with the error.

Macro Parameters: Messages may reference three types of macro parameter: the *name field* parameter, *keyword* parameters, and *positional* parameters. A reference to the name field parameter is indicated by the word "NAME" appended to the message. References to keyword and positional parameters (for which there may be multiple occurrences) are in the form "KPARM*nnnn*" and "PPARM*nnnn*" respectively, where *nnnn* is the relative number of the parameter within the macro definition.

Figure 49 shows an example of a macro with messages referencing each type of variable or parameter.

```
Active Usings: None
Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
                                    1      MACRO                                                          00001000
                                      3          4                    4                    5
                                    2 &z   parms &kw1=a,&kw2=b,&kw3=c,&kw4=d,&kw5=e,&kw6=f,&pp1,&pp2          00002000
                                    3 &c   SETC   'just a string'                                          00003000
                                    4 &ss  SETA   &c                                                      00004000
                                    5 &sv  SETA   &sysasm   2                                             00005000
                                    6 &z1  SETA   &z   3                                                  00006000
                                    7 &k1  SETA   &kw1 <-+-> 4                                            00007000
                                    8 &k5  SETA   &kw5 <-+                                                00008000
                                    9 &n   SETA   n'&syslist                                              00009000
                                   10 &pn      SETA   &syslist(&n)<-+-> 5                                 00010000
                                   11 &p2      SETA   &pp2          <-+                                   00011000
                                   12      MEND                                  5                       00012000
 000000             00000 00000    13 default CSECT                                                       00013000
                                   14 n   parms pp1,pp2,kw5=z,pp3,kw1=y,pp4,pp5,pp6                       00014000
 ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00004/C   1
 ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00005/SYSASM   2
 ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00006/Z    3
 ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00007/KPARM00001 <-+-> 4
 ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00008/KPARM00005 <-+
 ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00010/PPARM00006 <-+-> 5
 ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00011/PPARM00002 <-+
                                   15      END                                                            00015000
```

Figure 49. Sample Macro Parameter Messages

Notes to Figure 49:

1 SET symbol, and related message

2 System variable symbol, and related message

3 The name field parameter, and related message

4 Keyword parameters, and related messages

5 Positional parameters, and related messages

Conditional Assembly: If a diagnostic message follows a conditional assembly statement in the source program, the following items are appended to the error message:

- The word "OPENC", meaning "open code".
- The SET symbol, or value string, associated with the error.

Multiple Messages: Several messages can be issued for a single statement or even for a single error within a statement. This happens because each statement is usually evaluated on more than one level (for example, term level, expression level, and operand level) or by more than one phase of the assembler. Each level or phase can diagnose errors; therefore, most or all of the errors in the statement are flagged. Occasionally, duplicate error messages may occur. This is a normal result of the error detection process.

Figure 50 on page 146 is an example of High Level Assembler handling of error messages, and includes message ASMA435I to show the effect of the FLAG(RECORD) assembler option.

MNOTE Statements

An MNOTE statement is included in a macro definition or in the source program. It causes the assembler to generate an inline error or informational message.

An MNOTE appears in the listing as follows:

```
ASMA254I ***MNOTE***  statement number, severity code, message
```

Unless the severity code is shown as an asterisk (*), or the severity code is omitted, the statement number of the MNOTE is listed in the diagnostic cross-reference.

```
  Active Usings: None
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
                                      1 ********************************************************************** DIA00010
                                      2 *             SAMPLE ERROR DIAGNOSTIC MESSAGES                       * DIA00020
                                      3 *          IN SOURCE PROGRAM (OPEN CODE) AND GENERATED BY MACRO CALLS * DIA00030
                                      4 ********************************************************************** DIA00040
000000                 00000 0003C     5 A        CSECT                                                        DIA00050
000000 0000 0000             00000     6          STM   14,U2,12(13(                                           DIA00060
** ASMA044E Undefined symbol - U2
** ASMA029E Incorrect register specification - U2
** ASMA179S Delimiter error, expected right parenthesis - (
** ASMA435I Record 6 in DIAGMSG  ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
000004 05C0                           7          BALR  12,0                                                   DIA00070
                 R:C  00006           8          USING *,12                                                   DIA00080
000006 0000 0000             00000     9          ST    13,SAVE+4                                              DIA00090
** ASMA044E Undefined symbol - SAVE
** ASMA435I Record 9 in DIAGMSG  ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
                                     10          OPEN   (CRDIN,(INPUT),CRDOUT,(OUTPUT)                        DIA00100
** ASMA088E Unbalanced parentheses in macro call operand - OPEN /(CRDIN,(INPUT),CRDOUT,(OUTPUT)
** ASMA435I Record 323 in OSMACRO  MACLIB   S2(OPEN) on volume: MNT190
00000A 0700                          11+         CNOP  0,4                          ALIGN LIST TO FULLWORD      01-OPEN
00000C 4110 C00E             00014   12+         LA    1,*+8                        LOAD R1 W/LIST ADR @V6PXJRU 01-OPEN
000010 47F0 C00E             00014   13+         B     *+4                          BRANCH AROUND LIST @V6PXJRU 01-OPEN
** ASMA254I *** MNOTE ***            14+     12,***  IHB001  DCB OPERAND REQ'D-NOT SPECIFIED                    02-IHBER
                                     15          DROP  11                                                     DIA00110
** ASMA045W Register or label not previously used - 11
** ASMA435I Record 11 in DIAGMSG  ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
                                     16 ********************************************************************** DIA00120
                                     17 *     EDITING AND GENERATION ERRORS AND MNOTES FROM A LIBRARY MACRO   * DIA00130
                                     18 ********************************************************************** DIA00140
                                     19          LOADR REG1=10,REG2=8,WOOSHA,SUMA                             DIA00150
000014 58A0 C02E             00034   20+         L     10,WOOSHA                                              01-LOADR
000018 5880 C032             00038   21+         L     8,SUMA                                                 01-LOADR
                                     22          LOADR REG1=25,REG2=8,WOOSHA,MAINY                            DIA00160
00001C 0000 0000             00000   23+         L     25,WOOSHA                                              01-LOADR
** ASMA029E Incorrect register specification - 25
** ASMA435I Record 5 in TEST     MACLIB   A1(LOADR) on volume: ADISK
000020 0000 0000             00000   24+         L     8,MAINY                                                01-LOADR
** ASMA044E Undefined symbol - MAINY
** ASMA435I Record 6 in TEST     MACLIB   A1(LOADR) on volume: ADISK
                                     25          LOADR REG2=10,SUMA,MAINY                                     DIA00170
** ASMA254I *** MNOTE ***            26+     36,YOU LEFT OUT THE FIRST REGISTER                               01-LOADR
```

Figure 50 (Part 1 of 2). Sample Error Diagnostic Messages

```
                                  27 ********************************************************************** DIA00180
                                  28 *     SAMPLE IN-LINE MACRO DEFINITION                                * DIA00190
                                  29 ********************************************************************** DIA00200
                                  30          MACRO                                                        DIA00210
                                  31 &NAME    LOADR &REG1=,&REG2=,&OP1,&OP2                                DIA00220
                                  32 &R(1)    SETA  &REG1,&REG2                                            DIA00230
                                  33          AIF   (T'&REG1 EQ 'O').ERR                                   DIA00240
                                  34          L     &R(1),&OP1                                             DIA00250
                                  35          L     &R(2),&OP2                                             DIA00260
                                  36          MEXIT                                                        DIA00270
                                  37 .ERR     MNOTE 36,'YOU LEFT OUT THE FIRST REGISTER'                   DIA00280
                                  38          MEND                                                         DIA00290
                                  39 ********************************************************************** DIA00300
                                  40 *     SAMPLE MACRO CALLS WITH GENERATION ERRORS AND MNOTES           * DIA00310
                                  41 ********************************************************************** DIA00320
                                                                                                       Page    4
  Active Usings: A+X'6'(X'1000'),R12
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0       2000/09/25 17.48
                                    42          LOADR REG1=10,REG2=8,WOOSHA,SUMA                             DIA00330
000024 58A0 C02E            00034    43+         L     10,WOOSHA                                              01-00034
000028 5880 C032            00038    44+         L     8,SUMA                                                 01-00035
                                    45          LOADR REG1=25,REG2=8,WOOSHA,&MAINY                           DIA00340
** ASMA003E Undeclared variable symbol; default=0, null, or type=U - OPENC/MAINY
** ASMA435I Record 34 in DIAGMSG  ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
00002C 0000 0000            00000    46+         L     25,WOOSHA                                              01-00034
** ASMA029E Incorrect register specification - 25
** ASMA435I Record 25 in DIAGMSG  ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
000030 0000 0000            00000    47+         L     8,                                                     01-00035
** ASMA074E Illegal syntax in expression -
** ASMA435I Record 26 in DIAGMSG  ASSEMBLE A1 on volume: ADISK
                                    48          LOADR REG2=8,SUMA,MAINY                                      DIA00350
** ASMA254I *** MNOTE ***           49+     36,YOU LEFT OUT THE FIRST REGISTER                               01-00037
000034                              50 WOOSHA   DS    F                                                      DIA00360
000038                              51 SUMA     DS    F                                                      DIA00370
                                    52          END                                                          DIA00380
```

Figure 50 (Part 2 of 2). Sample Error Diagnostic Messages

Suppression of Error Messages and MNOTE Statements

Optionally, you can suppress error messages and MNOTE statements below a specified severity level by specifying the assembler option FLAG(*n*) (where *n* is the lowest severity message that the assembler issues).

Reference Information for Statements in Error

The FLAG(RECORD) assembler option instructs the assembler to issue message ASMA435I after the last error message for each statement in error. This message shows reference information, including the data set name, and member name (if applicable), and the input record number of the statement in error. When you specify this option, the assembler includes reference information with the flagged statements in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the assembler listing. The reference information includes:

- The member name (if applicable).
- The input record number of the statement in error.
- The input data set concatenation value.

Abnormal Assembly Termination

Whenever the assembly cannot complete, High Level Assembler provides a message and, in some cases, a specially formatted dump for diagnostic information. This might indicate an assembler malfunction or it might indicate a programmer error. The statement causing the error is identified and, if possible, the assembly listing up to the point of the error is printed. Appendix G, "High Level Assembler Messages" on page 309 describes the abnormal termination messages. The messages give enough information to enable you (1) to correct the error and reassemble your program, or (2) to determine that the error is an assembler malfunction.

MHELP—Macro Trace Facility

The MHELP instruction controls a set of trace and dump facilities. You select options by specifying an absolute expression in the MHELP operand field. MHELP statements can occur anywhere in open code or in macro definitions. MHELP options remain in effect until superseded by another MHELP statement.

Format of MHELP:

```
Name        Operation     Operand

            MHELP         Absolute expression, (the sum of binary or decimal options)
```

The options are:

B'1' or 1	Macro Call Trace
B'10' or 2	Macro Branch Trace
B'100' or 4	Macro AIF Dump
B'1000' or 8	Macro Exit Dump
B'10000' or 16	Macro Entry Dump
B'100000' or 32	Global Suppression
B'1000000' or 64	Macro Hex Dump
B'10000000' or 128	Suppression
Other values	Control on &SYSNDX

Refer to Appendix F, "MHELP Sample Macro Trace and Dump" on page 301 for complete details about this facility.

Part 2. Developing Assembler Programs on MVS

Chapter 7. Assembling Your Program on MVS . . . 151
Input to the Assembler . . . 151
Output from the Assembler . . . 151
Invoking the Assembler on MVS . . . 151
Invoking the Assembler on TSO . . . 153
Invoking the Assembler Dynamically . . . 154
Batch Assembling . . . 156
Input and Output Data Sets . . . 157
Work Data Set: SYSUT1 . . . 160
Specifying the Source Data Set: SYSIN . . . 160
Specifying the Option File: ASMAOPT . . . 160
Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: SYSLIB . . . 160
Specifying the Listing Data Set: SYSPRINT . . . 161
Directing Assembler Messages to Your Terminal: SYSTERM . . . 161
Specifying Object Code Data Sets: SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH . . . 161
Specifying the Associated Data Data Set: SYSADATA . . . 162
Return Codes . . . 162

Chapter 8. Linking and Running Your Program on MVS . . . 163
The Program Management Binder . . . 163
The Loader . . . 165
Creating a Load Module . . . 165
Creating a Load Module on MVS . . . 165
Creating a Load Module on TSO . . . 166
Input to the Linker . . . 166
Data Sets for Linker Processing . . . 167
Additional Object Modules as Input . . . 168
Output from the Linker . . . 169
Linker Processing Options . . . 169
Specifying Linker Options Through JCL . . . 170
Specifying Linker Options Using the TSO LINK Command . . . 170
AMODE and RMODE Attributes . . . 171
Overriding the Defaults . . . 171
Detecting Linker Errors . . . 172
Running Your Assembled Program . . . 172
Running Your Assembled Program in Batch . . . 172
Running Your Assembled Program on TSO . . . 172

Chapter 9. MVS System Services and Programming Considerations . . . 173
Adding Definitions to a Macro Library . . . 173
Using Cataloged Procedures . . . 174
Cataloged Procedure for Assembly (ASMAC) . . . 174
Cataloged Procedure for Assembly and Link (ASMACL) . . . 176
Cataloged Procedure for Assembly, Link, and Run (ASMACLG) . . . 177
Cataloged Procedure for Assembly and Run (ASMACG) . . . 178
Overriding Statements in Cataloged Procedures . . . 180
EXEC Statements . . . 180
DD Statements . . . 180
Examples of Cataloged Procedures . . . 180
Operating System Programming Conventions . . . 182

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Saving and Restoring General Register Contents 182
Ending Program Execution 183
Accessing Execution Parameters 183
Object Module Linkage 184
Modifying Program Modules 185

Chapter 7. Assembling Your Program on MVS

This chapter describes how to invoke the assembler on MVS. It describes:

- The input to the assembler.
- The output from the assembler.
- How to invoke the assembler on MVS and TSO.
- How to invoke the assembler dynamically from a program.
- How to assemble multiple source programs using the BATCH option.
- The data sets used by the assembler.
- The assembler return codes.
- The cataloged procedures of job control language supplied by IBM.

Input to the Assembler

As input, the assembler accepts a program written in the assembler language as defined in the *HLASM Language Reference*. This program is referred to as a source module. Some statements in the source module (macro or COPY instructions) may cause additional input to be obtained from a macro library.

Input can also be obtained from user exits. See Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79 for more information.

Output from the Assembler

The output from the assembler can consist of an object module, a program listing, terminal messages, and an associated data file. The object module can be written to a data set residing on a direct access device or a magnetic tape. If you specify the GOFF assembler option, the assembler produces a generalized object format module. Both formats of the object module are written to the same data set, however only one format can be produced at a time. From that data set, the object module can be read and processed by the linkage editor, the batch loader, or the DFSMS/MVS binder. See Appendix C, “Object Deck Output” on page 248 for the format of the object module. The format of the generalized object format module is described in *DFSMS/MVS Program Management*.

The program listing shows all the statements in the module, both in source and machine language format, and gives other important information about the assembly, such as error messages and cross reference information. The listing is described in detail in Chapter 2, “Using the Assembler Listing” on page 8.

Invoking the Assembler on MVS

The JCL for running an assembly includes:

- A job description.
- A statement to run the assembler.
- Definitions for the data sets needed.

The simplest way to assemble your program on MVS is to code JCL that uses the cataloged procedure shown in Figure 51 on page 152.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

```
//jobname  JOB accountno,progrname,MSGLEVEL=1   1
//stepname EXEC ASMAC                           2
//SYSIN    DD   *                               3
⋮
Assembler source statements
⋮
/*
```

Figure 51. JCL for Assembly, Using Cataloged Procedure

1 Identifies the beginning of your job to the operating system. *jobname* is the name you assign to the job. *accountno* specifies the account to which your job is charged, and *progrname* is the name of the programmer responsible for the job. `MSGLEVEL=1` specifies that the job control statements connected with this job are to be listed. Check what parameters are required at your installation and how they must be specified.

2 Calls the cataloged procedure ASMAC. As a result, a number of job control statements are included in the job from the procedure library. ASMAC is described under "Cataloged Procedure for Assembly (ASMAC)" on page 174; an expanded job stream is shown there.

3 Specifies that the assembler language source program follows immediately after this statement.

These statements cause the assembler to assemble your program, produce a listing and write an object module to the SYSLIN data set. If you do not want an object module written to the SYSLIN data set, use the following job control statements to assemble the program:

```
//jobname  JOB  accountno,progrname,MSGLEVEL=1
//stepname EXEC ASMAC,PARM=NOOBJECT
//SYSIN    DD   *
⋮
Assembler source statements
⋮
/*
```

Figure 52. JCL for Assembly, Using Cataloged Procedure, with NOOBJECT

Assembler Options: The second parameter (`PARM`) specifies the assembler option `NOOBJECT`, which tells the assembler not to write the object module to SYSLIN. For a full discussion of assembler options, see Chapter 3, "Controlling Your Assembly with Options" on page 38.

Using your own JCL: The cataloged procedures might not comply with your data processing requirements. Figure 53 on page 153 shows sample job control statements that you can use instead to assemble your program.

```
//ASMJOB   JOB  1,MSGLEVEL=1
//ASSEMBLY EXEC PGM=ASMA90,PARM=OBJECT
//SYSUT1   DD   UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1))
//SYSPRINT DD   SYSOUT=A
//SYSTERM  DD   SYSOUT=A
//ASMAOPT  DD   DSNAME=PROG.OPTIONS,DISP=OLD
//SYSLIN   DD   DSNAME=PROG.OBJ,DISP=OLD
//SYSPUNCH DD   DSNAME=PROG.DECK,DISP=OLD
//SYSADATA DD   DSNAME=PROG.ADATA,DISP=OLD
//SYSIN    DD   DSNAME=PROG.SOURCE,DISP=SHR
```

Figure 53. JCL for Assembly

Refer to “Bibliography” on page 386 for a list of JCL manuals that describe additional techniques for specifying job control statements and overriding cataloged procedures.

Invoking the Assembler on TSO

On TSO, you can use TSO commands, command lists (CLISTs), REXX EXECs, or ISPF to assemble your program. Figure 54 shows how to allocate the data sets and assemble the source program using the ALLOCATE and CALL commands. The commands are shown in bold text.

```
READY
ALLOCATE FILE(SYSUT1) CYLINDERS SPACE(1 1) REUSE
READY
ALLOCATE FILE(SYSPRINT) DATASET(*) REUSE
READY
ALLOCATE FILE(SYSTERM) DATASET(*) REUSE
READY
ALLOCATE FILE(SYSLIN) DATASET(PROG.OBJ) NEW TRACKS SPACE(3,3)
    BLKSIZE(80) LRECL(80) RECFM(F B) CATALOG REUSE
READY
ALLOCATE FILE(SYSADATA) DATASET(PROG.ADATA) NEW CYLINDERS
    SPACE(1 1) BLKSIZE(8192) LRECL(8188) RECFM(V B)
    REUSE CATALOG
READY
ALLOCATE FILE(SYSIN) DATASET(PROG.ASSEMBLE) SHR REUSE
READY
ALLOCATE FILE(ASMAOPT) DATASET(PROG.OPTIONS) SHR REUSE
READY
CALL 'SYS1.LINKLIB(ASMA90)' 'ADATA,LIST(133),OBJECT,TERM'
⋮
Assembler listing and messages
⋮
READY
FREE FILE(SYSADATA,SYSUT1,SYSPRINT,SYSTERM,SYSLIN,SYSIN)
READY
```

Figure 54. Assembling on TSO

You can enter ALLOCATE commands in any order; however, you must enter all of them before you start the assembly. Figure 55 shows the data sets you must allocate when you specify particular assembler options.

Figure 55. Assembler Options and Data Sets Required

Option Specified	Data Sets Required
Any	SYSUT1 and SYSIN
LIST	SYSPRINT
TERM	SYSTERM
OBJECT	SYSLIN
DECK	SYSPUNCH
ADATA	SYSADATA

Exit Option: If you specify the EXIT option, the user exit program module must be in a partitioned data set that is in the standard search sequence, including the Link Pack Area (LPA).

Invoking the Assembler Dynamically

You can invoke High Level Assembler from a running program using the CALL, LINK, XCTL, or ATTACH system macro instructions.

When you use CALL, LINK, or ATTACH, you can supply:

- The assembler options.
- The ddnames of the data sets to be used during processing.

If you use XCTL, you cannot pass options to the assembler. The assembler uses the installation default options. Figure 56 shows how to invoke the assembler dynamically.

Figure 56. Invoking the Assembler Dynamically

Name	Operation	Operand
symbol	CALL	ASMA90,(*optionlist*[,*ddnamelist*]),VL
	LINK or ATTACH	EP=ASMA90,PARAM=(*optionlist*[,*ddnamelist*]),VL=1

ASMA90 The load module name and entry point to invoke the assembler. ASMA90 may be invoked in either 24-bit or 31-bit addressing mode.

EP Specifies the symbolic name of the assembler load module and entry point.

PARAM Specifies, as a sublist, address parameters to be passed from the program to the assembler. The first word in the address parameter list (*optionlist*) contains the address of the option list. The second word (*ddnamelist*) contains the address of the ddname list.

optionlist
Specifies the address of a variable-length list containing the options. The address of an option list must be provided even if no options are required.

The option list must begin on a halfword boundary. The first two bytes contain the number of bytes in the remainder of the list. If no options are specified, the count must be zero. The option list is free form, with each field separated from the next by a comma. No blanks should appear in the list, except within the string specified for the EXIT or SYSPARM options, providing the string is enclosed within single quotes.

ddnamelist
Specifies the address of a variable-length list containing alternative ddnames for the data sets used during assembler processing. If standard ddnames are used, this operand can be omitted.

The ddname list must begin on a halfword boundary. The first two bytes contain the number of bytes in the remainder of the list. Each name of less than 8 bytes must be left-justified and padded to 8 bytes with blanks. If an alternative ddname is omitted, the standard name is assumed. If the name is omitted within the list, the 8-byte entry must contain binary zeros. Names can be omitted from the end merely by shortening the list. The sequence of the 8-byte entries in the ddname list is as follows:

Entry	Alternative
1	SYSLIN
2	Not applicable
3	Not applicable
4	SYSLIB
5	SYSIN
6	SYSPRINT
7	SYSPUNCH
8	SYSUT1
9	Not applicable
10	Not applicable
11	Not applicable
12	SYSTERM
13	Not applicable
14	Not applicable
15	Not applicable
16	SYSADATA
17	Not applicable
18	Not applicable
19	Not applicable
20	ASMAOPT

Overriding ddname: Any overriding ddname specified when High Level Assembler was installed, occupies the corresponding position in the above list. The overriding ddname can also be overridden during invocation. For example, if SYSWORK1 replaced SYSUT1, it occupies position 8 in the above list. However, SYSWORK1 can be overridden by another name during invocation.

VL specifies that the sign bit is to be set to 1 in the last word of the parameter address list. `VL` must be specified for the CALL macro and `VL=1` for the LINK or ATTACH macros.

```
DYNAMICM CSECT
DYNAMICM RMODE  24
DYNAMICM AMODE  ANY
BEGIN    SAVE   (14,12)
         USING  BEGIN,15
         ST     13,SAVEAREA+4
         LA     13,SAVEAREA
         CALL   ASMA90,(OPTIONS),VL
         L      13,SAVEAREA+4
         RETURN (14,12)
SAVEAREA DS     18F
OPTIONS  DC     Y(OPTIONSL)
OPTS     DC     C'XREF(SHORT)'
OPTIONSL EQU    *-OPTS
         END
```

Figure 57. Sample Program to Call the Assembler Dynamically

Batch Assembling

A sequence of separate assembler programs may be assembled with a single invocation of the assembler when the BATCH option is specified. The object programs produced from this assembly may be linked into either a single program module or separate program modules.

When the BATCH option is specified, each assembler program in the sequence must be terminated by an END statement, including the last program in the batch. If an END statement is omitted, the program will be assembled with the next program in the sequence. If the END statement is omitted from the last program in the sequence, an END statement will be generated by the assembler.

If you want to produce more than one program module, a NAME control statement must be written for each one. The NAME statement must be written after the object module. The following example shows how to create two program modules, SECT1 and SECT2.

```
SECT1    CSECT          Start of first load module
         ⋮
         Source instructions
         ⋮
         END            End of first load module
         PUNCH ' NAME SECT1(R)'
         END
SECT2    CSECT          Start of second load module
         ⋮
         Source instructions
         ⋮
         END            End of second load module
         PUNCH ' NAME SECT2(R)'
         END
```

Input and Output Data Sets

Depending on the options in effect, High Level Assembler requires the following data sets, as shown in Figure 58:

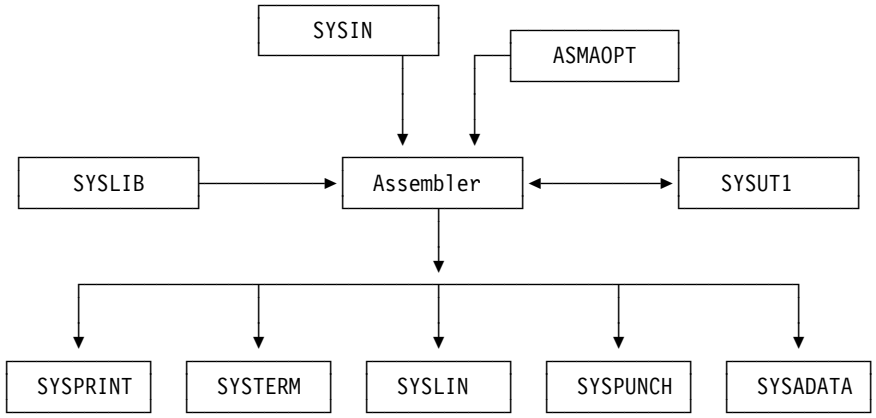


Figure 58. High Level Assembler Files

You can override the ddnames during installation or when invoking the assembler dynamically (see “Invoking the Assembler Dynamically” on page 154).

High Level Assembler requires the following data sets:

SYSUT1 A work data set used as intermediate external storage when processing the source program. This data set is used when there is not enough main storage available to assemble in-storage.

If the value specified for the SIZE option is large enough, an in-storage assembly is done and the work data set SYSUT1 can be omitted, although a warning message is issued.

SYSIN An input data set containing the source statements to be processed.

In addition, the following seven data sets might be required:

ASMAOPT An input data set containing an assembler option list.

SYSLIB A data set containing macro definitions (for macro definitions not defined in the source program), source code to be called through COPY assembler instructions, or both.

SYSPRINT A data set containing the assembly listing (if the LIST option is in effect).

SYSTERM A data set containing a condensed form of SYSPRINT, principally flagged statements and their error messages (only if the TERM option is in effect).

SYSPUNCH A data set containing object module output (only if the DECK option is in effect).

SYSLIN A data set containing object module output usually for the linkage editor, loader, or binder (only if the OBJECT option is in effect).

SYSADATA A data set containing associated data output (only if the ADATA option is in effect).

The data sets listed above are described on page 160. Figure 59 describes the characteristics of these data sets, including the characteristics set by the assembler and those you can override. The standard ddname that defines the data set appears as the heading for each data set description.

Figure 59. Assembler Data Set Characteristics

Data Set	Access Method	Logical Record Length (LRECL)	Block Size (BLKSIZE)	Record Format (RECFM)
SYSUT1	BSAM	Same as BLKSIZE	4	F
SYSIN	QSAM	80	5	9
ASMAOPT	QSAM	12	7	Fixed/Variable
SYSLIB	BPAM	80	6	9
SYSPRINT	QSAM	1	7 8	10
SYSTERM	QSAM	2	5 8	11
SYSPUNCH	QSAM	80	5	13
SYSLIN	QSAM	3	5	13
SYSADATA	QSAM	8188	8192 or greater 8	VB

Notes to Figure 59:

1 If you specify EXIT(PRTEXIT) and the user exit specifies the logical record length, the logical record length returned is used, unless the SYSPRINT data set has a variable-length record format in which case the LRECL used is 4 bytes greater than the value returned by the exit. If EXIT(PRTEXIT) has not been specified or the user exit does not specify a record length, the record length from the DD statement or data set label is used if present. Otherwise, the record length defaults to 133, or 137 if the record format is variable-length.

The minimum record length allowed for SYSPRINT is 121, and the maximum allowed is 255. If the record format is variable-length, the LRECL should be at least 125 or 137 depending on the LIST option.

2 If you specify EXIT(TRMEXIT) and the user exit specifies the logical record length, the logical record length returned is used. If EXIT(TRMEXIT) has not been specified or the user exit does not specify a record length, the record length from the DD statement or data set label is used if present. If not present, the record length defaults to the record length for SYSPRINT (if the LIST option is in effect) or 133 otherwise.

The maximum record length allowed for SYSTERM is 255.

3 If you specify the OBJECT option the logical record length must be 80. If you specify the GOFF option the object module can be generated with either fixed-length records of 80 bytes, or variable-length records up to BLKSIZE of 32720.

Hierarchical File System: If you wish to copy the object data set to a file in a Hierarchical File System, for example under UNIX System Services®, the object data set must be created with fixed-length records.

4 You can specify a block size (BLKSIZE) between 2008 and 32760 bytes on the DD statement or in the data set label. The BLKSIZE should be a multiple of 8. If it is not, it is rounded to the next lower multiple of 8. If you do not specify BLKSIZE, the assembler sets the block size to 4088.

5 If specified, the BLKSIZE must equal the LRECL or be a multiple of the LRECL. If BLKSIZE is not specified, it is set to LRECL.

Refer to the applicable *Linkage Editor and Loader* manual, or *DFSMS/MVS Program Management* manual, for the block size requirements of SYSPUNCH and SYSLIN, if you use them as input to the linkage editor, or to the DFSMS/MVS Binder.

6 The BLKSIZE on the DD statement or the data set label must be equal to, or be a multiple of, the LRECL.

7 The blocksize must be equal to or a multiple of the record length if the record format is fixed. If the record format is variable the blocksize must be at least 4 bytes greater than the record length.

8 High Level Assembler supports MVS/DFP™ System-Determined Blocksize (SDB) for all output data sets except SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH.

System-Determined Blocksize is applicable when all of the following conditions are true:

- The operating system is MVS/ESA with a MVS/DFP level of 3.1 or higher.
- The data set is NOT allocated to SYSOUT.
- A block size of zero is specified or the blocksize is not specified in the JCL.
- A record length (LRECL) is specified.
- A record format (RECFM) is specified.
- A data set organization (DSORG) is specified.

If these conditions are met, MVS/DFP selects the appropriate blocksize for a new data set depending on the device type selected for output.

If the System-Determined Blocksize feature is not available, and your JCL omits the blocksize, or specifies a blocksize of zero, the assembler uses the logical record length as the blocksize.

9 Set by the assembler to F (or FB) if necessary.

10 Both fixed and variable formats are supported; the default is fixed. If the DD statement or data set label specifies machine or ASA control characters, the ASA option is set or reset accordingly. If machine or ASA control characters are not specified on the DD statement or data set label, the record format is modified according to the ASA option.

11 Set by the assembler to F (or FB) if necessary. The record format is set to FA (or FBA) if the ASA option is specified or FM (or FBM) otherwise.

12 The minimum record length allowed for ASMAOPT is 5 if the record format is variable-length or 1 if the record format is fixed-length. The maximum record length allowed is 32756 if the record format is variable length or 32760 if the record format is fixed-length.

13 Both fixed and variable formats are supported; the default is fixed.

Work Data Set: SYSUT1

The assembler uses this work data set as an intermediate external storage device when processing the source program. The input/output device assigned to this data set must be a direct-access device. The assembler does not support multivolume utility data sets.

This data set is only used if there is insufficient virtual storage allocated to assemble the program in storage.

Specifying the Source Data Set: SYSIN

Define the data sets that contain your source code with the SYSIN DD statement:

```
//SYSIN    DD   DSN=datasetname,DISP=SHR
```

This data set contains the input to the assembler; that is, the assembler language source statements to be processed.

You can place your assembler source code in the input stream. To do this, use this SYSIN DD statement:

```
//SYSIN    DD   *
```

When you use the (*) DD parameter, the source code must follow the DD statement. If another job step follows the assembly, the EXEC statement for that step must follow the last source statement, or end-of-file (/*) statement.

The IBM-supplied High Level Assembler procedures do not contain the SYSIN DD statement. The DD statement for SYSIN must be provided in the input stream:

```
//STEP1    EXEC ASMAC
//SYSIN    DD   *
⋮
assembler source statements
⋮
/*
```

Specifying the Option File: ASMAOPT

Define the data set that contains the options with the ASMAOPT DD statement:

```
//ASMAOPT DD   DSN=datasetname,DISP=SHR
```

This data set contains the option list for the assembler.

Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: SYSLIB

Define the partitioned data sets that contain your macro or copy members with the SYSLIB DD statement:

```
//SYSLIB   DD   DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
```

From this data set, the assembler obtains macro definitions and assembler language statements to be called by the COPY assembler instruction. Each macro definition or sequence of assembler language statements is a separate member in a partitioned data set. The member name is the operation code used to invoke the macro in a macro instruction, or the operand name in a COPY instruction.

The data set can be defined as SYS1.MACLIB, or your private macro definition or COPY library. SYS1.MACLIB contains macro definitions for the system macro instructions provided by IBM. Your private library may be concatenated with SYS1.MACLIB. The two libraries must have the same logical record length (80 bytes), but the blocking factors may be different. The applicable *JCL Reference* explains the concatenation of data sets.

Specifying the Listing Data Set: SYSPRINT

Define the data set that contains your listing output with the SYSPRINT DD statement:

```
//SYSPRINT DD   SYSOUT=A
```

The assembler uses this data set to produce a listing. You can direct output to a printer, a magnetic tape, or a direct-access storage device. The assembler uses ASA or machine control characters for this data set according to the ASA option.

Directing Assembler Messages to Your Terminal: SYSTERM

Define the data set that contains your terminal message's output with the SYSTERM DD statement:

```
//SYSTERM  DD   SYSOUT=A
```

On TSO, the terminal messages can be sent to your terminal by using the following ALLOC statement:

```
ALLOC F(SYSTERM) DA(*)
```

This data set is used by the assembler to store a condensed form of SYSPRINT containing flagged statements and their associated error messages. It is intended for output to a terminal, but can also be routed to a printer, a magnetic tape, or a direct-access storage device. Depending on the ASA option, the assembler uses ASA or machine control characters to skip to a new line for this data set.

Specifying Object Code Data Sets: SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH

Define the data set that contains your object output with the SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH DD statements. When the OBJECT option is in effect, the object module is written to SYSLIN. When the DECK option is in effect, the object module is written to SYSPUNCH. When both OBJECT and DECK options are in effect, the object module is written to both SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH.

You can direct the SYSLIN data set to either a card punch or an intermediate storage device capable of sequential access:

```
//SYSLIN   DD   DSN=dsname,UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//              SPACE=(subparms),DISP=(MOD,PASS)
```

You can direct the SYSPUNCH data set to either a card punch or an intermediate storage device capable of sequential access:

```
//SYSPUNCH DD   SYSOUT=B
```

Specifying the Associated Data Data Set: SYSADATA

Define the data set that contains your associated data output with the SYSADATA DD statement:

```
//SYSADATA DD   DSN=dsname,UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//              SPACE=(subparms),DISP=(MOD,PASS)
```

The associated data data set contains information regarding the assembly. It provides information for use by symbolic debugging and cross-reference tools. The SYSADATA data set must be directed to an intermediate storage device capable of sequential access.

Return Codes

High Level Assembler issues return codes for use with the IF job control statement and the COND parameter of the JOB and EXEC job control language statements. The IF statement and the COND parameter enable you to skip or to run a job step, depending on the results (indicated by the return code) of a previous job step. It is explained in the applicable *JCL Reference*.

The return code issued by the assembler is the highest severity code that is associated with any error detected in the assembly or with any MNOTE message produced by the source program or macro instructions. The return code can be controlled by the FLAG(*n*) assembler option described on page 52. See Appendix G, “High Level Assembler Messages” on page 309 for a listing of the assembler errors and their severity codes.

Chapter 8. Linking and Running Your Program on MVS

The output from an assembly is an *object module*. An object module is a relocatable module of machine code that is not executable.

Before an object module can be executed, you must use the binder to convert it into executable machine code.

The Program Management Binder

The binder converts object modules into an executable program unit that can either be read directly into virtual storage for execution, or stored in a program library. Executable program units can either be load modules, or *program objects*. You can use the binder to:

- Convert object or load modules, or program objects, into a program object and store it in a PDSE program library.
- Convert object or load modules, or program objects, into a load module and store it in a partitioned data set program library.
- Convert object or load modules, or program objects, into an executable program in virtual storage and execute the program.

For the remainder of this section, the binder is referred to as the *linker*, unless otherwise stated.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

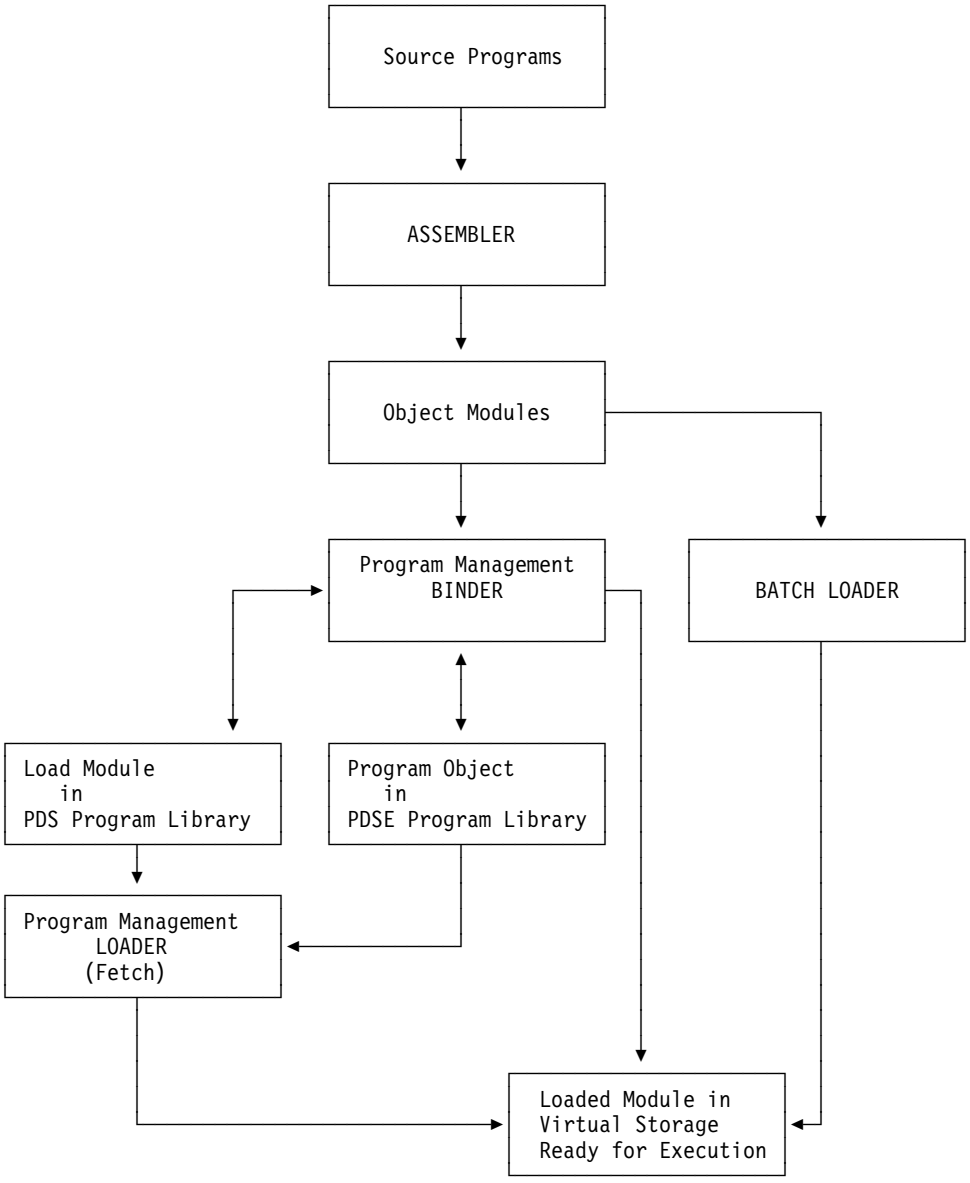


Figure 60. Using the Program Management Components

The Loader

The loader component of MVS/DFP, and the batch loader component of DFSMS/MVS perform the same task. Given this, the batch loader is hereafter referred to as the *loader*, unless otherwise stated.

The loader combines the basic editing and loading services, that can also be provided by the linkage editor and program fetch, into one step. The loader accepts object modules and load modules, and loads them into virtual storage for execution. The loader does not produce load modules that can be stored in program libraries.

To keep a load module for later execution, use the linkage editor or binder.

Creating a Load Module

The linker processes your object module (assembled source program) and prepares it for execution. The processed object module becomes a load module or program object.

Optionally, the linker can process more than one object module, or load module, and convert them into one or more load modules, or program objects, by using the NAME control statement. See “Batch Assembling” on page 156 for an example that uses the NAME control statement.

Creating a Load Module on MVS

Figure 61 shows the general job control for creating a load module or program object.

```
//jobname  JOB  acctno,name,MSGLEVEL=1
⋮
//stepname EXEC PGM=HEWL,PARM=(options)
//SYSPRINT DD   SYSOUT=A
//SYSLMOD  DD   DSN=&&name(member),UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//              DISP=(NEW,PASS),SPACE=(subparms)
//SYSLIB   DD   DSN=dsname,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT1   DD   UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(subparms)
//SYSLIN   DD   DSN=MYOBJ,DISP=SHR
```

Figure 61. Sample Job Control for Creating a Load Module

The SYSUT1 DD statement is used by the linkage editor, and ignored by the binder.

High Level Assembler provides cataloged procedures for the following:

- Assembly and link.
- Assembly, link, and go (to execute your program).
- Assembly and go using the loader.

See “Using Cataloged Procedures” on page 174.

Creating a Load Module on TSO

You can invoke the linker on TSO (Time Sharing Option) with the LINK and LOADGO commands.

The LINK command creates a program module and saves it in either a partitioned data set or PDSE program library. If you run the LINK command in a system with DFSMS/MVS, you can use the BINDER and NOBINDER option on the LINK command to control whether your object module is linked using the binder or the MVS/DFP linkage editor.

The LOADGO command creates and executes a program module. The module is not saved in a program library.

Examples Using the LINK Command: If your assembly produced an object module in a data set called `PROGRAM1.OBJ`, issue the following LINK command at your terminal:

```
LINK PROGRAM1
```

The program module is placed by default in member TEMPNAME of a partitioned data set, or PDSE program library called *userid*.PROGRAM1.LOAD. If you want to put the program module in a different data set, issue the following LINK command:

```
LINK PROGRAM1 LOAD(data-set-name(member-name))
```

where *data-set-name* is a program library, and and *member-name* is the name of the program module.

The following example shows how to link two object modules and place the resulting program module in member TEMPNAME of the *userid*.LM.LOAD data set:

```
LINK PROGRAM1,PROGRAM2 LOAD(LM)
```

If your program refers to other modules (that is, external references), you can instruct the linker to search for them by including the LIB parameter on the LINK command. The LIB parameter specifies one or more names of library data sets to search. For example:

```
LINK PROGRAM1 LIB('SALESLIB.LIB.SUBRT2')
```

This request searches library SALESLIB.LIB.SUBRT2.

You can also specify link options on the LINK and LOADGO commands. See “Specifying Linker Options Using the TSO LINK Command” on page 170.

Linker options are discussed in “Linker Processing Options” on page 169.

For more information about using the LINK and LOADGO commands, see the *TSO/E Command Reference*.

Input to the Linker

Your input to the linker can be:

- One or more object modules.
- Linker control statements (that you can generate using the PUNCH assembler statement).

- Previously linked program modules you want to combine into one load module.

The *primary* input to the linker can be:

- A sequential data set.
- A member of a partitioned data set.
- A member of a PDSE (if you are using the binder to link your program).
- Concatenated data sets of any combination of the above.

The primary input data set can contain object modules, linker control statements, and linked program modules.

You specify the primary input data set with the SYSLIN DD statement.

Secondary input to the linker can consist of object modules or program modules that are not part of the primary input data set, but are included explicitly or automatically in the program module using the *automatic call library* process.

An automatic call library contains modules that you can use as secondary input to the linkage editor to resolve external symbols left undefined after all primary input has been processed.

The automatic call library may be in the form of:

- Libraries containing object modules, with or without linkage editor control statements.
- Libraries containing linked program modules.

Secondary input for the linkage editor is composed of either all object modules or all load modules, but it cannot contain both types. Secondary input for the binder can be any combination of object modules, load modules libraries, and program object libraries.

You specify the secondary input data sets with a SYSLIB DD statement and, if the data sets are object modules, the LIBRARY and INCLUDE control statements. If you have multiple secondary input data sets, concatenate them as follows:

```
//SYSLIB   DD   DSNAME=ORDERLIB,DISP=SHR
//         DD   DSNAME=SALESLIB,DISP=SHR
```

In this case, both the partitioned data sets (library) named ORDERLIB and SALESLIB are available as the automatic call library. The LIBRARY control statement has the effect of concatenating any specified member names with the automatic call library.

Data Sets for Linker Processing

You need the following data sets for linker processing. Others may be necessary if you have several additional libraries or object modules. If you need additional libraries and object modules, include a DD statement for them in your JCL. Figure 62 summarizes the data sets that you need for linking.

Figure 62. Data Sets Used for Linking

DD name	Type	Function
SYSLIN[1]	Input	Primary input data, normally the output of the assembler
SYSPRINT[1]	Output	Diagnostic messages Informative messages Module map Cross reference list
SYSLMOD[1]	Output	Output data set for the program module
SYSUT1[1]	Utility	Work data set. Not used by the binder.
SYSLIB	Library	Automatic call library
SYSTERM[2]	Output	Numbered error or warning messages
User specified[3]		Additional object modules and program modules

Notes:

1 Required data set
2 Required if TERM option is specified
3 Optional data set

Additional Object Modules as Input

You can use the INCLUDE and LIBRARY control statements to:

1. Specify additional object modules you want included in the program module (INCLUDE statement).
2. Specify additional libraries to search for object modules to include in the program module (LIBRARY statement). This statement has the effect of concatenating any specified member names with the automatic call library.

Figure 63 shows an example that uses the INCLUDE and LIBRARY control statements.

```
⋮
//SYSLIN   DD   DSNAME=&&GOFILE,DISP=(SHR,DELETE)
//         DD   *
 INCLUDE MYLIB(ASMLIB,ASSMPGM)
 LIBRARY ADDLIB(COBREGN0)
/*
```

Figure 63. INCLUDE and LIBRARY Control Statements

Data sets you specify on the INCLUDE statement are processed as the linker encounters the statement. In contrast, data sets you specify on the LIBRARY statement are used only when there are unresolved references after all the other input is processed.

Output from the Linker

SYSLMOD and SYSPRINT are the data sets used for linker output. The output varies depending on the options you select, as shown in Figure 64.

Figure 64. Options for Controlling Linker Output

To Get This Output	Use This Option
A map of the program modules generated by the linker.	MAP
A cross-reference list of data variables	XREF
Informative messages	Default
Diagnostic messages	Default
Listing of the linker control statements	LIST
One or more program modules (which you must assign to a library)	Default

You always receive diagnostic and informative messages as the result of linking. You can get the other output items by specifying options in the PARM parameter of the EXEC statement in your JCL.

The program modules are written to the data set defined by the SYSLMOD DD statement in your JCL. Diagnostic output is written to the data set defined by the SYSPRINT DD statement.

Linker Processing Options

Linker options can be specified either:

- In your JCL,

or

- When you invoke the LINK or LOADGO command on TSO.

Figure 65 describes some of these options.

Figure 65 (Page 1 of 2). Link Processing Options

Option	Action	Comments
LET	Lets you specify the severity level of an error, to control whether the linker marks the program module as non-executable.	The LET option is used differently between the linkage editor and the binder.
MAP NOMAP	Use MAP if you want to get a map of the generated program modules. NOMAP suppresses this map listing.	The map of the program module gives the length and location (absolute addresses) of the main program and all subprograms. NOMAP is the default.
NCAL	When you use the no automatic library call option (NCAL), the linker does not search for library members to resolve external references.	If you specify NCAL, you don't need to use the LIBRARY statement, and you don't need to supply the SYSLIB DD statement.

Figure 65 (Page 2 of 2). Link Processing Options

Option	Action	Comments
RENT NORENT	The RENT option indicates to the linker that the object module is reenterable and can be used by more than one task at a time. This type of module cannot be modified by itself or any other module when it is running. The assembler RENT option can be used to assist in determining whether the object module is reentrant. NORENT indicates that the object module is not reentrant.	The assembler RENT option and linker RENT option are independent of each other. NORENT is the default linker option.
AMODE 24 | 31 | ANY	Use AMODE (addressing mode) to override the default AMODE attribute established by the assembler.	See "AMODE and RMODE Attributes" on page 171.
RMODE 24 | ANY	Use RMODE (residence mode) to override the default RMODE attribute established by the assembler.	See "AMODE and RMODE Attributes" on page 171.
PRINT	When you use the TSO commands LINK or LOADGO, the PRINT option specifies where to print diagnostic messages and the module map. PRINT is also an option of the loader, and controls whether diagnostic messages are produced.	See also "Specifying Linker Options Using the TSO LINK Command" on page 170.

Specifying Linker Options Through JCL

In your link JCL, use the PARM statement to specify options:

```
PARM=(linker-options)
PARM.stepname=('linker-options')
```

linker-options
A list of linker options (see Figure 65 on page 169). Separate the options with commas.

stepname
The name of the step in the cataloged procedure that contains the PARM statement.

Specifying Linker Options Using the TSO LINK Command

You specify linker options on the LINK and LOADGO commands. The following example shows you how to specify the LET, MAP, and NOCALL options when you issue the LINK command:

```
LINK PROGRAM1 LET MAP NOCALL
```

You can use the PRINT option to display the module map at your terminal:

```
LINK PROGRAM1 MAP PRINT(*)
```

The * indicates that the output from the linker is displayed at your terminal. NOPRINT suppresses any messages.

AMODE and RMODE Attributes

Every program that runs in MVS/ESA is assigned two attributes, an AMODE (addressing mode) and an RMODE (residency mode):

AMODE Specifies the addressing mode in which the program is designed to receive control. Generally, the program is also designed to run in that mode, although a program can switch modes and can have different AMODE attributes for different entry points within a program module.

MVS/ESA uses a program's AMODE attribute to determine whether a program invoked using ATTACH, LINK, or XCTL is to receive control in 24-bit or 31-bit addressing mode.

RMODE Indicates where the program can reside in virtual storage.

MVS/ESA uses the RMODE attribute to determine whether a program must be loaded into virtual storage below 16 megabytes, or can reside anywhere in virtual storage (above or below 16 megabytes).

Valid AMODE and RMODE specifications are:

Attribute	Meaning
AMODE=24	24-bit addressing mode
AMODE=31	31-bit addressing mode
AMODE=ANY	Either 24-bit or 31-bit addressing mode
RMODE=24	The module must reside in virtual storage below 16 megabytes. Use RMODE=24 for programs that have 24-bit dependencies.
RMODE=ANY	Indicates that the module can reside anywhere in storage, which includes addresses above the 16 megabyte line.

If you don't specify the AMODE or RMODE in the assembler program or when you link the program, both AMODE and RMODE default to 24.

Overriding the Defaults

The following examples show you how to override the default AMODE and RMODE values:

- Using the EXEC JCL statement:

```
//LKED     EXEC PGM=IEWBLINK,
//              PARM='AMODE=31,RMODE=ANY'
```

- Using the TSO commands LINK or LOADGO:

```
LINK PROGRAM1 AMODE(31) RMODE(ANY)
```

or

```
LOADGO PROGRAM1 AMODE(31) RMODE(ANY)
```

You can also use linker control statements to override the default AMODE and RMODE values.

Detecting Linker Errors

The linker produces a listing in the data set defined by the SYSPRINT DD statement. The listing includes any informational or diagnostic messages issued by the linker. You should check the load map to make sure that all the modules you expected were included.

When linking your program, do not be concerned if you get messages about unresolved, “weak” external references. For example if you obtain the following results:

Figure 66. Linker Output for Unresolved External References

Location	Refers to Symbol	In Control Section
6A8	WXTRNNAM	$UNRESOLVED(W)
6AC	EXTRNNAM	$UNRESOLVED

WXTRNNAM is a “weak” external reference; you need not be concerned about it.

EXTRNNAM is a “strong” external reference, which you should resolve for the program module to run correctly.

Running Your Assembled Program

When you've completed the preparatory work for your assembler program (designing, coding, assembling, and linking), the program is ready to run.

You can use cataloged procedures to combine the assemble, link, and go procedures in your programs. See “Using Cataloged Procedures” on page 174.

Running Your Assembled Program in Batch

Figure 67 shows the general job control to run your program in batch.

```
//stepname EXEC PGM=progname[,PARM='user-parameters']
//STEPLIB  DD   DSN=library.dsname,DISP=SHR
//ddname   DD   (parameters for user-specified data sets)
⋮
```

Figure 67. General Job Control to Run a Program on MVS

Running Your Assembled Program on TSO

You use the CALL command to run your program on TSO, as follows:

```
CALL 'JRL.LIB.LOAD(PROGRAM1)'
```

If you omit the descriptive qualifier (LOAD) and the member name (PROGRAM1), the system assumes LOAD and TEMPNAME, respectively. If your program module is in the data set JRL.LIB.LOAD(TEMPNAME), and your TSO userid is JRL, enter:

```
CALL LIB
```

Chapter 9. MVS System Services and Programming Considerations

This chapter describes some of the MVS system services and program development facilities that assist you in developing your assembler program. It provides the following information:

- Adding definitions to a macro library.
- Using cataloged procedures.
- Overriding statements in cataloged procedures.
- Saving and restoring general register contents.
- Ending program execution.
- Accessing execution parameters.
- Combining object modules to form a single program module.
- Modifying program modules.

Adding Definitions to a Macro Library

You can add macro definitions, and members containing assembler source statements that can be read by a COPY instruction, to a macro library. You can use the system utility IEBUPDTE for this purpose. You can find the details of IEBUPDTE and its control statements in *MVS/DFP 3.3 Utilities*. Figure 68 shows how a new macro definition, NEWMAC, is added to the system library, SYS1.MACLIB.

```
//CATMAC   JOB         1,MSGLEVEL=1
//STEP1    EXEC        PGM=IEBUPDTE,PARM=MOD
//SYSUT1   DD          DSNAME=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=OLD                    1
//SYSUT2   DD          DSNAME=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=OLD                    1
//SYSPRINT DD          SYSOUT=A                                       2
//SYSIN    DD          DATA
./         ADD         LIST=ALL,NAME=NEWMAC,LEVEL=01,SOURCE=0         3
           MACRO                                                      4
           NEWMAC &OP1,&OP2
           LCLA   &PAR1,&PAR2

⋮
           MEND
./         ENDUP
/*
```

Figure 68. Macro Library Addition Procedure

Notes to Figure 68:

1 The SYSUT1 and SYSUT2 DD statements indicate that SYS1.MACLIB, an existing program library, is to be updated.

2 Output from the IEBUPDTE program is printed on the Class A output device (specified by SYSPRINT).

3 The utility control statement, ./ ADD, and the macro definition follow the SYSIN statement. The ./ ADD statement specifies that the statements following it are to be added to the macro library under the name NEWMAC. When you include macro definitions in the library, the name specified in the NAME

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

parameter of the ./ ADD statement must be the same as the operation code of the prototype statement of the macro definition.

4 Following the ADD utility control statement is the macro definition itself.

Using Cataloged Procedures

Often you use the same set of job control statements repeatedly; for example, to specify the assembly, linking, and running of many different programs. To save programming time and to reduce the possibility of error, standard sets of EXEC and DD statements can be prepared once and cataloged in a procedure library. Such a set of statements is termed a *cataloged procedure* and can be invoked by either of the following statements:

```
//stepname EXEC procname
//stepname EXEC PROC=procname
```

The specified procedure (*procname*) is read from the procedure library (SYS1.PROCLIB) and merged with the job control statements that follow this EXEC statement.

This section describes four IBM cataloged procedures: a procedure for assembling (ASMAC); a procedure for assembling and linking (ASMACL); a procedure for assembling, linking, and running (ASMACLG); and a procedure for assembling and running the loader (ASMACG).

Cataloged Procedure for Assembly (ASMAC)

This procedure consists of one job step: assembly. Use the name ASMAC to call this procedure. The result of running this procedure is an object module written to SYSPUNCH and an assembler listing. (See “Invoking the Assembler on MVS” on page 151 for more details and another example.)

In the following example, input is provided in the input stream:

```
//jobname  JOB
//stepname EXEC PROC=ASMAC
//SYSIN    DD   *
⋮
assembler source statements
⋮
/* (delimiter statement)
```

The statements of the ASMAC procedure are read from the procedure library and merged into the input stream.

Figure 69 on page 175 shows the statements that make up the ASMAC procedure.

```
//ASMAC    PROC
//*
//***   ASMAC
//*
//* THIS PROCEDURE RUNS THE HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER AND CAN BE USED
//* TO ASSEMBLE PROGRAMS.
//*
//C        EXEC PGM=ASMA90,PARM=(OBJECT,NODECK)                          1
//SYSLIB   DD  DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR                                  2
//SYSUT1   DD  DSN=&&SYSUT1,SPACE=(4096,(120,120),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA 3
//             DCB=BUFNO=1
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*                                                  4
//SYSPUNCH DD  SYSOUT=B
//SYSLIN   DD  DSN=&&OBJ,SPACE=(3040,(40,40),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,     5
//             DISP=(MOD,PASS),
//             DCB=(BLKSIZE=3040,LRECL=80,RECFM=FBS,BUFNO=1)
```

Figure 69. Cataloged Procedure for Assembly (ASMAC)

Notes to Figure 69:

1 PARM= or COND= parameters can be added to this statement by the EXEC statement that calls the procedure (see “Overriding Statements in Cataloged Procedures” on page 180). The system name ASMA90 identifies High Level Assembler.

2 This statement identifies the macro library data set. The data set name SYS1.MACLIB is an IBM designation.

3 This statement specifies the assembler work data set. The device class name used here, SYSALLDA, represents a direct-access unit The I/O unit assigned to this name is specified by the installation when the operating system is generated. A unit name such as 3390 or SYSDA can be substituted for SYSALLDA.

4 This statement defines the standard system output class, SYSOUT=*, as the destination for the assembler listing.

5 This statement describes the data set that contains the object module produced by the assembler.

Cataloged Procedure for Assembly and Link (ASMACL)

This procedure consists of two job steps: assembly and link. Use the name ASMACL to call this procedure. This procedure produces an assembler listing, the linker listing, and a program module.

The following example shows input to the assembler in the input job stream. SYSLIN contains the output from the assembly step and the input to the link step. It can be concatenated with additional input to the linker as shown in the example. This additional input can be linker control statements or other object modules.

An example of the statements entered in the input stream to use this procedure is:

```
//jobname        JOB
//stepname       EXEC PROC=ASMACL
//C.SYSIN        DD  *
⋮
assembler source statements
⋮
/*
//L.SYSIN        DD  *
⋮
object module or linker control statements
/*
```

//L.SYSIN is necessary only if the linker is to combine modules or read editor control information from the job stream.

Figure 70 shows the statements that make up the ASMACL procedure. Only those statements not previously discussed are explained in the figure.

```
//ASMACL   PROC
//*
//***   ASMACL
//*
//* THIS PROCEDURE RUNS THE HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER, LINKS THE
//* NEWLY ASSEMBLED PROGRAM
//*
//C        EXEC PGM=ASMA90,PARM=(OBJECT,NODECK)
//SYSLIB   DD  DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT1   DD  DSN=&&SYSUT1,SPACE=(4096,(120,120),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//             DCB=BUFNO=1
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSPUNCH DD  SYSOUT=B
//SYSLIN   DD  DSN=&&OBJ,SPACE=(3040,(40,40),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,          1
//             DISP=(MOD,PASS),
//             DCB=(BLKSIZE=3040,LRECL=80,RECFM=FBS,BUFNO=1)
//L        EXEC PGM=HEWL,PARM='MAP,LET,LIST,NCAL',COND=(8,LT,C)               2
//SYSLIN   DD  DSN=&&OBJ,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)                                    3
//         DD  DDNAME=SYSIN                                                   4
//SYSLMOD  DD  DISP=(,PASS),UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1,1)),                5
//             DSN=&&GOSET(GO)
//SYSUT1   DD  DSN=&&SYSUT1,SPACE=(1024,(120,120),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,     6
//             DCB=BUFNO=1
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*                                                       7
```

Figure 70. Cataloged Procedure for Assembling and Linking (ASMACL)

Notes to Figure 70 on page 176:

1. In this procedure, the SYSLIN DD statement describes a temporary data set, the object module, which is passed to the linker.
2. This statement runs the linker. The linker options in the PARM field cause the linker to produce a cross-reference table, a module map, and a list of all control statements processed by the linker. The NCAL option suppresses the automatic library call function of the linker.
3. This statement identifies the linker input data set as the same one (SYSLIN) produced as output from the assembler.
4. This statement is used to concatenate any input to the linker from the input stream (object decks, linker control statements, or both) with the input from the assembler.
5. This statement specifies the linker output data set (the program load module). As specified, the data set is deleted at the end of the job. If it is required to retain the program module, the DSN parameter must be respecified and a DISP parameter added. See "Overriding Statements in Cataloged Procedures" on page 180. If you want to retain the output of the linker, the DSN parameter must specify a library name and a member name at which the program module is to be placed. The DISP parameter must specify either KEEP or CATLG.
6. This statement specifies the work data set for the linker.
7. This statement identifies the standard output class as the destination for the linker listing.

Cataloged Procedure for Assembly, Link, and Run (ASMACLG)

This procedure consists of three job steps: assembly, link, and run. Use the name ASMACLG to call this procedure. It produces an assembler listing, an object module, and a linker listing.

The statements entered in the input stream to use this procedure are:

```
//jobname         JOB
//stepname        EXEC PROC=ASMACLG
//C.SYSIN         DD  *
:
assembler source statements
:
/*
//L.SYSIN         DD  *
:
object module or linker control statements
:
/*
//G.ddname        DD   (parameters)
//G.ddname        DD   (parameters)
//G.ddname        DD   *
:
program input
:
/*
```

//L.SYSIN is necessary only if the linker is to combine modules or read linker control information from the job stream.

//G.ddname statements are included only if necessary.

Figure 71 shows the statements that make up the ASMACLG procedure. Only those statements not previously discussed are explained in the figure.

```
//ASMACLG PROC
//*
//***   ASMACLG
//*
//* THIS PROCEDURE RUNS THE HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER, LINKS THE
//* NEWLY ASSEMBLED PROGRAM AND RUNS THE PROGRAM AFTER
//* THE LINK IS ACCOMPLISHED.
//*
//C        EXEC PGM=ASMA90,PARM=(OBJECT,NODECK)
//SYSLIB   DD  DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT1   DD  DSN=&&SYSUT1,SPACE=(4096,(120,120),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//             DCB=BUFNO=1
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSPUNCH DD  SYSOUT=B
//SYSLIN   DD  DSN=&&OBJ,SPACE=(3040,(40,40),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//             DISP=(MOD,PASS),
//             DCB=(BLKSIZE=3040,LRECL=80,RECFM=FBS,BUFNO=1)
//L        EXEC PGM=HEWL,PARM='MAP,LET,LIST,NCAL',COND=(8,LT,C)                1
//SYSLIN   DD  DSN=&&OBJ,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)
//         DD  DDNAME=SYSIN
//SYSLMOD  DD  DISP=(,PASS),UNIT=SYSALLDA,SPACE=(CYL,(1,1,1)),                 2
//             DSN=&&GOSET(GO)
//SYSUT1   DD  DSN=&&SYSUT1,SPACE=(1024,(120,120),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//             DCB=BUFNO=1
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
//G        EXEC PGM=*.L.SYSLMOD,COND=((8,LT,C),(8,LT,L))                       3
```

Figure 71. Cataloged Procedure for Assembly, Link, and Run (ASMACLG)

Notes to Figure 71:

1 The LET linker option specified in this statement causes the linker to mark the program module as executable, even if errors are encountered during processing.

2 The output of the linker is specified as a member of a temporary data set, residing on a direct-access device, and is to be passed to a following job step.

3 This statement runs the assembled and linker program. The notation *.L.SYSLMOD identifies the program to be run as being in the data set described in job step L by the DD statement named SYSLMOD.

Cataloged Procedure for Assembly and Run (ASMACG)

This procedure consists of two job steps: assembly and run, using the loader. Program modules for program libraries are not produced.

Enter these statements in the input stream to use this procedure:

```
//jobname        JOB
//stepname       EXEC PROC=ASMACG
//C.SYSIN        DD  *
⋮
assembler source statements
⋮
/*
//G.ddname       DD   (parameters)
//G.ddname       DD   (parameters)
//G.ddname       DD   *
⋮
program input
⋮
/*
```

//G.ddname statements are included only if necessary.

Figure 72 shows the statements that make up the ASMACG procedure. Only those statements not previously discussed are explained in the figure.

Use the name ASMACG to call this procedure. Assembler and loader listings are produced. See Figure 72.

```
//ASMACG   PROC
//*
//***   ASMACG
//*
//* THIS PROCEDURE RUNS THE HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER AND WILL USE
//* THE LOADER PROGRAM TO RUN THE NEWLY ASSEMBLED PROGRAM.
//*
//C        EXEC PGM=ASMA90,PARM=(OBJECT,NODECK)
//SYSLIB   DD  DSN=SYS1.MACLIB,DISP=SHR
//SYSUT1   DD  DSN=&&SYSUT1,SPACE=(4096,(120,120),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//             DCB=BUFNO=1
//SYSPRINT DD  SYSOUT=*
//SYSPUNCH DD  SYSOUT=B
//SYSLIN   DD  DSN=&&OBJ,SPACE=(3040,(40,40),,,ROUND),UNIT=SYSALLDA,
//             DISP=(MOD,PASS),
//             DCB=(BLKSIZE=3040,LRECL=80,RECFM=FBS,BUFNO=1)
//G        EXEC PGM=LOADER,PARM='MAP,LET,PRINT,NOCALL',COND=(8,LT,C)          1
//SYSLIN   DD  DSN=&&OBJ,DISP=(OLD,DELETE)                                    2
//         DD  DDNAME=SYSIN
//SYSLOUT  DD  SYSOUT=*                                                       3
```

Figure 72. Cataloged Procedure for Assembly and Running Using the Loader (ASMACG)

Notes to Figure 72:

1 This statement runs the loader. The loader options in the PARM field cause the loader to produce a map and print the map and diagnostics. The NOCALL option is the same as NCAL for the linker, and the LET option is the same as for the linker.

2 This statement defines the loader input data set as the same one produced as output by the assembler.

3 This statement identifies the standard output class as the destination for the loader listing.

Overriding Statements in Cataloged Procedures

You can override any parameter in a cataloged procedure except the PGM= parameter in the EXEC statement. Overriding of statements or fields is effective only for the duration of the job step in which the statements appear. The statements, as stored in the procedure library of the system, remain unchanged.

To respecify, add, or nullify statements, include statements in the input stream that contain the required changes and identify the statements to be overridden.

EXEC Statements

Any EXEC parameter (except PGM) can be overridden. For example, the PARM= and COND= parameters can be added or, if present, respecified by including them in the EXEC statement calling the procedure. The JCL notation to specify these parameters is:

```
//ASM          EXEC   PROC=ASMACLG,PARM.C=(NOOBJECT),COND.L=(8,LT,stepname.c)
```

stepname identifies the EXEC statement within the catalogued procedure (ASMACLG) to which the modification applies.

If the procedure consists of more than one job step, a PARM.procstepname= or COND.procstepname= parameter can be entered for each step. The entries must be in order (PARM.procstepname1=, PARM.procstepname2=, ...).

DD Statements

All parameters in the operand field of DD statements can be overridden by including in the input stream (following the EXEC statement calling the procedure) a DD statement with the notation //*procstepname.ddname* in the name field. *procstepname* refers to the job step in which the statement identified by *ddname* appears.

If more than one DD statement in a procedure is to be overridden, the overriding statements must be in the same order as the statements in the procedure.

Examples of Cataloged Procedures

1. In the assembly procedure ASMAC (Figure 69 on page 175), you might want to suppress the object module to SYSPUNCH and respecify the UNIT= and SPACE= parameters of data set SYSUT1. In this case, the following statements are required:

   ```
   //stepname     EXEC   PROC=ASMAC,
   //                    PARM=NODECK
   //SYSUT1       DD     UNIT=3390,
   //                    SPACE=(4096,(300,40))
   //SYSIN        DD     *
   ⋮
   assembler source statements
   ⋮
   /*
   ```

2. In procedure ASMACLG (Figure 71 on page 178), you might want to suppress the assembler listing, and add the COND= parameter to the EXEC statement that invokes the linker. In this case, the EXEC statement in the input stream are:

```
//stepname    EXEC   PROC=ASMACLG,
//                   PARM.C=(NOLIST,OBJECT),
//                   COND.L=(8,LT,stepname.C)
```

For this run of procedure ASMACLG, no assembler listing is produced, and running of the linker job step //L would be suppressed if the return code issued by the assembler (step C) were greater than 8.

When you override the PARM field in a procedure, the whole PARM field is overridden. Thus, in this example, overriding the LIST parameter effectively deletes PARM=(OBJECT,NODECK). PARM=(OBJECT,NODECK) must be repeated in the override statement; otherwise, the assembler default values are used.

3. The following example shows how to use the procedure ASMACL (Figure 70 on page 176) to:

   1 Read input from a nonlabeled 9-track tape in unit 282 that has a standard blocking factor of 10.

   2 Put the output listing on a tape labeled TAPE10, with a data set name of PROG1 and a blocking factor of 5.

   3 Block the SYSLIN output of the assembler and use it as input to the linker with a blocking factor of 10.

   4 Link the module only if there are no errors in the assembly (COND=0).

   5 Link onto a previously allocated and cataloged data set USER.LIBRARY with a member name of PROG.

```
//jobname      JOB
//stepname     EXEC   PROC=ASMACL,
//                    COND.L=(0,NE,stepname.C)                    4
//C.SYSPRINT   DD     DSNAME=PROG1,UNIT=TAPE,                     2
//                    VOLUME=SER=TAPE10,DCB=(BLKSIZE=665)
//C.SYSLIN     DD     DCB=(BLKSIZE=800)                           3
//C.SYSIN      DD     UNIT=282,LABEL=(,NL),                       1
//                    DCB=(RECFM=FBS,BLKSIZE=800)
//L.SYSLIN     DD     DCB=stepname.C.SYSLIN                       3
//L.SYSLMOD    DD     DSNAME=USER.LIBRARY(PROG),DISP=OLD          5
/*
```

The order of appearance of overriding ddnames for job step C corresponds to the order of ddnames in the procedure; that is, SYSPRINT precedes SYSLIN within step C. The ddname C.SYSIN was placed last because SYSIN does not occur at all within step C. These points are covered in the applicable *JCL Reference*.

4. The following example shows assembly of two programs, link of the two object modules produced by the assemblies into one program module, and running the generated program. The input stream appears as follows:

```
//stepname1      EXEC    PROC=ASMAC,PARM=OBJECT
//SYSIN          DD      *
⋮
assembler source statements for program 1
⋮
/*
//stepname2      EXEC    PROC=ASMACLG
//C.SYSIN        DD      *
⋮
assembler source statements for program 2
⋮
/*
//L.SYSIN        DD      *
                 ENTRY PROG
/*
//G.ddname       DD      dd statements for G step
```

The applicable *JCL Reference* provides additional descriptions of overriding techniques.

Operating System Programming Conventions

Assembler programs executing on MVS must follow a set of programming conventions to save and restore registers, and access execution parameters. These conventions are described in the following sections.

Saving and Restoring General Register Contents

A program should save the values contained in the general registers when it receives control and, on completion, restore these same values to the general registers. Thus, as control is passed from the operating system to a program and, in turn, to a subprogram, the status of the registers used by each program is preserved. This is done through use of the SAVE and RETURN system macro instructions.

Saving Register Contents: The SAVE macro instruction should be the first statement in the program. It stores the contents of registers 14, 15, and 0 through 12 in an area provided by the program that passes control. When a program is given control, register 13 contains the address of an area in which the general register contents should be saved.

If the program calls any subprograms, or uses any operating system services other than GETMAIN, FREEMAIN, ATTACH, and XCTL, it must first save the contents of register 13 and then load the address of an 18-fullword save area into register 13.

Restoring Register Contents: At completion, the program restores the contents of general registers 14, 15, and 0 through 12 by use of the RETURN system macro instruction (which also indicates program completion). The contents of register 13 must be restored before issuing the RETURN macro instruction.

Example: The coding sequence that follows shows the basic process of saving and restoring the contents of the registers. A complete discussion of the SAVE and RETURN macro instructions and the saving and restoring of registers is contained in the *MVS/ESA Programming: Assembler Services Reference*.

```
Name      Operation      Operand

BEGIN     SAVE           (14,12)
          USING          BEGIN,15
          ⋮
          ST             13,SAVEBLK+4
          LA             13,SAVEBLK
          ⋮
program function source statements
          ⋮
          L              13,SAVEBLK+4
          RETURN         (14,12)
SAVEBLK   DC             18F'0'
          ⋮
          END
```

Ending Program Execution

You indicate completion of an assembler language source program by using the RETURN system macro instruction to pass control from the terminating program to the program that initiated it. The initiating program might be the operating system or, if a subprogram issued the RETURN, the program that called the subprogram.

In addition to indicating program completion and restoring register contents, the RETURN macro instruction can also pass a return code—a condition indicator that can be used by the program receiving control.

If the program returns to the operating system, the return code can be compared against the condition stated in the COND= parameter of the JOB or EXEC statement.

If the program returns to another program, the return code is available in general register 15 and can be used as required. Your program should restore register 13 before issuing the RETURN macro instruction.

The RETURN system macro instruction is discussed in detail in the *MVS/ESA Programming: Assembler Services Reference*.

Accessing Execution Parameters

You access information in the PARM field of an EXEC statement by referring to the contents of general register 1. When control is given to the program, general register 1 contains the address of a fullword which, in turn, contains the address of the data area containing the information.

The data area consists of a halfword containing the count (in binary) of the number of information characters, followed by the information field. The information field is aligned to a fullword boundary. Figure 73 on page 184 shows how the PARM field information is structured.

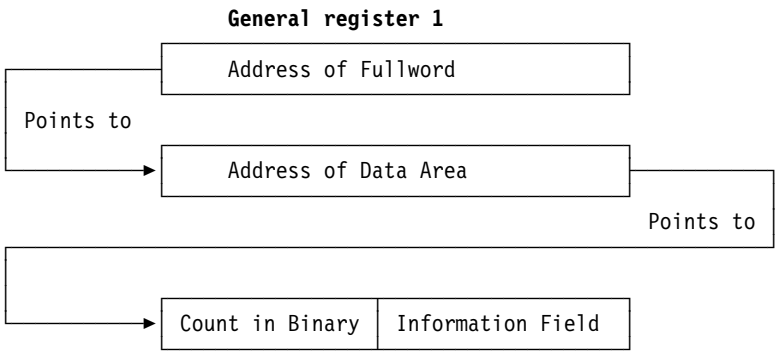


Figure 73. Access to PARM Field

Object Module Linkage

You can combine two or more object modules, whether generated by the assembler or by another language processor, to produce a single load module. The object modules can be combined by the linkage editor, or DFSMS/MVS binder, provided each object module conforms to the data formats and the required linkage conventions. This makes it possible for you to use different programming languages for different parts of your program, allowing each part to be written in the language best suited for it. Use the CALL system macro instruction to link an assembler language main program to subprograms produced by another language processor. Refer to the *MVS/ESA Programming: Assembler Services Reference* for details about linkage conventions and the CALL system macro instruction.

Figure 74 on page 185 is an example of statements used to establish the assembler language program linkage to subprograms. See the applicable language programmer's guide for information about calling the language from an assembler language program.

If any input or output operations are performed by called subprograms supply the correct DD statements for the data sets used by the subprograms. See the applicable language programmer's guide for an explanation of the DD statements and special data set record formats used for the language.

```
ENTRPT    SAVE          (14,12)
          LR            12,15
          USING         ENTRPT,12
          ST            13,SVAREA+4
          LA            15,SVAREA
          ST            15,8(,13)
          LR            13,15
          ⋮
          CALL          subprogram-name,(V1,V2,V3),VL
          ⋮
          L             13,SVAREA+4
          RETURN        (14,12)
SVAREA    DC            18F'0'
V1        DC            CL5'Data1'
V2        DC            CL5'Data2'
V3        DC            CL5'Data3'
          END
```

Figure 74. Sample Assembler Linkage Statements for Calling Subprograms

Modifying Program Modules

If the editing functions of the linker are used to modify a program module, the entry point to the program module must be restated when the program module is reprocessed by the linker. Otherwise, the first byte of the first control section processed by the linker becomes the entry point. To enable restatement of the original entry point, or designation of a new entry point, the entry point must have been identified originally as an external symbol; that is, it must have appeared as an entry in the external symbol dictionary. The assembler automatically identifies external symbols if the entry point is the name of a control section or START statement; otherwise, you must use an assembler ENTRY statement to identify the entry point as an external symbol.

When a new object module is added to or replaces part of the load module, the entry point is restated in one of three ways:

- By placing the entry point symbol in the operand field of an EXTRN statement and an END statement in the new object module,

or

- By using an END statement in the new object module to designate a new entry point in the new object module,

or

- By using a linker ENTRY statement to designate either the original entry point or a new entry point for the program module.

Further discussion of program module entry points is contained in the applicable *Linkage Editor and Loader* manual, or *DFSMS MVS Program Management* manual.

Part 3. Developing Assembler Programs on CMS

Chapter 10. Assembling Your Program on CMS . . . 188
Input to the Assembler . . . 188
Output from the Assembler . . . 188
Accessing the Assembler . . . 188
Invoking the Assembler on CMS . . . 189
Batch Assembling . . . 190
Controlling Your Assembly . . . 190
Input and Output Files . . . 191
Work file: SYSUT1 . . . 193
Specifying the Source File: SYSIN . . . 194
Specifying the Option File: ASMAOPT . . . 195
Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: SYSLIB . . . 195
Specifying the Listing File: SYSPRINT . . . 196
Directing Assembler Messages to Your Terminal: SYSTERM . . . 196
Specifying Object Code Files: SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH . . . 196
Specifying the Associated Data File: SYSADATA . . . 197
Return Codes . . . 197
Diagnostic Messages Written by CMS . . . 197

Chapter 11. Running Your Program on CMS . . . 199
Using the CMS LOAD and START Commands . . . 199
Using the CMS GENMOD Command . . . 199
Using the CMS LKED and OSRUN Commands . . . 200
Using the CMS Batch Facility . . . 201

Chapter 12. CMS System Services and Programming Considerations . . . 202
Using Macros . . . 202
Assembler Macros Supported by CMS . . . 202
Adding Definitions to a Macro Library . . . 202
Operating System Programming Conventions . . . 202
Saving and Restoring General Register Contents . . . 202
Ending Program Execution . . . 203
Passing Parameters to Your Assembler Language Program . . . 204

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Chapter 10. Assembling Your Program on CMS

This chapter describes how to invoke the assembler on CMS (Conversational Monitor System). It describes:

- The input to the assembler.
- The output from the assembler
- How to gain access to the High Level Assembler product files.
- How to invoke the assembler on CMS.
- How to assemble multiple source programs using the BATCH option.
- Special options for invoking the assembler on CMS.
- The data sets used by the assembler.
- The assembler return codes.
- Special diagnostic messages when invoking the assembler on CMS.

To use this section effectively, you should be familiar with the assembler language described in the *Language Reference*.

The assembler language program can be run under control of CMS. For more information about CMS, refer to the applicable *CP Command Reference for General Users* and *CMS Command and Macro Reference*.

Input to the Assembler

As input, the assembler accepts a program written in the assembler language as defined in the *Language Reference*. This program is referred to as a source module. Some statements in the source module (macro or COPY instructions) can cause additional input to be obtained from a macro library.

Input can also be obtained from user exits. See Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79 for more information.

Output from the Assembler

The output from the assembler can consist of an object module, a program listing, terminal messages and an associated data file. The object module is stored on your virtual disk in a TEXT file. You can bring it into your virtual storage and run it by using the CMS LOAD and START commands. The program listing lists all the statements in the module, both in source and machine language format, and gives other important information about the assembly, such as error messages. The listing is described in detail in Chapter 2, “Using the Assembler Listing” on page 8.

Accessing the Assembler

To access the High Level Assembler on CMS, you must first link to the mini-disk containing the assembler by issuing the CP LINK command. You must then issue the ACCESS command to assign a file mode, and make the mini-disk available to CMS. For example:

```
CP LINK PRODUCT 194 198 RR PASSWORD
ACCESS 198 B
```


© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

In this example, you have linked to disk 194 of the virtual machine that contains the High Level Assembler product, and whose user ID is PRODUCT. You have defined disk 194 as 198 to your VM session. You have read access to the disk (RR) and you specified the read-share password for the 194 disk (PASSWORD).

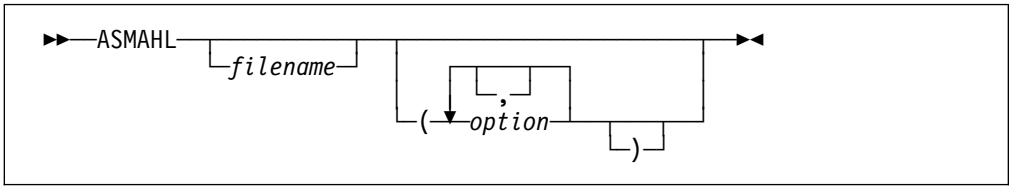
After you linked to the 194 disk as 198, you accessed the 198 disk as disk B on your system. After you have access to the product disk, you can invoke the assembler using the ASMAHL command (see "Invoking the Assembler on CMS").

If High Level Assembler is stored on your A-disk, or another disk to which you already have access, you can omit the CP LINK and ACCESS commands. If High Level Assembler is not on a disk that you have accessed, you can put the CP LINK and ACCESS commands into your PROFILE EXEC, which issues them for you each time you log on. For more information on the CP LINK and ACCESS commands, see the applicable *CP Command Reference* for your VM environment, as listed under "Bibliography" on page 386.

Invoking the Assembler on CMS

Use the ASMAHL command to invoke and control assembly of assembler source programs on CMS.

The format of the ASMAHL command is:



where:

filename Is the name of your assembler source program.

Use one of the three methods available for specifying your assembler source program. See "Specifying the Source File: SYSIN" on page 194 for details on each of these methods.

option Represents one or more assembler options, separated by a blank or comma, that you want in effect during assembly. These assembler options are equivalent to the options you would specify on the PARM parameter of an EXEC job control statement, if you were invoking the assembler on MVS.

A complete list and discussion of assembler options can be found under Chapter 3, "Controlling Your Assembly with Options" on page 38.

The assembler options in effect are determined by the default options that were set when High Level Assembler was installed, and by the options you specify with the ASMAHL command. There are also several assembler options that can only be specified when running on CMS; see "Controlling Your Assembly" on page 190.

Synonym for ASMAHL Command: Your installation might have created a synonym for ASMAHL when High Level Assembler was installed. See your system programmer for the specific command name.

Batch Assembling

You can assemble a sequence of separate assembler programs with a single invocation of the assembler, using the BATCH option. The object programs produced from this assembly can be link-edited into either a single load module or separate load modules.

When the BATCH option is specified, each assembler program in the sequence must be terminated by an END statement, including the last program in the batch. If an END statement is omitted, the program assembles with the next program in the sequence. If the END statement is omitted from the last program in the sequence, the assembler generates an END statement.

If separate load modules are to be produced, you must write a NAME linkage editor control statement for each load module. The NAME statement must be written at the end of the load module. Figure 75 shows how to create two load modules, SECT1 and SECT2.

```
SECT1    CSECT          Start of first load module
         ⋮
         Source instructions
         ⋮
         END            End of first load module
         PUNCH ' NAME SECT1(R)'
         END
SECT2    CSECT          Start of second load module
         ⋮
         Source instructions
         ⋮
         END            End of second load module
         PUNCH ' NAME SECT2(R)'
         END
```

Figure 75. Example of Creating Two Load Modules on CMS

If separate TEXT files are required, you must issue two separate ASMAHL commands.

Controlling Your Assembly

The assembly options are specified on the ASMAHL command after the left parenthesis. The options that can be specified to control your assembly are described in Chapter 3, “Controlling Your Assembly with Options” on page 38.

On CMS, there are additional options that can be specified. These are described in Chapter 3, “Controlling Your Assembly with Options” on page 38, and consist of:

ERASE Deletes LISTING, TEXT, and SYSADATA files before the assembly begins.

LINECOUN Specifies the number of lines to be printed on each page of the assembler listing.

NOSEG Specifies that the assembler load modules are loaded from disk. The default is to load the modules from the Logical Saved Segment (LSEG); but, if the LSEG is not available, then load the modules from disk.

PRINT Directs the assembler listing to the virtual printer, instead of to disk.

SEG Specifies that the assembler load modules are loaded from the Logical Saved Segment (LSEG). The default is to load the modules from the LSEG; but, if the LSEG is not available, then load the modules from disk.

SYSPARM A question mark (?) can be specified in the SYSPARM string, which instructs the assembler to prompt you for a character string at your terminal.

Input and Output Files

Depending on the options in effect, High Level Assembler requires the files as shown in Figure 76.

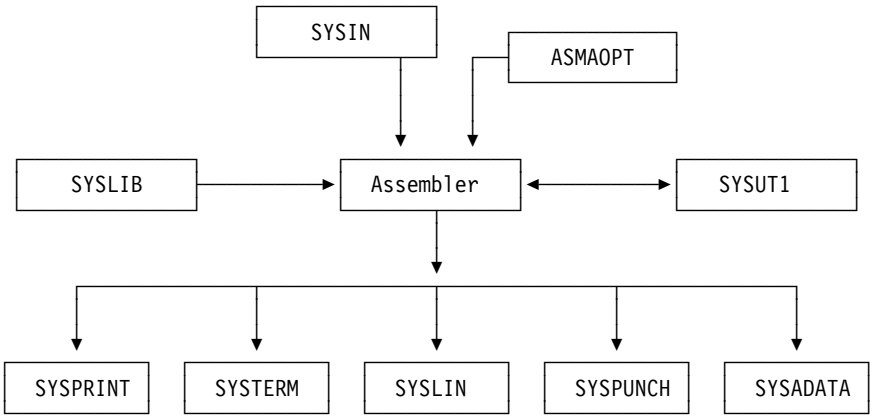


Figure 76. High Level Assembler Files

The ddnames can be overridden during installation.

High Level Assembler requires the following files:

SYSUT1 A work file used as intermediate external storage when processing the source program. This file is used when there is not enough main storage available to assemble in-storage.

If the value specified for the SIZE option is large enough, an in-storage assembly is done and the work file SYSUT1 can be omitted, though a warning message is issued.

SYSIN An input file containing the source statements to be processed.

SYSLIB A file containing macro definitions (for macro definitions not defined in the source program), source code to be called for through COPY assembler instructions, or both.

SYSPRINT A file containing the assembly listing (if the LIST option is in effect).

SYSTERM A file containing essentially a condensed form of SYSPRINT, principally error flagged statements and their error messages (only if the TERM option is in effect).

SYSPUNCH A file containing object module output, usually for punching (only if the DECK option is in effect).

SYSLIN A file containing object module output usually for the linkage editor (only if the OBJECT option is in effect).

SYSADATA A file containing associated data output (only if the ADATA option is in effect).

The files listed above are described in the text following Figure 77. The characteristics of these files, those set by the assembler and those you can override, are shown in Figure 77.

Figure 77. Assembler File Characteristics

File	Access Method	Logical Record Length (LRECL)	Block Size (BLKSIZE)	Record Format (RECFM)
SYSUT1	BSAM	Same as BLKSIZE	3	F
SYSIN	QSAM	80	4	7 10
ASMAOPT	QSAM	11	6	Fixed/Variable
SYSLIB	BPAM	80	5	7 10
SYSPRINT	QSAM	1	6	8 10
SYSTERM	QSAM	2	4	9 10
SYSPUNCH	QSAM	12	4	13
SYSLIN	QSAM	12	4	13
SYSADATA	QSAM	8188	8192 or greater	VB

Notes to Figure 77:

1 If you specify EXIT(PRTEXIT) and the user exit specifies the logical record length, the logical record length returned is used, unless the SYSPRINT data set has a variable-length record format in which case the LRECL used is 4 bytes greater than the value returned by the exit. If EXIT(PRTEXIT) has not been specified or the user exit does not specify a record length, the record length from the FILEDEF command or file label is used, if present. Otherwise, the record length defaults to 133, or 137 if the record format is variable-length.

The minimum record length allowed for SYSPRINT is 121, and the maximum allowed is 255. If the record format is variable-length, the LRECL should be at least 125 or 137 depending on the LIST option.

2 If you specify EXIT(TRMEXIT) and the user exit specifies the logical record length, the logical record length returned is used. If you do not specify EXIT(TRMEXIT) or the user exit does not specify a record length, the record length from the FILEDEF command or file label is used, if present. If not present, the record length defaults to the record length for SYSPRINT (if the LIST option is in effect) or 133 otherwise.

The maximum record length allowed for SYSTERM is 255.

3 You can specify a block size (BLKSIZE) between 2008 and 32760 bytes on the FILEDEF command or in the file label. The BLKSIZE should be a multiple of 8. If it is not, it is rounded to the next lower multiple of 8. If you do not specify BLKSIZE, the assembler sets the block size to 4088.

4 If specified, the BLKSIZE must equal the LRECL, or be a multiple of the LRECL. If BLKSIZE is not specified, it is set to LRECL.

5 The BLKSIZE on the FILEDEF command or the file label must equal the LRECL, or be a multiple of the LRECL.

6 The blocksize must be equal to or a multiple of the record length if the record format is fixed. If the record format is variable, then the blocksize must be at least 4 bytes greater than the record length.

7 Set by the assembler to F (or FB) if necessary.

8 Both fixed and variable formats are supported; the default is variable. If the FILEDEF command or file label specifies machine or ASA control characters, the ASA option is set or reset accordingly. If machine or ASA control characters are not specified on the FILEDEF command or file label, the record format is modified according to the ASA option.

9 Set by the assembler to F (or FB) if necessary. The record format is set to FA (or FBA) if the ASA option is specified, or FM (or FBM) otherwise.

10 You can specify B, S, or T, or any combination of these.

11 The minimum record length allowed for ASMAOPT is 5. The maximum record length allowed is 32756 if the record format is variable-length or 32760 if the record format is fixed-length.

12 If you specify the OBJECT option,the logical record length must be 80. If you specify the GOFF option, the object module can be generated with either fixed-length records of 80 bytes, or variable-length records up to a BLKSIZE of 32720.

13 Both fixed and variable formats are supported; the default is fixed.

Work file: SYSUT1

The assembler uses this work file as an intermediate external storage device when processing the source program. The input/output device assigned to this file must be a direct-access device.

If no SYSUT1 FILEDEF command is issued before the ASMAHL command is issued, the following FILEDEF command is issued by the ASMAHL command:

```
FILEDEF SYSUT1 DISK fn SYSUT1 m4 (BLOCK 4088
```

where *fn* is the filename specified on the ASMAHL command, and the file mode *m*4 is set to use the read/write disk with the most available space. For example, if three read/write disks were accessed as the A, B, and D disks, and if the D disk had the most available space, then *m*4 would be set to “D4” for use during the assembly.

This data set is only used if there is insufficient virtual storage allocated to assemble the program in storage.

Specifying the Source File: SYSIN

Use one of the following methods for specifying your assembler source program:

- Specify the filename of the assembler source program on the ASMAHL command line,

or

- Issue a FILEDEF for SYSIN before issuing the ASMAHL command,

or

- Supply source statements from a user-supplied module by using the EXIT assembler option.

Specify the Filename on the Command Line: Using this method, you specify the filename of your assembler source program on the ASMAHL command line. For example:

```
ASMAHL PROG1 (LIST,XREF(SHORT))
```

assembles the source program named `PROG1` using the assembler options LIST and XREF(SHORT). The source program must have a filetype of ASSEMBLE. The ASMAHL command issues the following FILEDEF command:

```
FILEDEF SYSIN DISK PROG1 ASSEMBLE * (RECFM FB LRECL 80 BLOCK 16000
```

Issue a FILEDEF for SYSIN: Another method you can use to specify the assembler source program is to issue a FILEDEF for SYSIN before the assembly. The assembler then assembles the program specified in the FILEDEF. For example:

```
FILEDEF SYSIN DISK PROG2 ASSEMBLE A
ASMAHL (LIST,XREF)
```

assembles the program named `PROG2`, using the options specified on the ASMAHL command line. When you issue a FILEDEF for SYSIN, the source program you specify with the FILEDEF is the one used for input by the assembler.

If the FILEDEF for SYSIN is issued and the FILEDEF specifies a DISK file, the filename on the ASMAHL command is optional. If the filename is specified on the ASMAHL command, the filename must match the filename of the file specified on the FILEDEF. Additionally, when using a FILEDEF, the file type need not be ASSEMBLE.

You can read MVS data sets and VSE files as CMS files by defining those data with the FILEDEF command. For example,

```
FILEDEF SYSIN DISK OSDS ASSEMBLE fm DSN OS DATASET (options...
```

You can also assemble a member of an OS partitioned data set or a CMS MACLIB by using the MEMBER parameter of the FILEDEF command. When you specify member parameter, the member name is used as the filename for the LISTING, TEXT, and SYSADATA files.

If you want to assemble a source file that is in your CMS virtual reader, issue the following FILEDEF command:

```
FILEDEF SYSIN READER
```

and then issue the ASMAHL command. You must specify the filename on the ASMAHL command. The filename is used as the file name of the LISTING, TEXT, and SYSADATA files.

Similarly, if you have a tape containing an assembler input file that you want to assemble, you must issue the following command before issuing the ASMAHL command:

```
FILEDEF SYSIN TAPn (RECFM F LRECL 80 BLOCK 80
```

If the blocksize of the file were 800 bytes, you could specify BLOCK 800 as in the preceding FILEDEF.

If the FILEDEF command specifies a tape file, the filename must be specified on the ASMAHL command. The filename is used as the filename of the LISTING, TEXT, and SYSADATA files.

Make sure that any attributes specified for a file conform to the attributes expected by the assembler for the device.

Specify Source Using the EXIT Option: If you are using an input user exit to provide source statements to the assembler, the FILEDEF for SYSIN is not required. For example:

```
ASMAHL PROG2 (EXIT(INEXIT(INMOD1('ABCD'))),LIST,XREF(SHORT))
```

assembles the source statements provided by the input user module named `INMOD1` using the character string `ABCD`, and also the assembler options LIST and XREF(SHORT). (For specific details on using the EXIT assembler option, see page 49).

Specify the filename on the ASMAHL command, or a FILEDEF for SYSIN, before issuing the ASMAHL command as described above. This is required even if the assembler does not read the input file. The filename specified on the ASMAHL command, or from the FILEDEF for SYSIN, is used as the filename of the LISTING, TEXT, and SYSADATA files.

If you specify the INEXIT option, the ASMAHL command does not check whether the input file exists. If the SOURCE user exit instructs the assembler to open the primary input file, the open fails if the file does not exist.

Specifying the Option File: ASMAOPT

You must issue an ASMAOPT FILEDEF command if you wish the assembler to use the options in this file. For example

```
FILEDEF ASMAOPT DISK PROG1 OPTIONS *
```

Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: SYSLIB

If you don't issue SYSLIB FILEDEF before the ASMAHL command, the ASMAHL command issues the following FILEDEF command:

```
FILEDEF SYSLIB DISK CMSLIB MACLIB * (RECFM FB LRECL 80 BLOCK 8000
```

Use the GLOBAL command to identify which CMS libraries are to be searched for macro definitions and COPY code. Private libraries and CMSLIB can be concatenated with each other in any order by the GLOBAL command. The format of this command is described in the applicable *CMS Command and Macro Reference*.

You can concatenate a CMS MACLIB with an OS partitioned data set. When this is required, the library with the largest blocksize must be specified first, as in the following example:

```
FILEDEF SYSLIB DISK MYLIB   MACLIB M DSN ATR005.MACLIB
FILEDEF SYSLIB DISK OSMACRO MACLIB S (CONCAT
GLOBAL MACLIB MYLIB OSMACRO
```

Specifying the Listing File: SYSPRINT

If you specify the PRINT option, and you don't issue SYSPRINT FILEDEF before the ASMAHL command, the ASMAHL command issues the following FILEDEF command:

```
FILEDEF SYSPRINT PRINTER
```

If you specify the DISK option (which is the default), and you don't issue SYSPRINT FILEDEF before the ASMAHL command, the ASMAHL command issues the following FILEDEF command:

```
FILEDEF SYSPRINT DISK fn LISTING m1 (RECFM VB BLOCK 13300
```

where *fn* is the filename specified on the ASMAHL command. If the assembler source file (SYSIN input) is not on disk or is on a read-only disk, the file mode *m* is set to the first available read/write disk. If the source file is on a read/write disk, the mode letter *m* is set to the mode of that read/write disk. For example, if the source file were on a read/write B disk, the file mode *m*1 would be set to “B1”.

You can issue a FILEDEF command for SYSPRINT before the ASMAHL command to direct the listing to the terminal, printer, or a disk file. See “PRINT (CMS)” on page 66 for details about the CMS options for SYSPRINT.

Directing Assembler Messages to Your Terminal: SYSTERM

If you don't issue a SYSTERM FILEDEF command before the ASMAHL command, the ASMAHL command issues the following FILEDEF command:

```
FILEDEF SYSTERM TERMINAL
```

You can issue a FILEDEF command for SYSTERM before the ASMAHL command to direct the listing to the terminal, printer, or a disk file.

Specifying Object Code Files: SYSLIN and SYSPUNCH

If you don't issue a SYSPUNCH or SYSLIN FILEDEF command before the ASMAHL command, the ASMAHL command issues the following FILEDEF commands:

```
FILEDEF SYSPUNCH PUNCH
FILEDEF SYSLIN DISK fn TEXT m1 (RECFM FB LRECL 80 BLOCK 16000
```

where *fn* is the filename specified on the ASMAHL command. If the assembler source file (SYSIN input) is not on disk or is on a read-only disk, the file mode *m* is set to the first available read/write disk. If the source file is on a read/write disk, the mode letter *m* is set to the mode of that read/write disk. For example, if the source file were on a read/write B disk, the file mode *m*1 would be set to “B1”.

You can issue a FILEDEF command for SYSPUNCH or SYSLIN before the ASMAHL command is issued to direct the object output to the punch or a disk file.

Specifying the Associated Data File: SYSADATA

If you don't issue a SYSADATA FILEDEF command before the ASMAHL command, the ASMAHL command issues the following FILEDEF command:

```
FILEDEF SYSADATA DISK fn SYSADATA m1 (RECFM VB LRECL 8188 BLOCK 8192
```

where *fn* is the filename specified on the ASMAHL command, and if the assembler source file (SYSIN input) is *not* on disk or is on a read-only disk, the file mode *m* is set to the first available read/write disk. If the source file is on a read/write disk, the mode letter *m* is set to the mode of that read/write disk. For example, if the source file were on a read/write B disk, the file mode *m*1 would be set to “B1”.

A FILEDEF command for SYSADATA can be issued before the ASMAHL command is issued to direct the associated data output to a different file.

Return Codes

High Level Assembler issues return codes that are returned to the caller. If High Level Assembler is called from an EXEC, the EXEC can check the return code.

The return code issued by the assembler is the highest severity code that is associated with any error detected in the assembly, or with any MNOTE message produced by the source program or macro instructions. The return code can be controlled by the FLAG(*n*) assembler option described on page 52. See Appendix G, “High Level Assembler Messages” on page 309 for a listing of the assembler errors and their severity codes.

Diagnostic Messages Written by CMS

If an error occurs during the running of the ASMAHL command, a message might be written at the terminal and, at completion of the command, register 15 contains a non-zero return code.

Two types of messages might be issued:

- Messages that are issued by the assembler (see Appendix G, “High Level Assembler Messages” on page 309).
- Messages that are issued by the ASMAHL command processor (see “ASMAHL Command Error Messages (CMS)” on page 357).

The messages issued by the ASMAHL command processor are in two parts: a message code and the message text. The message code is in the form ASMACMS*nnnt*, where ASMACMS indicates that the message was generated by the ASMAHL command program, *nnn* is the number of the message, and *t* is the type of message. The message text describes the error condition.

You can use the CP command SET EMSG to control what part of the diagnostic message to display. Figure 78 shows the SET EMSG options you can specify, and how they affect the message display.

Figure 78. CP SET EMSG Command Options

SET EMSG Option	Part of Message Displayed
CODE	Displays the message code only.
OFF	Suppresses the entire message text and message code.
ON	Displays the entire message text and the message code.
TEXT	Displays the message text only.

Refer to the applicable *CP Command Reference for General Users* for details about the CP SET command.

When you specify the TERM assembler option, diagnostic messages are written to the terminal in the form `ASMA`*nnns*. Errors detected by the ASMAHL command program, which terminate the command before High Level Assembler is called, result in error messages (type E).

Chapter 11. Running Your Program on CMS

There are three ways to run your assembler program under any level of CMS:

- Using the CMS LOAD and START commands.
- Using the CMS GENMOD command to create a program module and then using the module filename to cause the module to be run.
- Using the CMS LKED and OSRUN commands.

Any of these three methods can be used under the control of the CMS batch facility.

Using the CMS LOAD and START Commands

After you have assembled your program, you can run the object program in the TEXT file produced by the assembler. The TEXT file produced is relocatable and can be run merely by loading it into virtual storage with the LOAD command and using the START command to begin running. For example, if you have assembled a source program named CREATE, you have a file named CREATE TEXT. Use the LOAD command to load your program into storage, and then use the START command to run the program:

```
LOAD CREATE
START
```

In this example, the file CREATE TEXT contains the object code from the assembly.

The CMS START command can be used to pass user-defined parameters. For a complete description of the START command, see the applicable *CMS Command Reference* for your VM environment, as listed under “Bibliography” on page 386.

Using the CMS GENMOD Command

When your programs are debugged and tested, you can use the LOAD and INCLUDE commands, in conjunction with the GENMOD command, to create program modules. A module is a relocatable or non-relocatable object program whose external references have been resolved. In CMS, these files must have a filetype of MODULE.

To create a program module, load the TEXT files or TXTLIB members into storage and issue the GENMOD command:

```
LOAD CREATE ANALYZE PRINT
GENMOD PROCESS
```

In this example, CREATE, ANALYZE, and PRINT are TEXT files that you are combining into a module named PROCESS; PROCESS is the filename you are assigning to the module, which has a filetype of MODULE. If you use the name of an existing MODULE file, the old one is replaced.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

From then on, any time you want to run the program composed of the object files CREATE, ANALYZE, and PRINT, enter:

```
PROCESS
```

If PROCESS requires input files, output files, or both, you must define these files before PROCESS can run correctly.

For more information on creating program modules, see the applicable *CMS User's Guide* for your particular VM environment, as listed under “Bibliography” on page 386.

Using the CMS LKED and OSRUN Commands

A LOADLIB is another type of library available to you on CMS. LOADLIBs, like MACLIBs and TXTLIBs, are in CMS-simulated partitioned data set formats. Unlike TXTLIBs, which contain object programs that need to be link-edited when they are loaded, LOADLIBs contain programs that have already been link-edited, thus saving the overhead of the link-editing process every time the program is loaded. You can load the members of TXTLIBs by both CMS loading facilities (LOAD or INCLUDE command) and certain OS macros (such as LINK, LOAD, ATTACH, or XCTL), but you can only load the members of LOADLIBs that use these OS macros.

Use the LKED command to create a CMS LOADLIB. For example:

```
FILEDEF SYSLIB DISK USERTXT TXTLIB *
LKED TESTFILE
```

This example takes a CMS TEXT file with the filename of TESTFILE and creates a file named TESTFILE LOADLIB, using the SYSLIB to resolve external references. TESTFILE LOADLIB is a CMS-simulated partitioned data set containing one member, named TESTFILE.

To use the OSRUN command to run TESTFILE, first use the GLOBAL command to identify which libraries are to be searched when processing subsequent CMS commands. For example:

```
GLOBAL LOADLIB TESTFILE
OSRUN TESTFILE
```

The OSRUN command causes the TESTFILE member of the TESTFILE LOADLIB to be loaded, relocated, and run.

User parameters can be added on the line with the OSRUN command, but they are passed in OS format. For a complete description of the OSRUN command, see the applicable *CMS Command Reference* for your particular VM environment, as listed under “Bibliography” on page 386.

Using the CMS Batch Facility

The CMS batch facility provides a way of submitting jobs for batch processing in CMS, and can be used to run an assembler program. You can use this facility when either:

- You have a job that takes a lot of time, and you want to be able to use your terminal for other work while the job is running,

or

- You do not have access to a terminal.

The CMS batch facility is really a virtual machine, generated and controlled by the system operator, who logs onto VM using the batch user ID and invokes the CMSBATCH command. All jobs submitted for batch processing are spooled to the user ID of this virtual machine, which runs the jobs sequentially. To use the CMS batch facility at your location, you must contact the system operator to learn the user ID of the batch virtual machine.

You can run High Level Assembler under the control of the CMS batch facility. Terminal input can be read from the console stack. In order to prevent your batch job from being cancelled, make sure that stacked input is available if your program requests input from the terminal. For further information on using the CMS batch facility, see the applicable *CMS User's Guide* for your particular VM environment, as listed under “Bibliography” on page 386.

Chapter 12. CMS System Services and Programming Considerations

This chapter describes some of the CMS system services and program development facilities that assist you in developing your assembler program. It provides the following information:

- Assembler macros supported by CMS.
- Adding definitions to a macro library.
- Saving and restoring general register contents.
- Ending program execution.
- Passing parameters to your assembler language program.

Using Macros

Assembler Macros Supported by CMS

There are several CMS assembler macros you can use in assembler programs. Among the services provided by these macros are: the ability to write a record to disk, to read a record from disk, to write lines to a virtual printer, and so on. All the CMS assembler macros are described in the applicable *CMS Command and Macro Reference*, listed under "Bibliography" on page 386.

Adding Definitions to a Macro Library

Macro definitions, and members containing assembler source statements that can be read by a COPY instruction, can be added to a macro library. Use the CMS MACLIB command to create and modify CMS macro libraries. In the following example, a macro with a filename of NEWMAC and filetype of MACRO is added to the MACLIB with a filename of MYLIB.

```
MACLIB ADD MYLIB NEWMAC
```

Details of this command are described in the applicable *CMS Command and Macro Reference*, listed under "Bibliography" on page 386.

Operating System Programming Conventions

Assembler programs executing on CMS must follow a set of programming conventions to save and restore registers, and access execution parameters. These conventions are described in the following sections.

Saving and Restoring General Register Contents

A program should save the values contained in the general registers when it receives control and, on completion, restore these same values to the general registers. Thus, as control is passed from the operating system to a program and, in turn, to a subprogram, the status of the registers used by each program is preserved. This is done through use of the SAVE and RETURN system macro instructions.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Saving Register Contents: The SAVE macro instruction should be the first statement in the program. It stores the contents of registers 14, 15, and 0 through 12 in an area provided by the program that passes control. When a program is given control, register 13 contains the address of an area in which the general register contents should be saved.

If the program calls any subprograms, or uses any operating system services other than GETMAIN, FREEMAIN, ATTACH, and XCTL, it must first save the contents of register 13 and then load the address of an 18-fullword save area into register 13. This save area is in the program and is used by any subprograms or operating system services called by the program.

Restoring Register Contents: At completion, the program restores the contents of general registers 14, 15, and 0 through 12 by use of the RETURN system macro instruction (which also indicates program completion). The contents of register 13 must be restored before issuing the RETURN macro instruction.

Example: The coding sequence that follows shows the basic process of saving and restoring the contents of the registers. See the *VM/ESA CMS Application Development Reference for Assembler* for further information about the SAVE and RETURN macros.

```
Name      Operation      Operand

CSECTNAM  SAVE           (14,12)
          USING          CSECTNAM,15
          ⋮
          ST             13,SAVEAREA+4
          LA             13,SAVEAREA
          ⋮
program function source statements
          ⋮
          L              13,SAVEAREA+4
          RETURN         (14,12)
SAVEAREA  DC             18F'0'
          ⋮
          END
```

Ending Program Execution

You indicate completion of an assembler language source program by using the RETURN system macro instruction to pass control from the terminating program to the program that initiated it. The initiating program may be the operating system or, if a subprogram issued the RETURN, the program that called the subprogram.

In addition to indicating program completion and restoring register contents, the RETURN macro instruction may also pass a return code—a condition indicator that may be used by the program receiving control.

If the program returns to the operating system, the return code can be compared against the condition stated in the COND= parameter of the JOB or EXEC statement.

If return is to another program, the return code is available in general register 15, and may be used as required. Your program should restore register 13 before issuing the RETURN macro instruction.

The RETURN system macro instruction is discussed in detail in the *VM/ESA CMS Application Development Reference for Assembler*.

Passing Parameters to Your Assembler Language Program

On CMS, you can pass parameters to an assembler language program by means of the START command. The statement below shows how to pass parameters to your program using the CMS START command:

```
START MYJOB PARM1 PARM2
```

The parameters must be no longer than 8 characters each, and must be separated by blanks.

CMS creates a list of the parameters that are passed to the program when it is run. The address of the parameters is passed in register 1. The parameter list for the command above is:

```
PLIST    DS    0D
         DC    CL8'MYJOB'
         DC    CL8'PARM1'
         DC    CL8'PARM2'
         DC    8X'FF'
```

where the list is terminated by hexadecimal FFs.

If your program is started using the CMS OSRUN command, the parameters are passed in the same way as described in “Accessing Execution Parameters” on page 183.

If a module was created using the CMS GENMOD command and run using the MODULE name, the parameters are passed in extended parameter list format. The address of the parameter list is passed in register 0.

The format of the extended parameter list is:

Offset	Field
0	Address of command name
4	Address of beginning of options
8	Address of end of options
12	User word
16	Reserved

Part 4. Developing Assembler Programs on VSE

Chapter 13. Assembling Your Program on VSE 206
Input to the Assembler 206
Output from the Assembler 206
Invoking the Assembler in Batch 206
Invoking the Assembler on ICCF 208
Invoking the Assembler Dynamically 210
Batch Assembling 210
Controlling Your Assembly 211
Input and Output Files 212
Work File: IJSYS03 214
Specifying the Source File: SYSIPT 215
Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: LIBDEF Job Control Statement 215
Specifying the Listing File: SYSLST 215
Directing Assembler Messages to Your Console Log: SYSLOG 215
Specifying Object Code Files: SYSLNK and SYSPCH 216
Specifying the Associated Data File: SYSADAT 216
Return Codes 216

Chapter 14. Link-Editing and Running Your Program on VSE 217
The Linkage Editor 217
Creating a Phase 217
Input to the Linkage Editor 218
Inputting Object Modules 218
Files for Linkage Editor Processing 218
Inputting additional Object Modules 219
Linkage Editor Control Statements 219
Output from the Linkage Editor 220
Running your Assembled Program 221

Chapter 15. VSE System Services and Programming Considerations . . . 222
Adding Definitions to a Macro Library 222
Processing E-Decks 222
Operating System Programming Conventions 223
Saving and Restoring General Register Contents 223
Ending Program Execution 224
Accessing Execution Parameters 224

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Chapter 13. Assembling Your Program on VSE

This chapter describes how to invoke High Level Assembler on VSE. It describes the job control required to run the assembler, files used by the assembler and return codes. The job control language is described in detail in the applicable *System Control Statements* manual.

Input to the Assembler

As input, the assembler accepts a program written in the assembler language as defined in the *Language Reference*. This program is referred to as a *source module*. Some statements in the source module (macro or COPY instructions) can cause additional input to be obtained from a macro library.

Output from the Assembler

The output from the assembler can consist of an object module, a program listing, terminal messages, and an associated data file. The object module can be written to a data set residing on a direct access device or a magnetic tape. From that file, the object module can be read and processed by the linkage editor or the loader. See Appendix C, “Object Deck Output” on page 248 for the format of the object module.

The program listing lists all the statements in the module, both in source and machine language format, and gives other important information about the assembly, such as error messages. The listing is described in detail in Chapter 2, “Using the Assembler Listing” on page 8.

Invoking the Assembler in Batch

The JCL for running an assembly includes:

- A job description.
- Definitions for the files needed.
- A statement to run the assembler.

The following example shows how to run the assembler.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

```
// JOB jobname                                                    1
// DLBL IJSYS03,'HLASM.WORK.IJSYS03',0,VSAM,RECSIZE=4096,         2
               RECORDS=(100,50),DISP=(NEW,KEEP),CAT=VSESPUC
// DLBL IJSYSLN,'HLASM.WORK.IJSYSLN',0,VSAM,RECSIZE=322,          3
               RECORDS=(100,50),DISP=(NEW,KEEP),CAT=VSESPUC
// LIBDEF PHASE,SEARCH=(PRD2.PROD)                                4
// LIBDEF SOURCE,SEARCH=(lib.sublib)                              5
// OPTION LINK                                                    6
// EXEC ASMA90,SIZE=ASMA90                                        7
⋮
Assembler source statements
⋮
/*                                                                8
/&                                                                9
```

Figure 79. JCL to Assemble a Program

1 Identifies the beginning of your job to the operating system. *jobname* is the name you assign to the job.

2 Defines the work file to be used by the assembler. The work file must be on a direct-access storage device. The work file can be a SAM file or a SAM-ESDS file. This statement is not required if IJSYS03 is defined in the System Standard or Partition Standard labels.

3 Defines the SYSLNK file that receives the object records produced from the LINK option. This statement is not required if IJSYSLN is defined in the System Standard or Partition Standard labels.

4 Specifies the sublibrary where the assembler resides.

5 Specifies the sublibraries that are to be searched to locate any macro and copy members, and the ASMAOPT.USER member (if required).

6 Sets the LINK option and the Assembler OBJECT option which causes the assembler to write the object records produced to SYSLNK.

7 Invokes the assembler to process the assembler source statements that follow the EXEC statement.

The SIZE parameter of the EXEC statement specifies `SIZE=ASMA90`. This sets the size of program storage to the size of the phase ASMA90 and makes all the remaining storage in the partition GETVIS storage. High Level Assembler does not use program storage.

8 The end-of-data statement indicates the end of input to the assembler (source code), and separates data from subsequent job control statements in the input stream.

9 The end-of-job statement indicates the end of the job.

These statements cause the assembler to assemble your program and to produce a listing (described in Chapter 2, “Using the Assembler Listing” on page 8) and an object module (described in Appendix C, “Object Deck Output” on page 248).

Invoking the Assembler on ICCF

To assemble your program on ICCF, use the job entry statements /LOAD, /OPTION, /INCLUDE, and /RUN. To create and save an object module, you should also use the /FILE job entry statement.

Before assembling your program on ICCF, ensure that your ICCF Administrator has provided the following:

- LIBDEF statements for all librarian sublibraries that are accessed during assembly, including the sublibrary where High Level Assembler and any user exits reside. The LIBDEF statements must be provided in the VSE/ICCF initialization job stream.
- Definitions for the assembler work file used by the assembler to process the source program. All work files must be pre-allocated, and defined in the VSE/ICCF initialization job stream. High Level Assembler does not recognize work files defined using the /FILE job entry statement.
- An interactive partition with sufficient storage to run the assembly. The amount of storage you need depends upon the size of your source program, and the value you specify in the SIZE assembler option.

On ICCF, you can either enter the required ICCF commands, or you can write your own procedure that can be used whenever you need to assemble a program.

Figure 80 shows an example of the ICCF commands you should enter to assemble your program.

```
/INPUT
/LOAD    ASMA90,PARM='SIZE(800K)'
/OPTION  NOGO,RESET,DECK,GETVIS=P-240
/FILE    TYPE=ICCF,UNIT=SYSPCH,NAME=ASMOBJ
/INCLUDE ASMPROG
/END
/RUN
```

Figure 80. Entering ICCF Commands

Figure 81 on page 209 shows a working example of an ICCF procedure for assembling a program, and generating an object module.

```
* - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
*  ASMARUN NNNN (OBJ MMMM/*) OPTIONS
*
*  PROCEDURE TO ASSEMBLE A HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER PROGRAM
* - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
&&OPTIONS 0010011
&&IF &&PARMCT NE 0 &&GOTO START
&&TYPE ENTER   NAME (OBJ NAME/*) (OPTIONS)
&&READ &&PARAMS
&&IF &&PARMCT EQ 0 &&EXIT
&&LABEL START
/LIST 1 1 &&PARAM1 &&VARBL5
&&IF &&RETCOD NE *FILE &&GOTO SOUR
&&TYPE *SOURCE MEMBER &&PARAM1 NOT IN LIBRARY OR EMPTY
&&EXIT
&&LABEL SOUR
&&IF &&RETCOD NE *INVALID &&GOTO YESOR
&&TYPE *INVALID PASSWORD OR INVALID ACCESS TO MEMBER &&PARAM1
&&EXIT
&&LABEL YESOR
&&IF &&RETCOD NE *MISSING &&GOTO OKSOR
&&TYPE *ENTER PASSWORD FOR MEMBER &&PARAM1
&&READ &&VARBL5
&&IF &&VARBL5 NE ' ' &&GOTO -START
&&EXIT
&&LABEL OKSOR
&&SET &&VARBL1 &&PARAM1
&&SHIFT 1
&&IF &&PARAM1 NE OBJ &&GOTO NOOBJ
&&SET &&VARBL2 &&PARAM2 ''
&&IF &&VARBL2 EQ '*' &&SET &&VARBL2 ' '
&&IF &&VARBL2 EQ ' ' &&GOTO +INLIB
/LIST 1 1 &&VARBL2
&&IF &&RETCOD  NE *FILE &&GOTO OVERW
/INP NOPROMPT
DUMMY RECORD TO CREATE A MEMBER FOR 'ASMARUN' PROCEDURE OUTPUT
/SAVE &&VARBL2
&&IF &&RETCOD NE *LIBRARY &&GOTO INLIB
&&TYPE *LIBRARY DIRECTORY FULL
&&EXIT
&&LABEL OVERW
&&TYPE *MEMBER &&VARBL2 ALREADY EXISTS. OVERWRITE? (Y/N)
&&READ &&VARBL4
&&IF &&VARBL4 EQ 'Y' &&GOTO INLIB
&&TYPE *NO ASSEMBLY - TRY AGAIN WITH ANOTHER NAME
&&EXIT
&&LABEL INLIB
&&SHIFT 1
&&SHIFT 1
&&LABEL NOOBJ
/INP NOPROMPT
&/LOAD ASMA90 PARM='&&PARAM1,&&PARAM2,&&PARAM3,&&PARAM4,&&PARAM5'
/OPTION NOGO RESET GETVIS=P-240
&&IF &&VARBL2 NE ' ' /FILE TYPE=ICCF,UNIT=SYSPCH,NAME=&&VARBL2
&/INCLUDE &&VARBL1 &&VARBL5
/END
/PEND
/RUN
```

Figure 81. Sample Procedure for Assembling on ICCF

Invoking the Assembler Dynamically

To invoke High Level Assembler from a running program, use the CDLOAD and CALL macro instructions.

You can supply assembler options in the CALL macro instruction as shown in Figure 82

```
DYNAMICV CSECT
DYNAMICV RMODE  24
DYNAMICV AMODE  ANY
BEGIN    SAVE   (14,12)
         USING  BEGIN,15
         ST     13,SAVEAREA+4
         LA     13,SAVEAREA
         CDLOAD ASMA90          1
         LR     15,0
         CALL   (15),(OPTIONS)  2   3
         CDDELETE ASMA90        Required for VSE/ESA 1.3 onwards
         L      13,SAVEAREA+4
         RETURN (14,12)
SAVEAREA DS     18F
OPTIONS  DC     Y(OPTIONSL)
OPTS     DC     C'XREF(SHORT)'
OPTIONSL EQU    *-OPTS
         END
```

Figure 82. Sample Program to Call the Assembler Dynamically

Notes on Figure 82:

1 ASMA90 is the symbolic name of the assembler. The entry point address is returned by CDLOAD in register 0.

2 (15) specifies that the entry point address is in register 15.

3 (OPTIONS) specifies the address of a variable-length list containing the options. The address of an option list must be provided, even if no options are required.

The option list must begin on a halfword boundary. The first two bytes contain a count of the number of bytes in the remainder of the list. If no options are specified, the count must be zero. The option list is free form, with each field separated from the next by a comma. No blanks should appear in the list, except within the string specified for the EXIT or SYSPARM options providing the string is enclosed within single quotes.

Batch Assembling

You can assemble a sequence of separate assembler programs with a single invocation of the assembler by specifying the BATCH option. The object programs produced from this assembly can be link-edited into either a single phase or separate phases.

When the BATCH option is specified, each assembler program in the sequence must be terminated by an END statement, including the last program in the batch. If an END statement is omitted, the program is assembled with the next program in

the sequence. If the END statement is omitted from the last program in the sequence, the assembler generates an END statement.

If you need to produce separate phases, you must write a phase linkage editor control statement for each phase. The phase statement must be written at the start of the module. The following example shows how to create two phases, SECT1 and SECT2. When multiple phases are produced, they are link-edited as an overlay.

```
         PUNCH ' PHASE SECT1,*'
         END
SECT1    CSECT          Start of first load module
         ⋮
         Source instructions
         ⋮
         END            End of first load module
         PUNCH ' PHASE SECT2,*'
         END
SECT2    CSECT          Start of second load module
         ⋮
         Source instructions
         ⋮
         END            End of second load module
```

Controlling Your Assembly

The assembler options are specified on the PARM parameter of the JCL EXEC statement or the ICCF /LOAD job entry statement. The options must be enclosed within single quotes and be separated by commas.

The assembler options are described in Chapter 3, “Controlling Your Assembly with Options” on page 38. You can also specify some assembler options using the // OPTION job control statement. These are described in Figure 83.

Figure 83 (Page 1 of 2). Assembler Options in JCL

Assembler Option	JCL OPTION Equivalent	Comments
ALIGN	ALIGN	
DECK	DECK	The DECK assembler option is always specified using the JCL OPTION statement. If the DECK option is specified on the PARM operand of the JCL EXEC statement, error diagnostic message ASMA400W is issued, and the DECK option is ignored.
LIST	LIST	The LIST assembler option is equivalent to specifying LIST(121).
OBJECT	LINK CATAL	The OBJECT assembler option is always specified using the LINK or CATAL option of the JCL OPTION statement. If the OBJECT option is specified on the PARM operand of the JCL EXEC statement, error diagnostic message ASMA400W is issued, and the OBJECT option is ignored.

Figure 83 (Page 2 of 2). Assembler Options in JCL

Assembler Option	JCL OPTION Equivalent	Comments
RLD	RLD	
SYSPARM	SYSPARM	The value specified in the SYSPARM option of the JCL OPTION statement is limited to 8 characters. To provide longer values, use the SYSPARM assembler option. The SYSPARM value specified on the PARM operand of the JCL EXEC statement overrides any value specified on the JCL OPTION statement. A null value (// OPTION SYSPARM='') is ignored by the assembler.
TERMINAL	TERM	
XREF	SXREF XREF	The XREF option of the JCL OPTION statement can be used to specify the XREF(FULL) assembler option. The SXREF option of the JCL OPTION statement can be used to specify the XREF(SHORT) assembler option.

Input and Output Files

Depending on the options in effect, High Level Assembler requires the following files, as shown in Figure 84:

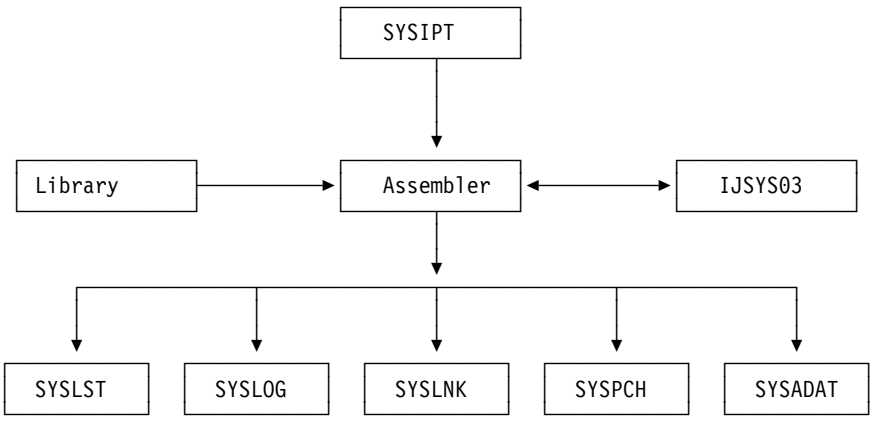


Figure 84. High Level Assembler Files

High Level Assembler requires the following files:

IJSYS03 A work file used as intermediate external storage when processing the source program. This file is used when there is not enough main storage available to do an in-storage assembly.

If the value specified for the SIZE option is large enough, an in-storage assembly is done and the work file IJSYS03 can be omitted, though a warning message is issued.

SYSIPT An input file containing the source statements to be processed.

In addition, the following six files might be required:

Library	Library sublibraries containing macro definitions (for macro definitions not defined in the source program), source code to be called for through COPY assembler instructions, or both. One of the sublibraries may also contain a member (ASMAOPT.USER) which contains an invocation assembler option list.
SYSLST	A file containing the assembly listing (if the LIST option is in effect).
SYSLOG	A file containing flagged statements and diagnostic messages. (only if the TERM option is in effect). SYSLOG is normally assigned to the operator console.
SYSPCH	A file containing object module output, usually for punching (only if the DECK option is in effect).
SYSLNK	A file containing object module output for input to the linkage editor (only if the OBJECT option is in effect).
SYSADAT	A file containing associated data output (only if the ADATA option is in effect).

The files listed above are described in the text following Figure 85. The characteristics of these files, those set by the assembler and those you can override, are shown in Figure 85.

Figure 85. Assembler File Characteristics

File	Access Method	Logical Record Length (LRECL)	Block Size (BLKSIZE)	Record Format (RECFM)
IJSYS03	BAM	Same as BLKSIZE	1	UNDEF
SYSIPT	SAM	80	80	FIXED
Library	LIBR API	80	80	FIXED
Library member ASMAOPT.USER	LIBR API	80	80	FIXED
SYSLST	SAM	2	Same as record size	FIXED
SYSLOG	SAM	3	Same as record size	FIXED
SYSPCH	SAM	80	80	FIXED
SYSLNK	SAM	80	80	FIXED
SYSADAT	SAM	8188	8192	VARBLK

Notes to Figure 85:

1 You can specify a block size (BLKSIZE) between 2008 and 32760 bytes on the DLBL statement if a SAM DLBL is provided. The block size should be a multiple of 8. If it is not, it is rounded to the next lower multiple of 8. If you do not specify BLKSIZE, the assembler sets the block size to 4088.

If a VSAM DLBL is provided, the block size can be overridden by explicitly defining the work file with the required block size.

2 If you specify EXIT(PRTEXIT) and the user exit specifies the logical record length, the logical record length returned is used. If you do not specify EXIT(PRTEXIT) or the user exit does not specify a record length, the record length is set to 121 if SYSLST is assigned to disk or 133 otherwise.

The minimum record length allowed for SYSPRINT is 121, and the maximum allowed is 133.

3 If you specify EXIT(TRMEXIT) and the user exit specifies the logical record length, the logical record length returned is used. If you do not specify EXIT(TRMEXIT) or the user exit does not specify a record length, the record length is set to 68. The maximum record length allowed for SYSTERM is 125.

Work File: IJSYS03

The assembler uses this work file as an intermediate external storage device when processing the source program. The input/output device assigned to this file must be a direct-access device. The assembler does not support multivolume work files.

Specifying the Source File: SYSIPT

Define the file that contains your source code with the SYSIPT ASSGN statement. If you include your source code in your job stream, it must immediately follow the EXEC statement that invokes the assembler, and be terminated with a /* statement.

You can, however, use JCL statements to define a file that contains your source code. For example, to define a direct-access device file, use the DLBL, EXTENT, and ASSGN statements:

```
// DLBL IJSYSIN,'file-ID',0,SD
// EXTENT SYSIPT,volser,1,0,start,tracks
// ASSGN SYSIPT,DISK,VOL=volser,SHR
```

Specifying Macro and Copy Code Libraries: LIBDEF Job Control Statement

Include the LIBDEF job control statement if your program contains any macro calls to library macros, or any COPY instructions. LIBDEF statements define the sublibraries that contain macro definition and COPY members.

```
// LIBDEF SOURCE,SEARCH=(lib.sublib)
```

The member name in the sublibrary must match the name you specify in the macro call or COPY instruction. The member type must be `A`, unless the SUBLIB job control option has changed it to `D`. See OPTION statement description in *VSE/ESA System Control Statements* for further details.

High Level Assembler does not read edited macros (E-books). To read edited macros from the library, provide a LIBRARY user exit using the EXIT option. See “Processing E-Decks” on page 222.

You don't need the LIBDEF SOURCE statement if your assembler source code does not contain any library macro calls or COPY instructions. You also don't need the LIBDEF SOURCE statement if the library members are in a sub-library in the permanent LIBDEF search chain.

Concatenate multiple sublibraries in the search chain if you have multiple macro or copy sublibraries.

Specifying the Listing File: SYSLST

The assembler uses this file to produce a listing. You can then direct the output to a printer, a direct access device, or a magnetic-tape device. The listing includes the results of the default or specified options of the PARM parameter (for example, diagnostic messages, the object code listing). For example:

```
// ASSGN SYSLST,PRT1
```

Directing Assembler Messages to Your Console Log: SYSLOG

If you specify the TERM assembler option, the assembler writes flagged statements and diagnostic messages to the console log.

Specifying Object Code Files: SYSLNK and SYSPCH

When using the OBJECT assembler option, or DECK assembler option, you can store the object code on disk or tape. The assembler uses the SYSLNK or SYSPCH files you define in your JCL to store the object code.

In the example below, the created object module is ready to be passed to the linkage editor:

```
// DLBL IJSYSLN,'file-ID',0,SD
// EXTENT SYSLNK,volser,1,0,start,tracks
// ASSGN SYSLNK,DISK,VOL=volser,SHR
```

You don't need to define SYSLNK in your JCL if the NOOBJECT option is in effect.

The following example defines SYSPCH as a direct-access device file:

```
// DLBL IJSYSPH,'file-ID',0,SD
// EXTENT SYSPCH,volser,1,0,start,tracks
ASSGN SYSPCH,DISK,VOL=volser,SHR
```

You don't need to define the SYSPCH file if the NODECK option is in effect.

Specifying the Associated Data File: SYSADAT

Use the SYSADAT DLBL statement to define your associated data output file statement:

```
// DLBL SYSADAT,'HLASM.WORK.SYSADAT',0,VSAM,RECORDS=(100,100),         X
               RECSIZE=8192,DISP=(NEW,KEEP),CAT=VSESPUC
```

The associated data file contains information about the assembly. It provides information for use by symbolic debugging and cross-reference tools. The SYSADAT file must be directed to a direct-access storage device and can be a SAM file or SAM-ESDS file.

Return Codes

High Level Assembler issues return codes that you can check with the IF and ON job control statements. The IF and ON job control statements let you skip or run a job step, depending on the results (indicated by the return code) of a previous job step. See the applicable *System Control Statements* manual for details about the IF and ON job control statements.

The return code issued by the assembler is the highest severity code that is associated with any error detected in the assembly, or with any MNOTE message produced by the source program or macro instructions. The return code can be controlled by the FLAG(*n*) assembler option described on page 52. See Appendix G, “High Level Assembler Messages” on page 309 for a listing of the assembler errors and their severity codes.

Chapter 14. Link-Editing and Running Your Program on VSE

If you produce an object module when you assemble your program, it needs further processing before it can run. This further processing, the resolution of external references inserted by the assembler, is performed by the linkage editor. The linkage editor converts an object module into an executable program, which is called a *phase*.

The Linkage Editor

The linkage editor converts an object module into a phase and catalogs it in a library sublibrary. The phase then becomes a permanent member of that sublibrary, with a member type of PHASE, and can be retrieved at any time and run in either the job that created it or any other job.

Alternatively, you can request the linkage editor to store the phase temporarily, in the virtual I/O area. The phase is then ready to run. Using this method, the linkage editor does not save a permanent copy of the phase. Consequently, after the phase has been run, it cannot be used again without creating another phase. This method is useful during testing.

Creating a Phase

The linkage editor processes your assembled program (object module) and prepares it for running. The processed object module becomes a phase.

Optionally, the linkage editor can process more than one object module, and transform those object modules into a single phase.

Figure 86 shows the general job control procedure for creating a phase (link-editing).

```
// JOB jobname
// DLBL IJSYSLN,'file-ID',0,SD
// EXTENT SYSLNK,volser,1,0,start,tracks
// ASSGN SYSLNK,DISK,VOL=volser,SHR
// LIBDEF OBJ,SEARCH=(lib.sublib)
// LIBDEF PHASE,CATALOG=(lib.sublib)
// OPTION CATAL
   ACTION MAP
   PHASE phasenam,*
     ⋮
// EXEC LNKEDT
/&
```

Figure 86. Sample Job Control for Creating a Phase

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Input to the Linkage Editor

Your input to the linkage editor can be:

- One or more object modules (created through the OBJECT or DECK assembler option).
- Linkage editor control statements (including control statements generated using the assembler PUNCH statement).

Inputting Object Modules

The main input to the linkage editor is the SYSLNK file that contains one or more separately assembled object modules, possibly with a PHASE linkage editor control statement.

Additional input to the linkage editor consists of object modules that are not part of the SYSLNK file, but are to be included in the phase.

The additional input can come from sublibraries containing other application object modules.

You can specify which sublibrary contains the additional object modules with the LIBDEF job control statement. If you have multiple sublibraries containing object modules to be included in the phase, concatenate them, as shown in the following example:

```
// LIBDEF OBJ,SEARCH=(PRD2.PROD,SALES.LIB)
```

In this case, the sublibraries PRD2.PROD and SALES.LIB are available for additional input to the linkage editor.

Files for Linkage Editor Processing

You need the following files for linkage editor processing. Figure 87 summarizes the function, and permissible device types, for each file.

Figure 87 (Page 1 of 2). Files Used for Link-Editing

File	Type	Function	Permissible Device Types
SYSIPT[1]	Input	Additional object module input	Card reader Magnetic tape Direct access
SYSLNK	Input	Object module input, normally the output of the assembler	Direct access
SYSLST[2]	Output	Diagnostic messages Informative messages Linkage editor map	Printer Magnetic tape Direct access
SYSLOG	Output	Operator messages	Display console
SYSRDR	Input	Control statement input	Card reader Magnetic tape Direct access
IJSYS01 (SYS001)	Work file	Linkage editor work file	Direct access

Figure 87 (Page 2 of 2). Files Used for Link-Editing

File	Type	Function	Permissible Device Types
User-specified Sublibrary	Library	Catalog sublibrary for the phase[3]	Direct access
		External reference and INCLUDE statement resolution[4]	

Notes:

1 Object modules read from SYSIPT are written to SYSLNK
2 If not provided, messages are written to SYSLOG
3 Required if the phase is to be cataloged
4 Required for additional object module input

Inputting additional Object Modules

You can use the INCLUDE linkage editor control statement to specify additional object modules you want included in the phase.

Code the INCLUDE statements before the EXEC statement that invokes the linkage editor:

```
// EXEC ASMA90,SIZE=ASMA90
     ⋮
/*
 INCLUDE ASSMPGM
 INCLUDE ASSMPGM1
// EXEC LNKEDT
/&
```

Object modules specified by the INCLUDE statement are written to SYSLNK as job control encounters the statements.

Linkage Editor Control Statements

In addition to object modules, input to the linkage editor includes linkage editor control statements. These statements are described in Figure 88.

Figure 88. Linkage Editor Control Statements

Statement	Action	Comments
ACTION	Use the ACTION statement to specify linkage editor options. The options are: • MAP—requests the linkage editor to write a linkage editor map to SYSLST. • NOMAP—suppresses the MAP option. • NOAUTO—suppresses the automatic library look up (AUTOLINK) function; the linkage editor does not attempt to resolve external references using the automatic library look-up function. • CANCEL—requests the linkage editor to cancel the job if a linkage editor error occurs. • SMAP—request the linkage editor to produce a sorted listing of CSECT names on SYSLST.	This statement must be the first linkage editor statement in your input stream. ACTION MAP is the default, if SYSLST is assigned.
ENTRY	Use the ENTRY statement to specify the entry point of a phase that has multiple possible entry points.	The default entry point is the load address of the phase.
INCLUDE	Use the INCLUDE statement to include additional object modules in the phase that would not otherwise be included.	You can use the INCLUDE statement to include an object module that was cataloged with a different name to the name used in the CALL statement in your program.
PHASE	Use the PHASE statement to provide the linkage editor with a phase name.	You must provide a PHASE statement (and the job control option CATAL) if you want to catalog the phase in a library sublibrary.

For a complete description of these linkage editor control statements, see *VSE/ESA System Control Statements*.

Output from the Linkage Editor

You can obtain a linkage editor storage map, and a listing of linkage editor diagnostics, to help you determine the reasons for particular errors in your program. To do this, use the ACTION MAP linkage editor control statement. If SYSLST is assigned, ACTION MAP is the default. You can specify ACTION NOMAP if you do not want the linkage editor to produce the storage map.

Detecting Link-Edit Errors: After link-editing, you receive a listing of diagnostic messages on SYSLST. Check the linkage editor map to make sure that all the object modules you expected were included.

Unresolved “weak” external references (WXTRN) can be ignored. However, all “strong” external references (EXTRN) should be resolved for a phase to run correctly.

You can find a description of linkage editor messages in *VSE/ESA Diagnosis Tools*.

Running your Assembled Program

The general job control procedure to run a program on VSE is:

```
// DLBL (JCL for user-specified files)
// EXEC progname[,PARM='parameters']
      ⋮
```

Chapter 15. VSE System Services and Programming Considerations

This chapter describes some of the system services and program development facilities that assist you in developing your assembler program on VSE. It provides the following information:

- Adding definitions to a macro library.
- Saving and restoring general register contents.
- Ending program execution.
- Accessing execution parameters.
- Processing E-Decks.

Adding Definitions to a Macro Library

You can add macro definitions, and members containing assembler source statements that can be read by a COPY instruction, to a macro library. Use the LIBR utility program for this purpose. Details of this program and its control statements are contained in the applicable *System Control Statements* publication. The following example adds a new macro definition, NEWMAC, to the system library, PRD2.PROD.

```
// JOB CATMAC
// EXEC LIBR
ACCESS SUBLIB=PRD2.PROD
CATALOG NEWMAC.A REPLACE=YES
           MACRO
           NEWMAC &OP1,&OP2
           LCLA   &PAR1,&PAR2
           ⋮
           MEND
/+
/*
```

The ACCESS statement specifies the sublibrary into which the macro is cataloged. The CATALOG statement specifies the member name and member type. REPLACE=YES indicates that the member is replaced if it already exists.

Processing E-Decks

An E-Deck refers to a macro source book of type E (or type F if `SUBLIB=DF` specified on OPTION statement). You can use these types of macros in your program; however, they must first be converted to source statement format. E-Decks are stored in edited format, and High Level Assembler requires that library macros be stored in source statement format.

You must use a library input exit to analyze a macro definition and, in the case of an E-Deck, call the ESERV program to change, line by line, the E-Deck definition back into source statement format.

See the section titled *Using the High Level Assembler Library Exit for Processing E-Decks* in the *IBM VSE/ESA Guide to System Functions* manual. This section describes how to set up the exit and how to use it.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Operating System Programming Conventions

Assembler programs executing on VSE must follow a set of programming conventions to save and restore registers, and access execution parameters. These are described in the following sections.

Saving and Restoring General Register Contents

A program should save the values contained in the general registers when it starts to run and, on completion, restore these same values to the general registers. Thus, as control is passed from the operating system to a program and, in turn, to a subprogram, the status of the registers used by each program is preserved. This is done through use of the SAVE and RETURN system macro instructions.

Saving Register Contents: The SAVE macro instruction should be the first statement in the program. It stores the contents of registers 14, 15, and 0 through 12 in an area provided by the program that passes control. When a program is given control, register 13 contains the address of an area in which the general register contents should be saved.

If the program calls any subprograms, or uses any operating system services other than GETVIS, FREEVIS, and CDLOAD, it must first save the contents of register 13 and then load the address of an 18-fullword save area into register 13. This save area is in the program and is used by any subprograms or operating system services called by the program.

Restoring Register Contents: At completion, the program restores the contents of general registers 14, 15, and 0 through 12 by use of the RETURN system macro instruction (which also indicates program completion). The contents of register 13 must be restored before issuing the RETURN macro instruction.

Example: The coding sequence that follows shows the basic process of saving and restoring the contents of the registers. A complete discussion of the SAVE and RETURN macro instructions and the saving and restoring of registers is contained in the applicable *VSE/ESA System Macros Reference*.

```
Name      Operation      Operand

BEGIN     SAVE           (14,12)
          USING          BEGIN,15
  ⋮
          ST             13,SAVEBLK+4
          LA             13,SAVEBLK
  ⋮
          L              13,SAVEBLK+4
          RETURN         (14,12)
SAVEBLK   DC             18F'0'
  ⋮
          END
```

Ending Program Execution

You indicate completion of an assembler language source program by using the RETURN system macro instruction to pass control from the terminating program to the program that initiated it. The initiating program might be the operating system or, if a subprogram issued the RETURN, the program that called the subprogram.

In addition to indicating program completion and restoring register contents, the RETURN macro instruction can also pass a return code—a condition indicator that can be used by the program receiving control.

If the return is to the operating system, the return code is compared against the condition stated in the IF and ON job control statements.

If return is to another program, the return code is available in general register 15, and can be used as required. Your program should restore register 13 before issuing the RETURN macro instruction.

The RETURN system macro instruction is discussed in detail in the applicable *Application Programming Macro Reference* manual.

Accessing Execution Parameters

You access information in the PARM field of an EXEC statement by referring to the contents of general register 1. If you do not specify the PARM field of the JCL EXEC statement, register 1 and register 15 contain the same value on initial entry.

When control is given to the program, general register 1 contains the address of a fullword which, in turn, contains the address of the data area containing the information.

The data area consists of a halfword containing the count (in binary) of the number of information characters, followed by the information field. The information field is aligned to a fullword boundary. Figure 89 shows how the PARM field information is structured.

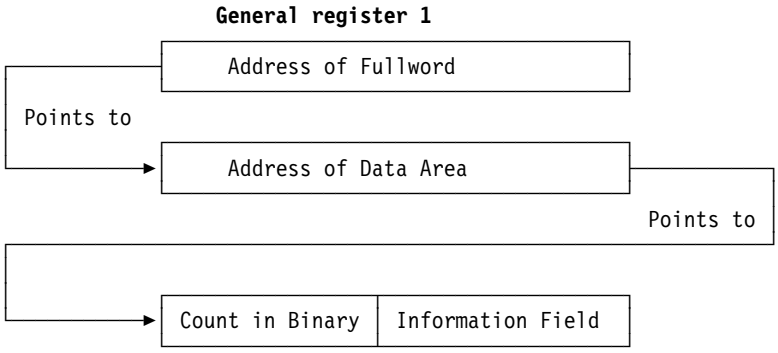


Figure 89. Access to PARM Field

Appendixes

Appendix A. Earlier Assembler Compatibility and Migration 227
Comparison of Instruction Set and Assembler Instructions 227
Comparison of Macro and Conditional Assembly Statements 230
Comparison of Macro and Conditional Assembly 233
Comparison of Language Features 237
Comparison of Assembler Options 239
Comparison of Assembler Listing 241
Comparison of Diagnostic Features 243
Other Assembler Differences 244

Appendix B. Cross-System Portability Considerations 246
Using Extended Architecture Instructions 246
Using System Macros 246
Migrating Object Programs 246

Appendix C. Object Deck Output 248
ESD Record Format 249
TXT Record Format 250
RLD Record Format 251
END Record Format 252
SYM Record Format 252

Appendix D. Associated Data File Output 255
Record Types 257
Macro-only Assemblies 261
ADATA Record Layouts 262
Common Header Section 262
Job Identification Record—X'0000' 264
ADATA Identification Record—X'0001' 264
ADATA Compilation Unit Start/End Record—X'0002' 265
System 370/390 Output File Information Record—X'000A' 265
Options File Information—X'000B' 268
Options Record—X'0010' 268
External Symbol Dictionary Record—X'0020' 271
Source Analysis Record—X'0030' 272
Source Error Record—X'0032' 274
DC/DS Record—X'0034' 275
DC Extension Record—X'0035' 280
Machine Instruction Record—X'0036' 281
Relocation Dictionary Record—X'0040' 281
Symbol Record—X'0042' 281
Symbol Cross Reference Record—X'0044' 282
Register Cross Reference Record—X'0045' 283
Library Record—X'0060' 283
Library Member and Macro Cross Reference Record - X'0062' 284
User-supplied Information Record - X'0070' 285
USING Map Record—X'0080' 285
Statistics Record—X'0090' 286

Appendix E. Sample Program 290

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Appendix F. MHELP Sample Macro Trace and Dump 301

Appendix G. High Level Assembler Messages 309
Message Code Format 309
Message Descriptions 310
Message Number and Text 310
Explanation of Message 311
Supplemental Information 311
System Action 311
Programmer Response 311
Severity Code 311
Assembly Error Diagnostic Messages 312
Message Not Known 314
Messages 315
Abnormal Assembly Termination Messages 352
Messages 352
ASMAHL Command Error Messages (CMS) 357

Appendix H. User Interface Macros 361

Appendix I. Sample ADATA User Exit (MVS and CMS) 362
Function 362
Preparing the Exit 362
Preparing the Filter Management Table 362
Preparing the Filter Modules 363
Preparing the Sample Filter Module ASMAXFLU 366
Invoking the Exit 368

Appendix J. Sample LISTING User Exit (MVS and CMS) 369
Function 369
Preparing the Exit 369
Invoking the Exit 369
Messages 370

Appendix K. Sample SOURCE User Exit (MVS and CMS) 371
Function 371
Preparing the Exit 371
Invoking the Exit 371

Appendix L. How to Generate a Translation Table 372

Appendix M. How to Generate a Unicode Translation Table 374

Appendix A. Earlier Assembler Compatibility and Migration

This section compares the High Level Assembler to the earlier assemblers, Assembler H Version 2 and DOS/VSE Assembler. This section can be used to determine the changes that might be required to migrate your assembler programs to High Level Assembler. This section also lists the new facilities that are available with High Level Assembler that you can use for new and existing assembler programs.

Comparison of Instruction Set and Assembler Instructions

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Instruction set			
S/370™ instructions	Yes	Yes	Yes
XA instructions	No	Yes	Yes
ESA instructions	No	Yes	Yes
Vector instructions	No	Yes	Yes
DOS operation code table	No	No	The DOS operation code table is designed specifically for assembling programs previously assembled using the DOS/VSE assembler. Some machine instructions and assembler instructions are not included in this operation code table. See “OPTABLE” on page 62 for further details.
Data definition statements			
CCW	Yes	Yes	Yes
CCW0	No	Yes	Yes
CCW1	No	Yes	Yes
DC	Yes	Yes	Yes
DS	Yes	Yes	Yes
Symbols used in the DC or DS expression need not be defined before they are used	No	Yes	Yes
J-type Constant	No	No	Yes
Q-type Constant	No	Yes	Yes
R-type Constant	No	No	Yes
S-type Constant	No	Yes	Yes

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Number of nominal values for Binary and Hexadecimal constants	One	Multiple	Multiple
Program control statements			
ACONTROL	No	No	Yes
ADATA	No	No	Yes
CNOP	Name entry can have sequence symbol or blank	Name entry can have any symbol or blank	Name entry can have any symbol or blank
COPY	Nesting depth limited to 3	Nesting depth not limited	Nesting depth not limited
EQU	Value operand only	Value, length attribute and type attribute operands	Value, length attribute and type attribute operands
END	END statement must be supplied	Multiple END statements are allowed. If the END statement is omitted, the assembler generates an END statement.	Multiple END statements are allowed. If the END statement is omitted, the assembler generates an END statement.
EXITCTL	No	No	Yes
ICTL	Yes	Yes	Yes
ISEQ	Yes	Yes	Yes
LTORG	Yes	Yes	Yes
OPSYN	No	Yes	Yes
ORG	Name entry can have sequence symbol or blank	Name entry can have any symbol or blank	Name entry can have any symbol or blank
POP	No	Yes	Yes, with NOPRINT operand
PUNCH	Yes	Yes	Yes
PUSH	No	Yes	Yes, with NOPRINT operand
REPRO	Yes	Yes	Yes
Listing control statements			
CEJECT	No	No	Yes
EJECT	Yes	Yes	Yes
PRINT	Yes	Yes	Yes, with NOPRINT, MCALL, NOMCALL, MSOURCE, NOMSOURCE, UHEAD, and NOUHEAD operands
SPACE	Yes	Yes	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
TITLE	Up to 4 characters in name (if not a sequence symbol)	Up to 8 characters in name (if not a sequence symbol)	Up to 8 characters in name (if not a sequence symbol)
Base register assignment			
DROP	Yes	Yes	Yes
USING	Yes, ordinary USING	Yes, ordinary USING	Yes, ordinary, labeled, and dependent USINGs
Program sectioning and linking			
ALIAS	No	No	Yes
AMODE	No	Yes	Yes
CATTR (MVS and CMS)	No	No	Yes
COM	Only unnamed common control sections are allowed	Yes	Yes
CSECT	Only named control sections are allowed	Yes	Yes
CXD	No	Yes	Yes
DSECT	Yes	Yes	Yes
DXD	No	Yes	Yes
ENTRY	The maximum number of symbols that can be identified by the ENTRY instruction is 200	Yes	Yes
EXTRN	Yes	Yes	Yes
RMODE	No	Yes	Yes
RSECT	No	Yes	Yes, with automatic checking for reenterability
START	Only named control sections are allowed	Yes	Yes
XATTR (MVS and CMS)	No	No	Yes

Comparison of Macro and Conditional Assembly Statements

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Macro definition			
MACRO	Yes	Yes	Yes
MEND	Yes	Yes	Yes
MEXIT	Yes	Yes	Yes
Conditional assembly			
ACTR	Yes	Yes	Yes
AEJECT	No	No	Yes
AGO	Yes	Yes	Yes
AIF	Yes	Yes	Yes
AINSERT	No	No	Yes
ANOP	Yes	Yes	Yes
AREAD	No	Yes	Yes
ASPACE	No	No	Yes
GBLA	Yes	Yes	Yes
GBLB	Yes	Yes	Yes
GBLC	Yes	Yes	Yes
LCLA	Yes	Yes	Yes
LCLB	Yes	Yes	Yes
LCLC	Yes	Yes	Yes
MHELP	No	Yes	Yes
MNOTE	Not allowed in open code	Allowed in open code	Allowed in open code
SETA	Yes	Yes	Yes
SETB	Yes	Yes	Yes
SETC	Yes	Yes	Yes
SETAF	No	No	Yes
SETCF	No	No	Yes
System variable symbols			
&SYSADATA_DSN	No	No	Yes
&SYSADATA_MEMBER	No	No	Yes
&SYSADATA_VOLUME	No	No	Yes
&SYSASM	No	No	Yes
&SYSCLOCK	No	No	Yes
&SYSDATC	No	No	Yes
&SYSDATE	No	Yes	Yes
&SYSECT	Yes	Yes	Yes
&SYSIN_DSN	No	No	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
&SYSIN_MEMBER	No	No	Yes
&SYSIN_VOLUME	No	No	Yes
&SYSJOB	No	No	Yes
&SYSLIB_DSN	No	No	Yes
&SYSLIB_MEMBER	No	No	Yes
&SYSLIB_VOLUME	No	No	Yes
&SYSLIN_DSN	No	No	Yes
&SYSLIN_MEMBER	No	No	Yes
&SYSLIN_VOLUME	No	No	Yes
&SYSLIST	Yes	Yes	Yes
&SYSLOC	No	Yes	Yes
&SYSM_HSEV	No	No	Yes
&SYSM_SEV	No	No	Yes
&SYSMAC	No	No	Yes
&SYSNDX	Up to maximum of 9999	Up to maximum of 9999999	Up to maximum of 9999999
&SYSNEST	No	No	Yes
&SYSOPT_DBCS	No	No	Yes
&SYSOPT_OPTABLE	No	No	Yes
&SYSOPT_RENT	No	No	Yes
&SYSOPT_XOBJECT	No	No	Yes
&SYSPARM	Yes	Yes	Yes
&SYSPRINT_DSN	No	No	Yes
&SYSPRINT_MEMBER	No	No	Yes
&SYSPRINT_VOLUME	No	No	Yes
&SYSPUNCH_DSN	No	No	Yes
&SYSPUNCH_MEMBER	No	No	Yes
&SYSPUNCH_VOLUME	No	No	Yes
&SYSSEQF	No	No	Yes
&SYSSTEP	No	No	Yes
&SYSSTMT	No	No	Yes
&SYSSTYP	No	No	Yes
&SYSTEM_ID	No	No	Yes
&SYSTERM_DSN	No	No	Yes
&SYSTERM_MEMBER	No	No	Yes
&SYSTERM_VOLUME	No	No	Yes
&SYSTIME	No	Yes	Yes
&SYSVER	No	No	Yes
Symbol attributes			

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Defined attribute	No	Yes	Yes
Type attribute	An ordinary symbol outside a macro cannot be used as an operand of the T' inside a macro and cannot be used to determine the type of a SETA or SETB variable. Only allowed in conditional assembly instructions and not allowed for literals.	Yes; only allowed in conditional assembly instructions and not allowed for literals.	Yes; allowed in conditional assembly, assembler, and machine instructions and literals.
Length attribute	Yes; allowed in conditional assembly, assembler, and machine instructions and not allowed for literals.	Yes; allowed in conditional assembly, assembler, and machine instructions and not allowed for literals.	Yes; allowed in conditional assembly, assembler, and machine instructions and literals.
Scaling attribute	Yes; only allowed in conditional assembly instructions and not allowed for literals.	Yes; only allowed in conditional assembly instructions and not allowed for literals.	Yes; allowed in conditional assembly, assembler, and machine instructions and literals.
Integer attribute	Yes; only allowed in conditional assembly instructions and not allowed for literals.	Yes; only allowed in conditional assembly instructions and not allowed for literals.	Yes; allowed in conditional assembly, assembler, and machine instructions and literals.
Count attribute	Can only be used to determine the length of a macro instruction operand	Yes	Yes
Number attribute	Yes	Can be applied to SETx variables	Can be applied to SETx variables
Operation Code Data attribute	No	No	Yes
Type and Count attribute for system variable symbols	No	Yes	Yes
Type attribute for SETA symbols that are defined via LCLA or GBLA but are not set (via SETA)	Not applicable	Returns a value of '00'	Returns a value of 'N'
Type attribute for SETB symbols that are defined via LCLB or GBLB but are not set (via SETB)	Not applicable	Issues an error message	Returns a value of 'N'
Type attribute for macro instruction operands with a value of a previously used literal	Not applicable	Returns a value of 'U'	Returns the Type attribute of the constant defined by the literal

Comparison of Macro and Conditional Assembly

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
External Function calls using high level programming language	No	No	Yes
Built-In Functions for SETA, SETB, and SETC expressions	No	No	Yes
Substring length value The second subscript value of the substring notation can be specified as an (*).	No	No	Yes
Library macros in source format	No, library macros must be stored in edited format	Yes	Yes
Macro definitions can appear anywhere in your source module.	No, they must be at the start of the source file.	Yes	Yes
Editing macro definitions Use conditional assembly statement to avoid editing of macros.	No	Yes	Yes
Redefining macros A macro definition can be redefined at any point in the source code.	No	Yes	Yes
Nesting macro definitions Allow inner macro definitions.	No	Yes	Yes
Generated macro instruction operation codes Macro instruction operation codes can be generated by substitution.	No	Yes	Yes
Multilevel sublists in macro instruction operands Multilevel sublists (sublists within sublists) are permitted in macro instruction operands and in keyword default values in prototype statements.	No	Yes	Yes
DBCS language support Double-byte data is supported by the macro language.	No	Yes	Yes
Macro names, variable symbols (including the ampersand) and sequence symbols (including the period) can be up to a maximum of 63 characters.	No, limited to 8 characters	Yes	Yes
Comments (both ordinary comments beginning with '*' and internal macro comments beginning with '.*') can be inserted between the macro header and the prototype and, for library macros, before the macro header.	No	Yes	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Any mnemonic operation code of the Universal character set, or any assembler operation code, can be defined as a macro instruction.	No	Yes	Yes
Any instruction, except ICTL, is permitted within a macro definition.	No	Yes	Yes
AIF statements The AIF statement can include a string of logical expressions and related sequence symbols.	No	Yes	Yes
AGO statements The AGO statement can contain computed branch sequence information.	No	Yes	Yes
SETx statements The SETA, SETB and SETC statements can assign lists or arrays of values to subscripted SET symbols.	No	Yes	Yes
SET symbol format and definition changes • Either a macro definition or open code can contain more than one declaration for a given SET symbol, as long as only one is encountered during a given macro expansion or conditional assembly. • A SET symbol that has not been declared in a LCLx or GBLx statement is implicitly declared by appearing in the name field of a SETx statement. • A SET symbol can be defined as an array of values by adding a subscript after it, when it is declared, either explicitly or implicitly.	No	Yes	Yes
Created SET symbols SET symbols may be created during the generation of a macro.	No	Yes	Yes
Using SETC variables in arithmetic expressions You can use a SETC variable as an arithmetic term if its character string value represents a valid self-defining term.	No	Yes	Yes
Forward attribute references If an attribute reference is made to a symbol that has not yet been encountered, the assembler scans the source code either until it finds the referenced symbol in the name field of a statement in open code, or until it reaches the end of the source module.	No	Yes	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Attribute reference using SETC variables You can take an attribute reference for a symbol specified as: • The name of the ordinary symbol itself • The name of a symbolic parameter whose value is the name of the ordinary symbol • The name of a SETC symbol whose value is the name of the ordinary symbol	No	Yes	Yes
Number attributes for SET symbols The number attribute can be applied to SETx variables to determine the highest subscript value of a SET symbol array to which a value has been assigned in a SETx instruction.	No	Yes	Yes
Alternate format in conditional assembly The alternate format allows a group of operands to be spread over several lines of code.	No	Yes	Yes
Maximum number of symbolic parameters and macro instruction operands	200	No fixed maximum	No fixed maximum
Mixing positional and keyword symbolic parameters and macro instruction operands	All positional parameters or operands must come first.	Keyword parameters or operands can be interspersed among positional parameters or operands.	Keyword parameters or operands can be interspersed among positional parameters or operands.
SET symbol declaration	Declaration of local symbols must immediately precede declaration of global symbols. Declaration of global and local symbols must immediately follow prototype statement if in macro definition. Declaration of global and local symbols must immediately follow source macro definitions, if in open code.	Declaration of local and global symbols can be mixed. Declaration of global and local symbols does not need to immediately follow prototype statement if in macro definition. Declaration of global and local symbols does not need to immediately follow source macro definitions, if in open code.	Declaration of local and global symbols can be mixed. Declaration of global and local symbols does not need to immediately follow prototype statement if in macro definition. Declaration of global and local symbols does not need to immediately follow source macro definitions, if in open code.
Maximum dimension for subscripted SET Symbols	4095	Not limited	Not limited

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Duplication factor allowed in SETC instruction	No	Yes	Yes
Dynamically extended variable SET symbols	No	Yes	Yes
Number of terms in arithmetic expressions in conditional assembly	Up to 16	Not limited	Not limited
Levels of parentheses in arithmetic expressions in conditional assembly	Up to 5	Not limited	Not limited
MNOTE with error in macro is flagged at each invocation	Yes	No	No
Blank lines treated as equivalent to ASPACE 1.	No	No	Yes
Name entry of macro instruction must be a valid symbol	Yes	Yes	No
Ampersand preceding the SET symbols being declared is optional	No	No	Yes
Predefined absolute symbols allowed in arithmetic expression	No	No	Yes
Predefined absolute symbols allowed in SETx instruction	No	No	Yes
Type attribute of CNOP Label is set to 'I'	No, set to 'J'	No, set to 'J'	Yes
Type, length, scaling and integer attribute allowed for ordinary symbols, SETC symbols and literals in open code	No	No	Yes
Sublists assigned to SETC symbols can be passed to macro definitions and be recognized as sublists	No	No	Yes

Comparison of Language Features

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Macro comment statements allowed in open code	No	No	Yes
EQU instruction extension Symbols appearing in the first operand of the EQU instruction need not have been previously defined.	No	Yes	Yes
CNOP instruction extension There is no restriction that symbols in the operand field of a CNOP instruction must have been previously defined.	No	Yes	Yes
COPY instruction extension Any number of 'nestings', COPY statements within code that have been brought into your program by another COPY statement, is permitted.	No, nesting depth limited to 3	Yes	Yes

COPY instruction processed immediately
COPY members are read immediately after a COPY statement is encountered in the source, regardless of whether or not conditional processing requires it, as in the following example:
`AGO .LABEL`
`COPY AFILE`
`.LABEL ANOP`
	No, AFILE is never opened, read from, or processed in any way.	Yes, AFILE is scanned during lookahead processing	Yes, AFILE is scanned during lookahead processing

COPY instruction operand can, in open code, be specified as a variable symbol.	No	No	Yes
ISEQ instruction extension Sequence checking of any column on input records is allowed.	No	Yes	Yes
Macro names Inline macro names may contain the underscore character (_).	No	Yes	Yes
Continuation lines	Up to 2	Up to 9	Up to 9
Continuation lines and double-byte data	No	Yes	Yes
Symbol name length up to 63 characters	No, limited to 8	Yes	Yes
Levels within expressions Any number of terms or levels of parenthesis in an expression is allowed.	No	Yes	Yes
Underscores in symbols You can specify the underscore character (_) in ordinary symbols and variable symbols.	No	Yes	Yes
Underscore character accepted in any position in symbol name	No	No	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Underscore character accepted in external symbols	No	No	Yes
Underscore character accepted in name field of OPSYN instruction	No	No	Yes
Maximum number of external symbols	511	65 535	65 535
DBCS language support Pure double-byte data, and double-byte data mixed with single-byte data is permitted.	No	Yes	Yes
Location counter value printed for EQU, USING, ORG (in ADDR2 field)	3 bytes	4 bytes (up to 3 leading zeroes suppressed).	4 bytes (up to 3 leading zeroes suppressed).
Self-defining term			
Maximum value	$2^{24}-1$	$2^{31}-1$	$2^{31}-1$
Number of digits			
Binary:	24	31	31
Decimal:	8	10	10
Hexadecimal:	6	8	8
Characters:	3	4	4
Relocatable and absolute expressions			
Value carried:	Truncated to 24 bits	Truncated to 31 bits	Truncated to 31 bits
Number of operators:	15	Not limited	Not limited
Levels of parenthesis:	5	Not limited	Not limited
All control sections initiated by a CSECT start at location 0 in listing and object module.	Yes	No	Controlled by THREAD option
Copy files read once	Copy files read when statement is found	Copy files read when macro is edited (only once)	Copy files read when macro is edited (only once)
Operand greater than 255 characters when SUBLIST	Error diagnostic with message and return code of 8	Error diagnostic with message and return code of 12	Error diagnostic with message and return code of 12
Remarks generated because of generated blanks in operand field	No	Yes	Yes
Blank lines treated as equivalent to SPACE 1.	No	No	Yes
Literals usable as relocatable terms in expressions	No	No	Yes
Literals usable in RX format instructions in which index register is used	No	No	Yes
Mixed case input	No	No	Yes
2-byte relocatable address constants	No	No	Yes
Multi-level PUSH supported For example, PUSH USING,USING	No	Yes. Not documented.	No

Comparison of Assembler Options

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
*PROCESS statements	No	No	Selected assembler options can be specified in the source program on *PROCESS statements.
ADATA	No	No	Yes
ALIGN	Yes	Yes	Yes
ASA (MVS and CMS)	No	No	Yes
BATCH	No	Yes	Yes
CODEPAGE	No	No	Yes
COMPAT	No	No	Yes
DBCS	No	Yes	Yes
DECK	Yes	Yes	Yes
DISK (CMS)	No	Yes	Yes
DXREF	No	No	Yes
EDECK	Yes	No	No
ERASE (CMS)	No	No	Yes
ESD	Yes	Yes	Yes
EXIT	No	No	Yes
FLAG	No	Yes	FLAG(*integer*), FLAG(ALIGN), FLAG(CONT), FLAG(IMPLEN), FLAG(PAGE0), FLAG(PUSH), FLAG(RECORD), FLAG(SUBSTR), and FLAG(USING0) can be specified.
FOLD	No	No	Yes
GOFF (MVS and CMS)	No	No	Yes
INFO	No	No	Yes
LANGUAGE	No	No	Yes. Applies to messages and listing headings.
LIBMAC	No	No	Yes
LINECOUNT	Yes	Yes	Yes
LINK	Yes	No	No, see OBJECT option

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
LIST	Yes	Yes	LIST(121), LIST(133), and LIST(MAX) can be specified (MVS and CMS)
MCALL	Yes	No	No; PCONTROL(MCALL) can be specified.
MXREF	No	No	MXREF(SOURCE), MXREF(XREF), and MXREF(FULL) can be specified.
NOPRINT (CMS)	No	No	Yes
NOSEG (CMS)	No	No	Yes
NUM	No	Yes (CMS)	No
OBJECT	Yes	Yes	Yes
OPTABLE	No	No	Yes
PCONTROL	No	No	Yes
PESTOP	No	No	Yes
PRINT (CMS)	No	Yes	Yes
PROFILE	No	No	Yes
RA2	No	No	Yes
RENT	No	Yes	Yes
RLD	Yes	Yes	Yes
RXREF	No	No	Yes
SEG (CMS)	No	No	Yes
SIZE	No	No	Yes
STMT (MVS and CMS)	No	Yes (CMS)	No
SUBLIB(AE/DF) (VSE)	Yes	No	Yes. Specify on // OPTION statement.
SYSPARM	Yes	Yes	Yes
SXREF	Yes	Same as XREF(SHORT)	Same as XREF(SHORT)
TERM	No	Yes	TERM(WIDE) and TERM(NARROW) can be specified.
TEST	No	Yes	Yes
THREAD	No	No	Yes
TRANSLATE	No	No	Yes
USING	No	No	Yes
XOBJECT (MVS and CMS)	No	No	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
XREF	Same as XREF(LONG)	XREF(SHORT) or XREF(LONG)	XREF(SHORT), XREF(FULL), and XREF(UNREFS) can be specified.

Comparison of Assembler Listing

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Mixed case listing headings	No	No	Headings can be in mixed case English or uppercase English. See LANGUAGE assembler option.
National Language Support	No	No	Diagnostic messages in English, German, Japanese, and Spanish.
Option summary	At end of listing in Diagnostic and Statistics section.	At end of listing in Diagnostic and Statistics section.	At start of listing.
External symbol dictionary	Yes	Yes	Yes
Dummy section dictionary	Yes	No	See DSECT Cross Reference
Source and object program	Yes	Yes	Yes
Page-break handling	Limited logic	Limited logic	Improved page-break handling in conjunction with the EJECT, SPACE, and TITLE assembler instructions, to prevent unnecessary blank pages.
Optional 133-character wide format with extended addresses	No	No	Yes. Required for GOFF/XOBJECT.
Control section headings	No	No	Show current control section type in fixed heading line for COM section, DSECT, and RSECT.
Heading date includes century	No	No	Yes
Active USING Summary	No	No	Yes
PRINT instruction with MCALL option	No	No	Yes
PRINT instruction with MSOURCE option	No	No	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
PRINT instruction with NOGEN option shows object code for first instruction generated, or the first 8 bytes of data generated, in the *object code* column.	No	No	Yes
PRINT, PUSH and POP instructions with NOPRINT option	No	No	Yes
AREAD instruction with NOPRINT option	No	No	Yes
Relocation dictionary	Yes	Yes	Yes
Ordinary symbol and literal cross reference	Yes	Yes	Yes
Cross reference includes modification and branch flags, USING and DROP flags, EXecute instruction flag, and relocatability-type column.	No	No	Yes
Unreferenced symbols defined in CSECTs	No	No	Yes
Macro and copy code source summary	No	No	Yes
Macro and copy code cross reference	No	No	Yes
DSECT cross reference	No	No	Yes
USING map	No	No	Yes
General purpose register cross reference	No	No	Yes
Diagnostic cross reference and assembler summary	Diagnostic and Statistics section including error diagnostic messages	Yes	Yes
Flagged statements with input dataset information	No	No	Yes, if FLAG(RECORD) assembler option specified
Print line with current PTF level of assembler	No	No	Yes
Print line showing operating system, jobname, stepname and procedure stepname of assembly job	No	No	Yes
Print lines showing file names (data set names), member and volume serial numbers of each of the input and output data sets	No	No	Yes
Print lines showing statistics for I/O exits	No	No	Yes
Print line showing the amount of storage in the buffer pool and the amount of storage required for an in-storage assembly	No	No	Yes
Record counts show the number of work file reads and writes	No	No	Yes
Print line showing the return code of the assembly	No	No	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Print lines showing assembly start and stop time, and processor time	No	No	Yes
Terminal output	No	Yes	Yes
Multiple consecutive blanks compressed to a single blank	No	No	Yes, when TERM(NARROW) specified.
One-line summary	No	No	Yes

Comparison of Diagnostic Features

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Error messages for conflicting assembler options When conflicting assembler options are specified, such as OBJECT with NOOBJECT, the assembler issues warning messages.	No	No	Yes
Diagnostic information message The FLAG(RECORD) assembler option causes message ASMA435I to be printed after the last diagnostic message for each statement in error. The message shows the statement relative record number and where the statement in error was read from.	No	No	Yes
Statement continuation errors The FLAG(CONT) assembler option instructs the assembler to issue diagnostic messages ASMA430W through ASMA433W when it suspects a continuation error in a macro call instruction.	No	No	Yes
Suppress alignment error messages The FLAG(ALIGN) assembler option instructs the assembler to issue diagnostic messages ASMA033I when an alignment error is detected. This message may be suppressed by specifying the FLAG(NOALIGN) assembler option.	No	No	Yes
Error messages Error messages are printed in the listing and a summary at the end lists a total of the errors and a table of their line numbers.	No	Yes	Yes
Diagnostic messages in macro assembly More descriptive diagnostic error messages are printed in macro generated text.	No	Yes	Yes

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Sequence field in macro-generated text The sequence field (columns 73 through 80) of the generated statements contains the level of the macro call, a hyphen, and the first five characters of the macro-definition name.	No	Yes	Yes
Format of macro-generated text Wherever possible, a generated statement is printed in the same format as the corresponding macro definition (model) statement.	No	Yes	Yes
Error messages for a library macro definition Format errors within a particular library macro definition are listed directly following the first call of that macro.	No	Yes	Yes
Error messages for source program macro definition Macro definitions contained in the source program are printed in the listing, provided the applicable PRINT options are in effect.	No	Yes	Yes
Error messages in macro-generated text Diagnostic messages in generated text generally include a description of the error, the recovery action, model statement number at which the error occurred, and a SET symbol name, parameter number, or a value associated with the error.	No	Yes	Yes
Macro Trace Facility (MHELP)	No	Yes	Yes

Other Assembler Differences

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Object module			
DXD, CXD and Q-type constants produced	No	Yes	Yes
Named COMMON	No	Yes	Yes
Unnamed CSECTS (private code)	No	Yes	Yes
SYM records produced	No	Yes	Yes
Generalized object format module generation (MVS and CMS)	Not applicable	No	Yes. Refer to GOFF/XOBJECT assembler option.
Diagnostics			

Element	DOS/VSE Assembler	Assembler H Version 2	High Level Assembler
Diagnostic messages issued	At end of assembly	At line where error occurred if possible.	At line where error occurred if possible.
Diagnostic dump	No	Produced at time of failure	Produced at time of failure
Error diagnostics messages in mixed case	No	No	Yes
Resources			
Work file	3 Work Files	1 Work File	1 Work File
Associated data file	No	No	Yes
QSAM Input/output (MVS and CMS)	Not applicable	No	Yes
Input/Output user exits	No	No	Yes.
System-Determined Blocksize (MVS)	Not applicable	No	Yes; supported in MVS/ESA only.
31-bit-addressable storage exploited during assembly	No	No	Yes; does not include I/O buffers.
Minimum virtual storage requirements	200K	200K	580K
Printer control characters (MVS and CMS)	American National Standard	Machine	American National Standard or machine depending on ASA option
Alternative assembler option sourcefile	No	No	Yes

Appendix B. Cross-System Portability Considerations

This section describes the issues you must consider when you use High Level Assembler to assemble a program under one operating system and execute the resulting program under another operating system.

Using Extended Architecture Instructions

High Level Assembler supports assembly of programs using Extended Architecture instructions, Enterprise System Architecture instructions, and Vector instructions, under all operating systems supported by High Level Assembler.

A generated object program using Extended Architecture (370-XA) instructions can only run on a 370-XA mode processor under an operating system that provides the necessary architecture support for the 370-XA instructions used.

Similarly, a generated object program using Enterprise Systems Architecture/370 (ESA/370) or Enterprise Systems Architecture/390 (ESA/390) instructions can only run on an applicable processor under an operating system that provides the necessary architecture support for the ESA/370 or ESA/390 instructions used.

Using System Macros

Many system macros have the same name under different systems, but generate different object code and have different parameters. For example, the OPEN, CLOSE, GET, and PUT macros have the same name on MVS and VSE but generate different object code.

Wherever the assembler program uses system macros, the system macros for the target system must be used when the program is assembled.

For example, when the assembler program is to be run under VSE, the VSE system macros must be used, even if the program is assembled under CMS.

Ensure that the macros used during assembly are for the correct release of the operating system upon which the assembler program is to run.

Migrating Object Programs

The object module produced by High Level Assembler is portable across all the supported operating systems. Therefore, an assembler program may be assembled under any of the supported operating systems and run under any of the supported operating systems. For example, an assembler program may be assembled under CMS and run under VSE.

The object module is portable across the supported operating systems with the following restrictions:

- Wherever the assembler program uses system macros, the system macros for the target system must be used.
- The object module must be link-edited using the target system linkage editor.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

- The assembler instructions included in the assembler program must be supported by the system linkage editor.

  The VSE linkage editor, prior to VSE/ESA Version 2 Release 1, does not support dummy external DSECTS. Therefore, to link-edit the assembler program under earlier VSE operating systems, the assembler program must not include any DXD or CXD statements or Q-type address constants.

- The TEST assembler option should only be used if the object module is to be link-edited under MVS.

  CMS, MVS The TEST option cannot be specified with the GOFF assembler option, which produces the generalized object format module. CMS, MVS

- A generalized object format module cannot be ported to a VSE or CMS environment.

The AMODE and RMODE assembler instructions indicate to the linkage editor the addressing mode and residency mode for the section. The addressing mode and residency mode are ignored by the linkage editor on systems that do not support 31-bit addressing.

The AMODE and RMODE assembler instructions have an effect on the addressing mode and residency mode only if the object module produced is link-edited using an XA or ESA linkage editor and run on a system that supports 31-bit addressing.

Appendix C. Object Deck Output

High Level Assembler produces the object module when you specify either the OBJECT or DECK assembler option.

The object module consists of 80-byte records with 5 record types. The record types are:

ESD External symbol dictionary records describe the external symbols used in the program.

TXT Text records describe object code generated.

RLD Relocation dictionary records provide the information required to relocate address constants within the object module.

END End records terminate the object module and optionally provide the entry point.

SYM Symbol table records provide symbol information for TSO TEST.

Note: If you have specified the GOFF assembler option, High Level Assembler produces the object module in Generalized Object File format (GOFF). For more information on GOFF, refer to *OS/390 DFSMS Program Management*.

The assembler can also produce records via the PUNCH and REPRO assembler statements, whose contents and format are entirely determined by the program.

The following sections describe the format of each record type.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

ESD Record Format

Columns	Contents
1	X'02'
2–4	ESD
5–10	Blank
11–12	Variable field count—number of bytes of information in variable field (columns 17–64)
13–14	Blank
15–16	ESDID of first SD, XD, CM, PC, ER, or WX in variable field
17–64	Variable field. One-to-three 16-byte items of the following format:

- 8-byte external symbol name
- 1-byte ESD type code:

Hex Value	ESD Type Code
00	SD
01	LD
02	ER
04	PC
05	CM
06	XD(PR)
0A	WX

- 3-byte address
- 1-byte flag:
  - Alignment if XD
  - Blank if LD, ER, or WX
  - AMODE/RMODE flags if SD, PC, or CM. Figure 90 describes the AMODE and RMODE flag values.

Figure 90. AMODE/RMODE Flags

Bits	Value	Description
2	0	Use the RMODE bit(bit 5)
	1	RMODE 64
3	0	Use the AMODE bits (bits 6-7)
	1	AMODE 64
4	1	RSECT
5	0	RMODE 24
	1	RMODE 31
6–7	00	AMODE 24
	01	AMODE 24
	10	AMODE 31
	11	AMODE ANY

- 3-byte length, LDID, or blank

	Variable field item 1
17–24	External symbol name
25	ESD type code
26–28	Address
29	Flag
30–32	Length, LDID, or blank
	Variable field item 2
33–40	External symbol name
41	ESD type code
42–44	Address
45	Flag
46–48	Length, LDID, or blank
	Variable field item 3
49–56	External symbol name
57	ESD type code
58–60	Address
61	Flag
62–64	Length, LDID, or blank
65–72	Blank
73–80	Deck ID, sequence number, or both. The deck ID is the name from the first TITLE statement that has a non-blank name field. This name can be 1–8 characters. If the name is fewer than 8 characters or if there is no name, the remaining columns contain a record sequence number.

TXT Record Format

Columns	Contents
1	X'02'
2–4	TXT
5	Blank
6–8	Relative address of first instruction on record
9–10	Blank
11–12	Byte count—number of bytes in information field (columns 17–72)
13–14	Blank
15–16	ESDID
17–72	56-byte information field
73–80	Deck ID, sequence number, or both. The deck ID is the name from the first TITLE statement that has a non-blank name field. The name can be 1–8 characters. If the name is fewer than 8 characters or if there is no name, the remaining columns contain a record sequence number.

RLD Record Format

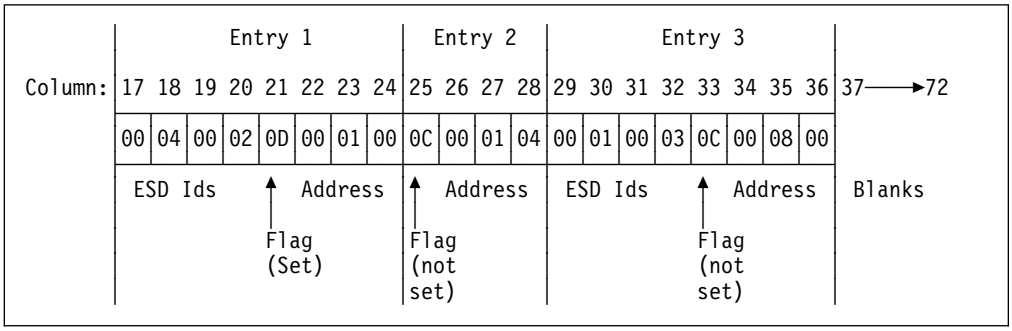
Columns	Contents
1	X'02'
2–4	RLD
5–10	Blank
11–12	Data field count—number of bytes of information in data field (columns 17–72)
13–16	Blank
17–72	Data field: **17–18** Relocation ESDID **19–20** Position ESDID **21** Flag byte **22–24** Absolute address to be relocated **25–72** Remaining RLD entries
73–80	Deck ID, sequence number, or both. The deck ID is the name from the first TITLE statement that has a non-blank name field. The name can be 1–8 characters or if there is no name, the remaining columns contain a record sequence number.

If the rightmost bit of the flag byte is set, the following RLD entry has the same relocation ESDID and position ESDID, and this information is not repeated; if the rightmost bit of the flag byte is not set, the next RLD entry has a different relocation ESDID or position ESDID, and both ESDIDs are recorded.

For example, if the RLD entries 1, 2, and 3 of the program listing contain the following information:

Entry	Position ESDID	Relocation ESDID	Flag	Address
1	02	04	0C	000100
2	02	04	0C	000104
3	03	01	0C	000800

then columns 17–72 of the RLD record would be:



END Record Format

Columns	Contents
1	X'02'
2–4	END
5	Blank
6–8	Entry address from operand of END record in source deck (blank if no operand)
9–14	Blank
15–16	ESDID of entry point (blank if no operand)
17–32	Blank
33	Number of IDR items that follow (EBCDIC 1 or EBCDIC 2)
34–52	Translator identification, version and release level (such as 0101), and date of the assembly (yyddd)
53–71	When present, they are the same format as columns 34–52
72	Blank
73–80	Deck ID, sequence number, or both. The deck ID is the name from the first TITLE statement that has a non-blank name field. The name can be 1–8 characters. If the name is fewer than 8 characters or if there is no name, the remaining columns contain a record sequence number.

SYM Record Format

If you request it, the assembler writes out symbolic information concerning the assembled program ahead of all other object module records. The format of the output record images is as follows:

Columns	Contents
1	X'02'
2–4	SYM
5–10	Blank
11–12	Variable field—number of bytes of text in variable field (columns 17–72)
13–16	Blank
17–72	Variable field (see below)
73–80	Deck ID, sequence number, or both. The deck ID is the name from the first TITLE statement that has a non-blank name field. The name can be 1–8 characters. If the name is fewer than 8 characters or if there is no name, the remaining columns contain a record sequence number.

The variable field (columns 17–72) contains up to 56 bytes of text. The items comprising the text are packed together; consequently, only the last record may contain less than 56 bytes of text in the variable field. The formats of a text record and an individual text item are shown in Figure 92 on page 254. The contents of the fields within an individual entry are as follows:

1. Organization (1 byte). The possible values are shown in Figure 91.

Figure 91. Organization Value Byte

Bits	Value	Description
0	0	Non-data type
	1	Data type
1–3 If non-data type	000	Space
	001	Control section
	010	Dummy control section
	011	Common
	100	Instruction
	101	CCW, CCW0, CCW1
1 If data type	0	No multiplicity
	1	Multiplicity (indicates presence of M Field)
2 If data type	0	Independent (not a packed or zoned decimal constant)
	1	Cluster (packed or zoned decimal constant)
3 If data type	0	No scaling
	1	Scaling (indicates presence of S field)
4	0	Name present
	1	Name not present
5–7		Length of name minus 1

2. Address (3 bytes)—displacement from base of control section
3. Symbol Name (0–8 bytes)—symbolic name of particular item. If the entry is non-data type and space, an extra byte is present that contains the number of bytes that have been skipped.
4. Data Type (1 byte)—contents in hexadecimal

   00 = character
   04 = hexadecimal or pure DBCS (G-type)
   08 = binary
   10 = fixed point, full
   14 = fixed point, half
   18 = floating point, short

1C = floating point, long
20 = A-type or Q-type data
24 = Y-type data
28 = S-type data
2C = V-type data
30 = packed decimal
34 = zoned decimal
38 = floating point, extended

5. Length (2 bytes for character, hexadecimal, decimal (both packed and zoned); 1 byte for other types)—length of data item minus 1
6. Multiplicity–M field (3 bytes)—equals 1 if not present
7. Scale–signed integer–S field (2 bytes)—present only for F-, H-, E-, D-, P-, and Z-type data, and only if scale is nonzero.

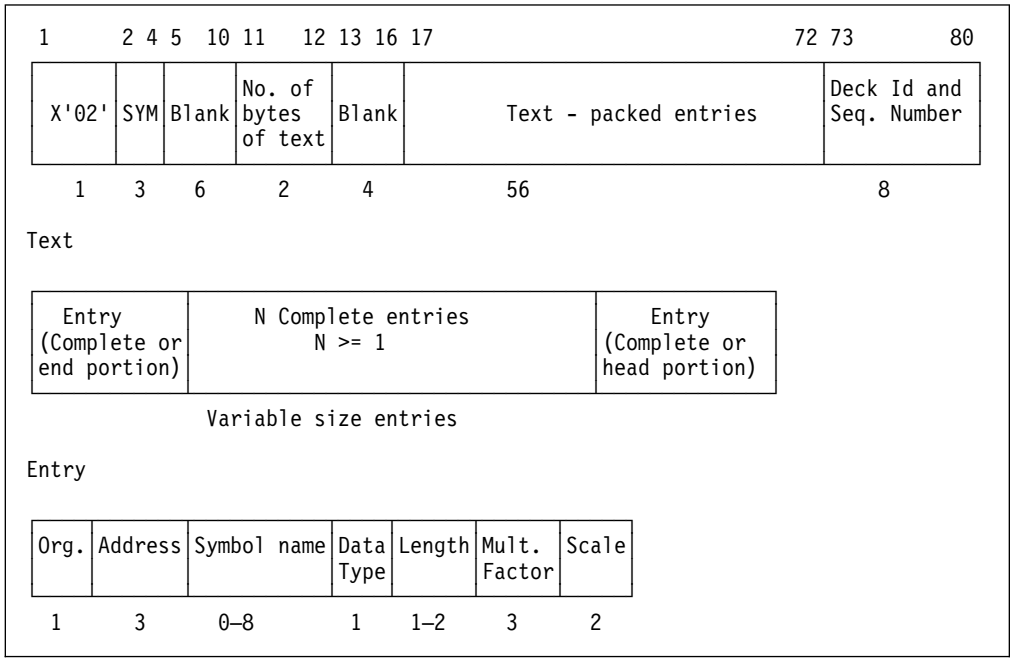


Figure 92. SYM Record Format

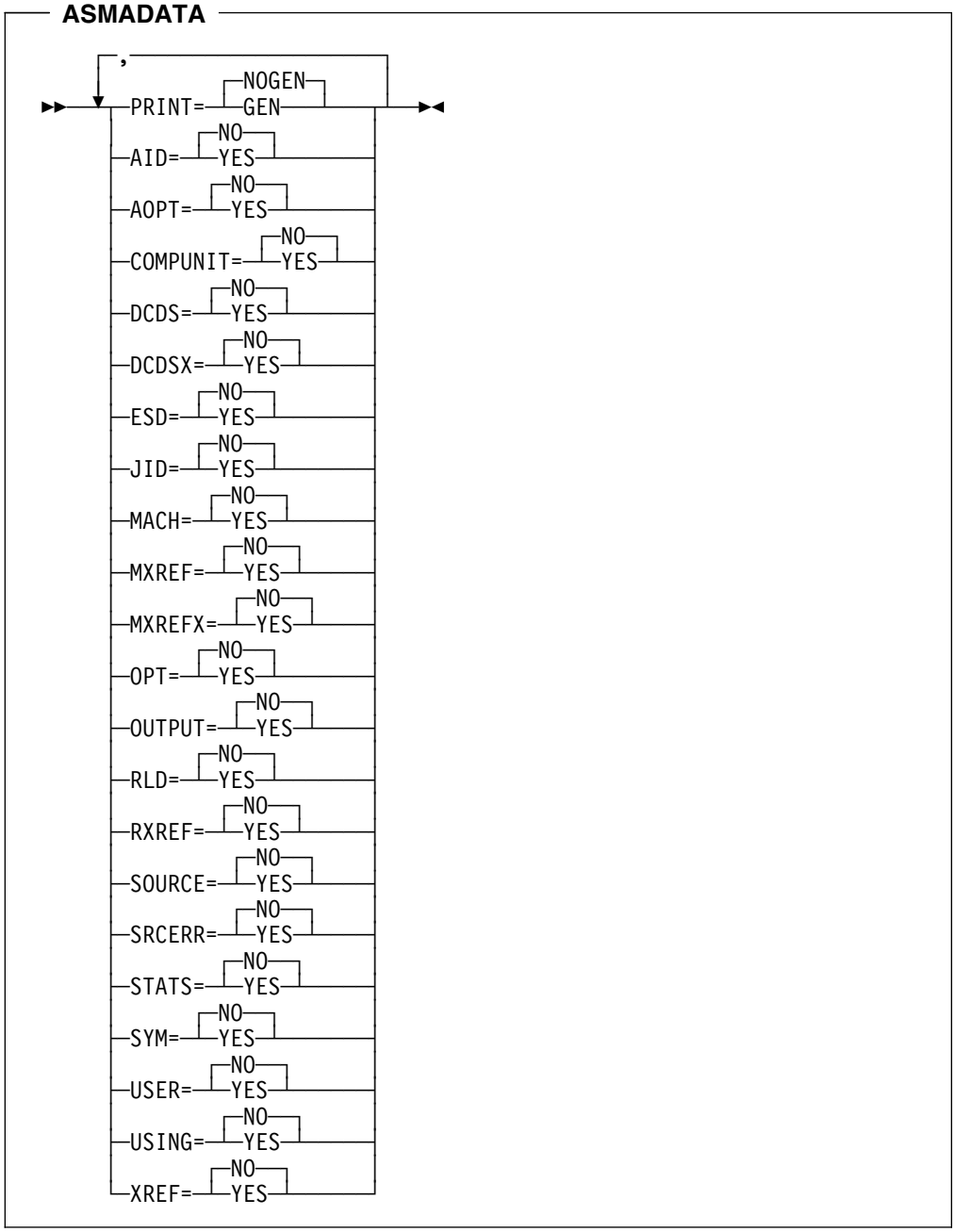
Appendix D. Associated Data File Output

When you specify the ADATA assembler option, a file containing associated data is produced by the assembler. When you specify the ADATA suboption of the GOFF assembler option, ADATA records are written to the object data set as text records. You can specify both ADATA and GOFF(ADATA) to produce ADATA records in both the associated data file and the object data set. Information about the assembled program can be extracted from either data set and be used by debugging tools or cross reference tools.

The associated data records are subject to change in future releases of High Level Assembler without prior notice. Any utility which processes associated data files should not process any files with architecture levels beyond those the utility has been designed and tested to process.

The ASMADATA macro maps the records in the associated data file, and the generalized object format data set. The syntax and parameter keywords for this macro are shown on page 256.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000



Default
PRINT=NOGEN,*keyword*=NO

NOGEN
Do not print the generated DSECTs in the listing

GEN
Print the generated DSECTs in the listing

NO
Do not generate a DSECT for this record

YES
Generate a DSECT for this record

keywords

AID	ADATA Identification DSECT (Type X'0001')
AOPT	Options File Information (Type X'000B')
COMPUNIT	ADATA Compilation Unit Start/End DSECT (Type X'0002')
DCDS	DC/DS DSECT (Type X'0034')
DCDSX	DC Extension DSECT(Type X'0035')
ESD	External Symbol Dictionary (ESD) DSECT (Type X'0020')
JID	Job Identification DSECT (Type X'0000')
MACH	Machine Instruction DSECT (Type X'0036')
MXREF	Macro and Copy Code Source Summary DSECT (Type X'0060')
MXREFX	Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference DSECT (Type X'0062')
OPT	Options DSECT (Type X'0010')
OUTPUT	Output File DSECT (Type X'000A')
RLD	Relocation Dictionary (RLD) DSECT (Type X'0040')
RXREF	Register Cross Reference DSECT (Type X'0045')
SOURCE	Source Analysis DSECT (Type X'0030')
SRCERR	Source Error DSECT (Type X'0032')
STATS	Statistics DSECT (Type X'0090')
SYM	Symbol DSECT (Type X'0042')
USER	User Data Record DSECT (Type X'0070')
USING	Using Map DSECT (Type X'0080')
XREF	Symbol Cross Reference DSECT (Type X'0044')

Record Types

The file contains records classified into different record types. Each type of record provides information about the assembler language program being assembled. Each record consists of two parts:

- A 12-byte header section, which has the same structure for all record types.
- A variable-length data section, which varies by record type.

The header section contains, among other items, the record code which identifies the type of record.

The record types, and their contents, written to the associated data file are:

Job Identification X'0000'
Provides information about the assembly job, the host system environment, and the names of the primary input data sets.

ADATA Identification X'0001'

Provides a precise time stamp, and a description of the character set used for character data in the file.

The time stamp is represented as Universal Time (UT) with the low-order bit representing 1 microsecond.

ADATA Compilation Unit Start/End X'0002'

Indicates where the associated data records for each assembly unit begin and end. The START record is written to the associated data file at the beginning of each assembly. The END record is written to the associated data file at the end of each assembly. The END record contains a count of the total number of records written to the associated data file.

When there are multiple assembler programs in the input file, there is a START and END record for each program assembled.

Output File X'000A'

Provides information about all the assembler output files used for the assembly.

Options File X'000B'

Provides information about the ASMAOPT file (MVS and CMS) or library member (VSE) used for the assembly, if applicable.

Options X'0010'

Describes the assembler options used for the assembly.

External Symbol Dictionary X'0020'

Describes all the control sections, including DSECTs, defined in the program.

Source Analysis X'0030'

Describes a single source line.

There is one Source Analysis record in the file for each source record which would appear in the listing as if PRINT ON,GEN was active. This includes those source records generated by macro instructions, or included by COPY instructions. A Source Analysis record is also produced for TITLE statements. The FOLD assembler option does not cause the source in the Source Analysis record to be converted to uppercase.

The Source Analysis records appear in the sequence they would appear in the listing. Conditional assembly statements might cause the source statements to be skipped or the sequence of the records to be altered.

Source Error X'0032'

Describes errors in source program statements.

All Source Error records follow the Source Analysis record to which they apply.

DC/DS X'0034'

Describes the constant or storage defined by a source program statement that contains a DC, DS, CXD, DXD, CCW, CCW0, or CCW1 instruction.

If a source program statement contains one of the above, then a DC/DS record is written following the Source Analysis record.

If there is an error in the DC, DS, CXD, DXD, CCW, CCW0, or CCW1 instruction, the DC/DS record is not produced.

If the DC statement has a duplication factor greater than 1, and at least one of the operand values has a reference to the current location counter (*), then a DC extension record (X'0035') is generated.

DC Extension X'0035'
This record describes the object text generated by a DC statement when the DC statement has repeating fields. This record is only created if the DC statement has a duplication factor greater than 1 and at least one of the operand values has a reference to the current location counter (*).

Machine Instruction X'0036'
Describes the object code generated for a source program statement.

If a source program statement causes machine instructions to be generated, then a Machine Instruction record is written following the source record. If there is an error in the machine instruction, the Machine Instruction record follows the Source Error record.

Relocation Dictionary X'0040'
Describes the relocation dictionary information that is contained in the object module RLD records.

Symbol X'0042'
Describes a single symbol defined in the program.

There is one Symbol record for each symbol defined in the program, including literals.

Symbol and Literal Cross Reference X'0044'
Describes the references to a single symbol.

All Symbol and Literal Cross Reference records follow the Symbol record to which they apply.

Register Cross Reference X'0045'
Describes the references to a single register.

Macro and Copy Code Source Summary X'0060'
Describes the source of each macro and copy code member retrieved by the program.

Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference X'0062'
Describes the references to a single macro, or member copied by the COPY assembler instruction.

User Data X'0070'
Describes the data written by the ADATA assembler instruction.

Using Map X'0080'
Describes all USING, DROP, PUSH USING, and POP USING statements in the program.

Statistics X'0090'
Describes the statistics about the assembly.

Figure 93 shows part of the listing of an assembler program. If this assembler program were assembled with the ADATA option, the records produced in the associated data file would be in the sequence shown below Figure 93.

```
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0  2000/09/25 17.48
                      00000 0001E     1 CSECTNAM CSECT                                                        FIG00010
000000 90EC D00C            0000C     2          STM   14,12,12(13)                                           FIG00020
                 R:F  00000           3          USING CSECTNAM,15                                            FIG00030
000004 0000 0000            00000     4          A     2,FIELD3                                               FIG00040
** ASMA044E Undefined symbol - FIELD3
000008 98EC D00C            0000C     5          LM    14,12,12(13)                                           FIG00050
00000C 07FE                           6          BR    14                                                     FIG00060
                                      7          DROP  15                                                     FIG00070
                                      8          COPY  ADATA                                                  FIG00080
00000E                                9=FIELD1   DS    CL8                                                    ADA00010
000016                               10=FIELD2   DS    CL8                                                    ADA00020
                                     11          END                                                          FIG00090
```

Figure 93. Sample Assembler Program for Associated Data Output

Type	Description
X'0002'	ADATA Compilation Unit START record
X'0001'	ADATA Identification record
X'0000'	Job Identification record
X'0010'	Options record
X'0020'	External Symbol Dictionary record for CSECTNAM
X'0030'	Source record for statement 1 `CSECTNAM CSECT`
X'0030'	Source record for statement 2 `STM 14,12,12(13)`
X'0036'	Machine Instruction record for STM instruction
X'0030'	Source record for statement 3 `USING CSECTNAM,15`
X'0030'	Source record for statement 4 `A 2,FIELD3`
X'0032'	Source Error record for message ASMA044E
X'0036'	Machine Instruction record for A instruction
X'0030'	Source record for statement 5 `LM 14,12,12(13)`
X'0036'	Machine Instruction record for LM instruction
X'0030'	Source record for statement 6 `BR 14`
X'0036'	Machine Instruction record for BR instruction
X'0030'	Source record for statement 7 `DROP 15`
X'0030'	Source record for statement 8 `COPY ADATA`
X'0030'	Source record for statement 9 (From COPY member ADATA) `FIELD1 DS CL8`
X'0034'	DC/DS record for FIELD1
X'0030'	Source record for statement 10 (From COPY member ADATA) `FIELD2 DS CL8`
X'0034'	DC/DS record for FIELD2
X'0030'	Source record for statement 11 `END`
X'0042'	Symbol record for CSECTNAM
X'0044'	Symbol and Literal Cross Reference record for CSECTNAM

X'0042' Symbol record for FIELD1
X'0042' Symbol record for FIELD2
X'0042' Symbol record for FIELD3
X'0044' Symbol and Literal Cross Reference record for FIELD3
X'0044' Symbol and Literal Cross Reference record for FIELD1
X'0044' Symbol and Literal Cross Reference record for FIELD2
X'0060' Macro and Copy Code Source Summary record for COPY ADATA
X'0062' Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference record for COPY ADATA
X'0080' USING Map record for USING on statement 3
X'0080' USING Map record for DROP on statement 7
X'0045' Register Cross Reference records...
⋮
X'0045' ...for each register referenced (0–15)[1]
X'0090' Assembly Statistics record
X'0002' ADATA Compilation Unit END record
The count value in this record is 54.

Notes:

1. There is one X'0045' record for each of the sixteen registers due to the implicit references by the STM and LM instructions.

Macro-only Assemblies

The associated data file can also be useful for assemblies that have macro processing only (SYSGENs for example). The printing of the generated assembler source is not printed in the listing, but the information is available in the associated data file. Figure 94 shows part of the listing of an assembler program that only includes a macro instruction. The statements generated by the macro instruction (statements 9 through 11) are not printed on the listing. If this program were assembled with the ADATA option, the records produced in the associated data file would be in the sequence shown below.

```
 Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0  2000/09/25 17.48
                                     1          print nogen                                                  00001000
                                     2          macro                                                        00002000
                                     3 &NAME    testhla &job                                                 00003000
                                     4          punch '//&job JOB'                                           00004000
                                     5          punch '//STEP1   EXEC  PGM=ABC'                              00005000
                                     6          punch '//DDNAME1 DD    DSN=DSN.&job.,DISP=SHR'               00006000
                                     7          mend                                                         00007000
                                     8          TESTHLA TESTJOB                                              00008000
                                    12          END                                                          00009000
```

Figure 94. Sample Assembler Program for Macro Only Assembly

Type	Description
X'0002'	ADATA Compilation Unit START record
X'0001'	ADATA Identification record
X'0000'	Job Identification record
X'000A'	Output File record
X'0010'	Options record
X'0030'	Source record for statement 1 `print nogen`
X'0030'	Source record for statement 2 `macro`

X'0030' Source record for statement 3
```
&NAME   testhla &job
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 4
```
        punch '//&job JOB'
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 5
```
        punch '//STEP1   EXEC PGM=ABC'
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 6
```
        punch '//DDNAME1 DD DSN=DSN.&job.,DISP=SHR'
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 7
```
        mend
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 8
```
        TESTHLA TESTJOB
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 9
```
        punch '//TESTJOB JOB'
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 10
```
        punch '//STEP1   EXEC PGM=ABC'
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 11
```
        punch '//DDNAME1 DD DSN=DSN.TESTJOB,DISP=SHR'
```
X'0030' Source record for statement 12
```
        END
```
X'0060' Macro and Copy Code Source Summary record for macro TESTHLA
X'0062' Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference record for macro TESTHLA
X'0090' Assembly Statistics record
X'0002' ADATA Compilation Unit END record
The count value in this record is 21.

ADATA Record Layouts

The formats of the records written to the associated data file are shown in the sections that follow.

In the fields described in each of the record types, a notation based on the assembler language data type is used:

C indicates EBCDIC data
H indicates 2-byte binary integer data
F indicates 4-byte binary integer data
A indicates 4-byte binary integer address and offset data
X indicates hexadecimal (bit) data

No boundary alignments are implied by any data type, and you can change the implied lengths by using a length indicator (L*n*). All integer data is in *System/370* format; that is bit 0 is always the most significant bit, bit *n* is the least significant bit, and the byte ordering in the records is from most significant to the least significant. The bits within a byte are numbered from left to right starting from 0.

Common Header Section

Each ADATA record contains a 12-byte common header section.

All ADATA records at the same architecture level have the same header section which describes: the producing language, the record type, the record architecture level (or version), a continued-record indicator, and, starting at level 2, an edition number.

High Level Assembler Release 4 produces architecture level 3 header records. This level is described in the following sections.

Figure 95. ADATA Record—Common Header Section

Field	Size	Description
Language code	FL1	16 Assembler
Record type	XL2	The record type, which can be one of the following: X'0000' Job Identification record X'0001' ADATA Identification record X'0002' Compilation Unit Start/End record X'000A' Output File Information record X'000B' Options File Information record X'0010' Options record X'0020' External Symbol Dictionary record X'0030' Source Analysis record X'0032' Source Error record X'0034' DC/DS record X'0035' DC/DS Extension record X'0036' Machine Instruction record X'0040' Relocation Dictionary record X'0042' Symbol record X'0044' Symbol and Literal Cross Reference record X'0045' Register Cross Reference record X'0060' Macro and Copy Code Source Summary record X'0062' Macro and Copy Code Cross Reference record X'0070' User Data record X'0080' USING Map record X'0090' Assembly Statistics record
Associated Data Architecture level	FL1	3
Flag	XL1	X'00' This record is not continued X'01' This record is continued on the next record All other values are reserved.
Edition Number	FL1	The edition number of this record type.
Reserved	CL4	
Associated Data Field length	HL2	The length, in bytes, of the data following the header

Note:

1. The mapping of the 12-byte header does not include the area used for the variable-length, record-descriptor word required by the access method.
2. The BATCH option, when used in conjunction with the ADATA option, produces a group of records for each assembly. Each group of records is delimited by the ADATA Compilation Start/End records.
3. All undefined and unused values are reserved.

Job Identification Record—X'0000'

Field	Size	Description
Date	CL8	The date of the assembly in the format YYYYMMDD
Time	CL4	The time of the assembly in the format HHMM
Product Number	CL8	The product number of the assembler that produced the associated data file
Product version	CL8	The version number of the assembler that produced the associated data file, in the form V.R.M and padded to the right with blanks. For example, `C'1.4.0 '`.
PTF level	CL8	The PTF level number of the assembler that produced the associated data file
System ID	CL24	The system identification of the system on which the assembly was run
Jobname	CL8	The jobname of the assembly job
Stepname	CL8	The MVS stepname of the assembly step
Procstep	CL8	The MVS procedure step name of the assembly procedure step
Number of input files	HL2	The number of input files in this record. The following group of seven fields will occur *n* times depending on the value in this field.
...Input file number	HL2	The assigned sequence number of the file
...Input file name length	HL2	The length of the following input file name
...Volume serial number length	HL2	The length of the volume serial number
...Member name length	HL2	The length of the member name
...Input file name	CL(n)	The name of the input file for the assembly
...Volume serial number	CL(n)	The volume serial number of the (first) volume on which the input file resides
...Member name	CL(n)	Where applicable, the name of the member in the input file

Note:

1. Where the number of input files would exceed the record size for the associated data file, the record is continued on the next record. The current number of input files (for that record) is stored in the record and the record written to the associated data file. The next record contains the rest of the input files. The count of the number of input files is a count for the current record.
2. If a SOURCE user exit has been specified for the assembly, and the SOURCE user exit has opened the input file, the input file details are those returned by the user exit.

ADATA Identification Record—X'0001'

Field	Size	Description
Time (binary)	XL8	Universal Time (UT) with the low-order bit representing 1 microsecond. This time may be used as a time-zone-independent time stamp.
CCSID	XL2	Coded Character Set IDentifier for any character data within the file

ADATA Compilation Unit Start/End Record—X'0002'

Field	Size	Description
Indicator	HL2	Start/End Indicator **X'0000'** Start of a group of compilation-unit-related ADATA records **X'0001'** End of a group of compilation-unit-related ADATA records All other values are reserved.
Reserved	CL2	
Record Count	FL4	On an ADATA Compilation Unit End record, a count of all the ADATA records for this compilation unit. (On an ADATA Compilation Unit Start record, this field should be zero, unless the producing translator has foreknowledge of the exact number of records to be written, in which case it must be identical to the count in the Compilation Unit End record. Otherwise, it may be ignored by any consumer of the ADATA stream.) In High Level Assembler, the record count in the ADATA Compilation Unit Start record is always zero.

System 370/390 Output File Information Record—X'000A'

The Output File Information record provides data about the files produced by the translator.

This architecture level provides for five such output files:

1. The object data set produced when you specify the OBJECT or GOFF (MVS and CMS) option
2. The object data set produced when you specify the DECK option
3. The listing file produced when you specify the LIST option
4. The terminal messages file produced when you specify the TERM option
5. The SYSADATA file produced when you specify the ADATA option

Field	Size	Description
Number of primary object-file (OBJECT) output files	HL2	The number of primary object files in this record. The groups of seven primary output-file fields below occur *n* times depending on the value in this field. (This number is normally 1.)
Number of secondary object-file (PUNCH) output files	HL2	The number of secondary (punch) object files in this record. The groups of seven secondary output-file fields below occur *n* times depending on the value in this field. (This number is normally 1.)
Number of listing (PRINT) output files	HL2	The number of listing (print) files in this record. The groups of seven listing-file fields below occur *n* times depending on the value in this field. (This number is normally 1.)
Number of terminal (TERM) output files	HL2	The number of terminal output files in this record. The groups of seven terminal-file fields below occur *n* times depending on the value in this field. (This number is normally 1.)

Field	Size	Description
Number of SYSADATA (ADATA) output files	HL2	The number of ADATA output files in this record. The groups of seven associated data (ADATA) output-file fields below occur *n* times depending on the value in this field. (This number is normally 1.)
	XL10	Reserved
		Start of primary output-file information groups, one group per file. The ellipses (...) indicate the fields are grouped.
...Object-file primary output file number	HL2	The assigned sequence number of the file
...Object file (primary) name length	HL2	The length of the following output file name for the primary object-file
...Volume serial number length	HL2	The length of the volume serial number for the primary object-file
...Member name length	HL2	The length of the member name for the primary object-file. If no member name is applicable, this field will contain binary zeros.
...Output (primary) file name	CL(n)	The name of the primary object output file for the compilation
...Volume serial number	CL(n)	The volume serial number of the volume on which the primary object output file resides
...Member name	CL(n)	Where applicable, the name of the member in the primary object output file.
		End of primary output-file information group.
		Start of secondary output-file information groups, one group per file.
...Object-file secondary output file number	HL2	The assigned sequence number of the secondary object-output file
...Output file name length	HL2	The length of the following secondary object-output file name
...Volume serial number length	HL2	The length of the volume serial number for the secondary object-output file
...Member name length	HL2	The length of the member name for the secondary object-output file. If no member name is applicable, this field contains binary zeros.
...Output (secondary) file name	CL(n)	The name of the secondary object output file for the compilation.
...Volume serial number	CL(n)	The volume serial number of the volume on which the secondary object output file resides.
...Member name	CL(n)	Where applicable, the name of the member in the output file.
		End of secondary output-file information group.
		Start of listing-file information groups, one group per file.
...Listing-file output file number	HL2	The assigned sequence number of the listing file
...Listing file name length	HL2	The length of the following listing file name
...Volume serial number length	HL2	The length of the volume serial number for the listing file

Field	Size	Description
...Member name length	HL2	The length of the member name for the listing file. If no member name is applicable, this field contains binary zeros.
...Listing file name	CL(n)	The name of the listing output file for the compilation.
...Volume serial number	CL(n)	The volume serial number of the volume on which the listing file resides.
...Member name	CL(n)	Where applicable, the name of the member for the listing file.
		End of listing-file information group.
		Start of terminal-file information groups, one group per file.
...Terminal file output file number	HL2	The assigned sequence number of the terminal file
...Terminal file name length	HL2	The length of the following terminal file name
...Volume serial number length	HL2	The length of the volume serial number for the terminal file
...Member name length	HL2	The length of the member name for the terminal file. If no member name is applicable, this field contains binary zeros.
...Terminal file name	CL(n)	The name of the terminal output file for the compilation.
...Volume serial number	CL(n)	The volume serial number of the volume on which the terminal file resides.
...Member name	CL(n)	Where applicable, the name of the member for the terminal file.
		End of terminal-file information group.
		Start of SYSADATA-file information groups, one group per file.
...ADATA file output file number	HL2	The assigned sequence number of the SYSADATA file
...ADATA file name length	HL2	The length of the SYSADATA file name
...Volume serial number length	HL2	The length of the volume serial number for the SYSADATA file
...Member name length	HL2	The length of the member name for the SYSADATA file. If no member name is applicable, this field contains binary zeros.
...ADATA file name	CL(n)	The name of the SYSADATA output file for the compilation.
...Volume serial number	CL(n)	The volume serial number of the volume on which the SYSADATA file resides.
...Member name	CL(n)	Where applicable, the name of the member for the SYSADATA file.
		End of SYSADATA-file information group.

Note:

If the number of output data sets causes the record to exceed the ADATA record size, the record is continued on the next record. The number of output files in the record is stored in the record, and the record is written to the ADATA file. The next record contains the rest of the output files.

Options File Information—X'000B'

Field	Size	Description
Number of Option files	HL2	The number of Option files in this record. The following group of seven fields will occur *n* times depending on the value in the field .
Offset to file information	AL2	Offset from the beginning of this record to the start of the Option file information The following group of seven fields will occur *n* times depending on the value in the field 'Number of Option files'.
...Option file number	HL2	The assigned sequence number of the file
...Option file name length	HL2	The length of the following Option file name
...Volume serial number length	HL2	The length of the volume serial number
...Member name length	HL2	The length of the member name
...Option file name	CL(n)	The name of the Option file for the assembly
...Volume serial number	CL(n)	The volume serial number of the (first) volume on which the Option file resides
...Member name	CL(n)	Where applicable, the name of the member in the Option file

Note:

1. Where the number of Option files would exceed the record size for the associated data file, the record is continued on the next record. The current number of Option files (for that record) is stored in the record and the record written to the associated data file. The next record contains the rest of the Option files. The count of the number of Option files is a count for the current record.

Options Record—X'0010'

This record indicates which assembler options were used for the assembly, and the values passed as suboptions. For example, if the PROFILE option was specified, bit 0 in option byte 8 would be 1, and the PROFILE_NAME field would contain the profile member name.

Field	Size	Description
Option Byte 1	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = ALIGN, Bit 0 = NOALIGN .1.. .... Bit 1 = ASA, Bit 0 = NOASA (MVS and CMS) ..1. .... Bit 1 = BATCH, Bit 0 = NOBATCH ...1 .... Bit 1 = COMPAT, Bit 0 = NOCOMPAT .... 1... Bit 1 = COMPAT(CASE), Bit 0 = not COMPAT(CASE) .... .1.. Bit 1 = COMPAT(SYSLIST), Bit 0 = not COMPAT(SYSLIST) .... ..1. Bit 1 = DBCS, Bit 0 = NODBCS ....1 Bit 1 = DECK, Bit 0 = NODECK

Field	Size	Description
Option Byte 2	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = DXREF, Bit 0 = NODXREF .1.. .... Bit 1 = ESD, Bit 0 = NOESD ..1. .... Bit 1 = FOLD, Bit 0 = NOFOLD ...1 .... Bit 1 = LIBMAC, Bit 0 = NOLIBMAC .... 1... Bit 1 = LIST, Bit 0 = NOLIST .... .1.. Bit 1 = ADATA, Bit 0 = NOADATA .... ..1. Bit 1 = MXREF or MXREF(FULL), Bit 0 = NOMXREF ....1 Bit 1 = OBJECT, Bit 0 = NOOBJECT
Option Byte 3	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = PCONTROL, Bit 0 = NOPCONTROL .1.. .... Bit 1 = PCONTROL(ON), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(ON) ..1. .... Bit 1 = PCONTROL(DATA), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(DATA) ...1 .... Bit 1 = PCONTROL(GEN), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(GEN) .... 1... Bit 1 = PCONTROL(UHEAD), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(UHEAD) .... .1.. Bit 1 = PCONTROL(MSOURCE), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(MSOURCE) .... ..1. Bit 1 = PCONTROL(MCALL), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(MCALL) ....1 Bit 1 = COMPAT(MACROCASE), Bit 0 = not COMPAT(MACROCASE)
Option Byte 4	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = RENT, Bit 0 = NORENT .1.. .... Bit 1 = RLD, Bit 0 = NORLD ..1. .... Bit 1 = TERM, Bit 0 = NOTERM ...1 .... Bit 1 = TEST, Bit 0 = NOTEST .... 1... Bit 1 = XREF, Bit 0 = NOXREF .... .1.. Bit 1 = XREF(FULL), Bit 0 = Not XREF(FULL) .... ..1. Bit 1 = SUBLIB(DF), Bit 0 = SUBLIB(AE) (VSE) ....1 Bit 1 = XREF(SHORT), Bit 0 = not XREF(SHORT)
Option Byte 5	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = EXIT, Bit 0 = NOEXIT .1.. .... Bit 1 = INEXIT, Bit 0 = NOINEXIT ..1. .... Bit 1 = LIBEXIT, Bit 0 = NOLIBEXIT ...1 .... Bit 1 = OBJEXIT, Bit 0 = NOOBJEXIT .... 1... Bit 1 = PRTEXIT, Bit 0 = NOPRTEXIT .... .1.. Bit 1 = ADEXIT, Bit 0 = NOADEXIT .... ..1. Bit 1 = TRMEXIT, Bit 0 = NOTRMEXIT ....1 Reserved
Option Byte 6	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = USING(WARN(m)), Bit 0 = USING(NOWARN) .1.. .... Bit 1 = USING(LIMIT(nnnn)), Bit 0 = USING(NOLIMIT) ..1. .... Bit 1 = USING(MAP), Bit 0 = USING(NOMAP) ...1 .... Bit 1 = FLAG(ALIGN), Bit 0 = FLAG(NOALIGN) .... 1... Bit 1 = FLAG(CONT), Bit 0 = FLAG(NOCONT) .... .1.. Bit 1 = FLAG(RECORD), Bit 0 = FLAG(NORECORD) .... ..1. Bit 1 = GOFF, Bit 0 = not GOFF (MVS and CMS) ....1 Bit 1 = GOFF(ADATA), Bit 0 = GOFF(NOADATA) (MVS and CMS)
Option Byte 7	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = PESTOP, Bit 0 = NOPESTOP .1.. .... Bit 1 = RA2, Bit 0 = NORA2 ..1. .... Bit 1 = FLAG(SUBSTR), Bit 0 = FLAG(NOSUBSTR) ...1 .... Bit 1 = TRANSLATE(xx), Bit 0 = NOTRANSLATE .... 00.. Reserved .... 01.. LIST(121) (MVS and CMS) .... 10.. LIST(133) (MVS and CMS) .... 11.. LIST(MAX) (MVS and CMS) .... ..01 MXREF(FULL) .... ..10 MXREF(SOURCE) .... ..11 MXREF(XREF)

Field	Size	Description
Option Byte 8	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = PROFILE, Bit 0 = NOPROFILE .1.. .... Bit 1 = PCONTROL(OFF), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(OFF) ..1. .... Bit 1 = PCONTROL(NODATA), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(NODATA) ...1 .... Bit 1 = PCONTROL(NOGEN), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(NOGEN) .... 1... Bit 1 = PCONTROL(NOUHEAD), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(NOUHEAD) .... .1.. Bit 1 = PCONTROL(NOMSOURCE), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(NOMSOURCE) .... ..1. Bit 1 = PCONTROL(NOMCALL), Bit 0 = not PCONTROL(NOMCALL) ....1 Bit 1 = XREF(UNREFS), Bit 0 = not XREF(UNREFS)
Warn_Value	FL1	Value from USING(WARN(m))
Flag_Value	FL1	Value from Flag(n)
Option Byte 9	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = RXREF, Bit 0 = NORXREF .1.. .... Bit 1 = FLAG(IMPLEN), Bit 0 = FLAG(NOIMPLEN) ..1. .... Bit 1 = FLAG(PAGE0), Bit 0 = FLAG(NOPAGE0) ...1 .... Bit 1 = INFO, Bit 0 = NOINFO .... 1... Bit 1 = COMPAT(LITTYPE), Bit 0 = not COMPAT(LITTYPE) .... .1.. Bit 1 = FLAG(PUSH), Bit 0 = FLAG(NOPUSH) .... ..1. Bit 1 = FLAG(USING0), Bit 0 = (NOUSING0) ....1 Bit 1 = THREAD, Bit 0 = NOTHREAD
Reserved	CL1	Reserved
TRANS_SUFFIX	CL2	Value from TRANSLATE(xx). Blank if not provided.
PROFILE_NAME	CL8	Value from PROFILE(xxxxxxxx). Blank if not provided.
Limit_Value	HL2	Value from USING(LIMIT(nnnn))
LANGUAGE	CL3	Language option in effect for the assembly
OPTABLE	CL3	OPTABLE option in effect for the assembly
LINECOUNT	HL2	Linecount option in effect for the assembly
INEXIT_PROG_LEN	HL2	Length of INEXIT program name
LIBEXIT_PROG_LEN	HL2	Length of LIBEXIT program name
OBJEXIT_PROG_LEN	HL2	Length of OBJEXIT program name
PRTEXIT_PROG_LEN	HL2	Length of PRTEXIT program name
ADEXIT_PROG_LEN	HL2	Length of ADEXIT program name
TRMEXIT_PROG_LEN	HL2	Length of TRMEXIT program name
INEXIT_STR_LEN	HL2	Length of string supplied to exit
LIBEXIT_STR_LEN	HL2	Length of string supplied to exit
OBJEXIT_STR_LEN	HL2	Length of string supplied to exit
PRTEXIT_STR_LEN	HL2	Length of string supplied to exit
ADEXIT_STR_LEN	HL2	Length of string supplied to exit
TRMEXIT_STR_LEN	HL2	Length of string supplied to exit
SYSPARM length	HL2	Length of the SYSPARM string supplied
PARMS length	HL2	Length of the PARM string supplied
CODEPAGE	CL4	The four characters representing the hexadecimal suffix added to ASMA to form the name of the codepage module.
Reserved	CL4	Reserved for future use
INEXIT_PROG	CL(n)	Input exit name

Field	Size	Description
LIBEXIT_PROG	CL(n)	Library exit name
OBJEXIT_PROG	CL(n)	Object exit name
PRTEXIT_PROG	CL(n)	Print exit name
ADEXIT_PROG	CL(n)	ADATA exit name
TRMEXIT_PROG	CL(n)	Term exit name
INEXIT_STR	CL(n)	Field to contain the string to be passed to the exit program
LIBEXIT_STR	CL(n)	Field to contain the string to be passed to the exit program
OBJEXIT_STR	CL(n)	Field to contain the string to be passed to the exit program
PRTEXIT_STR	CL(n)	Field to contain the string to be passed to the exit program
ADEXIT_STR	CL(n)	Field to contain the string to be passed to the exit program
TRMEXIT_STR	CL(n)	Field to contain the string to be passed to the exit program
SYSPARM string	CL(n)	Field to contain the SYSPARM string that is being used for the assembly
PARM string	CL(n)	Field to contain the invocation option string that is being used for the assembly

External Symbol Dictionary Record—X'0020'

Field	Size	Description		
Section Type	FL1	X'00'	Control Section (CSECT)	SD
		X'01'	Entry Point	LD
		X'02'	External Reference	ER
		X'04'	Private Code	PC
		X'05'	Common Section	CM
		X'06'	Dummy External DSECT	XD
		X'0A'	Weak External Reference	WX
		X'FF'	Dummy Section (DSECT)	(no type designator)
Flags	XL1	See “GOFF (MVS and CMS)” on page 55 for description.		
Reserved	HL2	Reserved for future use		
ESDID	FL4	External Symbol Dictionary ID (ESDID) or zero		
Section Address	AL4	The section address For SD- and LD-type entries it contains the address of the symbol. For PC- and CM-type entries, it indicates the beginning address of the control section. For XD-type entries, it indicates the number of bytes for alignment less one.		
Section Length	FL4	The length of the section		
LD ID	FL4	For LD-type entries, the ESDID of the CSECT in which the entry point was defined		
Reserved	CL8	Reserved for future use		
External Name length	HL2	Number of characters in the external name (zero if private code, unnamed common or unnamed DSECT)		
Alias Name length	HL2	Number of characters in the Alias name (zero if no alias)		
External name	CL(n)	The external name		
Alias Section name	CL(n)	The alias name for the section		

Source Analysis Record—X'0030'

Field	Size	Description
Statement number	FL4	The statement number of the source record.
ESDID	FL4	The ESDID for the source record.
Input record number	FL4	The input source record number within the current input file. This field is always present except when the source line is macro generated. (That is, the Input record origin value is X'02'.) This field contains the value returned by the exit if the source record is provided by an exit.
Parent record number	FL4	The parent source record number. If the source record was included by a COPY statement or generated by a macro instruction, the Parent input number is the record number of the COPY statement or macro instruction. This field contains the value returned by the input or library exits if the source record is provided by either of these exits.
Input assigned file number	HL2	The input file's assigned sequence number. (Refer to the input file *n* in the Job Identification record if the Input record origin is X'01', or the Library Record - X'0060' with Concatenation number *n* otherwise). This field is set to zero if an exit provides the source record.
Parent assigned file number	HL2	The parent file's assigned sequence number. (Refer to the Input file *n* in the Job Identification record if the Parent record origin is X'01', or the Library Record - X'0060' with Concatenation number *n* otherwise). This field is set to zero if an exit provides the source record.
Location Counter	FL4	The current location counter for the source record.
Input record origin	XL1	X'01' Source line from primary input X'02' Source line from Macro generation. X'03' Source line from library member. X'05' Source line from AINSERT internal buffer.
Parent record origin	XL1	X'01' Source line from primary input X'02' Source line from Macro generation. X'03' Source line from library member. X'05' Source line from AINSERT internal buffer
Print flags	XL1	X'80' PRINT GEN X'40' PRINT DATA X'20' PRINT ON X'10' PRINT NOMSOURCE (0 = PRINT MSOURCE) X'08' PRINT UHEAD X'04' PRINT MCALL
Reserved	XL2	Reserved for future use
Source record type (within source record origin)	XL1	X'01' Comment line that is not within a macro definition. X'02' Machine instruction that is not within a macro definition. X'03' Assembler instruction that is not within a macro definition. This includes conditional assembly instructions such as AIF and SETC. X'04' Macro call instruction. X'05' Macro definition. All statements between (and including) the MACRO prototype statement and the corresponding MEND statement. This includes nested macro definitions.

Field	Size	Description
Assembler operation code	XL1	The assembler operation code for assembler instructions. (See note 3 on page 274). This field is only valid if the “Source record type” is set to X'03'.
Flags	XL1	Flag byte for address fields. X'80' Address 1 present X'40' Address 2 present
Address 1	AL4	The address 1 field from the assembly
Address 2	AL4	The address 2 field from the assembly
Offset of name entry in statement field	HL2	Zero if name entry not present or if the name begins at the beginning of the record (see notes 1 and 2 on page 274)
Length of name entry	HL2	Zero if name entry not present (see note 2 on page 274)
Offset of operation entry in statement field	HL2	Zero if operation entry not present (see note 2 on page 274)
Length of operation entry	HL2	Zero if operation entry not present (see note 2 on page 274)
Offset of operand entry in statement field	HL2	Zero if operand entry not present (see note 2 on page 274)
Length of operand entry	HL2	Zero if operand entry not present (see note 2 on page 274)
Offset of remarks entry in statement field	HL2	Zero if remarks entry not present (see note 2 on page 274)
Length of remarks entry	HL2	Zero if remarks entry not present (see note 2 on page 274)
Offset of continuation indicator field	HL2	Zero if no continuation indicator present (see note 2 on page 274)
Reserved	CL4	Reserved for future use
Length of input macro or copy member name	HL2	Zero if the input record line does not come from a macro or a copy member
Length of parent macro or copy member name	HL2	Zero if the parent record line does not come from a macro or a copy member
Length of source record	HL2	The length of the actual source record following
Reserved	CL8	Reserved for future use
Input Macro or copy member name	CL(n)	The macro or copy member name if the input record originated from a macro or copy member
Parent macro or copy member name	CL(n)	The macro or copy member name if the parent record originated from a macro or copy member
Source record	CL(n)	

Notes:

1. The offset and length fields are provided to allow the different fields to be retrieved from the source without being dependent on the format of the source record. The offsets are from the start of the source record.
2. The length and offset fields for the name entry, operation entry, remarks entry, and continuation indicator are zero for the following statements:
   - Macro definition statements with a Source Record Type of X'04'
   - Macro definition statements with a Source Record Type of X'05'
   - EXITCTL assembler statements
   - ICTL assembler statements
3. The assembler operation code field can contain the operation code values shown in Figure 96.

Figure 96. Assembler Operation Code Values

Operation Code	Assembler Instruction	Operation Code	Assembler Instruction	Operation Code	Assembler Instruction
X'00'	GBLA	X'18'	TITLE	X'33'	Literal
X'01'	GBLB	X'19'	ENTRY	X'37'	MHELP
X'02'	GBLC	X'1A'	EXTRN	X'38'	AREAD
X'03'	LCLA	X'1B'	START	X'3B'	WXTRN
X'04'	LCLB	X'1C'	CSECT	X'3D'	AMODE
X'05'	LCLC	X'1D'	DSECT	X'3E'	RMODE
X'06'	SETA	X'1E'	COM	X'3F'	RSECT
X'07'	SETB	X'1F'	EQU	X'40'	CCW0
X'08'	SETC	X'20'	ORG	X'41'	CCW1
X'09'	AIF	X'21'	END	X'42'	EXITCTL
X'0A'	AGO	X'22'	LTORG	X'43'	ASPACE
X'0B'	ANOP	X'23'	USING	X'44'	AEJECT
X'0C'	COPY	X'24'	DROP	X'45'	ALIAS
X'0D'	MACRO	X'25'	ACTR	X'46'	CEJECT
X'0E'	MNOTE	X'26'	DC	X'47'	ADATA
X'0F'	MEXIT	X'27'	DS	X'48'	SETAF
X'10'	MEND	X'28'	CCW	X'49'	SETCF
X'11'	ICTL	X'29'	CNOP	X'4A'	CATTR
X'12'	ISEQ	X'2A'	LOCTR		(MVS & CMS)
X'13'	PRINT	X'2B'	DXD	X'4B'	ACONTROL
X'14'	SPACE	X'2C'	CXD	X'4C'	XATTR
X'15'	EJECT	X'2E'	OPSYN		(MVS & CMS)
X'16'	PUNCH	X'2F'	PUSH	X'4D'	AINSERT
X'17'	REPRO	X'30'	POP		

Source Error Record—X'0032'

Field	Size	Description
Statement number	FL4	The statement number of the statement in error
Error Identifier	CL16	The error message identifier
Error Severity	HL2	The severity of the error
Error message length	HL2	The length of the error message text
Reserved	CL8	Reserved for future use

Field	Size	Description
Error Message	CL(n)	The error message text

Note:

1. This record also includes MNOTEs generated by the assembler.
2. The language of the error diagnostic messages is determined by the LANGUAGE assembler option.

DC/DS Record—X'0034'

Field	Size	Description
ESDID	FL4	The ESDID for the source record.
Number of operands	HL2	The number of operands defined by the source record.
Type Flag	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = Define Constant (DC, CXD, CCW, CCW0, or CCW1), Bit 0 = Define Storage (DS or DXD) .1.. .... If "Define Constant" bit is set, bit 1 indicates the operand is a CXD. If "Define Constant" bit is *not* set, bit 1 indicates the operand is a DXD. ..1. .... If "Define Constant" bit is set, bit 1 indicates the operand is a CCW, CCW0, or CCW1. ...1 .... Bit 1 indicates this record is associated with an object text record (X'003A'). The object text record is created when a DC statement has a duplication factor greater than 1, and at least one of the operand values has a reference to the current location counter (*). .... 1... Reserved .... .1.. Reserved .... ..1. Reserved ....1 Reserved
Reserved	CL5	Reserved for future use
Statement Number	FL4	The statement number of the source line that generated this text, if known. Otherwise it contains zeros.
...Location Counter	FL4	The location counter for this operand. This field repeats within the group for the number of operands on the source record.
...Duplication Factor	FL4	The duplication factor for the operand. This field repeats within the group for the number of operands on the source record.
...Bit Offset	XL1	The offset within byte (0–7) for B-type operands. This field repeats within the group for the number of operands on the source record.
...Type Attribute	CL1	The value that the assembler Type Attribute reference returns (see "Type Attribute (T')" in the chapter "How to Write Conditional Assembly Instructions" in the *Language Reference* manual). This field repeats within the group for the number of operands on the source record.
...Number of values	HL2	The number of nominal values. This field repeats within the group for the number of operands on the source record.
...Type Extension	CL1	The type extension for the operand. This field repeats within the group for the number of operands on the source record.
...Reserved	CL7	Reserved for future use. This field repeats within the group for the number of operands on the source record.
.....Byte length	HL2	The number of bytes in the nominal value. This field repeats within the group for the number of nominal values in the operand.

Field	Size	Description
.....Bit length	HL2	The number of bits if the operand specifies a bit length that is not a multiple of 8. This field repeats within the group for the number of nominal values in the operand.
.....Value	XL(n)	If this record describes a DC, CXD, CCW, CCW0, or CCW1, then the value contains the nominal value. (A DC with a zero duplication factor is treated the same as a DS and this field is not present). If this record describes a DS or DXD, this field is not present. This field repeats within the group for the number of nominal values in the operand. If a byte length is specified (or implied), the value contains the number of bytes specified. The value field is aligned according to the operand type. For example, hexadecimal values are left-aligned and packed values are right-aligned. If a bit length is specified, the length of the value is the number of bytes required to contain the required bits. For example, if the bit length was 10, the value is 2 bytes in length. The value is in the leftmost 10 bits. Alignment within the specified number of bits is according to the operand type. For example, hexadecimal values are left-aligned and packed values are right-aligned.

Note:

1. Only one of the two fields for byte/bit lengths contains a non-zero value. This means that there is a byte length, or a bit length, but not both.
2. No description of any padding is produced. Any padding because of alignment can be calculated by comparing the location counter of the current operand with the sum of the location counter and length of the previous operand.

   The length of the previous operand would need to be calculated using the duplication factor, number of nominal values, and the length of each nominal value.
3. High Level Assembler creates the DC/DS Extension record X'0035' when the duplication factor is greater than 1 and at least one of the operand values has a reference to the current location counter (*).

The following examples show the format of a DC/DS record for various DC statements.

1. EXAMPLE1 DC 3F'5,6',H'7'

```
ESDID              : F'1'
Number of Operands : H'2'
Type Flag          : B'10000000'
Reserved           : X'0000000000'
Statement Number   : F'2'
   Location Counter   : X'00000000'
   Duplication Factor : F'3'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'F'
   Number of values   : H'2'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length        : H'4'
      Bit length         : H'0'
      Value              : X'00000005'
      Byte length        : H'4'
      Bit length         : H'0'
      Value              : X'00000006'
```

```
   Location Counter   : X'00000018'
   Duplication Factor : F'1'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'H'
   Number of values   : H'1'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length       : H'2'
      Bit length        : H'0'
      Value             : X'0007'
```

2. EXAMPLE2 DC P'5,927'

```
ESDID              : F'1'
Number of Operands : H'1'
Type Flag          : B'10000000'
Reserved           : X'0000000000'
Statement Number   : F'2'
   Location Counter   : X'00000000'
   Duplication Factor : F'1'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'P'
   Number of values   : H'2'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length       : H'1'
      Bit length        : H'0'
      Value             : X'5C'
      Byte length       : H'2'
      Bit length        : H'0'
      Value             : X'927C'
```

3. EXAMPLE3 DC B'101',2B'10111'

```
ESDID              : F'1'
Number of Operands : H'2'
Type Flag          : B'10000000'
Reserved           : X'0000000000'
Statement Number   : F'2'
   Location Counter   : X'00000000'
   Duplication Factor : F'1'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'B'
   Number of values   : H'1'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length       : H'1'
      Bit length        : H'0'
      Value             : X'05'           B'00000101'
```

```
   Location Counter   : X'00000001'
   Duplication Factor : F'2'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'B'
   Number of values   : H'1'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length       : H'1'
      Bit length        : H'0'
      Value             : X'17'            B'00010111'
```

4. EXAMPLE4 DC BL.3'101',BL.5'10111,11001'

```
ESDID              : F'1'
Number of Operands : H'2'
Type Flag          : B'10000000'
Reserved           : X'0000000000'
Statement Number   : F'2'
   Location Counter   : X'00000000'
   Duplication Factor : F'1'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'B'
   Number of values   : H'1'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length       : H'0'
      Bit length        : H'3'
      Value             : X'A0'            B'10100000'


   Location Counter   : X'00000000'
   Duplication Factor : F'1'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000011'
   Type Attribute     : C'B'
   Number of values   : H'2'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length       : H'0'
      Bit length        : H'5'
      Value             : X'B8'            B'10111000'
      Byte length       : H'0'
      Bit length        : H'5'
      Value             : X'C8'            B'11001000'
```

5. EXAMPLE5 DC LB'4',2L'9'

   This example shows a DC statement that requires the type extension field to differentiate the attributes of the two floating point operands.

```
ESDID              : F'1'
Number of Operands : H'2'
Type Flag          : B'10000000'
Reserved           : X'0000000000'
Statement Number   : F'2'
   Location Counter   : X'00000000'
   Duplication Factor : F'1'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'L'
   Number of values   : H'1'
   Type Extension     : C'B'
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length        : H'16'
      Bit length         : H'0'
      Value              : X'40010000000000000000000000000000'


   Location Counter   : X'00000010'
   Duplication Factor : F'2'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'L'
   Number of values   : H'1'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length        : H'16'
      Bit length         : H'0'
      Value              : X'41900000000000003300000000000000'
```

6. EXAMPLE6 DC 5Y(*-2),5Y(*-1)

   This example shows a DC statement that requires a DC extension record (X'0035') to contain the repeating fields.

   The object code generated, and shown in the assembler listing:

```
                                       2          PRINT DATA
000000 FFFE000000020004                3          DC    5Y(*-2),5Y(*-1)
000008 00060009000B000D
000010 000F0011
```

   The ADATA records produced:

```
ESDID              : F'1'
Number of Operands : H'2'
Type Flag          : B'10010000'
Reserved           : X'0000000000'
Statement Number   : F'3'
   Location Counter   : X'00000000'
   Duplication Factor : F'5'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'Y'
   Number of values   : H'1'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length        : H'2'
      Bit length         : H'0'
      Value              : X'FFFE'


   Location Counter   : X'0000000A'
   Duplication Factor : F'5'
   Bit Offset         : B'00000000'
   Type Attribute     : C'Y'
   Number of values   : H'1'
   Type Extension     : C' '
   Reserved           : X'00000000000000'
      Byte length        : H'2'
      Bit length         : H'0'
      Value              : X'0009'
```

The object text for the statement is in the following DC Extension Record:

```
ESDID              : F'1'
Location Counter   : F'0'
Statement Number   : F'3'
Reserved           : F'0'
Reserved           : F'0'
Length of Object   : H'20'
Object Text        : X'FFFE00000002000400060009000B000D000F0011'
```

DC Extension Record—X'0035'

Field	Size	Description
ESDID	FL4	The ESDID for the record
Location Counter	FL4	Address (offset) of the text within the module
Statement number	FL4	The statement number of the source line that generated this text, if known. Zero otherwise.
Reserved	FL8	Reserved for future use
Length of Object text	HL2	The length of the following object text
Object text	XL(n)	The actual object text

Machine Instruction Record—X'0036'

Field	Size	Description
ESDID	FL4	The ESDID for the machine instruction record
Location Counter	FL4	The location counter for this instruction
Reserved	CL8	Reserved for future use
Length of Instruction	HL2	The length of the machine instruction
Value of Instruction	XL(n)	The actual value of the machine instruction

Relocation Dictionary Record—X'0040'

Field	Size	Description
POS.ID	FL4	The external symbol dictionary ID number assigned to the ESD entry for the control section in which the address constant is used as an operand.
REL.ID	FL4	The external symbol dictionary ID number assigned to the ESD entry for the control section in which the referenced symbol is defined.
Address	AL4	The assembled address of the field where the address constant is stored.
Flags	XL1	See “Relocation Dictionary (RLD)” on page 22 for a description.

Symbol Record—X'0042'

Field	Size	Description
ESDID	FL4	ESDID of the section in which the symbol is defined. This is zero for an undefined symbol type.
Statement Number	FL4	The number of the statement in which the symbol is defined. This is zero for an undefined symbol type.
Symbol Type	XL1	X'00' Undefined name X'01' CSECT / RSECT name X'02' DSECT name X'03' Common section name X'04' Dummy External DSECT name (DXD) X'05' V-type constant name X'06' Qualifier X'07' EXTRN/WXTRN name X'08' LOCTR name X'09' Duplicate name X'0A' Literal name X'0B' *-in-literal name X'0C' EQU name **1** X'0D' Ordinary label X'0E' Unresolvable EQU, DC or DS symbol
Type Attribute	CL1	The value that the assembler Type Attribute reference returns (see “Type Attribute (T')” in the chapter “How to Write Conditional Assembly Instructions” in the *Language Reference* manual).

Field	Size	Description
Duplication Factor	FL4	Number of times the first operand field named by the symbol occurs. This is zero for an undefined symbol type.
Length attribute	HL2	Length in bytes, either specified or by default.
Integer attribute	HL2	Number of positions occupied by the integer portion of fixed-point and decimal constants in their object code form. This is zero for an undefined symbol type.
Scaling attribute	HL2	Number of positions occupied by the fractional portion of fixed-point and decimal constants in their object code form. This is zero for an undefined symbol type.
Location Counter	FL4	Contains the offset from the start of the DSECT, the non-relocated address of the instruction belonging to this symbol in a CSECT (this is not always the offset from the start of the CSECT), or the value of the equate. For an undefined symbol, it is zero.
Symbol Flags	XL1	1... .... Bit 1 = 1, the symbol is a relocatable, Bit 0 = the symbol is absolute. This bit is zero for an undefined symbol type. 11.. .... Complex relocatable ..1. .... Reserved ...1 .... Reserved .... 1... Reserved .... .1.. Reserved .... ..1. Reserved ....1 Reserved
Reserved	CL7	Reserved for future use
Symbol name length	HL2	Number of characters in the symbol name
Symbol name	CL(n)	The symbol name. Variable length.

Note:

For record type “EQU” specified at **1**, where the “EQU” is for a relocatable value, the ESDID of the “EQU” is provided. Where the “EQU” is non-relocatable, the ESDID of the section in control will be provided. The symbol flags can be checked to determine whether the “EQU” is relocatable or absolute.

Symbol Cross Reference Record—X'0044'

Field	Size	Description
Symbol length	HL2	The length of the symbol
Statement Definition	FL4	The statement number where the symbol is defined or declared
Number of references	HL2	The number of references to the symbol
Relocatability Type	CL1	C' ' Simple relocatable symbol C'A' Absolute symbol C'C' Complex relocatable symbol
Reserved	CL7	Reserved for future use
Symbol name	CL(n)	The symbol name. Variable length.
...Reference Flag	CL1	C' ' No branch or modification C'M' Modification reference flag C'B' Branch reference flag C'U' USING reference flag C'D' DROP reference flag C'X' Execute Instruction reference flag

Field	Size	Description
...Statement Number	FL4	The statement number on which the symbol is referenced

Note:

1. The Reference Flag field and the Statement Number field both occur as many times as the “Number of references” field dictates. That is, if there is a value of ten in the “Number of references” field, then there are ten occurrences of the Reference Flag and Statement Number pair.
2. Where the number of references would exceed the record size for the ADATA file, then the record is continued on the next record. The continuation flag is set in the common header section of the record.

Register Cross Reference Record—X'0045'

Field	Size	Description
Register number	XL1	The register number (X'0' to X'F')
Register Type	CL1	G—General
Total number of references	FL4	The total number of references to the register
Number of references this record	FL4	The number of references to the register in this record
Offset to references	AL2	Offset from the beginning of this record to the start of the register reference occurrences
...Statement Number	FL4	The statement number on which the register is referenced
...Reference Flag	CL1	C' ' No branch or modification C'M' Modification reference flag C'B' Branch reference flag C'U' USING reference flag C'D' DROP reference flag C'N' Index register reference flag

Note:

1. The Reference Flag field and the Statement Number field both occur as many times as the “Number of references this record” field dictates. That is, if there is a value of ten in the “Number of references this record” field, then there are ten occurrences of the Reference Flag and Statement Number pair.
2. Where the number of references would exceed the record size for the ADATA file, then the record is continued on the next record. The continuation flag is set in the common header section of the record.

Library Record—X'0060'

Field	Size	Description
Number of Macros / Copy code members	HL2	Count of the number of macros and copy code members described in this record. For example, if ten macros and source copy code members are retrieved from a data set, the count field contains 10 and there are ten occurrences of the length field and the field containing the either the macro or source copy code names.
Data set Name length	HL2	The length of the data set (file) name.

Field	Size	Description
Data set Volume length	HL2	The length of the data set (file) volume.
Concatenation number	XL2	The library concatenation number.
DDNAME length	HL2	The length of the ddname.
Reserved	CL4	Reserved for future use.
Data set Name	CL(n)	The name of the data set (file) from which the macro or copy member was retrieved, or “PRIMARY INPUT” for an in-stream macro. Under VSE, this field contains the library and sublibrary name.
Data set Volume	CL(n)	The volume identification of the volume where the data set (file) resides.
DDNAME	CL(n)	The ddname of the library.
...Macro name length	HL2	The length of the macro name following.
...Macro name	CL(n)	The name of the macro or source copy code that has been used. If the source is “PRIMARY INPUT”, then this field contains the macro name from the source program.

Note:

1. If a LIBRARY user exit has been specified for the assembly, and the LIBRARY user exit has opened the Library data set, the record contains the library names returned by the user exit.
2. If this record is continued, the Data set Name Length and Data Set Volume length fields will be zero and the first Macro name length field will be located after the 4 byte Reserved field.

Library Member and Macro Cross Reference Record - X'0062'

Field	Size	Description
Concatenation Number	FL4	The concatenation number of the library or primary input file
Statement Definition	FL4	The statement number is: `0` When the member or macro is retrieved from a library `>0` When the macro is defined in the primary input file. It represents the statement number where the macro is defined.
Concatenation Type	CL1	`C'L'` Concatenation number refers to a library `C'P'` Concatenation number refers to the primary input
Statement Definition Flag	CL1	`C'X'` The macro is read from the library and imbedded in the primary source, using the LIBMAC option. `C' '` The flag is usually blank except in special cases, as described above
Reserved 1	CL8	Reserved for future use.
Member or Macro name	CL64	The name of the member or macro.
Parent Macro Name	CL64	The name of the macro that called this macro or issued the COPY instruction. This field contains “PRIMARY INPUT” when the member or macro is called directly from the primary input file.
Number of references	FL4	The number of references to the member or macro. (Reserved.)
Number of references in this record	FL4	The number of references to the member or macro in this ADATA record.

Field	Size	Description
...Reference Statement Number	FL4	The statement number on which the member is copied or included, or the statement number on which the macro is called
...Reference Flag	CL1	C' ' Blank means the reference is caused by a macro call C'C' Reference is caused by a COPY instruction
...Reserved 2	XL1	Reserved for future use

Note:

1. The Calling Macro Name field immediately follows Member or Macro name field.
2. The Reference Statement Number, the Reference Flag, and the Reserved 2 fields occur as many times as the "Number of references in this record" field dictates. For example, if there is a value of ten in the "Number of references in this record" field, there are ten occurrences of the Reference Statement Number, the Reference Flag, and the Reserved 2 fields.
3. Where the number of references would exceed the record size for the ADATA file, then the record is continued on the next record. The continuation flag is set in the common header section of the record.

User-supplied Information Record - X'0070'

Field	Size	Description
User Field 1	XL4	User-specified binary data
User Field 2	XL4	User-specified binary data
User Field 3	XL4	User-specified binary data
User Field 4	XL4	User-specified binary data
User data length	HL2	Length of following field
User data	CL(n)	User-specified character data

USING Map Record—X'0080'

Field	Size	Description
Record type	XL1	X'00' USING record X'20' POP record X'40' PUSH record X'80' DROP record
USING Flag	XL1	USING type (ORDINARY, LABELED, DEPENDENT, LABELED DEPENDENT) X'00' Ordinary USING X'10' Labeled USING X'20' Dependent USING X'30' Labeled Dependent USING
Location ESDID	XL2	The value of the ESDID of the current section when the USING, DROP, PUSH USING, or POP USING was issued.
Statement number	FL4	The statement number of the USING, DROP, PUSH USING, or POP USING.
Location Counter	FL4	The value of the location counter when the USING, DROP, PUSH USING, or POP USING was issued.

Field	Size	Description
USING value	FL4	The value of the USING statements first-operand expression. This is zero for PUSH, POP, and DROP.
Last statement	FL4	The last statement number for which this base-register was used in converting a symbolic address into its base-displacement form. This is zero for PUSH, POP, and DROP.
USING ESDID	XL4	For ordinary and labeled USING instructions, this field indicates the ESDID of the section specified on first operand of the USING statement. For dependent USING instructions, this field indicates the ESDID of the section specified on the corresponding ordinary USING instruction that is used to resolve the address. This is zero for PUSH, POP, and DROP.
Register	XL1	The register used in the USING. This is zero for PUSH and POP. Where a DROP with no operand or a DROP ALL is specified, this field contains X'FF'.
Displacement	XL2	The maximum displacement for this USING register. This is zero for PUSH, POP, and DROP.
Reserved	XL1	Reserved for future use.
USING range	FL4	The value of the USING range.
Reserved	XL2	Reserved for future use.
Label length	HL2	The length of the label and USING text field following. This is zero for PUSH and POP. This length field is rounded up to a doubleword boundary. Hence if the text was 13 bytes in length, the length would be set at 16 and the text blank padded on the right.
Label	CL(n)	The source text for the LABEL and USING from the source USING record.

Statistics Record—X'0090'

Field	Size	Description
Buffer pool allocation	FL4	The number of Kilobytes (KB) of storage allocated to the buffer pool
Required In-storage	FL4	The number of Kilobytes (KB) of storage required to make the assembly an in-storage assembly.
Primary input records	FL4	The number of primary input records read for the assembly row.
Library records	FL4	The number of library records read for the assembly row.
Work file reads	FL4	The number of work file reads for the assembly row.
Print records written	FL4	The number of print records written for the assembly row.
Object records written	FL4	The number of object records written for the assembly row.
Work file writes	FL4	The number of work file writes for the assembly row.
ADATA file writes	FL4	The number of ADATA file writes for the assembly row.
ADATA calls	FL4	The number of calls to the ADATA exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
ADATA added records	FL4	The number of records added by the ADATA exit This field is always zero.
ADATA deleted records	FL4	The number of records deleted by the ADATA exit This field is always zero.

Field	Size	Description
ADATA diagnostic messages	FL4	The number of diagnostic messages returned by the ADATA exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Library calls	FL4	The number of calls to the LIBRARY exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Library added records	FL4	The number of records added by the LIBRARY exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Library deleted records	FL4	The number of records deleted by the LIBRARY exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Library diagnostic messages	FL4	The number of diagnostic messages returned by the LIBRARY exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Listing calls	FL4	The number of calls to the LISTING exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Library added records	FL4	The number of records added by the LIBRARY exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Library deleted records	FL4	The number of records deleted by the LIBRARY exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Library diagnostic messages	FL4	The number of diagnostic messages returned by the LIBRARY exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Listing calls	FL4	The number of calls to the LISTING exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Listing added records	FL4	The number of records added by the LISTING exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Listing deleted records	FL4	The number of records deleted by the LISTING exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Listing diagnostic messages	FL4	The number of diagnostic messages returned by the LISTING exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Object calls	FL4	The number of calls to the OBJECT exit. (MVS and CMS) This field is zero if no exit is present. Reserved (VSE)
Object added records	FL4	The number of records added by the OBJECT exit. (MVS and CMS) This field is zero if no exit is present. Reserved (VSE)
Object deleted records	FL4	The number of records deleted by the OBJECT exit. (MVS and CMS) This field is zero if no exit is present. Reserved (VSE)
Object diagnostic messages	FL4	The number of diagnostic messages returned by the OBJECT exit. (MVS and CMS) This field is zero if no exit is present. Reserved (VSE)

Field	Size	Description
Source calls	FL4	The number of calls to the SOURCE exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Source added records	FL4	The number of records added by the SOURCE exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Source deleted records	FL4	The number of records deleted by the SOURCE exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Source diagnostic messages	FL4	The number of diagnostic messages returned by the SOURCE exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Punch calls	FL4	The number of calls to the PUNCH exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Punch added records	FL4	The number of records added by the PUNCH exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Punch deleted records	FL4	The number of records deleted by the PUNCH exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Punch diagnostic messages	FL4	The number of diagnostic messages returned by the PUNCH exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Term calls	FL4	The number of calls to the TERM exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Term added records	FL4	The number of records added by the TERM exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Term deleted records	FL4	The number of records deleted by the TERM exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Term diagnostic messages	FL4	The number of diagnostic messages returned by the TERM exit This field is zero if no exit is present.
Assembly start time	FL4	The local time when the assembly commenced. This time is recorded after data set allocation, storage allocation, invocation parameter processing, and other initialization processing. Stored in packed format as *hhmmssth*: *hh* The hour *mm* The minute *ss* The second *t* Tenths of a second *h* Hundredths of a second
Assembly stop time	FL4	The local time when the assembly completed Stored in packed format as *hhmmssth*: *hh* The hour *mm* The minute *ss* The second *t* Tenths of a second *h* Hundredths of a second
Processor time	FL4	The number of processor seconds utilized by this assembly. (MVS and CMS) The low order bit represents 1 microsecond. Reserved (VSE)

Field	Size	Description
ASMAOPT input records	FL4	The number of ASMAOPT input records read for the assembly
Reserved	XL4	Reserved
External Functions loaded	FL4	The number of functions loaded during this assembly. This is also the number of function statistic groups to follow.
...Reserved	XL4	Reserved
...SETAF function calls	FL4	The number of times the function was called from a SETAF assembler instruction. This field is part of the group of fields which is repeated for each function loaded.
...SETCF function calls	FL4	The number of times the function was called from a SETCF assembler instruction. This field is part of the group of fields which is repeated for each function loaded.
...Messages issued	FL4	The number of times the function requested that a message be issued. This field is part of the group of fields which is repeated for each function loaded.
...Messages severity	HL2	The maximum severity for the messages issued by this function. This field is part of the group of fields which is repeated for each function loaded.
...Name length	HL2	The length of the following field. This field is part of the group of fields which is repeated for each function loaded.
...External Function name	CL(n)	The external function module name. This field is part of the group of fields which is repeated for each function loaded.

Appendix E. Sample Program

The sample program included with High Level Assembler is described in this appendix. This program demonstrates some basic assembler language, macro, and conditional assembly features, most of which are unique to High Level Assembler. The highlighted characters in the descriptions below refer to corresponding characters in the listing that precedes the descriptions.

For more details about this program, see “ASMASAMP” in the *HLASM Installation and Customization Guide*.

```
                                   High Level Assembler Option Summary                              Page    1
                                                                                 HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
No Overriding ASMAOPT Parameters
No Overriding Parameters
No Process Statements


Options for this Assembly
NOADATA
  ALIGN
NOASA
  BATCH
  CODEPAGE(047C)
NOCOMPAT
NODBCS
NODECK
  DXREF
  ESD
NOEXIT
  FLAG(0,ALIGN,CONT,NOIMPLEN,NOPAGE0,PUSH,RECORD,NOSUBSTR,USING0)
NOFOLD
NOGOFF
NOINFO
  LANGUAGE(EN)
NOLIBMAC
  LINECOUNT(60)
  LIST(121)
  MXREF(SOURCE)
  OBJECT
  OPTABLE(UNI)
NOPCONTROL
NOPESTOP
NOPROFILE
NORA2
NORENT
  RLD
  RXREF
  SIZE(MAX)
  SYSPARM()
NOTERM
NOTEST
  THREAD
NOTRANSLATE
  USING(NOLIMIT,MAP,WARN(15))
  XREF(SHORT,UNREFS)

No Overriding DD Names
```


© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

```
BIGNAME                                 External Symbol Dictionary                                      Page    2
Symbol   Type   Id     Address  Length     LD ID  Flags Alias-of                          HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
A         SD 00000001 00000000 000000DE            00
PD2       CM 00000002 00000000 00000814            00  A

BIGNAME  Sample program.  1ST TITLE statement has no name, 2ND one does                                   Page    3
  Active Usings: None
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                    HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
                                    2 ********************************************************************          00002000
                                    3 *   Licensed Materials - Property of IBM                          *           00003000
                                    4 *                                                                 *           00004000
                                    5 *   5696-234   5647-A01                                           *           00005000
                                    6 *                                                                 *           00006000
                                    7 *   (c) Copyright IBM Corp. 1992, 2000. All Rights Reserved. *                00007000
                                    8 *                                                                 *           00008000
                                    9 *   US Government Users Restricted Rights - Use,                  *           00009000
                                   10 *   duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP               *           00010000
                                   11 *   Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.                              *           00011000
                                   12 *                                                                 *           00012000
                                   13 ********************************************************************          00013000
                                   14 ********************************************************************************   00014000
                                   15 * DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES                                                 *   00015000
                                   16 *  The following enclosed code is sample code created by IBM              *   00016000
                                   17 *  Corporation. This sample code is licensed under the terms of           *   00017000
                                   18 *  the High Level Assembler license, but is not part of any              *   00018000
                                   19 *  standard IBM product.  It is provided to you solely for the           *   00019000
                                   20 *  purpose of demonstrating the usage of some of the features of         *   00020000
                                   21 *  High Level Assembler.  The code is not supported by IBM and           *   00021000
                                   22 *  is provided on an "AS IS" basis, without warranty of any kind.        *   00022000
                                   23 *  IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your           *   00023000
                                   24 *  use of the sample code, even if IBM has been advised of the           *   00024000
                                   25 *  possibility of such damages.                                          *   00025000
                                   26 ********************************************************************************   00026000
000000                00000 000DE   27 a        csect                                                                 00027000
                R:8   00000         28          using *,8                                                           00028000
000000 1BFF                         29          sr    15,15      Set return code to zero                            00029000
000002 07FE                         30          br    14          and return.                                       00030000
                                   32 ********************************************************************************   00032000
                                   33 *             PUSH  and POP  statements                                  *   00033000
                                   34 * Push down the PRINT statement, replace it, retrieve original          *   00034000
                                   35 ********************************************************************************   00035000
                                   37          push  print     Save Default setting '  PRINT ON,NODATA,GEN'       00037000
                             B     38          print nogen,data                                                    00038000
000004 0A23                         39          wto   mf=(E,(1))                    Expansion not shown             00039000
000006 01230ABC0102030A           C 42  dc x'123,ABC',(reallylongsymbol-transylvania)b'1,10,11,1010,1011,1100' 00040000
00000E 0B0C0102030A0B0C
000016 0102030A0B0C0102
00001E 030A0B0C
                                   43          pop   print                   Restore default PRINT setting       00041000
                                   44          wto   mf=(E,(1))                    Expansion shown                 00042000
000022 0A23                        46+         SVC   35                     ISSUE SVC 35             @L2C 01-WTO
000024 01230ABC0102030A            47  dc x'123,ABC',(reallylongsymbol-transylvania)b'1,10,11,1010,1011,1100' 00043000
                                   49 ********************************************************************************   00045000
                                   50 *                        LOCTR  instruction                           *   00046000
                                   51 * LOCTR allows 'REMOTE' assembly of constant                          *   00047000
                                   52 ********************************************************************************   00048000
000040 5850 80AC            000AC  54          l     5,constant                                                    00050000
0000AC                000AC 000DE D 55 deecees  loctr                                                           00051000
0000AC 00000005                    56 constant dc    f'5'      Constant coded here, assembled behind LOCTR A  00052000
BIGNAME  Sample program.  1ST TITLE statement has no name, 2ND one does                                   Page    4
  Active Usings: a(X'1000'),R8
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                    HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
000044                00000 000DE   57 a        loctr               Return to 1st LOCTR in CSECT A            00053000
                                   59 ********************************************************************************   00055000
                                   60 *  3 operand EQUATE with forward reference in 1ST operand            *   00056000
                                   61 ********************************************************************************   00057000
000044 1812                        63 a5       lr    1,2            L'A5 = 2, T'A5 = I                           00059000
                                   64          print data                                                         00060000
000046 0000
000048 413243F6A8885A30            65 a7 dc l'3.14159265358979323846264338327950288419 72' L'A7 = 16,T'A7 = L  00061000
000050 338D313198A2E037
                                   66 &type    setc  t'a7                                                        00062000
                             E     67 a8       equ   b5,l'a5,c'&type'                                            00063000
                      000B0 00002    +a8       equ   b5,l'a5,c'L'                                                00063000
```

A The external symbol dictionary shows a named common statement. The named common section is defined in statement 216.

B Statement 37: Save the current status of the PRINT statement.

Statement 38: Modify the print options to DATA and NOGEN.

Statement 39: Macro call; note that the expansion (statements 40 and 41) is not printed.

Statement 42: All 28 bytes of data are displayed to the two-operand DC.

Statement 43: Restore earlier status of PRINT.

Statement 45: This statement is not printed. It is a nested macro call. The MCALL operand of the PRINT instruction or the PCONTROL assembler option control the printing of nested macro calls.

Statements 46: The generated output of the macro WTO is shown, but only two bytes of data are shown.

C Statements 42 and 47: Multiple constants are allowed in hexadecimal and binary DC operands, and neither symbol in the duplication factor has been defined yet. Definition occurs in statements 144 and 145.

D Statements 55, 57, 194, 212 and 213 show use of the LOCTR assembler instruction. This feature allows you to break down control sections into "subcontrol" sections. It can be used in CSECT, RSECT, DSECT, and COM sections. LOCTR has many of the features of a control section; for example, all of the first LOCTR in a section is assigned space, then the second, and so on. The name of the control section automatically names the first LOCTR section. Thus LOCTR A is begun, or continued, at statements 27, 57, and 213. The location counter value shown each time is the continued value of the LOCTR. On the other hand, various LOCTR sections within a control section have common addressing as far as USING statements are concerned, subject to the computed displacement falling within 0 through 4095. In the sample, CONSTANT (at statement 56) is in LOCTR DEECEES but the instruction referring to it (statement 54) has no addressing problems.

E Three-operand EQU. Here, we assign: (a) the value of B5 (not yet defined) to A8, (b) the length attribute of A5 to A8, and (c) the type attribute of A7 to A8. If no second or third operand is present in an EQU statement, the type attribute is U and the length attribute is that of the first term in the operand expression. Symbols present in the operand field must be previously defined. You cannot express the type attribute of A7 directly in the EQU statement. The EQU statement at 67 could have been written

```
a8        equ       b5,2,c'L'
a8        equ       b5,x'2',x'D3'
```

```
BIGNAME  Sample program.  1ST TITLE statement has no name, 2ND one does                                  Page    5
  Active Usings: a(X'1000'),R8
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                 HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
                                     69 ********************************************************************  00065000
                                     70 * Implicit declaration of locals &A, &C -- Use of SETC dup factor to *  00066000
                                     71 *   produce SETC string longer than 8, MNOTE in open code            *  00067000
                                     72 ********************************************************************  00068000
                                     74 &la8     seta  l'a8                                                    00070000
                                F    75 &ta8     setc  t'a8                                                    00071000
                                     76          mnote *,'Length of A8 = &LA8, Type of A8 = &TA8'              00072000
                                G      +*,Length of A8 = 2, Type of A8 = L                                     00072000
                                     78 &a       seta  2                                                       00074000
                                     79 &c       setc  (&a+3)'STRING,'                                         00075000
                                H    80          mnote *,'&&C has value = &c'                                  00076000
                                       +*,&C has value = STRING,STRING,STRING,STRING,STRING,                   00076000
                                     82 ********************************************************************  00078000
                                I    83 * Examples of 4 byte self-defined terms, unary + and -               *  00079000
                                     84 ********************************************************************  00080000
000058 7FFFFFFFC1C2C3C4              86          dc    a(2147483647,C'ABCD',X'ffffffff')                       00082000
000060 FFFFFFFF
000064 181D                          87          lr    -1+2,16+-3                                              00083000
                     FFFFE8          89 X        equ   4*-6                                                    00085000
```

F Set symbols &LA8 and &TA8 have not been previously declared in LCL or GBL statements. Therefore, they default to local variable symbols as follows: &LA8 is an LCLA SET symbol because it appears in the name field of a SETA; &TA8 is an LCLC SET symbol because it is first used in a SETC.

G MNOTEs can appear in open code. As such, they have all properties of MNOTEs inside macros, including substitution.

H A SETC expression can have a duplication factor. The SETA expression must be enclosed in parentheses and immediately precede the character string, the substring notation, or the type attribute reference.

I Statements 86 through 89 show 4-byte self-defining values and unary + and –. The value of X appears later in a literal address constant (see statement 296).

```
BIGNAME  Insert Programmer Macro in Source Stream now                                                Page    6
  Active Usings: a(X'1000'),R8
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
                                    91 ************************************************************************  00087000
                                    92 *  Mixed keywords and positional parameters, extended AGO and AIF    *  00088000
                                    93 *     statements, declaration and use of subscripted SET symbols,    *  00089000
                                    94 *       Use of created SET symbols, extended SET statements          *  00090000
                                    95 ************************************************************************  00091000
                               J    97          macro                                                          00093000
                                    98          demo  &p1,&key1=A,&p2,&key2=1,&p3,&key3=3,&p4                  00094000
                               K    99 &loc(1)  setc  '2','3'        &LOC is dimensioned LCLC by default       00095000
                                   100          gblc  &xa(5),&xb(20),&xc(1)                                    00096000
                                   101          aif   ('&system_id'(1,3) eq 'VSE').vse                         00097000
                               L   102          &p1   &syslist(4),&syslist(5),&syslist(6),mf=E                  00098000
                                   103          ago   .notvse                                                  00099000
                                   104 .vse     anop                Use VSE WRITE macro parameters             00100000
                                   105          &p1   &syslist(4),SQ,&syslist(6)                               00101000
                                   106 .notvse  anop                                                           00102000
                                   107 &n       seta  1                                                        00103000
                               M   108          ago   (&key2).mnote1,.mnote2,.mnote3                           00104000
                                   109 &n       seta  2                                                        00105000
                                   110          mnote *,'&&KEY2 not 1,2, or 3---Use &&KEY3 in place of it'     00106000
                               N   111          aif   (&key3 eq 1).mnote1,                                    X00107000
                                                      (&key3 eq 2).mnote2,(&key3 eq 3).mnote3                  00108000
                                   112          mnote *,'Both &&KEY2 and &&KEY3 fail to qualify'               00109000
                                   113          ago   .common                                                  00110000
                                   114 .mnote1  mnote *,'&&KEY&LOC(&N) = 1'                                    00111000
                                   115          ago   .common                                                  00112000
                                   116 .mnote2  mnote *,'&&KEY&LOC(&N) = 2'                                    00113000
                                   117          ago   .common                                                  00114000
                                   118 .mnote3  mnote *,'&&KEY&LOC(&N) = 3'                                    00115000
                                   119 .common  l     5,8(,10)       Note that opcodes, operands & comments    00116000
                                   120 &xb(2) sr 9,10                  on MODEL statements                    00117000
                               O   121 &(x&key1)(2) lm 12,13,=a(a5,x)    are kept in place unless displaced    00118000
                                   122 &p2 st 7,&p3                      as a result of substitution          00119000
                                   123          mend                                                           00120000
                                   125 *****          DEMO  MACRO  instruction (call)                         00122000
                               P   127          gblc  &xa(1),&xb(2),&xc(3)                                     00124000
                                   128 &xa(1)   setc  'A','MISSISSIPPI'                                        00125000
                                   129 &xb(1)   setc  'B','SUSQUEHANNA'                                        00126000
                                   130 &xc(1)   setc  'C','TRANSYLVANIA'                                       00127000
                               Q   131          demo  key3=2,write,reallylongsymbol,                          M00128000
                                                      a8+8*(b5-constant-7)(3),key1=C,(6),SF,                   N00129000
                                                      (8),key2=7                                               00130000
000066 1816                         134+         LR    1,6                              LOAD DECB ADDRESS     03-IHBRD
000068 9220 1005      00005         135+         MVI   5(1),X'20'              SET TYPE FIELD                  03-IHBRD
00006C 5081 0008            00008   136+         ST    8,8(1,0)                         STORE DCB ADDRESS     03-IHBRD
000070 58F1 0008            00008   137+         L     15,8(1,0)           LOAD DCB ADDRESS                  03-IHBRD
000074 58F0 F030            00030   138+         L     15,48(0,15)                      LOAD RDWR ROUTINE ADDR 03-IHBRD
000078 05EF                         139+         BALR  14,15                            LINK TO RDWR ROUTINE   03-IHBRD
                                    140+*,&KEY2 not 1,2, or 3---Use &KEY3 in place of it                        01-00110
                                    141+*,&KEY3 = 2                                                             01-00116
00007A 5850 A008            00008   142+         l     5,8(,10)       Note that opcodes, operands & comments    01-00119
00007E 1B9A                    R    143+SUSQUEHANNA sr 9,10             on MODEL statements                    01-00120
000080 98CD 8090            00090   144+TRANSYLVANIA lm 12,13,=a(a5,x)    are kept in place unless displaced    01-00121
BIGNAME  Insert Programmer Macro in Source Stream now                                                Page    7
  Active Usings: a(X'1000'),R8
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
000084 5073 8098            00098   145+reallylongsymbol st 7,a8+8*(b5-constant-7)(3)                        X01-00122
                                       +                                  as a result of substitution
```

J The macro DEMO is defined after the start of the assembly. Macros can be defined at any point and, having been defined, expanded, or both, can be redefined. The parameters on the prototype are a mixture of keywords and positional operands. &SYSLIST may be used. The positional parameters are identified and numbered 1, 2, 3 from left to right; keywords are skipped over in numbering positional parameters.

K Statement 99 shows the extended SET feature (as well as implicit declaration of &LOC(1) as an LCLC). Both &LOC(1) and &LOC(2) are assigned values. One SETA, SETB, or SETC statement can then do the work of many.

L Statement 102 is a model statement with a symbolic parameter in its operation field. This statement is edited as if it is a macro call; at this time, each operand is denoted as positional or keyword. At macro call time, you cannot reverse this decision. Even though it's treated as a macro, it is still expanded as a machine or assembler operation.

M Statement 108 shows the computed AGO statement. Control passes to .MNOTE1 if &KEY2 is 1, to .MNOTE2 if &KEY2 is 2, to .MNOTE3 if &KEY2 is 3, or otherwise it falls through to the model statement at 109.

N Statement 111 shows the extended AIF facility. This statement is written in the alternative format. The logical expressions are examined from left to right. Control passes to the sequence symbol corresponding to the first true expression encountered, or else falls through to the next model statement.

O Statement 121 contains a subscripted created SET symbol in the name field. The created SET symbol has the form &(*e*), where *e* is an expression made up of character strings, variable symbols, or both. When the symbol is encountered during macro generation, the assembler evaluates the expression *e*. The operation code DEMO is used as a macro instruction in statement 131, and &KEY1 is given the value C. The *e* in this case is X&KEY1, which results in the value XC. Thus the name field in statement 121, &(x&key1)(2), becomes &XC(2). Statement 130 assigns the value C to &XC(1), and the value `TRANSYLVANIA` to &XC(2). The model statement (121) is generated at statement 144; the name field contains `TRANSYLVANIA`. The sequence field of statement 144, shows that this statement is a level 01 expansion of a macro, and the corresponding model statement is statement number 121.

You can use created SET symbols wherever regular SET symbols are used; for example: in declarations, name fields, operands of SET statements, model statements. Likewise, they are subject to all the restrictions of regular SET symbols.

P In statements 127 and 128, &XA is declared as a subscripted global SETC variable with a subscript of 1 and in the next statement, which is an extended SET statement, we store the value `MISSISSIPPI` into &XA(2). The assembler allows up to 2,147,483,647 array values in a subscripted global SETC symbol.

Q Statement 131 is the macro instruction DEMO. &P1 has the value WRITE. Therefore, the model statement at statement 102 becomes an inner macro instruction, WRITE, producing the code at statements 134–139. The sequence field of these statements contains 03-IHBRD, indicating that they are generated by a level 03 macro (DEMO is 01, WRITE is 02) named IHBRDWRS. It is an inner macro called by WRITE.

R Statements 144 and 145 contain some ordinary symbols longer than 8 characters. The limit for ordinary symbols, operation codes (for programmer and library macros and operation codes defined through OPSYN), variable symbols, and sequence symbols, is 63 characters (including the & and . in the latter two instances, respectively).

```
BIGNAME  Insert Programmer Macro in Source Stream now                                                    Page    8
  Active Usings: a(X'1000'),R8
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                  HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
                                   147 ************************************************************************  00132000
                                   148 *  Copy 'NOTE' macro in from maclib, rename it 'MARK', call it under *  00133000
                                   149 *    its ALIAS -- in expansion of MARK, notice reference back to     *  00134000
                                   150 *      definition statements in 'columns' 76-80 of expansion         *  00135000
                                   151 ************************************************************************  00136000
                              S    153          copy  note                                                      00138000
                                   154=         MACRO                                                           00010000
                                   155=&NAME    NOTE  &DCB,&DUMMY=,&TYPE=REL                                    00020000
                                   156=.* $MAC(NOTE):                                                          00030000
                                   157=.*  5665-XA2                                                            00032000
                                   158=.*  CONTAINS RESTRICTED MATERIALS OF IBM                                00034000
                                   159=.*  (C) COPYRIGHT IBM CORP. 1984                                       00036000
                                   160=.*  LICENSED MATERIALS - PROPERTY OF IBM                               00038000
                                   161=.*  REFER TO COPYRIGHT INSTRUCTIONS                                     00040000
                                   162=.*  FORM NUMBER G120-2083.                                             00042000
                                   163=.* STATUS =  MVS/XA  DFP RELEASE 1.2                          @H1   00044000
                                   164=.*                                                                      00046990
                                   165=.* CHANGE ACTIVITY =                                                    00120000
                                   166=.*                                                                      00130000
                                   167=.* $H1=3480,JDP1111,,STLPKH:  3480 SUPPORT                        *  00140000
                                   168=.*                                                                      00150000
                                   169=         AIF   ('&DCB' EQ '').ERR                                       00160000
                                   170=&NAME    IHBINNRA &DCB                                                  00170000
                                   171=         AIF   ('&TYPE' NE 'REL').NOTREL                          @H1A 00180000
                                   172=         L     15,84(0,1)                      LOAD NOTE  RTN ADDRESS 00190000
                                   173=         BALR  14,15                           LINK TO NOTE  ROUTINE  00200000
                                   174=         MEXIT                                                          00210000
                                   175=.NOTREL  AIF   ('&TYPE' NE 'ABS').ERR1                            @H1A 00220000
                                   176=         SLR   0,0                       INDICATES NOTE MACRO     @H1A 00230000
                                   177=         LA    15,32                     ROUTER CODE              @H1A 00240000
                                   178=         SVC   109                       SUPERVISOR CALL          @H1A 00250000
                                   179=         MEXIT                                                  @H1A 00260000
                                   180=.ERR1    MNOTE 8,'INVALID PARAMETER FOR TYPE'                @H1A     00270000
                                   181=         MEXIT                                                  @H1A 00280000
                                   182=.ERR     IHBERMAC 6                                                     00290000
                                   183=         MEND                                                           00300000
                              T    186 mark     opsyn note      Comments of generated statements occupy same   00141000
                                   187          mark  (6)         'COLUMNS' as those in MODEL statements       00142000
000088 1816                        189+         LR    1,6                             LOAD PARAMETER REG 1   02-IHBIN
00008A 58F0 1054            00054  190+         L     15,84(0,1)                      LOAD NOTE  RTN ADDRESS 01-00172
00008E 05EF                        191+         BALR  14,15                           LINK TO NOTE  ROUTINE  01-00173
                                   193 ************************************************************************  00144000
0000B0                 000AC 000DE 194 deecees  loctr        Switch to alternate location counter              00145000
0000B0 0B0000B000000050            195 b5       ccw   X'0b',b5,0,80                                             00146000
                                   197 ************************************************************************  00148000
                                   198 *  Display of &SYSTIME, &SYSDATE, &SYSPARM and &SYSLOC                *  00149000
                                   199 ************************************************************************  00150000
                                   201          print nodata                                                   00152000
                              U    202   dc  c'TIME = &systime, DATE = &sysdate, PARM = &sysparm'             00153000

BIGNAME  Insert Programmer Macro in Source Stream now                                                    Page    9
  Active Usings: a(X'1000'),R8
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                  HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
0000B8 E3C9D4C5407E40F1               +  dc  c'TIME = 09/25/00, DATE = 17.48, PARM = '                         00153000
                                   204          macro                                                          00155000
                                   205          locate                                                         00156000
                              V    206 &sysect  csect      Display of current control section                 00157000
                                   207 &sysloc  loctr          and location counter                           00158000
                                   208          mend                                                           00159000
                                   210          locate                                                         00161000
0000DE                 000AC 000DE 211+a        csect      Display of current control section                 01-00206
0000DE                 000AC 000DE 212+deecees  loctr          and location counter                           01-00207
000090                 00000 000DE 213 a        loctr                                                          00162000
```

S Library macros can be inserted into the source stream as programmer macros by use of a COPY statement. The result (statements 154 to 183) is treated as a source-stream macro definition. When a library macro is brought in and expanded by use of a macro instruction, the assembler (1) looks the macro up by its member-name and (2) verifies that this same name is used in the operation field of the prototype statement. Therefore, for example, DCB has to be cataloged as DCB. However, as COPY code, the member name bears no relationship to any of the statements in the member. Thus, several variations of a given macro could be stored as a library under separate names, then copied in at various places in a single assembly as needed. (High Level Assembler allows you to define and redefine a macro any number of times).

T In statement 186, MARK is made a synonym for NOTE. To identify the NOTE macro as a defined instruction mnemonic, it has to be used as either a system macro call (that is, from a macro library), or a programmer macro definition, before its use in the operand field of an OPSYN statement. The COPY code at statements 154 through 183 is a programmer macro definition. The macro instruction at statement 187 is MARK. You can use MARK and NOTE interchangeably. If required, you could remove NOTE as a macro definition in the following way:

```
MARK     OPSYN          NOTE
NOTE     OPSYN          ,
```

You could then refer to the macro only as MARK.

U Statement 202 demonstrates &SYSTIME, &SYSDATE, and &SYSPARM. The values for the first two are the same as in the heading line. The value for &SYSPARM is the value passed in the PARM field of the EXEC statement, or the default value assigned to &SYSPARM when High Level Assembler is installed.

V System variable symbols &SYSLOC and &SYSECT are displayed at statements 211 and 212. The sequence field indicates that the model statements are statements 206 and 207.

```
BIGNAME  Ordinary, Labeled and Dependent USING Instructions                                    Page   10
  Active Usings: a(X'1000'),R8
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
                                    215 ********************************************************************  00164000
000000                00000 00814 W 216 pd2      com                Named COMMON thrown in for good measure   00165000
000000                              217          ds    500f                                                    00166000
0007D0 1867                         218          lr    6,7                                                     00167000
                                    220 ********************************************************************  00169000
                                    221 *  Use of ordinary, labeled and dependent USING Instructions        *  00170000
                       X            222 ********************************************************************  00171000
                  R:C  007D2        224          using *,12                                                    00173000
0007D2 4110 C022            007F4   225          la    1,area1                                                 00174000
0007D6 4120 C032            00804   226          la    2,area2                                                 00175000
                  R:1  00000        227          using first,1               Ordinary USING                    00176000
                  R:2  00000        228 lab      using first,2               Labeled USING                     00177000
                1 008  00000 00008  229          using second,first2         Dependent USING                   00178000
                2 008  00000 00008  230 labdep   using third,lab.first2      Labeled dependent USING           00179000
0007DA D207 1000 8098 00000 00098   231          mvc   first1,=cl8'1st'     Uses ordinary USING               00180000
0007E0 D207 2000 8098 00000 00098   232          mvc   lab.first1,=cl8'1st' Uses labeled USING               00181000
0007E6 D203 1008 80A0 00000 000A0   233          mvc   second1,=cl4'2nd'     Uses dependent USING              00182000
0007EC D201 2008 80A4 00000 000A4   234          mvc   labdep.third1,=cl2'3d' Uses labeled dependent USING   00183000
0007F4                              235 area1    ds    0f                    First data area                   00184000
0007F4                              236 area1a   ds    cl8                                                     00185000
0007FC                              237 area1b   ds    cl8                                                     00186000
000804                              238 area2    ds    0f                    Second data area                  00187000
000804                              239 area2a   ds    cl8                                                     00188000
00080C                              240 area2b   ds    cl8                                                     00189000
000000                00000 00010   241 first    dsect                       First dsect                       00190000
000000                              242 first1   ds    cl8                                                     00191000
000008                              243 first2   ds    cl8                                                     00192000
000000                00000 00008   244 second   dsect                       Second dsect                      00193000
000000                              245 second1  ds    cl4                                                     00194000
000004                              246 second2  ds    cl4                                                     00195000
000000                00000 000EC   247 third    dsect                       Third dsect                       00196000
000000                              248 third1   ds    cl12                                                    00197000
000002                              249 third2   ds    cl2                                                     00198000
```

W Illustration of named COMMON. You can establish addressability for a named COMMON section with:

```
USING          section-name,register
```

You can address data in a blank COMMON section by labeling a statement within the section *after* the COMMON statement.

X In statement 227, an ordinary USING is established for AREA1 using the DSECT FIRST. When the fields within DSECT FIRST are referenced using symbols with the “first” qualifier, register 1 is used to resolve the address as in statement 231.

In statement 228, a labeled USING is established for AREA2 using the DSECT FIRST. Register 2 is used to resolve the address for qualified symbols within AREA2 when referred to using the qualifier “second” as in statement 232.

In statement 229, a dependent USING is established at the field FIRST2 using the DSECT SECOND. The corresponding ordinary USING for field FIRST2 is the USING on statement 227. It uses register 1 to resolve the address. The statement on line 233 specifies a field within DSECT SECOND and the assembler uses register 1 to resolve the address.

In statement 230, a labeled dependent USING is established at the field FIRST2 using the DSECT THIRD. The USING specifies the labeled USING LAB to resolve the address for field FIRST2. In statement 234, the labeled dependent USING is specified and register 2 is used to resolve the address of the field THIRD1.

```
BIGNAME  Predefined Absolute Symbols in SETA and SETC expressions                                    Page   11
  Active Usings: first(X'1000'),R1  second(X'FF8'),R1+X'8'  a(X'1000'),R8  pd2+X'7D2'(X'1000'),R12
  lab.first(X'1000'),R2  labdep.third(X'FF8'),R2+X'8'
D-Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
                                   251 ********************************************************************  00200000
                                   252 *  Use of predefined absolute symbols in SETA and SETC expressions   *  00201000
                                   253 ********************************************************************  00202000
                      00064        255 hundred  equ   100                                                     00204000
                                   256 &dividnd seta  20                                                      00205000
                            Y      257 &percent seta  &dividnd*100/40         Predefined symbol in SETA       00206000
                      00032        258 fifty    equ   50                                                      00207000
                            Z      259 &longwd  setc  (hundred)'a'            Predefined symbol in SETC       00208000
                                   260          dc    c'&longwd'                                              00210000
000004 8181818181818181               +         dc    c'aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaX00210000
00000C 8181818181818181               +               aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa'
                                   261 &twowds  setc  (fifty)'a'.' '.(hundred/2)'B'                           00211000
                                   262          dc    c'&twowds'                                              00212000
000068 8181818181818181               +         dc    c'aaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaaa BBBX00212000
000070 8181818181818181               +               BBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBB'
```

Y In statement 257, the SETA statement specifies a variable symbol (&DIVIDND) as well as other arithmetic terms.

Z In statement 259 the SETC statement specifies a predefined absolute symbol (HUNDRED) as the duplication factor.

```
BIGNAME  Symbol Attribute Enhancements                                                               Page   12
  Active Usings: first(X'1000'),R1  second(X'FF8'),R1+X'8'  a(X'1000'),R8  pd2+X'7D2'(X'1000'),R12
  lab.first(X'1000'),R2  labdep.third(X'FF8'),R2+X'8'
D-Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
                                   264 ********************************************************************  00214000
                                   265 *  Symbol Attribute enhancements                                   *  00215000
                                   266 ********************************************************************  00216000
0000CD C1C2C3                      268 SYMBOL1  DC    C'ABC'                                                  00218000
0000D0 12345C                      269 SYMBOL2  DC    P'123.45'                                               00219000
                                   270 &VAR1    SETC  'SYMBOL1'                                               00220000
                                   271 &VAR2    SETC  'SYMBOL2'                                               00221000
0000D3 00
0000D4 4110 80A6            000A6  272          LA    1,=C'ABC'                                               00222000
0000D8 4110 80A9            000A9  273          LA    1,=P'123.45'                                            00223000
                            1      275 &TYPE    SETC  T'=C'ABC'                                               00225000
                                   276          DC    CL1'&TYPE'                                              00226000
0000DC C3                             +         DC    CL1'C'                                                  00226000
0000DD C3                          277          DC    AL1(T'SYMBOL1)                                          00227000
                                   278          DC    AL1(T'&VAR1)                                            00228000
0000DE C3                             +         DC    AL1(T'SYMBOL1)                                          00228000
0000DF C3                          279          DC    AL1(T'=C'ABC')                                          00229000
                            2      280 &LEN     SETA  L'=C'ABC'                                               00230000
                                   281          DC    AL1(&LEN)                                               00231000
0000E0 03                             +         DC    AL1(3)                                                  00231000
0000E1 03                          282          DC    AL1(L'SYMBOL1)                                          00232000
                                   283          DC    AL1(L'&VAR1)                                            00233000
0000E2 03                             +         DC    AL1(L'SYMBOL1)                                          00233000
0000E3 03                          284          DC    AL1(L'=C'ABC')                                          00234000
                            3      285 &INT     SETA  I'=P'123.45'                                            00235000
                                   286          DC    AL1(&INT)                                               00236000
0000E4 03                             +         DC    AL1(3)                                                  00236000
0000E5 03                          287          DC    AL1(I'SYMBOL2)                                          00237000
                                   288          DC    AL1(I'&VAR2)                                            00238000
0000E6 03                             +         DC    AL1(I'SYMBOL2)                                          00238000
0000E7 03                          289          DC    AL1(I'=P'123.45')                                       00239000
                            4      290 &SCALE   SETA  S'=P'123.45'                                            00240000
                                   291          DC    AL1(&SCALE)                                             00241000
0000E8 02                             +         DC    AL1(2)                                                  00241000
0000E9 02                          292          DC    AL1(S'SYMBOL2)                                          00242000
                                   293          DC    AL1(S'&VAR2)                                            00243000
0000EA 02                             +         DC    AL1(S'SYMBOL2)                                          00243000
0000EB 02                          294          DC    AL1(S'=P'123.45')                                       00244000
                                   295          end                                                           00245000
000090 00000044FFFFFFE8     5      296                =a(a5,x)
000098 F1A2A34040404040            297                =cl8'1st'
0000A0 F2958440                    298                =cl4'2nd'
0000A4 F384                        299                =cl2'3d'
0000A6 C1C2C3                      300                =C'ABC'
0000A9 12345C                      301                =P'123.45'
```

1 The Type attribute (T') is allowed for ordinary symbols, SET symbols, and literals, in both conditional assembly instructions and machine or assembler instructions. It is allowed in both open code and macro definitions.

2 The Length attribute (L') is allowed for ordinary symbols, SET symbols, and literals, in both conditional assembly instructions and machine or assembler instructions. It is allowed in both open code and macro definitions.

3 The Integer attribute (I') is allowed for ordinary symbols, SET symbols, and literals, in both conditional assembly instructions and machine or assembler instructions. It is allowed in both open code and macro definitions.

4 The Scaling attribute (S') is allowed for ordinary symbols, SET symbols, and literals, in both conditional assembly instructions and machine or assembler instructions. It is allowed in both open code and macro definitions.

5 If there are literals outstanding when the END statement is encountered, they are assigned to the LOCTR now in effect for the first control section in the assembly. This may or may not put the literals at the end of the first control section. In this sample assembly, the first control section, A, has two LOCTRs: A and DEECEES. Because A is active (at statement 213), the literals are assembled there. You control placement of literal pools by means of the LTORG statement. Note that X'FFFFFFE8' is used for the contents of A(X), statement 296. The symbol X was assigned the value (4*-6) by an EQU in statement 89.

```
BIGNAME                                  Relocation Dictionary                                    Page   13
   Pos.Id   Rel.Id   Flags    Address                                          HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
  00000001 00000001    0C    00000090
  00000001 00000001    08    000000B1

BIGNAME                       Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference                         Page   14
Symbol   Length   Value     Id    R Type   Defn References                    HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
a             1 00000000 00000001     J      27   57   211   213
area1         4 000007F4 00000002     F     235  225
area2         4 00000804 00000002     F     238  226
a5            2 00000044 00000001     I      63   67   296
a8            2 000000B0 00000001 C   L      67  145M
b5            8 000000B0 00000001     W     195   67   145M  195
constant      4 000000AC 00000001     F      56   54   145M
deecees       1 000000AC 00000001     J      55  194   212
first         1 00000000 FFFFFFFF     J     241  227U  228U
first1        8 00000000 FFFFFFFF     C     242  231M  232M
first2        8 00000008 FFFFFFFF     C     243  229U  230
lab                      00000002 A   U     228  230U  232
labdep                   00000002 A   U     230  234
reallylongsymbol
              4 00000084 00000001     I     145   42    47
second        1 00000000 FFFFFFFE     J     244  229U
second1       4 00000000 FFFFFFFE     C     245  233M
SYMBOL1       3 000000CD FFFFFFFD     C     268  277   278   282   283
SYMBOL2       3 000000D0 FFFFFFFD     P     269  287   288   292   293
third         1 00000000 FFFFFFFD     J     247  230U
third1        2 00000000 FFFFFFFD     C     248  234M
TRANSYLVANIA
              4 00000080 00000001     I     144   42    47
X             1 FFFFFFE8 00000001 A   U      89  296
=a(a5,x)      4 00000090 00000001     A     296  144
=C'ABC'       3 000000A6 00000001     C     300  272   279   284
=cl2'3d'      2 000000A4 00000001     C     299  234
=cl4'2nd'
              4 000000A0 00000001     C     298  233
=cl8'1st'
              8 00000098 00000001     C     297  231   232
=P'123.45'
              3 000000A9 00000001     P     301  273   289   294
```

```
BIGNAME                        Unreferenced Symbols Defined in CSECTs                               Page   15
  Defn  Symbol                                                                  HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
    65  a7
   143  SUSQUEHANNA
```

```
BIGNAME                                 Macro and Copy Code Source Summary                                Page   16
 Con Source                                      Volume    Members                      HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
     PRIMARY INPUT                                         DEMO     LOCATE   NOTE
  L1 OSMACRO  MACLIB   S2                        CMS13     IHBINNRA IHBRDWRS NOTE     WRITE    WTO
```

```
BIGNAME                                      Dsect Cross Reference                                        Page   17
Dsect     Length      Id       Defn                                                      HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
first    00000010  FFFFFFFF     241
second   00000008  FFFFFFFE     244
third    000000EC  FFFFFFFD     247
```

```
BIGNAME                                          Using Map                                                Page   18
                                                                                                        HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
  Stmt  -----Location----- Action ----------------Using----------------- Reg Max    Last  Label and Using Text
          Count      Id           Type          Value    Range     Id        Disp   Stmt
    28  00000000  00000001 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 00000001   8 0AC     273  *,8
   224  000007D2  00000002 USING  ORDINARY    000007D2 00001000 00000002  12 032     226  *,12
   227  000007DA  00000002 USING  ORDINARY    00000000 00001000 FFFFFFFF   1 008     233  first,1
   228  000007DA  00000002 USING  LABELED     00000000 00001000 FFFFFFFF   2 008     232  lab.first,2
   229  000007DA  00000002 USING  DEPENDENT  +00000008 00000FF8 FFFFFFFE   1              second,first2
   230  000007DA  00000002 USING  LAB+DEPND  +00000008 00000FF8 FFFFFFFD   2              labdep.third,lab.first2
```

```
                                 General Purpose Register Cross Reference                                  Page   19
 Register  References (M=modified, B=branch, U=USING, D=DROP, N=index)                    HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
    0(0)    (no references identified)
    1(1)      63M   87M  134M  135   136N  137N  189M  190   225M  227U  272M  273M
    2(2)      63   226M  228U
    3(3)     145N
    4(4)    (no references identified)
    5(5)      54M  142M
    6(6)     134   189   218M
    7(7)     145   218
    8(8)      28U  136
    9(9)     143M
   10(A)     142   143
   11(B)    (no references identified)
   12(C)     144M  224U
   13(D)      87   144M
   14(E)      30B  139M  191M
   15(F)      29M   29   137M  138M  138   139B  190M  191B
```

```
BIGNAME                           Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary                        Page   20
                                                                                                        HLASM R4.0    2000/09/25 17.48
    No Statements Flagged in this Assembly
HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER, 5696-234, RELEASE 4.0, PTF AVO_0215
SYSTEM: CMS 13                    JOBNAME: (NOJOB)     STEPNAME: (NOSTEP)   PROCSTEP: (NOPROC)
Datasets Allocated for this Assembly
 Con DDname   Dataset Name                                Volume  Member
  P1 SYSIN    ASMASAMP ASSEMBLE A1                       ADISK
  L1 SYSLIB   OSMACRO  MACLIB   S2                       CMS13
  L2          OSMACRO1 MACLIB   S2                       CMS13
  L3          DMSGPI   MACLIB   S2                       CMS13
     SYSLIN   ASMASAMP TEXT     A1                       ADISK
     SYSPRINT ASMASAMP LISTING  A1                       ADISK

  11837K allocated to Buffer Pool,          265K would be required for this to be an In-Storage Assembly
    244 Primary Input Records Read         2217 Library Records Read                 0 Work File Reads
      0 ASMAOPT Records Read                482 Primary Print Records Written        0 Work File Writes
     10 Punch Records Written                 0 ADATA Records Written
Assembly Start Time: 17.48.03 Stop Time: 17.48.04 Processor Time: 00.00.00.1960
Return Code 000
```

Appendix F. MHELP Sample Macro Trace and Dump

The macro trace and dump (MHELP) facility is a useful means of debugging macro definitions. MHELP can be used anywhere in the source program or in macro definitions. MHELP is processed during macro generation. It is completely dynamic; you can branch around the MHELP statements by using AIF or AGO statements. Therefore, you can control its use by symbolic parameters and SET symbols. MHELP options remain in effect until superseded by another MHELP statement.

Figure 97 on page 302 shows a sample program that uses five functions of MHELP. The macro dumps and traces in the listing are highlighted, for example **1A** . Most dumps refer to statement numbers. When you call a library macro, the macro name is used instead of the statement number in the identification-sequence field. To get the statement numbers, you should use the LIBMAC assembler option or the COPY statement to copy the library definition into the source program before the macro call.

MHELP 1, Macro Call Trace: Item **1A** on page 304 shows an outer macro call, **1B** on page 305 an inner one. In each case, the amount of information given is short. This trace is given after successful entry into the macro; no dump is given if error conditions prevent an entry.

MHELP 2, Macro Branch Trace: This trace provides a one-line trace for each AGO and true AIF branch within a programmer macro. In any such branch, the "branched from" statement number, the "branched to" statement number, and the macro name are included, see example **2A** on page 305. The branch trace facility is suspended when library macros are expanded and MHELP 2 is in effect. To obtain a macro branch trace for such a macro, use the LIBMAC assembler option or insert a COPY "macro-name" statement in the source file at some point before the MHELP 2 statement of interest.

MHELP 4, Macro AIF Dump: Items **4A** (page 305), **4B** , **4C** , **4D** , and **4E** (page 306) are examples of these dumps. Each dump includes a complete set of unsubscripted SET symbols with values. This list covers all unsubscripted variable symbols that appear in the same field of a SET statement in the macro definition. Values of elements of dimensioned SET symbols are not displayed.

MHELP 8, Macro Exit Dump: Items **8A** and **8B** (page 308) are examples of these dumps. This option provides a dump of the same group of SET symbols as are included in the macro AIF dump when an MEXIT or MEND is encountered.

Local and global variable symbols are not displayed at any point unless they appear in the current macro explicitly as SET symbols.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

MHELP 16, Macro Entry Dump: This option provides a dump of the values of system variable symbols and symbolic parameters at the time the macro is called.

If there are *k* keyword parameters, they are listed as `KPARM0001` through `KPARM000`*k* in order of appearance on the prototype statement.

If there are *p* positional parameters, they are listed as `PPARM0001` through `PPARM000`*p* in order of appearance in the macro instruction.

Item **16A** on page 304 has one keyword parameter (&OFFSET) and one positional parameter. In both the prototype (statement 4) and the macro instruction (statement 55), the positional parameter appears in the first operand field, the keyword in the second. A length appears between the NAME and VALUE fields. A length of NUL indicates the corresponding item is empty.

Item **16B** on page 305 shows an inner call containing zero keywords and two positional parameters.

MHELP 64, Macro Hex Dump: This option, when used in conjunction with the Macro AIF dump, the Macro Exit dump, or the Macro Entry dump, dumps the parameter and SETC symbol values in EBCDIC and hexadecimal formats.

The hexadecimal dump precedes the EBCDIC dump, and dumps the full value of the symbol. System parameters are not dumped in hexadecimal.

MHELP 128, MHELP Suppression: This option suppresses all the MHELP options that are active at the time.

MHELP Control on &SYSNDX: The maximum value of the &SYSNDX system variable can be controlled by the MHELP instruction. The limit is set by specifying a number in the operand of the MHELP instruction, that is not one of the MHELP codes defined above, and is in the following number ranges:

- 256 to 65535
- Most numbers in the range 65792 to 9999999. Details for this number range are described in the *Language Reference*.

When the &SYSNDX limit is reached, message `ASMA013S ACTR counter exceeded` is issued, and the assembler, in effect, ignores all further macro calls. Refer to the *Language Reference* for further information.

```
                                                                                                  PAGE    3
  Active Usings: None
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

000000                00000 00000     1          csect                                                      00246000
                                      2 *        copy  lnsrch                                               00247000
                                      3          macro                                                      00248000
                                      4 &name    lnsrch &arg,&offset=stnumb-stchain                         00249000
                                      5          lclc  &label                                              00250000
                                      6 &label   setc  'A&sysndx'          Generate symbol                  00251000
                                      7          aif   (t'&name eq 'O').skip                              00252000
                                      8 &label   setc  '&name'             If MACRO call has label, use it  00253000
                                      9 .skip    anop                      instead of generated symbol      00254000
                                     10 &label   la    0,&offset          Load reg. 0                      00255000
                                     11          schi  &arg,0(1)          Search                           00256000
                                     12          bc    1,&label           If max reached, continue         00257000
                                     13          mend                                                       00258000
```

Figure 97 (Part 1 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

```
                                                                                                  Page    4
Active Usings: None
Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

                                    15 *        copy  schi                                                    00260000
                                    16          macro                                                        00261000
                                    17 &nm      schi  &comp,&list                                            00262000
                                    18          lcla  &cnt                                                   00263000
                                    19          lclc  &cmpadr                                                00264000
                                    20 &cnt     seta  1                                                      00265000
                                    21 &nm      stm   1,15,4(13)                                             00266000
                                    22 .test    anop                                                         00267000
                                    23 &cmpadr  setc  '&cmpadr'.'&comp'(&cnt,1)                              00268000
                                    24          aif   ('&comp'(&cnt,1) eq '(').lpar                          00269000
                                    25 &cnt     seta  &cnt+1                                                 00270000
                                    26          aif   (&cnt lt k'&comp).test                                 00271000
                                    27 .nolnth  anop                                                         00272000
                                    28          la    3,&comp             Comparand                          00273000
                                    29          ago   .contin                                               00274000
                                    30 .lpar    aif   ('&comp'(&cnt+1,1) eq ',').finish                      00275000
                                    31 &cnt     seta  &cnt+1                                                 00276000
                                    32          aif   (&cnt lt k'&comp).lpar                                 00277000
                                    33          ago   .nolnth                                               00278000
                                    34 .finish  anop                                                         00279000
                                    35 &cmpadr  setc  '&cmpadr'.'&comp'(&cnt+2,k'&comp-&cnt)                 00280000
                                    36          la    3,&cmpadr           Comparand sans length              00281000
                                    37 .contin  anop                                                         00282000
                                    38          la    1,&list             List header                        00283000
                                    39          mvc   &comp,0(0)          Dummy move to get comp length      00284000
                                    40          org   *-6                 Change MVC to MVI                  00285000
                                    41          dc    x'92'               MVI Opcode                         00286000
                                    42          org   *+1                 Preserve length as immed opnd      00287000
                                    43          dc    x'd000'             Result is MVI 0(13),L              00288000
                                    44          l     15,=v(schi)                                            00289000
                                    45          balr  14,15                                                  00290000
                                    46          lm   1,15,4(13)                                              00291000
                                    47          mexit                                                        00292000
                                    48          mend                                                         00293000
```

Figure 97 (Part 2 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

```
  Active Usings: None
                                                                                                        Page    5

  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                  HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

000000                00000 00048    50 test     csect                                                          00295000
000000 05C0                          51          balr  12,0                                                     00296000
                 R    00002          52          using *,12                                                     00297000

                                     54          mhelp b'11111'                                                 00299000
                                     55          lnsrch listline,offset=listline-listnext                       00300000

               1A          ++//MHELP CALL TO MACRO LNSRCH      DEPTH=001   SYSNDX=0000001   STMT=00055

               16A         //MHELP ENTRY TO  LNSRCH   MODEL STMT=00000 DEPTH=001 SYSNDX=0000001 KWCNT=001
                                   ////SYSTEM PARAMETERS:
                                   //SYSVAR NAME    LNTH  VALUE (56 CHARS/LINE)
                                   //SYSNDX          004  0001
                                   //SYSECT          004  test
                                   //SYSLOC          004  test
                                   //SYSTIME         005  17.48
                                   //SYSDATE         008  09/25/00
                                   //SYSASM          020  HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER
                                   //SYSVER          005  1.4.0
                                   //SYSDATC         008  20000925
                                   //SYSJOB          007  (NOJOB)
                                   //SYSSTEP         008  (NOSTEP)
                                   //SYSSTYP         005  CSECT
                                   //SYSSTMT         008  00000056
                                   //SYSCLOCK        026  2000-09-25 17:48:42.914829
                                   //SYSNEST         001  1
                                   //SYSSEQF         008  00300000
                                   //SYSOPT_DBCS     001  0
                                   //SYSOPT_OPTABLE  003  UNI
                                   //SYSOPT_RENT     001  0
                                   //SYSOPT_XOBJECT  001  0
                                   //SYSTEM_ID       006  CMS 13
                                   //SYSIN_DSN       020  ASMASAMP ASSEMBLE A1
                                   //SYSIN_MEMBER    NUL
                                   //SYSIN_VOLUME    005  ADISK
                                   //SYSLIB_DSN      020  ASMASAMP ASSEMBLE A1
                                   //SYSLIB_MEMBER   NUL
                                   //SYSLIB_VOLUME   005  ADISK
                                   //SYSPRINT_DSN    020  ASMASAMP LISTING  A1
                                   //SYSPRINT_MEMBER NUL
                                   //SYSPRINT_VOLUME 005  ADISK
                                   //SYSTERM_DSN     NUL
                                   //SYSTERM_MEMBER  NUL
                                   //SYSTERM_VOLUME  NUL
                                   //SYSPUNCH_DSN    NUL
                                   //SYSPUNCH_MEMBER NUL
                                   //SYSPUNCH_VOLUME NUL
                                   //SYSLIN_DSN      020  ASMASAMP TEXT     A1
                                   //SYSLIN_MEMBER   NUL
                                   //SYSLIN_VOLUME   005  ADISK
                                   //SYSADATA_DSN    NUL
                                   //SYSADATA_MEMBER NUL
```

Figure 97 (Part 3 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

```
                                                ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00007 TO STMT 00009 IN MACRO LNSRCH
  Active Usings: test+X'2'(X'1000'),R12
                                                                                                                Page    6

  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

                                     //SYSADATA_VOLUME NUL
                                     //SYSPARM         NUL
                                     //SYSM_SEV        003  000
                                     //SYSM_HSEV       003  000
                                     ////NAME; KEYWORD PARAMETERS; POSITIONAL PARAMETERS:
                                     //PARAMETER      LNTH  VALUE (54 CHARS/LINE)
                                     //NAME            NUL
                                     //KPARM0001       017  listline-listnext
                                     //PPARM0001       008  listline

               4A          //MHELP AIF IN    LNSRCH   MODEL STMT=00007 DEPTH=001 SYSNDX=0000001 KWCNT=001
                                     ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                     //0001 LCLC       LABEL                                          LNTH= 005
                                     //     VAL=A0001

               2A          ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00007 TO STMT 00009 IN MACRO LNSRCH

000002 4100 0002            00002    56+A0001    la    0,listline-listnext Load reg. 0                          01-00010

               1B          ++//MHELP CALL TO MACRO SCHI        DEPTH=002   SYSNDX=0000002   STMT=00011

               16B         //MHELP ENTRY TO  SCHI     MODEL STMT=00000 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                     ////SYSTEM PARAMETERS:
                                     //SYSVAR NAME    LNTH  VALUE (56 CHARS/LINE)
                                     //SYSNDX          004  0002
                                     //SYSECT          004  test
                                     //SYSLOC          004  test
                                     //SYSTIME         005  06.48
                                     //SYSDATE         008  02/02/00
                                     //SYSASM          020  HIGH LEVEL ASSEMBLER
                                     //SYSVER          005  1.4.0
                                     //SYSDATC         008  20000202
                                     //SYSJOB          007  (NOJOB)
                                     //SYSSTEP         008  (NOSTEP)
                                     //SYSSTYP         005  CSECT
                                     //SYSSTMT         008  00000058
                                     //SYSCLOCK        026  2000-02-02 06:48:42.915979
                                     //SYSNEST         001  2
                                     //SYSSEQF         008  00300000
                                     //SYSOPT_DBCS     001  0
                                     //SYSOPT_OPTABLE  003  UNI
                                     //SYSOPT_RENT     001  0
                                     //SYSOPT_XOBJECT  001  0
                                     //SYSTEM_ID       006  CMS 13
                                     //SYSIN_DSN       020  ASMASAMP ASSEMBLE A1
                                     //SYSIN_MEMBER    NUL
                                     //SYSIN_VOLUME    005  ADISK
                                     //SYSLIB_DSN      020  ASMASAMP ASSEMBLE A1
                                     //SYSLIB_MEMBER   NUL
                                     //SYSLIB_VOLUME   005  ADISK
                                     //SYSPRINT_DSN    020  ASMASAMP LISTING  A1
                                     //SYSPRINT_MEMBER NUL
```

Figure 97 (Part 4 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

```
  Active Usings: test+X'2'(X'1000'),R12
                                                                                                    Page    7

  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

                                    //SYSPRINT_VOLUME 005  ADISK
                                    //SYSTERM_DSN     NUL
                                    //SYSTERM_MEMBER  NUL
                                    //SYSTERM_VOLUME  NUL
                                    //SYSPUNCH_DSN    NUL
                                    //SYSPUNCH_MEMBER NUL
                                    //SYSPUNCH_VOLUME NUL
                                    //SYSLIN_DSN      020  ASMASAMP TEXT     A1
                                    //SYSLIN_MEMBER   NUL
                                    //SYSLIN_VOLUME   005  ADISK
                                    //SYSADATA_DSN    NUL
                                    //SYSADATA_MEMBER NUL
                                    //SYSADATA_VOLUME NUL
                                    //SYSPARM         NUL
                                    //SYSM_SEV        003  000
                                    //SYSM_HSEV       003  000
                                    ////NAME; KEYWORD PARAMETERS; POSITIONAL PARAMETERS:
                                    //PARAMETER      LNTH  VALUE (54 CHARS/LINE)
                                    //NAME            NUL
                                    //PPARM0001       008  listline
                                    //PPARM0002       004  0(1)

  000006 901F D004            00004    58+         stm   1,15,4(13)                                          02-00021

                4B          //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00024 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                       VAL=  0000000001
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                    LNTH= 001
                                    //     VAL=1

                4C          //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00026 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                       VAL=  0000000002
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                    LNTH= 001
                                    //     VAL=1

                                    ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00026 TO STMT 00022 IN MACRO SCHI

                4D          //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00024 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                       VAL=  0000000002
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                    LNTH= 002
                                    //     VAL=1i

                4E          //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00026 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                       VAL=  0000000003
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                    LNTH= 002
                                    //     VAL=1i
```

Figure 97 (Part 5 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

```
                                                                                                      Page    8
Active Usings: test+X'2'(X'1000'),R12
Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

                                    ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00026 TO STMT 00022 IN MACRO SCHI


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00024 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000003
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 003
                                    //     VAL=lis


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00026 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000004
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 003
                                    //     VAL=lis


                                    ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00026 TO STMT 00022 IN MACRO SCHI


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00024 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000004
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 004
                                    //     VAL=list


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00026 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000005
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 004
                                    //     VAL=list


                                    ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00026 TO STMT 00022 IN MACRO SCHI


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00024 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000005
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 005
                                    //     VAL=listl


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00026 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000006
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 005
                                    //     VAL=listl


                                    ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00026 TO STMT 00022 IN MACRO SCHI


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00024 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
```

Figure 97 (Part 6 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

```
                                                                                                      Page    9
  Active Usings: test+X'2'(X'1000'),R12
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000006
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 006
                                    //     VAL=listli


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00026 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000007
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 006
                                    //     VAL=listli


                                    ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00026 TO STMT 00022 IN MACRO SCHI


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00024 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000007
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 007
                                    //     VAL=listlin


                                    //MHELP AIF IN    SCHI     MODEL STMT=00026 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000008
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 007
                                    //     VAL=listlin

  00000A 4130 C024            00026    59+         la    3,listline          Comparand                        02-00028

                                       ++//MHELP  BRANCH FROM STMT 00029 TO STMT 00037 IN MACRO SCHI

  00000E 4111 0000            00000    60+         la    1,0(1)              List header                      02-00038
  000012 D202 C024 0000 00026 00000    61+         mvc   listline,0(0)       Dummy move to get comp length    02-00039
  000018                 00018 00012    62+         org   *-6                Change MVC to MVI                02-00040
  000012 92                            63+         dc    x'92'               MVI Opcode                       02-00041
  000013                 00013 00014    64+         org   *+1                Preserve length as immed opnd    02-00042
  000014 D000                          65+         dc    x'd000'             Result is MVI 0(13),L            02-00043
  000016 58F0 C02E            00030    66+         l     15,=v(schi)                                          02-00044
  00001A 05EF                          67+         balr  14,15                                                02-00045
  00001C 981F D004            00004    68+         lm   1,15,4(13)                                            02-00046


               8A          //MHELP EXIT FROM SCHI     MODEL STMT=00047 DEPTH=002 SYSNDX=0000002 KWCNT=000
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLA       CNT                                          VAL=  0000000008
                                    //0002 LCLC       CMPADR                                       LNTH= 007
                                    //     VAL=listlin

  000020 4710 C000            00002    69+         bc    1,A0001             If max reached, continue         01-00012

               8B          //MHELP EXIT FROM LNSRCH   MODEL STMT=00013 DEPTH=001 SYSNDX=0000001 KWCNT=001
                                    ////SET SYMBOLS (SKIPPED NUMBERS MAY BE SEQUENCE SYMBOLS).//
                                    //0001 LCLC       LABEL                                        LNTH= 005
                                    //     VAL=A0001
```

Figure 97 (Part 7 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

```
                                                                                                      Page   10
  Active Usings: test+X'2'(X'1000'),R12
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

  000024                             70 listnext ds    h                                                    00301000
  000026                             71 listline ds    fl3'0'                                               00302000
  000030                             72          ltorg                                                    00303000
  000030 00000000                    73                =v(schi)
```

Figure 97 (Part 8 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

```
         New Floating-point Constants included for Verification                                       Page   11
  Active Usings: test+X'2'(X'1000'),R12
  Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0   2000/09/25 17.48

                                    75 ********************************************************************** 00305000
                                    76 *  New FP definitions included to verify correct release of HLASM    *  00306000
                                    77 ********************************************************************** 00307000
  000034 00000000
  000038 4093480000000000           78 BFP1     DC    DB'1234'                                             00308000
  000040 434D200000000000           79 HFP1     DC    DH'1234'                                             00309000
  000000                            80          end   test                                                 00310000
```

Figure 97 (Part 9 of 9). Sample Program Using MHELP

Appendix G. High Level Assembler Messages

High Level Assembler produces the following types of messages:

- Assembly error-diagnostic messages.
- Assembly abnormal-termination messages.
- ASMAHL command-error messages (CMS).

The following section describes the format and placement of messages issued by the assembler. "Assembly Error Diagnostic Messages" on page 312, "Abnormal Assembly Termination Messages" on page 352, and "ASMAHL Command Error Messages (CMS)" on page 357, list and describe each message.

Message Code Format

Assembly error diagnostic messages, and assembly abnormal termination messages, have the following message code format:

ASMA*nnns*

nnn a three-character message number

s severity indicator

The severity indicators, and the corresponding severity codes are:

I—Informational
(Severity code = 0)

This error does not affect the running of the program; rather, it is a coding inefficiency or other such condition that can be changed. The assembler has not detected any conditions affecting the correctness of the program.

N—Notice
(Severity code = 2)

This type of message brings your attention to a condition that you might wish to correct. The assembler has not detected any conditions affecting the correctness of the program; however, the output from the assembly might not be what you expect.

W—Warning
(Severity code = 4)

Although the statement in which the condition occurs is syntactically correct, it has the potential for causing an error when the program is run.

E—Error
(Severity code = 8)

The condition is definitely an error. However, the assembler has tried to correct the error, or has ignored the statement in error. The program probably will not run successfully.

S—Severe
(Severity code = 12)

The condition is a serious error. The assembler has either ignored the statement in error, or the machine instruction has been assembled to

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

zero. It is not likely that the program will assemble as expected or that it will run.

C—Critical
(Severity code = 16)

The condition is a critical error. It is not likely that the program will run successfully.

U—Unrecoverable
(Severity code = 20)

The error condition is of such magnitude that the assembler could not continue.

ASMAHL command error messages have the following message code format:

```
ASMACMSnnnE
```

where:

nnn Is a three-character message number

E Simply indicates an error. In some cases the assembly will proceed after the message has been issued.

LANGUAGE Assembler Option: Unless otherwise indicated, the text of ASMAHL command error messages is produced in the language specified on the LANGUAGE operand in the installation default options.

Message Descriptions

Each message entry for assembly error diagnostic messages and assembly abnormal termination messages has the following five sections:

- Message Number and Text
- Explanation of Message
- System Action
- Programmer Response
- Severity Code

Each message entry for ASMAHL command error messages has up to five of the following sections:

- Message Number and Text
- Explanation of Message
- Supplemental Information
- System Action
- Programmer Response

Message Number and Text

Only the message number and the major fixed portion of the message text are included in the message description. Any abbreviations in actual message text are described under the message explanation section. Unused message numbers account for the gaps in the message number sequence. No messages are defined for numbers which are not included in this section (for example, ASMA222).

Explanation of Message

For some messages there is more than one explanation, as different sections of the assembler can generate the same message. Several assembler termination messages have identical explanations.

Supplemental Information

For ASMAHL command error messages, the supplemental information describes the possible contents of the variables in the message text.

System Action

This section describes how the assembler handles statements with errors. Some actions include:

- A machine instruction assembles as all zeros.
- An assembler instruction is usually ignored; it is printed but has no effect on the assembly. Many assembler instructions, however, are partially processed or processed with a default value. For some instructions, the operands preceding the operand in error, or every operand except the operand in error, is processed. For example, if one of several operands on a DROP statement is a symbol that cannot be evaluated to a register number, only that operand is ignored. All the correctly-specified registers are processed correctly.
- For some assembler statements, especially macro prototype and conditional assembly statements, the operand or term in error is given a default value. Thus the statement assembles completely, but will probably cause incorrect results if the program is run.

For ASMAHL command error messages, this section describes the command return code and the status of the system after the error.

Programmer Response

Many errors have specific or probable causes. In such a case, the Programmer Response section gives specific steps for fixing the error. Most messages, however, have too many possible causes to list (from keying errors to wrong use of the statement). The Programmer Response section for these error messages does not give specific directions. The cause of most such errors can be determined from the message text and the explanation.

Severity Code

The level of severity code indicates how critical the error might be. The severity codes and their meanings are described in “Message Code Format” on page 309.

ASMAHL command error messages do not have a severity code, although each message issued by the ASMAHL command that causes the assembly to terminate produces a return code higher than 20.

The severity code is used to determine the return code issued by the assembler when it returns control to the operating system. The IBM-supplied cataloged procedures (for MVS) include a COND parameter on the linkage edit and run steps. The COND parameter prevents the running of these steps if the return code from the assembler is greater than 8. Thus errors with a severity code of S prevent the assembled program from linkage editing or running. Errors with a severity code of E, or lower, in the message do not prevent the assembled program from linkage editing or running.

Assembly Error Diagnostic Messages

High Level Assembler prints most error messages in the listing immediately following the statements in error. It also prints the total number of flagged statements and their statement numbers in the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary section of the assembler listing.

The messages do not follow the statement in error when:

- Errors are detected during editing of macro definitions read from a library. A message for such an error appears after the first call in the source program to that macro definition. You can, however, bring the macro definition into the source program with a COPY statement. The editing error messages will then be attached to the statements in error.
- Errors are detected by the lookahead function of the assembler. (For attribute references, lookahead processing scans statements after the one being assembled.). Messages for these errors appear after the statements in which they occur. The messages might also appear at the point at which lookahead was called.
- Errors are detected on conditional assembly statements during macro generation or MHELP testing. Such a message follows the most recently generated statement or MHELP output statement.

A typical error diagnostic message is:

```
** ASMA057E Undefined operation code - xxxxx
```

A copy of a segment of the statement in error, represented above by *xxxxx*, is inserted into many messages. Normally this segment begins at the bad character or term. For some errors, however, the segment might begin after the bad character or term. The segment might include part of the remarks field.

If a diagnostic message follows a statement generated by a macro definition, the following items might be appended to the error message:

- The number of the model statement in which the error occurred, or the first five characters of the macro name.
- The SET symbol, system variable, macro parameter, or value string associated with the error.

Messages may reference three types of macro parameter: the *name field* parameter, *keyword* parameters, and *positional* parameters. A reference to the name field parameter is indicated by the word “NAME” appended to the message. References to keyword and positional parameters (for which there may be multiple occurrences) are in the form “KPARM*nnnn*” and “PPARM*nnnn*” respectively, where *nnnn* is the relative number of the parameter within the macro definition.

Figure 98 on page 313 shows an example of a macro with messages referencing each type of variable or parameter.

```
Active Usings: None
Loc  Object Code    Addr1 Addr2  Stmt   Source Statement                                HLASM R4.0  2000/09/25 17.48
                                   1     MACRO                                                              00001000
                                  [3]          [4]                    [4]                    [5]
                                   2 &z  parms &kw1=a,&kw2=b,&kw3=c,&kw4=d,&kw5=e,&kw6=f,&pp1,&pp2          00002000
                                   3 &c  SETC   'just a string' <-> [1]                                      00003000
                                   4 &ss SETA   &c                                                           00004000
                                   5 &sv SETA   &sysasm  [2]                                                 00005000
                                   6 &z1 SETA   &z   [3]                                                     00006000
                                   7 &k1 SETA   &kw1 <-> [4]                                                 00007000
                                   8 &k5 SETA   &kw5 <-                                                      00008000
                                   9 &n  SETA   n'&syslist                                                   00009000
                                  10 &pn     SETA   &syslist(&n)<-> [5]                                      00010000
                                  11 &p2     SETA   &pp2          <-                  [5]                    00011000
                                  12     MEND                                                               00012000
000000             00000 00000    13 default CSECT                                                          00013000
                                  14 n   parms pp1,pp2,kw5=z,pp3,kw1=y,pp4,pp5,pp6                          00014000
ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00004/C  [1]
ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00005/SYSASM  [2]
ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00006/NAME  [3]
ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00007/KPARM00001 <-> [4]
ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00008/KPARM00005 <-
ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00010/PPARM00006 <-> [5]
ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - 00011/PPARM00002 <-
                                  15     END                                                                00015000
```

Figure 98. Sample Macro Parameter Messages

Notes to Figure 98:

1 SET symbol, and related message

2 System variable symbol, and related message

3 The name field parameter, and related message

4 Keyword parameters, and related messages

5 Positional parameters, and related messages

If a diagnostic message follows a conditional assembly statement in the source program, the following items are appended to the error message:

- The word “OPENC”, meaning “open code”.
- The SET symbol, or value string, associated with the error.

Several messages might be issued for a single statement or even for a single error within a statement. This happens because each statement is usually evaluated on more than one level (for example, term level, expression level, and operand level) or by more than one phase of the assembler. Each level or phase can diagnose errors; therefore, most or all of the errors in the statement are flagged. Occasionally, duplicate error messages might occur. This is a normal result of the error-detection process.

Message Not Known

The following message might appear in a listing:

```
** ASMA000S Message not known - nnn
```

The statement preceding this message contains an error but the assembler routine that detected the error issued the number (*nnn*) of a nonexistent error message to the assembler's message generation routine. If you can correct the error, this statement will assemble correctly. However, this message indicates an error in the error detection process of the assembler. Save the output and the source deck from this assembly and report the problem to your IBM service representative.

Messages

ASMA001E Operation code not allowed to be generated - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An attempt was made to produce a restricted operation code by variable symbol substitution. Restricted operation codes are:

```
ACTR      AGO       AGOB      AIF
AIFB      ANOP      AREAD     COPY
GBLA      GBLB      GBLC      ICTL
ISEQ      LCLA      LCLB      LCLC
MACRO     MEND      MEXIT     REPRO
SETA      SETAF     SETB      SETC
SETCF
```

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: If you want a variable operation code, use AIF to branch to the correct unrestricted statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA002S Generated statement too long; statement truncated - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The statement generated by a macro definition is more than 1728 characters long.

System Action: The statement is truncated; the leading 1728 characters are retained.

Programmer Response: Shorten the statement.

Severity: 12

ASMA003E Undeclared variable symbol; default=0, null, or type=U - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A variable symbol in the operand field of the statement has not been declared (defined) in the name field of a SET statement, in the operand field of an LCL or GBL statement, or in a macro prototype statement.

System Action: The variable symbol is given a default value as follows:

```
SETA = 0
SETB = 0
SETC = null (empty) string
```

The type attribute (T') of the variable is given a default value of U (undefined).

Programmer Response: Declare the variable *before* you use it as an operand.

Severity: 8

ASMA004E Duplicate SET symbol declaration; first is retained - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A SET symbol has been declared (defined) more than once. A SET symbol is declared when it is used in the name field of a SET statement, in the operand field of an LCL or GBL statement, or in a macro prototype statement.

System Action: The value of the first declaration of the SET symbol is used.

Programmer Response: Eliminate the incorrect declarations.

Severity: 8

ASMA005S No storage for macro call; continue with open code

Explanation: An inner macro call could not be processed because no main storage was available.

System Action: The assembly continues with the next open code statement.

Programmer Response: Check whether the macro is recursive, and, if so, whether termination is provided for; correct the macro if necessary. If the macro is correct, allocate more main storage.

Severity: 12

ASMA006I Lookahead invoked

Explanation: This indicates that an instruction has caused the assembler to go into lookahead mode to resolve a symbol reference. For example:

- an attribute reference (other than D' and O') to a symbol that is not yet defined, or
- a forward AGO or AIF in open code.

System Action: The assembly continues.

Programmer Response: None.

Severity: 0

ASMA007S Previously defined sequence symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The sequence symbol in the name field has been used in the name field of a previous statement.

System Action: The first definition of the sequence symbol is used; this definition is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove or change one of the sequence symbols.

Severity: 12

ASMA008S Previously defined symbolic parameter - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The *xxxxxxxx* symbol has been used to define two different symbolic parameters.

System Action: When the parameter name (the variable symbol) is used inside the macro definition, it refers to the *first* definition of the parameter in the prototype. However, if the second parameter defined by the variable symbol is a positional parameter, the count of positional operands still increases by one. The second parameter can then be referred to only through use of &SYSLIST.

Programmer Response: Change one of the parameter names to another variable symbol.

Severity: 12

ASMA009S System variable symbol illegally re-defined

Explanation: A system variable symbol has been used in the name field of a macro prototype statement. The system variable symbols are:

&SYSADATA_DSN	&SYSNDX
&SYSADATA_MEMBER	&SYSNEST
&SYSADATA_VOLUME	&SYSOPT_DBCS
&SYSASM	&SYSOPT_OPTABLE
&SYSCLOCK	&SYSOPT_RENT
&SYSDATC	&SYSOPT_XOBJECT
&SYSDATE	&SYSPARM
&SYSECT	&SYSPRINT_DSN
&SYSIN_DSN	&SYSPRINT_MEMBER
&SYSIN_MEMBER	&SYSPRINT_VOLUME
&SYSIN_VOLUME	&SYSPUNCH_DSN
&SYSJOB	&SYSPUNCH_MEMBER
&SYSLIB_DSN	&SYSPUNCH_VOLUME
&SYSLIB_MEMBER	&SYSSEQF
&SYSLIB_VOLUME	&SYSSTEP
&SYSLIN_DSN	&SYSSTMT
&SYSLIN_MEMBER	&SYSSTYP
&SYSLIN_VOLUME	&SYSTEM_ID
&SYSLIST	&SYSTERM_DSN
&SYSLOC	&SYSTERM_MEMBER
&SYSM_HSEV	&SYSTERM_VOLUME
&SYSM_SEV	&SYSTIME
&SYSMAC	&SYSVER

System Action: The name parameter is ignored. The name on a corresponding macro instruction is not generated.

Programmer Response: Change the parameter to one that is not a system variable symbol.

Severity: 12

ASMA010E Invalid use of symbol qualifier - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following has occurred:

- A symbol qualifier has been used to qualify a symbol in other than:
  - A machine instruction
  - The nominal value of an S-type address constant
  - The supporting address operand of a dependent USING statement
- A symbol qualifier is used to qualify a symbol that has an absolute value where a symbol that represents a relocatable address is required
- A symbol qualifier is used to qualify a symbol that is not within the range of the corresponding labeled USING statement
- A symbol qualifier is used to qualify an undefined symbol
- A symbol qualifier is used to qualify an incorrect symbol
- A period is used as the last character of a term, but the symbol preceding the period has not been defined in the name field of a labeled USING statement

A symbol qualifier can only be used in machine instructions, the nominal value of S-type address constants, or the second operand (supporting base address) of dependent USING instructions. A symbol qualifier can only be used to qualify symbols that are within the range of the corresponding labeled USING.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An assembler instruction is ignored. If there is a further error in the statement, a message that describes the error is issued.

Programmer Response: Correct the use of the symbol qualifier, or check the statement for the error indicated in the following message.

Severity: 8

ASMA011E Inconsistent global declarations; first is retained - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A global SET variable symbol has been defined in more than one macro definition or in a macro definition and in the source program, and the two definitions are inconsistent in type or dimension.

System Action: The first definition encountered is retained.

Programmer Response: Assign a new SET symbol or make the declaration compatible.

Severity: 8

ASMA012S Undefined sequence symbol - *xxxxxxxx*; **macro aborted**

Explanation: A sequence symbol in the operand field is not defined; that is, it is not used in the name field of a model statement.

System Action: Exit from the macro definition.

Programmer Response: Define the sequence symbol or correct the reference to it.

Severity: 12

ASMA013S ACTR counter exceeded - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The conditional assembly loop counter (set by an ACTR statement) has been decremented to zero. The ACTR counter is decremented by one each time an AIF or AGO branch is processed successfully. The counter is halved for most errors encountered by the macro editor phase of the assembler.

System Action: Any macro expansion stops. If the ACTR statement is in the source program, the assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Check for an AIF/AGO loop or another type of error. (You can use the MHELP facility, described in Chapter 6, “Diagnosing Assembly Errors” on page 143 and Appendix F, “MHELP Sample Macro Trace and Dump” on page 301, to trace macro definition logic.) If there is no error, increase the initial count on the ACTR instruction.

Severity: 12

ASMA014E Irreducible qualified expression

Explanation: The statement cannot be resolved because two or more qualified symbols are used in a complex relocatable expression, or two or more qualified symbols with different symbol qualifiers are paired in an absolute expression.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An assembler instruction is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply an absolute expression, or correct the qualified symbol in error.

Severity: 8

ASMA015W Literal bounds exceeded

Explanation: The expression containing the reference to the literal resolves to an address outside the bounds of the literal. This indicates a potential error.

System Action: The instruction assembles as specified.

Programmer Response: Change the expression to not exceed the bounds.

Severity: 4

ASMA016W Literal used as a branch target

Explanation: The target of a branch instruction is a literal. This indicates a potential error.

System Action: The instruction assembles as specified.

Programmer Response: Specify the branch target correctly.

Severity: 4

ASMA017W Undefined keyword parameter; default to positional, including keyword - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A keyword parameter in a macro call is not defined in the corresponding macro prototype statement.

This message is also generated by a valid positional parameter that contains an equal sign.

System Action: The keyword (including the equals sign and value) is used as a positional parameter.

Programmer Response: Define the keyword in the prototype statement, or enclose the valid positional parameter in parentheses, or single quotation marks, and adjust the macro coding appropriately.

Severity: 4

ASMA018S Duplicate keyword in macro call; last value is used - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A keyword operand occurs more than once in a macro call.

System Action: The latest value assigned to the keyword is used.

Programmer Response: Eliminate one of the keyword operands.

Severity: 12

ASMA019W Length of EQUated symbol *xxxxxxxx* **undefined; default=1**

Explanation: The value of the length attribute extracted for an EQUated symbol with an unspecified length has been set to the default: 1.

System Action: The instruction assembles as specified.

Programmer Response: Ensure that the length attribute of the symbol is defined.

Severity: 4

ASMA020E Illegal GBL or LCL statement - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A global (GBL) or local (LCL) declaration statement does not have an operand.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the statement or add an operand.

Severity: 8

ASMA021E Illegal SET statement - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operand of a SETB statement is not 0, 1, or a SETB expression enclosed in parentheses.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the operand or delete the statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA022I START value rounded up to required boundary

Explanation: The value specified in the operand field of the START instruction has been rounded up to the required boundary.

System Action: The assembly continues.

Programmer Response: To stop the message occurring, specify the required boundary for the value.

Severity: 0

ASMA023E Symbolic parameter too long - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A symbolic parameter in this statement is too long. It must not exceed 63 characters, including the initial ampersand.

System Action: The symbolic parameter and any operand following it in this statement are ignored.

Programmer Response: Make sure all symbolic parameters consist of an ampersand followed by 1 to 62 alphanumeric characters, the first of which is alphabetic.

Severity: 8

ASMA024E Invalid variable symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of these errors has occurred:

- A symbolic parameter or a SET symbol is not an ampersand followed by 1 to 62 alphanumeric characters, the first being alphabetic.
- A created SET symbol definition is not a valid SET symbol expression enclosed in parentheses.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid symbol or expression.

Severity: 8

ASMA025S Invalid macro prototype operand - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The format of the operand field of a macro prototype statement is not correct. For example, two parameters are not separated by a comma, or a parameter contains characters that are not permitted.

System Action: The operand field of the prototype is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid operand field.

Severity: 12

ASMA026S Macro call operand too long; 255 leading characters deleted - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An operand of a macro instruction is more than 255 characters long.

System Action: The leading 255 characters are deleted.

Programmer Response: Limit the operand to 255 characters, or limit it to two or more operands.

Severity: 12

ASMA027S Excessive number of operands

Explanation: One of the following has occurred:

- More than 32000 positional operands, keyword operands, or both have been explicitly defined in a macro prototype statement.
- There are more than 255 operands in a DC, DS, or DXD statement.

System Action: The excess parameters are ignored.

Programmer Response: For a DC, DS, or DXD statement, use more than one statement. For a macro prototype statement, delete the extra operands and use &SYSLIST to access the positional operands, or redesign the macro definition.

Severity: 12

ASMA028E Invalid displacement

Explanation: One of the following has occurred:

- The displacement field of an explicit address is not an absolute value within the range 0 through 4095.
- The displacement field of an S-type address constant is not an absolute value within the range 0 through 4095.

System Action: The statement or constant assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Correct the displacement or supply a correct USING statement containing an absolute first operand before this statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA029E Incorrect register specification - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The value *xxxxxxxx* is invalid for one of the following reasons:

- *xxxxxxxx* is not an absolute value within the range 0 through 15.
- an odd register is used where an even register is required
- a register is not specified where one is required.

System Action: For machine instructions and S-type address constants, the statement or constant assembles as zero. For USING and DROP statements, the incorrect register operand is ignored.

Programmer Response: Specify a valid register.

Severity: 8

ASMA030E Invalid literal usage - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A literal is used in an assembler instruction, another literal, or a field of a machine instruction where it is not permitted.

System Action: An assembler instruction containing a literal is generally ignored and another message, relative to the operation code of the instruction, appears. A machine instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: If applicable, replace the literal with the name of a DC statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA031E Invalid immediate or mask field

Explanation: The value of an immediate or mask operand of a machine instruction requires more bits to represent it than allowed by the instruction, or the value of the immediate operand exceeds 9 on an SRP instruction or 15 on an MC instruction.

Immediate fields used in an arithmetic context are allowed to be signed, those in a logical context are not; for example:

```
AHI  r1,-30000   is valid, but
AHI  r1,50000    is not

TMH  r1,50000    is valid, but
TMH  r1,-30000   is not
```

System Action: The instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Use a valid immediate operand, or specify the immediate information in a DC statement or a literal and change the statement to a non-immediate type.

Severity: 8

ASMA032E Relocatable value found when absolute value required - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following has occurred:

- A relocatable or complex relocatable expression is used where an absolute expression is required.
- A DSECT-based expression is used as an operand for an address constant where an expression that resolves into a storage address is required.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. In a DC, DS, or DXD statement, the operand in error and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply an absolute expression or term, or for an address constant supply a valid storage address expression.

Severity: 8

ASMA033I Storage alignment for *xxxxxxxx* **unfavorable**

Explanation: An address referenced by this statement might not be aligned to the optimal boundary for this instruction; for example, the data referenced by a load instruction (L) might be on a halfword boundary.

System Action: The instruction assembles as written.

Programmer Response: Correct the operand if it is in error. If you are using an instruction that does not require alignment, or you want to suppress alignment checking for some other reason, you can specify the NOALIGN assembler option or ACONTROL FLAG(NOALIGN). If a particular statement is correct, you can suppress this message by writing the statement with an absolute displacement and an explicit base register, as in this example:

```
L   1,SYM-BASE(,2)
```

Severity: 0

ASMA034W Operand *operand* **beyond active USING range by** *xxxx* **bytes**

Explanation: The address of this statement does not fall within the range of an active USING statement.

System Action: The instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Increase the range of the active USING.

Severity: 8

ASMA035S Invalid delimiter - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation:

1. A required delimiter in a DC, DS, or DXD statement is missing or appears where none should be; the error might be any of these:
   - A quotation mark with an address constant.
   - A left parenthesis with a non-address constant.

- A constant field not started with a quotation mark, left parenthesis, blank, or comma.
- An empty constant field in a DC.
- A missing comma or right parenthesis following an address constant.
- A missing subfield right parenthesis in an S-type address constant.
- A missing right parenthesis in a constant modifier expression.

2. A parameter in a macro prototype statement was not followed by a valid delimiter: comma, equal sign, or blank.
3. The DBCS option is on, and SO follows a variable symbol without an intervening period.

System Action: The operand or parameter in error and the following operands or parameters are ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid delimiter.

Severity: 12

ASMA036W Reentrant check failed

Explanation: A machine instruction that might store data into a control section or common area when run has been detected. This message is generated only when reentrant checking is requested by the assembler option RENT or within an RSECT.

System Action: The statement assembles as written.

Programmer Response: If you want reentrant code, correct the instruction. Otherwise, for a control section that has not been defined by an RSECT instruction, you can suppress reentrancy checking by specifying NORENT as an assembler option. You cannot suppress reentrancy for a control section defined by an RSECT instruction.

Severity: 4

ASMA037E Illegal self-defining value - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A decimal, binary (B), hexadecimal (X), or character (C) self-defining term contains characters that are not permitted or is in illegal format.

System Action: In the source program, the operand in error and the following operands are ignored. In a macro definition, the whole statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid self-defining term.

Severity: 8

ASMA038S Operand value falls outside of current section/LOCTR

Explanation: An ORG statement specifies a location outside the control section or the LOCTR in which the ORG is used. ORG cannot force a change to another section or LOCTR.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Change the ORG statement if it is wrong. Otherwise, insert a CSECT, DSECT, COM, or LOCTR statement to set the location counter to the correct section before the ORG statement is processed.

Severity: 12

ASMA039S Location counter error

Explanation: The maximum location counter value has been exceeded. When the OBJECT or DECK assembler option is specified the maximum location counter value is X'FFFFFF'.

When the GOFF assembler option is specified the maximum location counter value is X'7FFFFFFF'.

System Action: The assembly continues, however, the resulting code will probably not run correctly.

Programmer Response: The probable cause is a high ORG statement value or a high START statement value. Correct the value or split up the control section.

Severity: 12

ASMA040S Missing operand

Explanation: The statement requires an operand, and none is present.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An assembler instruction is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply the missing operand.

Severity: 12

ASMA041E Term expected; text is unclassifiable - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of these errors has occurred:

- A term was expected, but the character encountered is not one that starts a term (letter, number, =, +, –, *).
- A letter and a quotation mark did not introduce a valid term; the letter is not L, C, G (DBCS option), X, or B.

System Action: Another message accompanies an assembler statement. A machine instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Check for missing punctuation, a wrong letter on a self-defining term, a bad attribute request, a leading comma, or a dangling comma. Note that the length attribute is the only one accepted here. If a defined, scale, type, or integer attribute is needed, use a SETA statement and substitute the variable symbol where the attribute is needed.

Severity: 8

ASMA042E Length attribute of symbol is unavailable; default=1

Explanation: This statement has a length attribute reference to a symbol, and the length attribute of the symbol is unavailable for one of the following reasons:

- The symbols has not been previously defined.
- The type attribute of a symbol is U.

  A symbol defined by an EQU instruction has a type attribute of U, however, a reference to its length does not produce this message.
- The length cannot be determined due to lookahead processing. If a statement that defines a symbol, and references a length attribute, causes lookahead processing, the symbol might not be assigned a length attribute until after lookahead processing is complete. References to the same length attribute in subsequent conditional assembly statements, before lookahead processing completes, might cause this message to be produced.

System Action: The L' attribute defaults to 1.

Programmer Response: Ensure the symbol is defined. If you suspect the error might be caused because of lookahead processing, restructure your code so that the symbol is defined before it is referenced.

Severity: 8

ASMA043E Previously defined symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The symbol in a name field or in the operand field of an EXTRN or WXTRN statement was defined (used as a name or an EXTRN/WXTRN operand) in a previous statement.

System Action: The name or EXTRN/WXTRN operand of this statement is ignored. The following operands of an EXTRN or WXTRN are processed. The first occurrence of the symbol defines it.

Programmer Response: Correct a possible spelling error, or change the symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA044E Undefined symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A symbol in the operand field has not been defined, that is, used in the name field of another statement, the operand field of an EXTRN or WXTRN, or, in the case of a literal, the operand of a previously processed machine instruction statement.

System Action: A machine instruction or an address constant assembles as zero. In a DC, DS, or DXD statement or in a duplication-factor or length- modifier expression, the operand in error and the following operands are ignored. In an EQU statement, zero is assigned as the value of the undefined symbol. Any other instruction is not processed.

Programmer Response: Define the symbol, or remove the references to it.

Severity: 8

ASMA045W Register or label not previously used - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A register or label specified in a DROP statement has not been previously specified in a USING statement.

System Action: Registers or labels not active at the time are ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the unreferenced registers or label from the DROP statement. You can drop all active base registers and labels at once by specifying DROP with a blank operand.

Severity: 4

ASMA046E Bit 7 of CCW flag byte must be zero

Explanation: Bit 7 of the flag byte of a channel command word specified by a CCW, CCW0, or CCW1 statement is not zero.

System Action: The CCW, CCW0, or CCW1 assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Set bit 7 of the flag byte to zero to suppress this message during the next assembly.

Severity: 8

ASMA047E Severity code too large

Explanation: The severity code (first operand) of an MNOTE statement is not * or an unsigned decimal number from 0 to 255.

System Action: The statement is printed in standard format instead of MNOTE format. The MNOTE is given the severity code of this message.

Programmer Response: Choose a severity code of * or a number less than or equal to 255, or check for a generated severity code.

Severity: 8

ASMA048E ENTRY error - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following errors was detected in the operand of an ENTRY statement:

- Duplicate symbol (previous ENTRY)
- Symbol defined in a DSECT or COM section
- Symbol defined by a DXD statement
- Undefined symbol
- Symbol defined by an absolute or complex relocatable EQU statement

System Action: The external symbol dictionary output is suppressed for the symbol.

Programmer Response: Define the ENTRY operand correctly.

Severity: 8

ASMA049W Illegal range on ISEQ

Explanation: If this message is accompanied by another, this one is advisory. If it appears by itself, it indicates one of the following errors:

- An operand value is less than 1 or greater than 80, or the second operand (rightmost column to be checked) is less than the first operand (extreme left column to be checked).
- More or fewer than two operands are present, or an operand is null (empty).
- An operand expression contains an undefined symbol.
- An operand expression is not absolute.
- The statement is too complex. For example, it might have forward references or cause an arithmetic overflow during evaluation.
- The statement is circularly defined.

System Action: Sequence checking stops.

Programmer Response: Supply valid ISEQ operands. Also, be sure that the records following this statement are in order; they have not been sequence checked.

Severity: 4

ASMA050E Illegal name field; name discarded - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of these errors has occurred:

- The name field of a macro prototype statement contains an incorrect symbolic parameter (variable symbol)
- The name field of a COPY statement in a macro definition contains an entry other than blank or a valid sequence symbol

System Action: The incorrect name field is ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the incorrect name field.

Severity: 8

ASMA051E Illegal statement outside a macro definition

Explanation: A MEND, MEXIT, ASPACE, AEJECT or AREAD statement appears outside a macro definition.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the statement or, if a macro definition is intended, insert a MACRO statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA052S Record out of sequence - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: Input sequence checking, under control of the ISEQ assembler instruction, has determined that this statement is out of sequence. The sequence number of the statement is appended to the message.

System Action: The statement assembles normally. However, the sequence number of the next statement is checked relative to this statement.

Programmer Response: Put the statements in correct sequence. If you want a break in sequence, put in a new ISEQ statement and sequence number. ISEQ always resets the sequence number; the record following the ISEQ is not sequence checked.

Severity: 12

ASMA053W Blank sequence field - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: Input sequence checking, controlled by the ISEQ assembler statement, has detected a statement with a blank sequence field. The sequence number of the last numbered statement is appended to the message.

System Action: The statement assembles normally. The sequence number of the next statement is checked relative to the last statement having a non-blank sequence field.

Programmer Response: Put the correct sequence number in the statement or discontinue sequence checking over the blank statements by means of an ISEQ statement with a blank operand.

Severity: 4

ASMA054E Illegal continuation record

Explanation: A statement has more than 10 records or end-of-input has been encountered when a continuation record was expected.

System Action: The records already read are processed as is. If the statement had more than 10 records, the next record is treated as the beginning of a new statement.

Programmer Response: In the first case, break the statement into two or more statements. In the second case, ensure that a continued statement does not span the end of a library member. Check for lost records or an extraneous continuation character.

Severity: 8

ASMA055S Recursive COPY

Explanation: A nested COPY statement (COPY within another COPY) attempted to copy a library member already being copied by a higher level COPY within the same nest.

System Action: This COPY statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the operand of this

COPY if it is wrong, or rearrange the nest so that the same library member is not copied by COPY statements at two different levels.

Severity: 12

ASMA056W Absolute value found when relocatable value expected - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An absolute expression has been used as the immediate field in a branch-relative instruction. The immediate field in a branch-relative instruction is used as signed number of halfwords relative to the current location counter. The use of an absolute expression for this value may cause unpredictable results.

System Action: The instruction assembles as written.

Programmer Response: Supply a relocatable expression.

Severity: 4

ASMA057E Undefined operation code - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following errors has occurred:

- The operation code of this statement is not a valid machine or assembler instruction or macro name.
- In an OPSYN statement, this operand symbol is undefined or illegal or, if no operand is present, the name field symbol is undefined.
- On VSE the High Level Assembler only reads library macros that have a member type of `A`, or if the // OPTION SUBLIB=DF statement is used, a member type of `D`. Edited (E-Deck) macros, that have a member type of `E` or `F` can only be read by a LIBRARY exit.

System Action: The statement is ignored. Note that OPSYN does not search the macro library for an undefined operand.

Programmer Response: Correct the statement. In the case of an undefined macro instruction, the wrong data set might have been specified for the macro library. In the case of OPSYN, a previous OPSYN or macro definition might have failed to define the operation code.

If the operation code shown is a VSE edited macro (E-Deck), High Level Assembler can only find and read it with a LIBRARY exit. You might want to use the VSE supplied LIBRARY exit described in VSE/ESA Guide to System Functions.

Severity: 8

ASMA058E Invalid target of branch relative instruction - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following has occurred:

- The target expression is not in the same control section as the instruction
- The target expression is an odd value, and therefore cannot be represented as a number of halfwords

System Action: The instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid target value that is on a halfword boundary and within the same control section.

Severity: 8

ASMA059C Illegal ICTL - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An ICTL statement has one of the following errors:

- The operation code was created by variable symbol substitution
- It is not the first statement in the assembly
- The value of one or more operands is incorrect
- An operand is missing
- A character is detected in the operand field that is not permitted

System Action: The ICTL statement is ignored. Assembly continues with standard ICTL values.

Programmer Response: Correct or remove the ICTL. The begin column must be 1-40; the end column must be 41-80 and at least five greater than the begin column; and the continue column must be 2-40.

Severity: 16

ASMA060S COPY code not found - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: (1) If this message is on a COPY statement and no text is printed with it, one of the following occurred:

- The library member was not found.
- The lookahead phase previously processed the COPY statement and did not find the library member, the copy was recursive, or the operand contains a variable symbol. Variable symbols can be used if the COPY statement is in open code.

(2) If this message is not on a COPY statement, but has a library member name printed with it, the lookahead phase of the assembler could not find the library member because the name is undefined or contains a variable symbol.

System Action: The COPY statement is ignored; the library member is not copied.

Programmer Response: Check that the correct macro library was assigned, or check for a possible misspelled library member name.

If COPY member is not defined in any macro library, and is not processed because of an AGO or AIF assembler instruction, add a dummy COPY member with the name to the macro library.

Severity: 12

ASMA061E Symbol not name of DSECT, DXD or external label

Explanation: The operand of a Q-type address constant is not a symbol or the name of a DSECT or DXD statement, or an external label.

System Action: The constant assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid operand.

Severity: 8

ASMA062E Illegal operand format - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following errors has occurred:

- ADATA—more than five operands are specified, or the value of one of the expressions specified in one of the first four operands is outside the range -2^{31} to $+2^{31}-1$, or the fifth operand is not a valid character expression
- ACONTROL—one or more of the operands supplied is invalid
- AINSERT—the first operand is not a valid string, or the second operand is not BACK or FRONT
- AMODE—the operand does not specify 24, 31, or ANY
- AREAD—the operand specifies an incorrect AREAD operand.
- DROP or USING—more than 16 registers are specified in the operand field
- EXITCTL—more than five operands are specified, or the first operand is not a valid exit type, or the value of one of the expressions specified in the second and subsequent operands is outside the range -2^{31} to $+2^{31}-1$
- MNOTE—the syntax of the severity code (first operand) is not correct, or the sum of the length of the operands including quotes and commas exceeds 1024 bytes
- PRINT—an operand specifies an incorrect print option
- PUSH or POP—an operand does not specify a PRINT or USING statement
- RMODE—the operand does not specify 24 or ANY
- TITLE—more than 100 bytes were specified

System Action: The first 16 registers in a DROP or USING statement are processed. The operand in error and the following operands of a PUSH, POP, or PRINT statement are ignored. The AMODE or RMODE instruction is ignored, and the name field (if any) does not appear in the cross-reference listing. The first 100 bytes of the operand of the TITLE instruction are used as the title.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid operand field.

Severity: 8

ASMA063E No ending apostrophe - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The quotation mark terminating an operand is missing, or the standard value of a keyword parameter of a macro prototype statement is missing.

System Action: The operand or standard value in error is ignored. If the error is in a macro definition model statement, the whole statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply the missing quotation mark.

Severity: 8

ASMA064S Floating point characteristic out of range

Explanation: A converted floating-point constant is too large or too small for the processor. The allowable range is approximately 5.4×10^{-79} to 7.2×10^{75}.

System Action: The constant assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Check the characteristic (exponent), exponent modifier, scale modifier, and mantissa (fraction) for validity. Remember that a floating-point constant is rounded, not truncated, after conversion.

Severity: 12

ASMA065E Unknown type - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An unknown constant type has been used in a DC or DS statement or in a literal, or the assembler option required to support the constant type has not been supplied.

System Action: The operand in error and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid constant or the required assembler option. Look for an incorrect type code or incorrect syntax in the duplication factor.

Severity: 8

ASMA066W 2-byte relocatable address constant

Explanation: This statement contains a relocatable Y-type address constant or a 2-byte relocatable A-type address constant. Addressing errors occur if the address constant is used to refer to a storage address equal to or greater than 64K (65,536).

System Action: The statement assembles as written.

Programmer Response: If the address constant is used to refer to a storage address less than 64K (65,536), the 2-byte relocatable address constant is valid. You can use the assembler option RA2 to suppress this message.

Severity: 4

ASMA067S Illegal duplication factor - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following errors has occurred:

- A literal has a zero duplication factor
- The duplication factor of a constant is greater than the maximum of $2^{24}-1$ bytes
- A duplication factor expression of a constant is not correct

System Action: The operand in error and the following operands of a DC, DS, or DXD statement are ignored. The statement containing the literal assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid duplication factor. If you want a zero duplication factor, write the literal as a DC statement.

Severity: 12

ASMA068S Length error - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following errors has occurred:

- The length modifier of a constant is wrong
- The C, X, B, Z, or P-type constant is too long
- An operand is longer than $2^{24}-1$ bytes
- A relocatable address constant has an illegal length
- The length field in a machine instruction is not correct or is out of the permissible range
- The length modifier of a Character Unicode constant must be a multiple of 2

System Action:

- A machine instruction assembles as zero
- A new floating point constant assembles as zero
- An address constant is truncated
- For other DC, DS or DXD statements, the operand in error and the following operands are ignored
- The operand in error, and the operands following, are ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid length or correct the length modifier.

Severity: 12

ASMA069S Length of second operand must be less than length of first

Explanation: The length of the second operand must be less than the length of the first operand. If it is not, a specification exception is recognized.

System Action: The machine instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a second operand with a length which is less than that of the first operand.

Severity: 12

ASMA070E Scale modifier error - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A scale modifier in a constant is used illegally, is out of range, or is relocatable, or there is an error in a scale modifier expression.

System Action: If the scale modifier is out of range, it defaults to zero. Otherwise, the operand in error and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid scale modifier.

Severity: 8

ASMA071E Exponent modifier error

Explanation: The constant contains multiple internal exponents, the exponent modifier is out of range or relocatable, or the sum of the exponent modifier and the internal exponent is out of range.

System Action: If the constant contains multiple internal exponents, the operand in error and the following operands are ignored. Otherwise, the exponent modifier defaults to zero.

Programmer Response: Change the exponent modifier or the internal exponent.

Severity: 8

ASMA072E Data item too large

Explanation: The value of a Y-type address constant or H-type constant is larger than $2^{15}-1$ or smaller than -2^{15}, or the value of a F-type constant is larger than $2^{31}-1$ or smaller than -2^{31}.

System Action: The constant is truncated. The high-order bits are lost.

Programmer Response: Supply a smaller scale modifier, a longer constant, or a smaller value.

Severity: 8

ASMA073E Precision lost

Explanation: The modifiers of a floating-point number either truncate the exponent or shift the fraction out of the converted constant.

System Action: The constant assembles with an exponent but with a fraction of zero.

Programmer Response: Change the modifier or use a longer constant type.

Severity: 8

ASMA074E Illegal syntax in expression - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An expression has two terms or two operations in succession, or incorrect or missing characters or delimiters.

System Action: In a DC, DS, or DXD statement, the operand in error and the following operands are ignored. In a macro definition, the whole statement is ignored. A machine instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Check the expression for typing errors, or for missing or incorrect terms or characters.

Severity: 8

ASMA075E Arithmetic overflow

Explanation: The intermediate or final value of an expression is not within the range -2^{31} through $2^{31}-1$.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero; an assembler instruction is ignored; a conditional assembly expression uses zero as the result.

Programmer Response: Change the expression.

Severity: 8

ASMA076E Statement complexity exceeded

Explanation: The complexity of this statement caused the assembler's expression evaluation work area to overflow.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An assembler instruction is ignored.

Programmer Response: Reduce the number of terms, levels of expressions, or references to complex relocatable EQU names.

Severity: 8

ASMA077E Circular definition

Explanation: The value of a symbol in an expression is dependent on itself, either directly or indirectly, via one or more EQU statements. In the following example:

```
A  EQU  B
B  EQU  C
C  EQU  A
```

A is circularly defined.

System Action: The value of the EQU statement defaults to the current value of the location counter. All other EQU statements involved in the circularity are defaulted in terms of this one.

Programmer Response: Supply a correct definition.

Severity: 8

ASMA078E Operand *op* **expression complexly relocatable -** *expr*

Explanation: The expression specified is complexly relocatable, but an absolute or simply relocatable expression is required.

System Action: The instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Correct the expression.

Severity: 8

ASMA079E Illegal PUSH-POP

Explanation: More POP assembler instructions than PUSH instructions have been encountered.

System Action: This POP instruction is ignored.

Programmer Response: Eliminate a POP statement, or add another PUSH statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA080E Statement is unresolvable

Explanation: A statement cannot be resolved, because it contains a complex relocatable expression or because the location counter has been circularly defined.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Untangle the forward references or check the complex relocatable EQU statements.

Severity: 8

ASMA081E Created SET symbol exceeds 63 characters - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A SET symbol created by variable symbol substitution is longer than 63 characters (including the ampersand as the first character).

System Action: If the symbol is in the operand field of a SET, AIF, or AGO statement, its value is set to zero or null, and the type attribute is set to undefined (U). If the symbol is in the operand field of a GBL, or LCL statement or the name field of a SET statement, processing of the macro stops.

Programmer Response: Shorten the symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA082E Created SET symbol is null - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A SET symbol created by variable symbol substitution is null (empty string).

System Action: If the symbol is in the operand field of a SET, AIF, or AGO statement, its value is set to zero or null, and the type attribute is set to undefined (U). If the symbol is in the operand field of a GBL, or LCL statement or the name field of a SET statement, processing of the macro stops.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA083E Created SET symbol is not a valid symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A SET symbol created by variable symbol substitution or concatenation does not consist of an ampersand followed by up to 62 alphanumeric characters, the first of which is alphabetic.

System Action: If the symbol is in the operand field of a SET, AIF, or AGO statement, its value is set to zero or null, and the type attribute is set to undefined (U). If the symbol is in the operand field of a GBL or LCL statement or the name field of a SET statement, processing of the macro stops.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA084S Generated name field exceeds 63 characters; discarded - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The name field on a generated statement is longer than 63 characters.

System Action: The name field is not generated. The rest of the statement assembles normally.

Programmer Response: Shorten the generated name to 63 characters or fewer.

Severity: 12

ASMA085I Generated operand field is null - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operand field of a generated statement is null (empty).

System Action: The statement assembles as though no operand were specified.

Programmer Response: Provide a non-empty operand field. If you want the statement assembled with no operand, substitute a comma rather than leave the operand blank.

Severity: 0

ASMA086S Missing MEND generated - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A macro definition, appearing in the source program or being read from a library by a macro call or a COPY statement, ends before a MEND statement is encountered to end it.

System Action: A MEND statement is generated. The portion of the macro definition read in is processed.

Programmer Response: Insert the MEND statement if it was omitted. Otherwise, check if all the macro definition is on the library.

Severity: 12

ASMA087S Generated operation code is null - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operation code of a generated statement is null (blank).

System Action: The generated statement is printed but not assembled.

Programmer Response: Provide a valid operation code.

Severity: 12

ASMA088E Unbalanced parentheses in macro call operand - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: Excess left or too few right parentheses occur in an operand (parameter) of a macro call statement.

System Action: The parameter corresponding to the operand in error is given a null (empty) value.

Programmer Response: Balance the parentheses.

Severity: 8

ASMA089E Arithmetic expression contains illegal delimiter or ends prematurely - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An arithmetic expression contains an incorrect character or an arithmetic subscript ends without enough right parentheses.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid expression.

Severity: 8

ASMA090E Excess right parenthesis in macro call operand - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A right parenthesis without a corresponding left parenthesis was detected in an operand of a macro instruction.

System Action: The excess right parenthesis is ignored. The macro expansion might be incorrect.

Programmer Response: Insert the correct parenthesis.

Severity: 8

ASMA091E SETC or character relocatable operand over 255 characters; truncated to 255 characters - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The value of the operand of a SETC statement or the character relational operand of an AIF statement is longer than 255 characters. This might occur before substrings are evaluated.

System Action: The first 255 characters are used.

Programmer Response: Shorten the SETC expression value or the operand value.

Severity: 8

ASMA092E Substring expression 1 points past string end; default=null - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The first arithmetic expression of a SETC substring points beyond the end of the expression character string.

System Action: The substring is given a null value.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid expression.

Severity: 8

ASMA093E Substring expression 1 less than 1; default=null - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The first arithmetic expression of a SETC substring is less than one; that is, it points before the expression character string.

System Action: The substring expression defaults to null.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid expression.

Severity: 8

ASMA094I Substring goes past string end; default=remainder

Explanation: The second expression of a substring notation specifies a length that extends beyond the end of the string.

System Action: The result of the substring operation is a string that ends with the last character in the character string.

Programmer Response: Make sure the arithmetic expression used to specify the length does not specify characters beyond the end of the string. Either change the first or the second expression in the substring notation. You can use the assembler option FLAG(NOSUBSTR) to suppress this message.

Severity: 0

ASMA095W Substring expression 2 less than 0; default=null - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The second arithmetic expression of a SETC substring is less than or equal to zero.

System Action: No characters (a null string) from the substring character expression are used.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid expression.

Severity: 4

ASMA096E Unsubscripted SYSLIST; default=SYSLIST(1) - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The system variable symbol, &SYSLIST, is not subscripted. &SYSLIST(n) refers to the *n*th positional parameter in a macro instruction. N'&SYSLIST does not have to be subscripted.

System Action: The subscript defaults to one so that it refers to the first positional parameter.

Programmer Response: Supply the correct subscript.

Severity: 8

ASMA097E Invalid attribute reference to SETA or SETB symbol; default=U or 0 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A length (L'), scaling (S'), integer (I'), or defined (D') attribute refers to a SETA or SETB symbol.

System Action: The attributes are set to default values: L'=0, S'=0, I'=0 ,and D'=0.

Programmer Response: Change or remove the attribute reference.

Severity: 8

ASMA098E Attribute reference to invalid symbol; default=U or 0 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An attribute attempted to reference a symbol that is not correct or has a null value. (A valid symbol is 1 to 63 alphanumeric characters, the first of which is alphabetic.)

System Action: For a type (T') attribute, defaults to U. For all other attributes, defaults to 0.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA099W Wrong type of constant for S or I attribute reference; default=0 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An integer (I') or scaling (S') attribute references a symbol whose type is other than floating-point (E,D,L), decimal (P,Z), or fixed-point (H,F).

System Action: The integer or scaling attribute defaults to zero.

Programmer Response: Remove the integer or scaling attribute reference or change the constant type.

Severity: 4

ASMA100E Subscript less than 1; default to subscript=1 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The subscript of a subscripted SET symbol in the name field of a SET statement, the operand field of a GBL or LCL statement, or an &SYSLIST statement is less than 1.

System Action: The subscript defaults to 1.

Programmer Response: Supply the correct subscript.

Severity: 8

ASMA101E Subscript less than 1; default to value=0 or null - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The subscript of a SET symbol in the operand field is less than 1.

System Action: The value is set to zero or null.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid subscript.

Severity: 8

ASMA102E Arithmetic term is not self-defining term; default=0 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A SETC term or expression used as an arithmetic term is not a valid self-defining term.

System Action: The value of the SETC term or expression is set to zero.

Programmer Response: Make the SETC a self-defining term, such as C'A', X'1EC', B'1101', or 27. The C, X, or B and the quotation marks must be part of the SETC value.

Severity: 8

ASMA103E Multiplication overflow; default product=1 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A multiplication overflow occurred in a macro definition statement.

System Action: The value of the expression up to the point of overflow is set to one; evaluation continues.

Programmer Response: Change the expression so that overflow does not occur; break it into two or more operations, or regroup the terms by parentheses.

Severity: 8

ASMA104W Statement processing incomplete

Explanation: This indicates that a previously-flagged error has terminated processing for this statement.

System Action: The assembly continues.

Programmer Response: Correct previous errors.

Severity: 4

ASMA105U Arithmetic expression too complex

Explanation: An arithmetic expression in a macro definition statement caused an internal workarea overflow because it is too complex; that is, it has too many terms, levels, or both.

System Action: The assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Simplify the expression or break it into two or more expressions.

Severity: 20

ASMA106E Wrong target symbol type; value left unchanged - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The SET symbol in the name field has already been declared, and is a different type to the type of SETx instruction. For example, you might have previously declared a SET symbol as arithmetic (SETA), and you are attempting to use the SET symbol as the target of a SETC instruction.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Make the declaration agree with the SET statement type. If you want to store across SET symbol types, first store into a SET symbol of matching type, and then use another SETx instruction to store the value, represented by the matching SET symbol, into the non- matching SET symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA107E Inconsistent dimension on target symbol; subscript ignored, or 1 used - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The SET symbol in the name field is dimensioned (subscripted), but was not declared in a GBL or LCL statement as dimensioned, or vice versa.

System Action: The subscript is ignored or a subscript of 1 is used, in accordance with the declaration.

Programmer Response: Make the declaration and the usage compatible. Note that you can declare a local SET symbol as dimensioned by using it, subscripted, in the name field of a SET statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA108E Inconsistent dimension on SET symbol reference; default = 0, null, or type=U - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A SET symbol in the operand field is dimensioned (subscripted), but was not declared in a GBL or LCL statement as dimensioned, or vice versa.

System Action: A value of zero or null is used for the subscript. If the type attribute of the SET symbol is requested, it is set to U.

Programmer Response: Make the declaration and the usage compatible. You can declare a SET symbol as dimensioned by using it, subscripted, in the name field of a SET statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA109E Multiple SET operands for undimensioned SET symbol; gets last operand - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: Multiple operands were assigned to an undimensioned (unsubscripted) SET symbol.

System Action: The SET symbol is given the value of the last operand.

Programmer Response: Declare the SET symbol as dimensioned, or assign only one operand to it.

Severity: 8

ASMA110S Library macro first statement not 'MACRO' or comment

Explanation: A statement other than a comment statement preceded a MACRO statement in a macro definition read from a library.

System Action: The macro definition is not read from the library. A corresponding macro call cannot be processed.

Programmer Response: Ensure that the library macro definition begins with a MACRO statement preceded (optionally) by comment statements only.

Severity: 12

ASMA111S Invalid AIF or SETB operand field - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operand of an AIF or SETB statement either does not begin with a left parenthesis or is missing altogether.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid operand.

Severity: 12

ASMA112S Invalid sequence symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following errors has occurred:

- A sequence symbol does not begin with a period followed by one to 62 alphanumeric characters, the first being alphabetic.
- A sequence symbol in the name field was created by substitution.
- Operand of AGO is blank or sequence symbol in AIF is blank.

System Action: The sequence symbol in the name field is ignored. A sequence symbol in the operand field of an AIF or AGO statement causes the whole statement to be ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid sequence symbol.

Severity: 12

ASMA113S Continue column blank

Explanation: A SET symbol declaration in a GBL or LCL statement began with an ampersand in the end column (normally column 71) of the previous record, but the continue column (normally column 16) of this record is blank.

System Action: This record and any following records of the statement are ignored. Any SET symbols that completely appear on the previous record(s), are processed normally.

Programmer Response: Begin this record in the continuation column.

Severity: 12

ASMA114S Invalid COPY operand - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operand of a COPY statement is not a symbol of 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters, the first being alphabetic.

System Action: The COPY statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid operand. In open code the operand can be specified as a previously defined SET symbol.

Severity: 12

ASMA115S COPY operand too long - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The symbol in the operand field of a COPY statement is more than 8 characters long.

System Action: The COPY statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid operand.

Severity: 12

ASMA116E Illegal SET symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A SET symbol in the operand field of a GBL or LCL statement or in the name field of a SET statement does not consist of an ampersand followed by one to 62 alphanumeric characters, the first being alphabetic.

System Action: For a GBL or LCL statement, the incorrect SET symbol and all following SET symbols in a GBL or LCL statement are ignored. For a SET statement, the whole SET statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a SET symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA117E Illegal subscript - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The subscript following a SET symbol contained unbalanced parentheses or an incorrect arithmetic expression.

System Action: This statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply an equal number of left and right parentheses or a valid arithmetic expression.

Severity: 8

ASMA118S Source macro ended by 'MEND' in COPY code

Explanation: A library member, being copied by a COPY statement within a macro definition, contained a MEND statement.

System Action: The MEND statement is honored and the macro definition stops. No more COPY code is read. The statements brought in before the end of the COPY code are processed.

Programmer Response: Make sure that each library member to be used as COPY code contains balanced MACRO and MEND statements.

Severity: 12

ASMA119S Too few MEND statements in COPY code

Explanation: A macro definition is started in a library member brought in by a COPY statement and the COPY code ends before a MEND statement is encountered.

System Action: A MEND statement is generated to end the macro definition. The statements brought in before the end of the COPY code are processed.

Programmer Response: Check to see if part of the macro definition was lost. Also, ensure that each macro definition to be used as COPY code contains balanced MACRO and MEND statements.

Severity: 12

ASMA120S EOD where continuation record expected

Explanation: An end-of-data occurred when a continuation record was expected.

System Action: The portion of the statement read in is assembled. The assembly stops if the end-of-data is on the PRIMARY INPUT. If a library member is being copied, the assembly continues with the statement after the COPY statement.

Programmer Response: Check to determine whether any statements were omitted from the source program or from the COPY code.

Severity: 12

ASMA121S Insufficient storage for editor work area

Explanation: The macro editor module of the assembler cannot get enough main storage for its work areas.

System Action: The assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Split the assembly into two or more parts or give the macro editor more working storage.

On MVS or CMS, this can be done by increasing the region size for the assembler, decreasing blocking factor or block size on the assembler data sets, or a combination of both.

On VSE, this can be done by decreasing the value you specify on the SIZE parameter of the JCL EXEC statement, or by running the assembly in a larger partition.

Severity: 12

ASMA122S Illegal operation code format

Explanation: The operation code is not followed by a blank or is missing altogether, or the first record of a continued source statement is missing.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Ensure that the statement has a valid operation code and that all records of the statement are present.

Severity: 12

ASMA123S Variable symbol too long - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A SET symbol, symbolic parameter, or sequence symbol contains more than 62 characters following the ampersand or period.

System Action: This statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Shorten the SET symbol or sequence symbol.

Severity: 12

ASMA124S Illegal use of parameter

Explanation: A symbolic parameter was used in the operand field of a GBL or LCL statement or in the name field of a SET statement. In other words, a variable symbol has been used both as a symbolic parameter and as a SET symbol.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Change the variable symbol to one that is not a symbolic parameter.

Severity: 12

ASMA125S Illegal macro name - macro uncallable - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operation code of a macro prototype statement is not a valid symbol; that is, one to 63 alphanumeric characters, the first alphabetic.

System Action: The macro definition is edited. However, since the macro name is not correct, the macro cannot be called.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid macro name.

Severity: 12

ASMA126S Library macro name incorrect - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operation code of the prototype statement of a library macro definition is not the same as the operation code of the macro instruction (call). Library macro definitions are located by their member names. However, the assembler compares the macro instruction with the macro prototype.

System Action: The macro definition is edited using the operation code of the prototype statement as the macro name. Thus, the definition cannot be called by this macro instruction.

Programmer Response: Ensure that the member name of the macro definition is the same as the operation code of the prototype statement. This usually requires listing the macro definition from the library, use of the LIBMAC option to cause the macro definition to be listed, or a COPY of the member name.

Severity: 12

ASMA127S Illegal use of ampersand

Explanation: One of the following errors has occurred:

- An ampersand was found where all substitution should have already been done
- The standard value of a keyword parameter in a macro prototype statement contained a single ampersand or a string with an odd number of ampersands
- An unpaired ampersand occurred in a character (C) constant

System Action: In a macro prototype statement, all information following the error is ignored. In other statements, the action depends on which field the error occurred in. If the error occurred in the name field, the statement is processed without a name. If the error occurred in the operation code field, the statement is ignored. If the error occurred in the operand field, another message is issued to specify the default. However, if the error occurred in a C-type constant, the operand in error and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Ensure that ampersands used in keyword standard values or in C-type constant values occur in pairs. Also, avoid substituting an ampersand into a statement unless there is a double ampersand.

Severity: 12

ASMA128S Excess right parenthesis - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An unpaired right parenthesis has been found.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An assembler instruction is ignored and an additional message relative to the statement type appears. However, if the error is in the standard value of a keyword on a macro prototype statement, only the operands in error and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Make sure that all parentheses are paired.

Severity: 12

ASMA129S Insufficient right parentheses - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An unpaired left parenthesis has been found. Parentheses must balance at each comma in a multiple operand statement.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An assembler instruction is ignored and an additional message relative to the statement type appears. However, if the error is in the standard value of a keyword on a macro prototype statement, only the operands in error and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Make sure that all parentheses are paired.

Severity: 12

ASMA130S Illegal attribute reference - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following errors has occurred:

- The symbol following a I, L, S, or T attribute reference is not a valid variable symbol or ordinary symbol or literal that has been previously used in a machine instruction
- The symbol following a K or N attribute reference is not a valid variable symbol
- The symbol following a D attribute reference is not a valid variable symbol or ordinary symbol
- The quotation mark is missing from a T attribute reference

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid attribute reference.

Severity: 12

ASMA131S Parenthesis nesting depth exceeds 255 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: There are more than 255 levels of parentheses in a SETA expression.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Rewrite the SETA statement using several statements to regroup the subexpressions in the expression.

Severity: 12

ASMA132S Invalid logical expression - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A logical expression in the operand field of a SETB statement or an AIF statement does not consist of valid character relational expressions, arithmetic relational expressions, and single SETB symbols, connected by logical operators.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid logical expression.

Severity: 12

ASMA133S Illegal substring reference - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A substring expression following a SETC expression does not consist of two valid SETA expressions separated by a comma and enclosed in parentheses.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid substring expression. The second value in the substring expression can be *.

Severity: 12

ASMA134S Invalid relational operator - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: Characters other than EQ, NE, LT, GT, LE, or GE are used in a SETB expression where a relational operator is expected.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid relational operator.

Severity: 12

ASMA135S Invalid logical operator - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: Characters other than AND, OR, NOT, or XOR are used in a SETB expression where a logical operator is expected.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid logical operator.

Severity: 12

ASMA136S Illegal logical/relational operator

Explanation: Characters other than a valid logical or relational operator were found where a logical or relational operator was expected.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid logical or relational operator.

Severity: 12

ASMA137S Invalid character expression - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operand of a SETC statement or the character value used in a character relation is erroneous. It must be a valid type attribute (T') reference, a valid operation code attribute (O') or a valid character expression enclosed in quotation marks.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid character expression.

Severity: 12

ASMA138W Non-empty PUSH *xxxxxxx* **stack**

Explanation: The number of PUSH instructions exceeds the number of POP instructions at the end of the assembly. This indicates a potential error.

System Action: The assembly continues.

Programmer Response: Change your program to issue POP instructions for all PUSHes. You can suppress this warning by specifying the NOPUSH suboption of the FLAG option.

Severity: 4

ASMA139S EOD during REPRO processing

Explanation: A REPRO statement was immediately followed by an end-of-data so that no valid record could be punched. The REPRO is either the last record of source input or the last record of a COPY member.

System Action: The REPRO statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the REPRO or ensure that it is followed by a record to be punched.

Severity: 12

ASMA140W END record missing

Explanation: End-of-file on the source input data set occurred before an END statement was read. One of the following has occurred:

- The END statement was omitted or misspelled.
- The END operation code was changed or deleted by OPSYN or by definition of a macro named END. The lookahead phase of the assembler marks what it thinks is the END statement. If an OPSYN statement or a macro definition redefines the END statement, premature end-of-input might occur

because the assembler does not pass the original END statement.

System Action: An END statement is generated. It is assigned a statement number but not printed. If any literals are waiting, they are processed as usual following the END statement.

Programmer Response: Check for lost records. Supply a valid END statement; or, if you use OPSYN to define another symbol as END, place it *before* the possible entry into the lookahead phase.

Severity: 4

ASMA141E Bad character in operation code - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operation code contains a non-alphanumeric character, that is, a character other than A to Z, 0 to 9, $, #, @ or _. Embedded blanks are not allowed.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid operation code. If the operation code is formed by variable symbol substitution, check the statements leading to substitution.

Severity: 8

ASMA142E Operation code not complete on first record

Explanation: The whole name and operation code, including a trailing blank, is not contained on the first record (before the continue column—usually column 72) of a continued statement.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Shorten the name, operation code, or both, or simplify the statement by using a separate SETC statement to create the name or operation code by substitution.

Severity: 8

ASMA143E Bad character in name field - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The name field contains a non-alphanumeric character, that is, a character other than A to Z, 0 to 9, $, #, @ or _.

System Action: If possible, the statement is processed without a name. Otherwise, it is ignored.

Programmer Response: Put a valid symbol in the name field.

Severity: 8

ASMA144E Begin-to-continue columns not blank - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: On a continuation record, one or more columns between the begin column (usually column 1) and the continue column (usually column 16) are not blank.

System Action: The extraneous characters are ignored.

Programmer Response: Check whether the operand started in the wrong column or whether the preceding record contained an erroneous continuation character.

Severity: 8

ASMA145E Operator, right parenthesis, or end-of-expression expected - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following has occurred:

- A letter, number, equal sign, quotation mark, or undefined character occurred following a term where a right parenthesis, an operator, a comma, or a blank ending the expression was expected
- In an assembler instruction, a left parenthesis followed a term

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An assembler instruction is ignored and another message, relative to the operation code, is issued.

Programmer Response: Check for an omitted or misplaced operator. Subscripting is not allowed on this statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA146E Self-defining term too long or value too large - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A self-defining term is longer than 4 bytes, (8 hexadecimal digits, 32 bits, or 4 characters), or the value of a decimal self-defining term is greater than $2^{31}-1$.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An assembler instruction is ignored. However, another message, relative to the operation code, is issued.

Programmer Response: Reduce the size of the self-defining term, or specify it in a DC statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA147E Symbol too long, or first character not a letter - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A symbol does not begin with a letter or an underscore (_) or is longer than 63 characters.

System Action: If the symbol is in the name field, the statement is processed as unnamed. If the symbol is in the operand field, an assembler operation or a macro definition model statement is ignored and a machine operation assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA148E Self-defining term lacks ending quote or has bad character - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A hexadecimal or binary self-defining term contains a character that is not permitted or is missing the final quotation mark, or a pure DBCS self-defining term contains SO and SI with no double-byte data between them.

System Action: A machine operation assembles as zero. An assembler operation is ignored and another message, relative to the operation code, is issued.

Programmer Response: Correct the incorrect term.

Severity: 8

ASMA149E Literal length exceeds 256 characters, including = sign - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A literal is longer than 256 characters.

System Action: The instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Shorten the literal, or change it to a DC statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA150E Symbol has non-alphanumeric character or invalid delimiter - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The first character following a symbol is not a valid delimiter (plus sign, minus sign, asterisk, slash, left or right parenthesis, comma, or blank).

System Action: A machine operation assembles as zero. An assembler operation is ignored, and another message, relative to this operation code, is issued.

Programmer Response: Ensure that the symbol does not contain a non-alphanumeric character and that it is followed by a valid delimiter.

Severity: 8

ASMA151E Literal expression modifiers must be absolute and predefined - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The duplication factor or length modifier in a literal is not a self- defining term, or an expression using self-defining terms or previously defined symbols.

System Action: The statement assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid self-defining term or ensure that symbols appear in the name field of a *previous* statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA152S External symbol too long or unacceptable character - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: One of the following errors has occurred:

- An external symbol is longer than 8 characters, or the limit is 63 characters when the GOFF/XOBJECT option is in effect, or contains a bad character. An external symbol might be the name of a CSECT, START, DXD, AMODE, RMODE, or COM statement, or the operand of an ENTRY, EXTRN, or WXTRN statement or a Q-type or V-type address constant.
- The operand of an ENTRY, EXTRN, or WXTRN statement or a Q-type or V-type address constant is an expression instead of a single term, or contains a bad character.
- A class name in a CATTR statement is longer than 16 characters, or contains a bad character.

System Action: The symbol does not appear in the external symbol dictionary. If the error is in the name field, an attempt is made to process the statement as unnamed. If the error is in the operand field, the bad operand is ignored and, if possible, the following operands are processed. A bad constant assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a shorter name or replace the expression with a symbol.

Severity: 12

ASMA153S START statement illegal - CSECT already begun

Explanation: A START statement occurred after the beginning of a control section.

System Action: The statement is processed as a CSECT statement; any operand is ignored.

Programmer Response: Ensure that the START precedes all machine instructions and any assembler instruction, such as EQU, that initiates a control section. If you want EQU statements before the START, place them in a dummy section (DSECT).

Severity: 12

ASMA154E Operand must be absolute, predefined symbols; set to zero - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The operand on a SETA, SETB, SETC, START or MHELP statement is not correct. If there is another message with this statement, this message is advisory. If this message appears alone, it indicates one of the following:

- There is a location counter reference (*) in a START operand.
- An expression does not consist of absolute terms, predefined symbols, or both.
- The statement is too complex. For example, it might have too many forward references or cause arithmetic overflow during evaluation.

- The statement is circularly defined.
- A relocatable term is multiplied or divided.

System Action: The operand of the statement is treated as zero.

Programmer Response: Correct the error if it exists. Paired relocatable symbols in different LOCTRs, even though in the same CSECT or DSECT, are not valid where an absolute, predefined value is required.

Severity: 8

ASMA155S Previous use of symbol is not this section type

Explanation: The name on a CSECT, DSECT, COM, CATTR, or LOCTR statement has been used previously, on a different type of statement. For example, the name on a CSECT has been used before on a statement other than CSECT, such as a machine instruction or a LOCTR.

System Action: This name is ignored, and the statement processes as unnamed.

Programmer Response: Correct the misspelled name, or change the name to one that does not conflict.

Severity: 12

ASMA156S Only ordinary symbols, separated by commas, allowed

Explanation: The operand field of an ENTRY, EXTRN, or WXTRN statement contains a symbol that does not consist of 1-to-8 alphanumeric characters, the first being alphabetic, or the operands are not separated by a comma.

System Action: The operand in error is ignored. If other operands follow, they process normally.

Programmer Response: Supply a correct symbol or insert the missing comma. If you want an expression as an ENTRY statement operand (such as SYMBOL+4), use an EQU statement to define an additional symbol.

Severity: 12

ASMA157S Operand must be a simply-relocatable expression

Explanation: If there is another message with this statement, this message is advisory. If this message appears alone, the operand of an ORG or END statement is not a simple relocatable expression, is too complex, or is circularly defined. The error might also be that the END operand symbol is not in a CSECT.

System Action: An ORG statement or the operand of an END statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: If an error exists, supply a correct expression. Paired relocatable symbols in different LOCTRs, even though in the same CSECT or DSECT, might cause circular definition when used in an ORG statement.

Severity: 12

ASMA158E Operand expression is defective; set to *

Explanation: The first operand of an EQU statement is defective. If another message appears with this statement, this message is advisory. If this message appears alone, one of the following errors has occurred:

- The statement is too complex. For example, it has too many forward references or causes an arithmetic overflow during evaluation.
- The statement is circularly defined.
- The statement contains a relocatable term that is multiplied or divided.

System Action: The symbol in the name field is equated to the current value of the location counter (*), and operands 2 and 3 of the statement, if present, are ignored.

Programmer Response: If an error exists, supply a correct expression for operand 1 of the statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA159S Operand must be absolute, proper multiples of 2 or 4

Explanation: The combination of operands of a CNOP statement is not one of the following valid combinations:

```
0,4          2,4
0,8          2,8
4,8          6,8
```

System Action: The statement is ignored. However, the location counter is adjusted to a halfword boundary.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid combination of CNOP operands.

Severity: 12

ASMA160W Invalid BYTE function operand *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The value *xxxxxxxx* of the operand of the BYTE built-in function is outside the expected range of 0–255.

System Action: The low-order eight bits of the operand's value are used.

Programmer Response: Supply an arithmetic expression which returns an acceptable value.

Severity: 4

ASMA161W Only one TITLE statement may have a name field

Explanation: More than one TITLE statement has a name field. The named TITLE statement need not be the first one in the assembly, but it must be the only one named.

System Action: The name on this TITLE statement is

ignored. The name used for deck identification is taken from the first named TITLE statement encountered.

Programmer Response: Delete the unwanted name.

Severity: 4

ASMA162S PUNCH operand exceeds 80 columns; ignored

Explanation: A PUNCH statement attempted to punch more than 80 characters into a record.

System Action: The statement is ignored. The record is not punched.

Programmer Response: Shorten the operand to 80 characters or fewer or use more than one PUNCH statement.

Severity: 12

ASMA163W Operand not properly enclosed in quotes

Explanation: The operand of a PUNCH or TITLE statement does not begin with a quotation mark, or the operand of a PUNCH, MNOTE, or TITLE statement does not end with a quotation mark, or the ending quotation mark is not followed by a blank.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply the missing quotation mark. Be sure that a quotation mark to be punched or printed as data is represented as two quotation marks.

Severity: 4

ASMA164W Operand is a null string - record not punched

Explanation: A PUNCH statement does not have any characters between its two single quotation marks, or a single quotation mark to be punched as data is not represented by two single quotation marks.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the operand. If you want to “punch” a blank record, the operand of the PUNCH statement should be a blank enclosed in single quotation marks.

Severity: 4

ASMA165W Unexpected name field

Explanation: The name field on this statement is not blank and is not a sequence symbol. The name field can not be an ordinary symbol.

System Action: The name is equated to the current value of the location counter (*). However, if no control section has been started, the name is equated to zero.

Programmer Response: Remove the name field, or ensure the name is preceded with a period if you want it to be a sequence symbol.

Severity: 4

ASMA166S Sequence symbol too long - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A sequence symbol contains more than 62 characters following the period.

System Action: If the sequence symbol is in the name field, the statement is processed without a name. If it is in the operand field of an AIF or AGO statement, the whole statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Shorten the sequence symbol.

Severity: 12

ASMA167E Required name missing

Explanation: This statement requires a name and has none. The name field might be blank because an error occurred during an attempt to create the name by substitution or because a sequence symbol was used as the name.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid name or ensure that a valid name is created by substitution. If a sequence symbol is needed, put it on an ANOP statement ahead of this one and put a name on this statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA168C Undefined sequence symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The sequence symbol in the operand field of an AIF or AGO statement outside a macro definition is not defined; that is, it does not appear in the name field of an associated statement.

System Action: This statement is ignored; assembly continues with the next statement.

Programmer Response: If the sequence symbol is misspelled or omitted, correct it. When the sequence symbol is not previously defined, the assembler looks ahead for the definitions. The lookahead stops when an END statement or an OPSYN equivalent is encountered. Be sure that OPSYN statements and macro definitions that redefine END precede possible entry into look-ahead.

Severity: 16

ASMA169I Implicit length of symbol *symbol* **used for operand** *n*

Explanation: A length subfield was omitted from operand *n* in an SS-format machine instruction and the implicit length of *symbol* is assembled into the object code of the instruction.

System Action: The instruction is assembled using an implicit length which:

- For an implicit address, is the length attribute of the first or only term in the expression representing the implicit address
- For an explicit address, is the length attribute of the first or only term in the expression representing the displacement

Programmer Response: Check the instruction to ensure that the operation and operands are coded correctly. You can suppress this warning by specifying the NOIMPLEN suboption of the FLAG option.

Severity: 0

ASMA170S Interlude error-logging capacity exceeded

Explanation: The table that the interlude phase of the assembler uses to keep track of the errors it detects is full. This does not stop error detection by other phases of the assembler.

System Action: If there are additional errors, normally detected by the interlude phase, in other statements either before or after this one, they are not flagged. Statement processing depends on the type of error.

Programmer Response: Correct the indicated errors, and run the assembly again to diagnose any further errors.

Severity: 12

ASMA171S Standard value too long

Explanation: The standard (default) value of a keyword parameter on a macro prototype statement is longer than 255 characters.

System Action: The parameter in error and the following parameters are ignored.

Programmer Response: Shorten the standard value.

Severity: 12

ASMA172E Negative duplication factor; default=1 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The duplication factor of a SETC statement is negative.

System Action: The duplication factor is given a default value of 1.

Programmer Response: Supply a positive duplication factor.

Severity: 8

ASMA173S Delimiter error, expected blank - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The character string *xxxxxxxx* is found where a blank (end of operand) is required.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. An ORG statement is ignored. For an EQU or END statement, the string is ignored and the operand processes normally. For a CNOP statement, the location counter is aligned to a halfword boundary.

Programmer Response: Insert a comma, or replace the string with a blank. Look for an extra operand or a missing left parenthesis.

Severity: 12

ASMA174S Delimiter error, expected blank or comma - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The character string *xxxxxxxx* is found where a blank or a comma is required.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. For a USING or DROP statement, the incorrect delimiter is ignored and the operand is processed normally.

Programmer Response: Insert a comma, or replace the string with a blank. Look for an extra operand or a missing left parenthesis.

Severity: 12

ASMA175S Delimiter error, expected comma - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The character string *xxxxxxxx* is used where a comma is required.

System Action: A machine instruction assembles as zero. For a CNOP statement, the location counter is aligned to a halfword boundary.

Programmer Response: Insert a comma, or replace the string with a blank. Be sure each expression is syntactically correct and that no parentheses are omitted.

Severity: 12

ASMA178S Delimiter error, expected comma or right parenthesis - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The character string *xxxxxxxx* is used in a machine instruction when a comma or a right parenthesis is required.

System Action: The machine instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Insert a comma, or replace the string with a right parenthesis. Look for a missing base field.

Severity: 12

ASMA179S Delimiter error, expected right parenthesis - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The character string *xxxxxxxx* is used in a machine instruction when a right parenthesis is required.

System Action: The machine instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Replace the string with a right parenthesis. Look for an index field used where it is not allowed.

Severity: 12

ASMA180S Operand must be absolute

Explanation: The operand of a SPACE or CEJECT statement or the first, third, or fourth operand of a CCW statement is not an absolute term.

System Action: A SPACE or CEJECT statement is ignored. A CCW statement assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply an absolute operand. Paired relocatable terms can span LOCTRs but must be in the same control section.

Severity: 12

ASMA181S CCW operand value is outside allowable range

Explanation: One or more operands of a CCW statement are not within the following limits:

- 1st operand—0 to 255
- 2nd operand—0 to 16 777 215 (CCW, CCW0); or 0 to 2 147 483 647 (CCW1)
- 3rd operand—0-255 and a multiple of 8
- 4th operand—0-65 535

System Action: The CCW assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply valid operands.

Severity: 12

ASMA182E Operand 2 must be absolute, 0-65535; ignored

Explanation: If there is another message with this statement, this message is advisory. If this message appears alone, the second operand of an EQU statement contains one of the following errors:

- It is not an absolute term or expression whose value is within the range of 0 to 65,535
- It contains a symbol that is not previously defined
- It is circularly defined
- It is too complex; for example, it causes an arithmetic overflow during evaluation
- It is derived from an absolute value

System Action: Operand 2 is ignored, and the length attribute of the first operand is used. If the third operand is present, it processes normally.

Programmer Response: Correct the error if it exists. Paired relocatable symbols in different LOCTRs, even though in the same CSECT, are not valid where an absolute, predefined value is required.

Severity: 8

ASMA183E Operand 3 must be absolute, 0-255; ignored

Explanation: If there is another message with this statement, this message is advisory. If this message appears alone, the third operand of an EQU statement contains one of the following errors:

- It is not an absolute term or expression whose value is within the range of 0 to 255
- It contains a symbol that is not previously defined
- It is circularly defined
- It is too complex; for example, it causes an arithmetic overflow during evaluation.

System Action: The third operand is ignored, and the type attribute of the EQU statement is set to U.

Programmer Response: Correct the error if it exists. Note that paired relocatable symbols in different LOCTRs, even though in the same CSECT, are not valid where an absolute, predefined value is required.

Severity: 8

ASMA184C COPY disaster

Explanation: The assembler copied a library member (processed a COPY statement) while looking ahead for attribute references. However, when the complete text was analyzed, the COPY operation code had been changed by an OPSYN statement or read by an AREAD statement, and the COPY should not have been processed. (Lookahead phase ignores OPSYN statements.) This message follows the first record of the COPY code.

System Action: The library member assembles. If it included an ICTL statement, the format of that ICTL is used.

Programmer Response: Move COPY statements, or OPSYN statements that modify the meaning of COPY, to a point in the assembly before the entry into lookahead mode (that is, prior to `ASMA006I Lookahead invoked`).

Severity: 16

ASMA185W Operand 2 is erroneous - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The second operand is incorrect, or two operands appear where there should be only one.

System Action: The second operand is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove or correct the second operand.

Severity: 4

ASMA186E AMODE/RMODE already set for this ESD item

Explanation: A previous AMODE instruction has the same name field as this AMODE instruction, or a previous RMODE instruction has the same name field as this RMODE instruction.

System Action: The instruction in error is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the conflicting instruction or specify the name of another control section.

Severity: 8

ASMA187E The name field is invalid - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The name field of an AMODE, RMODE or XATTR instruction is invalid. The name field must be one of the following:

- A valid control section
- An ENTRY name (for AMODE or XATTR with the GOFF option set)
- A valid external name (XATTR only)

If the XATTR statement uses the PSECT operand then the name field must specify either a valid control section name or ENTRY name.

System Action: The instruction in error is ignored, and the name does not appear in the cross-reference listing.

Programmer Response: Specify a valid name and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 8

ASMA188E Incompatible AMODE and RMODE attributes

Explanation: A previous AMODE 24 instruction has the same name field as this RMODE ANY instruction, or a previous RMODE ANY instruction has the same name field as this AMODE 24 instruction.

System Action: The instruction in error is ignored.

Programmer Response: Change the AMODE and RMODE attributes so they are no longer incompatible. All combinations except AMODE 24 and RMODE ANY are valid.

Severity: 8

ASMA189E OPSYN not permitted for REPRO

Explanation: REPRO is specified in either the name field or the operand field of an OPSYN instruction, but a REPRO statement has been previously encountered in the source module. Once a REPRO statement has been encountered, the REPRO symbolic operation code cannot be redefined using the OPSYN instruction.

System Action: The OPSYN instruction is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the OPSYN instruction, or remove the previously encountered REPRO statement.

Severity: 8

ASMA190E CATTR instruction invalid because no section started

Explanation: A CATTR instruction must be preceded by a CSECT, START, or RSECT instruction.

System Action: The CATTR instruction is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the CATTR instruction, or precede it with a CSECT, START, or RSECT instruction.

Severity: 8

ASMA191W CATTR instruction operands ignored

Explanation: You specified operands on a CATTR instruction which has the same class name as a previous CATTR instruction.

System Action: The assembler ignores the operands, and continues as if you did not specify any operands.

Programmer Response: You can correct this error by:

- Removing the operands from the CATTR instruction in error
- Changing the class name for the CATTR instruction in error
- Removing the CATTR instruction in error

Severity: 4

ASMA192W Lost precision - underflow to zero

Explanation: The value supplied is non-zero and is too small to be represented.

System Action: The constant assembles with an exponent and fraction of zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a larger value or a longer constant type.

Severity: 4

ASMA193W Lost precision - underflow to denormal

Explanation: The value supplied is non-zero and is too small to be represented in normalized form, but can be represented in denormalized form.

System Action: The constant assembles with the denormalized form.

Programmer Response: Supply a larger value or a longer constant type,

Severity: 4

ASMA194W Nominal value too large - overflow to MAX

Explanation: The value supplied is too large to be represented and the rounding mode of the constant indicates rounding towards zero. The value is represented as the signed maximum representable value.

System Action: The constant assembles with the signed maximum value.

Programmer Response: Supply a smaller value or a longer constant type.

Severity: 4

ASMA195W Nominal value too large - overflow to INF

Explanation: The value supplied is too large to be represented and the rounding mode of the constant indicates rounding away from zero. The value is represented as a signed infinity.

System Action: The constant assembles with the signed special value INF.

Programmer Response: Supply a smaller value or a longer constant type.

Severity: 4

ASMA196W Scaling modifier ignored for binary floating-point constant

Explanation: A scaling modifier has been included in the definition of a binary floating-point constant.

System Action: The scaling modifier has been ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the scale modifier.

Severity: 4

ASMA198E Exponent modifier is not permitted for special value

Explanation: The exponent modifier is not permitted for a floating-point special value.

System Action: The constant assembles as zeroes.

Programmer Response: Remove the exponent modifier.

Severity: 8

ASMA199E Rounding indicator invalid

Explanation: The rounding indicator for the floating-point constant is not a valid value.

System Action: The operand in error and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the rounding indicator.

Severity: 8

ASMA201W SO or SI in continuation column - no continuation assumed

Explanation: When High Level Assembler is invoked with the DBCS option, the double-byte delimiters SO and SI are treated as blanks in the continuation column, and *not* as continuation indicators.

System Action: The SO or SI in the continuation column assembles as a blank, and the next line is not treated as a continuation line.

Programmer Response: If continuation is required, then rearrange the source line so that a non-blank EBCDIC character can be used to indicate continuation. If continuation is not required, check that everything preceding the SO or SI is complete and valid data.

Severity: 4

ASMA202W Shift-in not found at extended continuation; check data truncation - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The assembler has detected an extended continuation indicator that is not on a source statement containing double-byte data. The extended continuation indicator feature is provided to permit continuation of double-byte data, and single-byte data adjacent to double-byte data. If you use extended continuation indicators anywhere else, the assembler issues this message. As this situation can be caused by a coding error, the assembler might unintentionally treat the data as extended continuation indicators.

System Action: The extended continuation indicators do not assemble as part of the operand.

Programmer Response: Change the continuation indicator if unintentional truncation occurred.

Severity: 4

ASMA203E Unbalanced double-byte delimiters - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A mismatched SO or SI has been found. This could be the result of truncated or nested double-byte data. This error does NOT occur because valid double-byte data is truncated to fit within the explicit length specified for C-type DC, DS, and DXD statements and literals - that condition produces error ASMA208E.

System Action: The operand in error, and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the incorrect double-byte data.

Severity: 8

ASMA204E Invalid double-byte data - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: All data between SO and SI must be valid double-byte characters. A valid double-byte character is defined as either double-byte blank (X'4040'), or two bytes each of which must be in the range X'41' to X'FE' inclusive.

This error does not apply to the operands of macro instructions.

System Action: The operand in error, and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the incorrect double-byte data.

Severity: 8

ASMA205E Extended continuation end column must not extend into continue column

Explanation: The extended continuation indicator extended into the continue column.

System Action: The extended continuation indicator is ignored. The following record or records might be treated as incorrect. The extended continuation indicators are treated as part of the source statement.

Programmer Response: If the data in the extended continuation is to be regarded as valid input then another non-blank character must be used in the continuation indication column to identify the data as valid and to continue to the next record. If the data is not to be part of the constant then remove the characters of the extended continuation and add the correct data to the continue record to the point where the extended continuation is needed. This message might be encountered when converting code that assembled with the NODBCS option to code that is to be assembled with the DBCS option.

Severity: 8

ASMA206E G-type constant must not contain single-byte data - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A G-type constant or self-defining term, after substitution has occurred, must consist entirely of double-byte data, correctly delimited by SO and SI. If SO or SI are found in any byte position other than the first and last respectively (excepting redundant SI/SO pairs which are removed) then this error is reported.

System Action: The operand in error, and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Either remove the single-byte data from the operand, or change the constant to a C-type.

Severity: 8

ASMA207E Length of G-type constant must be a multiple of 2 - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A G-type constant must contain only double-byte data. If assembled with a length modifier which is not a multiple of 2, incorrect double-byte data is created.

System Action: The operand in error, and the operands following are ignored.

Programmer Response: Either correct the length modifier, or change the constant to a C-type.

Severity: 8

ASMA208E Truncation into double-byte data is not permitted - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The explicit length of a C-type constant in a DS, DC or DXD statement or literal must not cause the nominal value to be truncated at any point within double-byte data.

System Action: The operand in error, and the following operands are ignored.

Programmer Response: Either correct the length modifier, or change the double-byte data so that it is not truncated.

Severity: 8

ASMA209E Symbol not name of class, DXD or DSECT

Explanation: The operand of a J-type address constant is not the name of a class, DXD, or DSECT.

System Action: The constant assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid operand.

Severity: 8

ASMA210E Illegal register usage

Explanation: The register operands for the machine instruction must be unique.

System Action: The machine instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Correct the instruction such that the operands specified are unique.

Severity: 8

ASMA211E Unicode conversion table not available.

Explanation: The address of the UNICODE conversion table is zero in the Code Page module specified in the CODEPAGE option.

System Action: The constant is not converted.

Programmer Response: Ensure the code page module is generated according to the instructions described in Appendix M, “How to Generate a Unicode Translation Table” on page 374

Severity: 12

ASMA212W Branch address alignment for *xxxxxxxx* unfavorable

Explanation: A branch address referenced by this statement might not be aligned to the required boundary for this instruction; for example, the target referenced by a Branch and Save (BAS) instruction might not be aligned on a halfword boundary.

System Action: The instruction assembles as written.

Programmer Response: Correct the operand if it is in error. To suppress this message, use the FLAG(NOALIGN) assembler option.

Severity: 4

ASMA213W Storage alignment for *xxxxxxxx* unfavorable

Explanation: An address referenced by this statement might not be aligned to the required boundary for this instruction; for example, the data referenced by a Compare and Swap (CS) instruction might not be aligned on a fullword boundary.

System Action: The instruction assembles as written.

Programmer Response: Correct the operand if it is in error. To suppress this message, use the FLAG(NOALIGN) assembler option.

Severity: 4

ASMA253C Too many errors

Explanation: No more error messages can be issued for this statement, because the assembler work area in which the errors are logged is full.

System Action: If more errors are detected for this statement, the messages, annotated text, or both, are discarded.

Programmer Response: Correct the indicated errors, and rerun the assembly. If there are more errors on this statement, they will be detected in the next assembly.

Severity: 16

ASMA254I * MNOTE *****

Explanation: The text of an MNOTE statement, which is appended to this message, has been generated by your program or by a macro definition or a library member copied into your program. An MNOTE statement enables a source program or a macro definition to signal the assembler to generate an error or informational message.

System Action: None.

Programmer Response: Investigate the reason for the MNOTE. Errors flagged by MNOTE often cause the program to fail if it is run.

Severity: An MNOTE is assigned a severity code of 0 to 255 by the writer of the MNOTE statement.

ASMA300W USING overridden by a prior active USING on statement number *nnnnnn*

Explanation: The USING instruction specifies the same base address as a previous USING instruction at statement number *nnnnnn*, and the base register specified is lower-numbered than the previously specified base register.

System Action: The assembler uses the higher-numbered base register for address resolution of symbolic addresses within the USING range.

Programmer Response: Check your USING statements to ensure that you have specified the correct base address and base register and that you have not omitted a needed DROP statement for the previous base register. You can suppress this message by reducing the value specified in the WARN sub-option of the USING option by 1.

Severity: 4

ASMA301W Prior active USING on statement number *nnnnnn* overridden by this USING

Explanation: The USING instruction specifies the same base address as a previous USING instruction at statement number *nnnnnn*, and the base register specified is higher-numbered than the previous base register.

System Action: The assembler uses the higher-numbered base register for address resolution of symbolic addresses within the USING range.

Programmer Response: Check your USING statements to ensure that you have specified the correct base address and base register and that you have not omitted a needed DROP statement for the previous base register. You can suppress this message by reducing the value specified in the WARN sub-option of the USING option by 1.

Severity: 4

ASMA302W USING specifies register 0 with a non-zero absolute or relocatable base address

Explanation: The assembler assumes that when register 0 is used as a base register, it contains zero. Therefore, regardless of the value specified for the base address, displacements are calculated from base 0.

System Action: The assembler calculates displacements as if the base address specified were absolute or relocatable zero.

Programmer Response: Check the USING statement to ensure you have specified the correct base address and base register. You can suppress this message by

reducing the value specified in the WARN suboption of the USING option by 2.

Severity: 4

ASMA303W Multiple address resolutions may result from this USING and the USING on statement number *nnnnnn*

Explanation: The USING instruction specifies a base address that lies within the range of an earlier USING instruction at statement number *nnnnnn*. The assembler might use multiple base registers when resolving implicit addresses within the range overlap.

System Action: The assembler computes displacements from the base address that gives the smallest displacement, and uses the corresponding base register when it assembles addresses within the range overlap.

Programmer Response: Check your USING instructions for unintentional USING range overlaps and check that you have not omitted a needed DROP statement. You can suppress this message by reducing the value specified in the WARN suboption of the USING option by 4.

Severity: 4

ASMA304W Displacement exceeds LIMIT value specified

Explanation: The address referred to by this statement has a valid displacement that is higher than the displacement limit specified in the USING(LIMIT(xxx)) option.

System Action: The instruction assembles correctly.

Programmer Response: This error diagnostic message is issued at your request. You can suppress this message by reducing the value specified in the WARN suboption of the USING option by 8.

Severity: 4

ASMA305E Operand 1 does not refer to location within reference control section

Explanation: The first operand in a dependent USING statement does not refer to a location within a reference control section defined by a DSECT, DXD, or COM instruction.

System Action: The USING statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Change the USING statement to specify a location within a reference control section.

Severity: 8

ASMA306W USING range overlaps implicit USING 0,0

Explanation: The USING range overlaps the assembler's implicit USING 0,0. This implicit USING is used to convert absolute implicit addresses in the range 0 to 4095. As a result of this USING, the assembler may not generate the expected object code.

System Action: The assembly continues

Programmer Response: Correct the USING instruction.

Severity: 4

ASMA307E No active USING for operand *n*

Explanation: The operand specified occurs in a section without an active USING.

System Action: The instruction assembles as zero.

Programmer Response: Provide a USING instruction.

Severity: 8

ASMA308E Repeated register *reg* **nullifies prior USING range**

Explanation: The repeated register nullifies the range specified by a prior use of that register on the same USING instruction.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the USING instruction.

Severity: 8

ASMA309W Operand *xxxxxxxx* **resolved to a displacement with no base register**

Explanation: The machine instruction specifies an operand which is resolved to a baseless address when a base and displacement are expected. This might be the programmer's intent, but will usually be an error.

System Action: Base register zero is assembled into the object code of the instruction.

Programmer Response: Check the instruction to ensure that the operation and operands are coded correctly. If you want to reference *page zero* you can specify a USING for the appropriate DSECT with a zero base register. You can suppress this warning by specifying the NOPAGE0 suboption of the FLAG option.

Severity: 4

ASMA310W Name already used in prior ALIAS or XATTR - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The name specified in the ALIAS or XATTR statement has already been used in a previous ALIAS or XATTR statement.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Change the program so that the name is used in only one ALIAS or XATTR statement.

Severity: 4

ASMA311E Illegal ALIAS string

Explanation: The ALIAS string is illegal for one of the following reasons:

- The string is null
- The string is not in the form C'cccccccc' or X'hhhhhhhh'
- The string is in the form X'hhhhhhhh' but an odd number of hexadecimal digits has been specified
- The string contains a character outside the valid range of X'42' to X'FE'
- The string has been used in the name entry on a previous CSECT, DSECT, COM or LOCTR instruction

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Change the program so that the string conforms to the required syntax.

Severity: 8

ASMA312E ALIAS name is not declared as an external symbol - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The name specified on the ALIAS statement is not declared as an external symbol, either explicitly via an EXTRN, CSECT, etc., or implicitly via a V-type constant.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Change the program so that the name is declared as an external symbol.

Severity: 8

ASMA313E The end value specified in the USING is less than or equal to the base value

Explanation: The end value specified is less than or equal to the base value which would result in a zero or negative range.

System Action: The end value is ignored and the default range value is used.

Programmer Response: Change the USING statement to specify an end value that is greater than the base value.

Severity: 8

ASMA314E The base and end values have differing relocation attributes

Explanation: The base and end values have differing relocation attributes; that is, they are defined in different sections.

System Action: The end value is ignored and the default range value is used.

Programmer Response: Change the USING statement to specify an end value that is in the same section as the base value.

Severity: 8

ASMA315E XATTR instruction invalid when NOGOFF specified

Explanation: The XATTR instruction can only be used when the GOFF option is set.

System Action: The statement is ignored.

Programmer Response: Either remove the XATTR statement and resubmit the assembly or ensure that the GOFF option is set and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 8

ASMA316E Invalid PSECT symbol - *nnnnnnnn*

Explanation: The symbol *nnnnnnnn* specified in the PSECT operand is invalid for one of the following reasons:

- The name is undefined
- The name is a class name
- The name is not one of the following:
  - A valid control section name
  - A valid ENTRY name
  - A valid DXD name

System Action: The PSECT operand is ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the PSECT operand and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 8

ASMA317E Invalid ATTR symbol - *nnnnnnnn*

Explanation: The symbol *nnnnnnnn* specified in the ATTR operand is invalid for one of the following reasons:

- The name is undefined
- The name is a DSECT name
- The name is a qualifier name

System Action: The ATTR operand is ignored.

Programmer Response: Correct the ATTR operand and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 8

ASMA400W Error in invocation parameter - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The parameter *xxxxxxxx* is not a recognized assembler option, or is incorrectly specified.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues, using the installation default value for the erroneously specified option.

Programmer Response: Correct the parameter error and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 4

ASMA401N Fixed option cannot be overridden by invocation parameter - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The parameter *xxxxxxxx* cannot be specified in the ASMAOPT file or as an invocation parameter because the option it is attempting to override was fixed when High Level Assembler was installed.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues, using the installation default value for the erroneously specified option.

Programmer Response: Correct the parameter error and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA402W Invalid print line length *xxxxxx* **returned by LISTING exit; exit processing bypassed**

Explanation: When invoked with an OPEN request, the LISTING exit specified a print line length that was either outside the range 121 to 255 (MVS and CMS), 121 to 133 (VSE), or was not permitted for the device to which the listing file is assigned.

System Action: The assembler bypasses the exit when processing listing records, and writes the assembly listing to the standard listing file. The print line length is determined by the assembler.

Programmer Response: Correct the error in the LISTING exit.

Severity: 4

ASMA403W WORK file blocksize has been set to *xxxxxx*

Explanation: The blocksize specified in the job control language for the work file is not permitted. The valid range is 2008 bytes to 32760 bytes, or the maximum track capacity for the device on which the work file resides, whichever is lesser.

System Action: The blocksize for the work file has been set to the specified value.

Programmer Response: Supply a valid blocksize for the work file.

Severity: 4

ASMA404W Invalid term line length *xxxxxx* **returned by TERM exit; exit processing bypassed**

Explanation: When invoked with an OPEN request, the TERM exit specified a line length that was either zero or greater than 255 (MVS and CMS), 125 (VSE), or was not permitted for the device to which the terminal file is assigned.

System Action: The assembler bypasses the exit when processing terminal records, and writes the terminal records to the standard terminal file. The line length is determined by the assembler.

Programmer Response: Correct the error in the TERM exit.

Severity: 4

ASMA409I Unable to load ASMAINFO

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the INFO option module ASMAINFO, but the load failed.

System Action: The assembly continues without listing the INFO requested.

Programmer Response: Check that ASMAINFO is in a library accessible by the assembler.

Severity: 0

ASMA410W WORK file not defined to the assembler

Explanation: JCL statements for the assembler work file has not been provided in the job control language for the assembly job step.

- If you are running the assembler on MVS, the DD statement for the work file is missing, or the TSO ALLOCATE command has not been issued
- If you are running the assembler on CMS, the FILEDEF command for the work file has not been issued
- If you are running the assembler on VSE, the DLBL statement for the assembler work file, IJSYS03, is missing from the assembly JCL

System Action: The assembler attempts to complete the assembly in virtual storage, without using the work file. However, if there is not enough virtual storage for the assembly to complete, another message is issued and the assembly ends abnormally.

Programmer Response: On MVS, supply valid JCL for the work file. Check whether your installation has changed the default ddname for the work file, and ensure that you are using the correct ddname.

On CMS, supply the FILEDEF command for the work file.

On VSE, supply a DLBL statement for the work file. Refer to Figure 85 on page 214 for details of defining the work file.

Severity: 4

ASMA411W WORK file is not on DASD

Explanation: The JCL statement for the work file indicates that the work file does not reside on DASD.

System Action: The assembler attempts to complete the assembly in storage, without using the work file. However, if there is not enough virtual storage for the assembly to complete, another message is issued and the assembly ends abnormally.

Programmer Response: Assign the work file (SYSUT1 on MVS and CMS and IJSYS03 on VSE) to DASD and supply the correct JCL for the work file. On MVS and CMS check whether your installation has changed the default DDname for the work file, and ensure that you are using the correct DDname. On VSE refer to Figure 85 on page 214 for details about defining the work file.

Severity: 4

ASMA412W Unable to open WORK file

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open the assembler work file.

System Action: The assembler attempts to complete the assembly in storage, without using the work file. However, if there is not enough virtual storage for the assembly to complete, another message is issued and the assembly ends abnormally.

Programmer Response: Check the JCL for the work file. Ensure that the work file is assigned to DASD and that the DASD volume is not write-protected.

Severity: 4

ASMA413C Unable to open INPUT file

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open the assembler input file. This is usually caused by a job control language error.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check the JCL for the input file.

Severity: 16

ASMA414C Unable to open LISTING file

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open the assembler listing file. This is usually caused by a job control language error.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check the JCL for the listing file.

Severity: 16

ASMA415N Unable to open TERM file

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open the assembler terminal output file. This is usually caused by a job control language error.

System Action: The assembly continues and no terminal file is produced.

Programmer Response: Check the JCL for the terminal output file.

Severity: 2

ASMA416C Unable to open DECK file

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open the assembler deck output file. This is usually caused by a job control language error.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check the JCL for the deck output file.

Severity: 16

ASMA417C Unable to open OBJECT file

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open the assembler object output file. This is usually caused by a job control language error.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check the JCL for the object output file.

Severity: 16

ASMA418C Unable to open ADATA file

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open the associated data file. This is usually caused by a job control language error.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check the JCL for the SYSADATA ddname (MVS and CMS), or the SYSADAT file (VSE).

Severity: 16

ASMA419C Unable to open TRACE file

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open the internal trace file. This is usually caused by a job control language error.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check the JCL for the SYSTRACE ddname (MVS and CMS), or the SYSTRAC file (VSE).

Severity: 16

ASMA420N Error in a *PROCESS statement parameter - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The parameter *xxxxxxxx* is not a recognized assembler option, or is incorrectly specified.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues, using the installation default value or the invocation parameter value for the erroneously specified option.

Programmer Response: Correct the parameter error and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA421N Fixed option cannot be overridden by *PROCESS statement parameter - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The parameter *xxxxxxxx* cannot be specified in a *PROCESS statement parameter because the option it is attempting to override was fixed when High Level Assembler was installed.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues, using the installation default value for the erroneously specified option.

Programmer Response: Remove the option from the *PROCESS statement and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA422N Option *xxxxxxxx* is not valid in a *PROCESS statement

Explanation: The following options cannot be specified in a *PROCESS statement:

```
ADATA|NOADATA     OBJECT|NOOBJECT
ASA|NOASA         OPTABLE
DECK|NODECK       SIZE
EXIT|NOEXIT       SYSPARM
GOFF|NOGOFF       TERM|NOTERM
LANGUAGE          TRANSLATE|NOTRANSLATE
LINECOUNT         XOBJECT|NOXOBJECT
LIST|NOLIST
```

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues, using the installation default value or the invocation parameter value for the erroneously specified option.

Programmer Response: Remove the option from the *PROCESS statement and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA423N Option *yyyyyyyy* in a *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement conflicts with an invocation or default option. Option is not permitted in *PROCESS statement and has been ignored.

Explanation: The option *yyyyyyyy* specified in a *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement conflicts with an invocation or default option. The option is not permitted in a *PROCESS statement and has been ignored.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembler stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues using the invocation or default option.

Programmer Response: Correct the *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA424W Continuation column is not blank. *PROCESS statements may not be continued.

Explanation: The continuation column (usually column 72) is not blank for a *PROCESS statement. *PROCESS statements can not be continued.

System Action: If option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues and processes the options specified.

Programmer Response: Recode the *PROCESS statement, leaving the continuation column blank. If you need to specify more options that can fit on the *PROCESS statement, add another *PROCESS statement to your code. You can specify a maximum of 10 *PROCESS statements.

Severity: 4

ASMA425N Option conflict in invocation parameters. *yyyyyyyy* overrides an earlier setting.

Explanation: The option *yyyyyyyy* specified as an invocation parameter in either the ASMAOPT file or the invocation parameters overrides an earlier setting of the option in either the same ASMAOPT file or the invocation parameters.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembler stops. If installation option

NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues using the last specified conflicting option.

Programmer Response: Correct the ASMAOPT file or the invocation parameter and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA426N Option conflict in *PROCESS statements. ***yyyyyyyy*** **overrides an earlier setting.**

Explanation: The option *yyyyyyyy* specified in a *PROCESS statement overrides an earlier setting of the option on the same statement or a previous *PROCESS statement.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues using the last conflicting option encountered.

Programmer Response: Correct the *PROCESS statement error and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA427N Invocation parameter option ***xxxxxxxx*** **ignored. This option is not valid under VSE.**

Explanation: The option *xxxxxxxx* specified in an invocation parameter is not valid for the VSE operating system.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues and the option is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the option from the invocation parameter and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA428N *PROCESS statement option ***xxxxxxxx*** **ignored. This option is not valid under VSE.**

Explanation: The option *xxxxxxxx* specified in a *PROCESS statement is not valid for the VSE operating system.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues and the option is ignored.

Programmer Response: Remove the option from the *PROCESS statement and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA429W SYSPRINT LRECL should be at least 133 when GOFF/XOBJECT option is specified

Explanation: The GOFF or XOBJECT assembler option has been specified, however the logical record length of the listing file, SYSPRINT, is less than 133.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues, however the lines in the *source and object* section are truncated.

Programmer Response: Specify a record length of at least 133 for SYSPRINT.

Severity: 4

ASMA430W Continuation statement does not start in continue column.

Explanation: The operand on the continued record ends with a comma and a continuation statement is present but the continue column is blank. The continue column is column 16, unless you redefined it with an ICTL instruction.

System Action: Any remaining continuation lines belonging to this statement are ignored.

Programmer Response: Check that the continuation was coded as intended.

Severity: 4

ASMA431W Continuation statement may be in error - continuation indicator column is blank.

Explanation: A list of one or more operands ends with a comma, but the continuation indicator column is blank. The continuation indicator column is column 72, unless you redefined it with an ICTL instruction.

System Action: The next statement assembles as a standard assembler source statement.

Programmer Response: Check that the continuation was coded as intended.

Severity: 4

ASMA432W Continuation statement may be in error - comma omitted from continued statement.

Explanation: The continuation record starts in the continue column (usually column 16) but there is no comma present following the operands on the previous record.

System Action: Any remaining continuation lines belonging to this statement are ignored.

Programmer Response: Check that the continuation was coded as intended.

Severity: 4

ASMA433W Statement not continued - continuation statement may be in error

Explanation: The continued record is full but the continuation record does not start in the continue column (usually column 16).

System Action: Any remaining continuation lines belonging to this statement are ignored.

Programmer Response: Check that the continuation was coded as intended.

Severity: 4

ASMA434N GOFF/XOBJECT option specified, option LIST(133) will be used

Explanation: You specified the GOFF or XOBJECT option, and the LIST suboption is 121.

System Action: The assembler sets the LIST suboption to 133. If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues.

Programmer Response: To prevent this warning message, run the assembly again specifying GOFF and LIST(133).

Severity: 2

ASMA435I Record *n* **in** *xxxxxxx* **on volume:** *vvvvvv*

Explanation: The data set *xxxxxxxx* which is located on volume serial *vvvvvv*, contains an error on record number *n*. The volume serial might not be available.

For an AINSERT instruction:

n The number of the statement within the AINSERT internal buffer. This number may not reflect the statement's relative statement number within the buffer at the point of retrieval, but does reflect the relative retrieval number. This is because it is possible to insert records into the buffer after statements have been retrieved from the buffer.

xxxxxxxx
The constant AINSERT BUFFER to indicate that the statement resulted from an AINSERT instruction.

vvvvvv
will be null.

System Action: See the System Action section of the error message(s) which immediately precede this message.

Programmer Response: Refer to the Programmer Response section of the error messages which immediately precede this message.

Severity: 0

ASMA436N Attempt to override invocation parameter in a *PROCESS statement. Option *yyyyyyyy* **ignored.**

Explanation: The option *yyyyyyyy* specified in a *PROCESS statement conflicts with an option specified either in the ASMAOPT file or in an invocation parameter.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembler stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues using the option specified in the ASMAOPT file or the invocation parameters.

Programmer Response: Correct the *PROCESS statement and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA437N Attempt to override invocation parameter in a *PROCESS statement. Suboption *yyyyyyyy* **of** *xxxxxxxx* **option ignored.**

Explanation: The suboption *yyyyyyyy* of option *xxxxxxxx* specified on a *PROCESS statement conflicts with a suboption specified in either the ASMAOPT file or in the invocation parameters.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembler stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues using the suboption specified in the *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement.

Programmer Response: Correct the *PROCESS statement and resubmit the assembly. the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA438N Attempt to override ASMAOPT parameter. Option *yyyyyyyy* **ignored**

Explanation: The option *yyyyyyyy* specified as an invocation parameter overrides the option specified in the ASMAOPT file (CMS or MVS) or Librarian member (VSE).

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues using the option specified in the ASMAOPT file (MVS and CMS) or library member (VSE).

Programmer Response: Remove the option from the invocation parameters and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA439N Attempt to override ASMAOPT parameter. Suboption *yyyyyyyy* of option *xxxxxxxx* ignored

Explanation: The suboption *xxxxxxxx* of options *yyyyyyyy* specified in an invocation parameter overrides the suboption specified in the ASMAOPT file (MVS and CMS) or library member (VSE)

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembly stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues using the suboption specified in the ASMAOPT file (MVS and CMS) or library member (VSE).

Programmer Response: Remove the suboption from the invocation parameters and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA440N Attempt to override OVERRIDE parameter in *PROCESS statement. Option mv.yyyyyyyy ignored.

Explanation: The option *yyyyyyyy* specified on a *PROCESS statement conflicts with an option specified in a previous *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembler stops. If installation option NOPESTOP is specified, the assembly continues using the option specified in the *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement.

Programmer Response: Correct the *PROCESS statement and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA441N Attempt to override OVERRIDE parameter in a *PROCESS statement. Suboption *yyyyyyyy* ignored. *yyyyyyyy* of *xxxxxxxx* ignored.

Explanation: The suboption *yyyyyyyy* of option *xxxxxxxx* specified on a *PROCESS statement conflicts with a suboption specified in a previous *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement.

System Action: If installation option PESTOP is specified, the assembler stops. If installation option NOPESTOP i specified, the assembly continues using the suboption specified in the *PROCESS OVERRIDE statement.

Programmer Response: Correct the *PROCESS statement and resubmit the assembly.

Severity: 2

ASMA442N ASMAOPT internal buffer full - some options ignored.

Explanation: The length of the options list provided by the ASMAOPT file, including the delimiting commas inserted by the assembler, exceeds 32766 bytes.

System Action: The record which caused the message to be generated, together with those records following, will be ignored.

Programmer Response: Reduce the length of the options list provided by the ASMAOPT file.

Severity: 2

ASMA7001 *exit-type*: *exit supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied exit for *exit-type* exit has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *exit supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the user exit documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 0

ASMA701W *exit-type*: *exit supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied exit for *exit-type* exit has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *exit supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the user exit documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 4

ASMA702E *exit-type*: *exit supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied exit for *exit-type* exit has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *exit supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the user exit documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 8

ASMA703S *exit-type*: *exit supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied exit for *exit-type* exit has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *exit supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the user exit documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 12

ASMA704C *exit-type*: *exit supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied exit for *exit-type* exit has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *exit supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the installation documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 16

ASMA710I *function-name*: *function-supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied function *function-name* has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *function-supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the external function documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 0

ASMA711W *function-name*: *function-supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied function *function-name* has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *function-supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the external function documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 4

ASMA712E *function-name* : *function-supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied function *function-name* has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *function-supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the external function documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 8

ASMA713S *function-name* : *function-supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied function *function-name* has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *function-supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the external function documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 12

ASMA714C *function-name* : *function-supplied text*

Explanation: The user supplied function *function-name* has requested the assembler to issue this message with the *function-supplied text*.

System Action: None

Programmer Response: Check the external function documentation for the cause of this message and for the correct response.

Severity: 16

Abnormal Assembly Termination Messages

Whenever an assembly cannot complete, High Level Assembler provides a message and, in some cases, a specially formatted dump for diagnostic information. This might indicate an assembler malfunction or it might indicate a programmer error. The statement causing the error is identified and, if possible, the assembly listing up to the point of the error is printed. The messages in this book give enough information to enable you to correct the error and reassemble your program, or to determine that the error is an assembler malfunction.

Note:

| If SYSPRINT or SYSLST (VSE only) is
| unavailable, the assembler uses the macro WTO
| with a route code of 11 and a descriptor code of
| 7, or the system defaults, to output the
| message(s).

Messages

ASMA930U LOAD OF ASMA93 PHASE FAILED; INSUFFICIENT GETVIS STORAGE OR PHASE NOT FOUND

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the phase ASMA93, but the load failed either because there was insufficient GETVIS storage available to complete the load, or the phase could not be found.

Note: This message is only produced in uppercase English.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check the LIBDEF chain to ensure that the sublibrary containing High Level Assembler is correctly concatenated. If it is, you should consider increasing the partition size.

Severity: 20

ASMA931U Unable to load specified operation code table - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the named operation code table, but the load failed.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check that the specified operation code table is in a library accessible by the assembler.

Severity: 20

ASMA932U Unable to load specified EXIT module - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the named exit module, but the load failed.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check that the specified exit module is in a library accessible by the assembler.

Severity: 20

ASMA933U UNABLE TO LOAD SPECIFIED MESSAGES MODULE - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the named messages module, but the load failed. The name of the messages module is determined from the value specified in the LANGUAGE option.

Note: This message is only produced in uppercase English.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check that you have correctly specified the correct messages module using the LANGUAGE option, and that the specified messages module is in a library accessible by the assembler.

Severity: 20

ASMA934U UNABLE TO LOAD DEFAULT OPTIONS MODULE - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the named default options module, but the load failed.

Note: This message is only produced in uppercase English.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check that the default options module is in a library accessible by the assembler.

Severity: 20

ASMA935U One or more required files not available

Explanation: The assembler encountered an error when attempting to open a required file.

System Action: Before this message is issued, one or more associated messages are issued that describe which file or files could not be opened. After this message is issued, the assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Check the associated message or messages.

Severity: 20

ASMA936U Assembly terminated due to errors in invocation parameters

Explanation: The assembler detected an error in one or more of the parameters specified when the assembler was invoked, and the installation default value for the PESTOP assembler option is YES.

System Action: Before this message is issued, one or more associated messages are issued that describe which parameter or parameters were in error. After this message is issued, the assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Check the associated message or messages. Invoke the assembler with correct invocation parameters. Do not attempt to override the fixed installation defaults.

Severity: 20

ASMA937U Unable to load specified translation table - *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the translation table called *xxxxxxxx*, but the load failed. The name of the translation table is determined from the value specified in the TRANSLATE option.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check you have correctly specified the translation table module using the TRANSLATE option, and the module is in a library accessible by the assembler.

Severity: 20

ASMA938U Module *xxxxxxxx* **is not a valid translation table**

Explanation: The translation table specified in the TRANSLATE option is not valid.

System Action: The assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Ensure the translation table is generated according to the instructions described in Appendix L, “How to Generate a Translation Table” on page 372.

Severity: 20

ASMA939U Unable to load external function module - xxxxxxxx

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the external function module xxxxxxxx, but the load failed.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Check that the specified module is in a library accessible by the assembler, and that the external function name has been spelled correctly in the SETAF or SETCF statement.

Severity: 20

ASMA940U *exit-type* **exit has requested termination during** *operation* **processing; exit error text: < none | *error text* >**

Explanation: The user supplied exit for *exit-type* failed when processing an *operation* request. The exit might have provided *error text* to assist in determination of the failure.

System Action: The assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Check the specified exit program for the cause of failure.

Severity: 20

ASMA941U *external function name* **has requested termination during processing.**

Explanation: The user supplied external function *external function name* failed during processing.

System Action: The assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Check the specified external function program for the cause of failure.

Severity: 20

ASMA942U *xxxxxxxx* **IS NOT A VALID MODULE**

Explanation: The default options module ASMADOPT, or an operation code table module, is not in the required format for this release of the assembler. The assembler checks to ensure the release of the module is the same as that of the assembler.

Note: This message may be produced in uppercase English, even if you have specified a different language.

System Action: The assembly terminates

Programmer Response: Ensure that you have the correct version of the ASMADOPT or ASMAOxxx module available. You might need to reassemble your default options module with the current ASMAOPT macro.

Severity: 20

ASMA943U Unable to find listing header *nnn*

Explanation: The assembler tried to produce a heading line in the assembler listing but could not find the heading. This can be caused if the assembler load module has been corrupted.

System Action: The assembly is aborted.

Programmer Response: Reassemble the program; it might assemble correctly. If it does not reassemble without error, save the output from the assembly, and the input source(s), and contact IBM for support.

Severity: 20

ASMA944U LOAD OF ASMA93 MODULE FAILED; INSUFFICIENT MAIN STORAGE OR MODULE NOT FOUND

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the module ASMA93, but the load failed either because there was insufficient main storage available to complete the load, or the module could not be found.

Note: This message is only produced in uppercase English.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: On MVS, ensure that the correct High Level Assembler load library is available in the standard load module search order. If it is, consider increasing the region size.

On CMS, ensure that the correct mini disk containing the High Level Assembler modules is being accessed. If it is, consider increasing your virtual machine storage size.

Severity: 20

ASMA945U Unable to load code page *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the Code Page module called *xxxxxxxx*, but the load failed. The name of the module is determined from the value specified in the CODEPAGE option.

System Action: The assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Check that you have correctly specified the Code Page module using the CODEPAGE option, and that the module is in a library accessible by the assembler.

Severity: 20

ASMA946U Module ASMA*xxxx* **is not a valid code page module.**

Explanation: The code page module specified in the CODEPAGE option is not valid.

System Action: The assembly stops.

Programmer Response: Ensure the code page module is generated according to the instructions

| described in Appendix M, "How to Generate a Unicode
| Translation Table" on page 374

Severity: 20

ASMA950U End of statement flag was expected in Macro Edited Text, but was not found - MACRO EDITOR is suspect
ASMA951U The MACRO GENERATOR has encountered untranslatable Macro Edited Text
ASMA952U Bad SET symbol name field or LCL/GBL operand - check the Macro Edited Text
ASMA953U Bad subscript on SET symbol - check the Macro Edited Text
ASMA954U Character expression followed by bad subscripts - check the Macro Edited Text
ASMA955U A right parenthesis with no matching left parenthesis was found in an expression - check the Macro Edited Text or the expression analysis work area
ASMA956U Multiple subscripts or bad SET symbol terminator - check the Macro Edited Text
ASMA957U Bad terminator on created SET symbol - check the Macro Edited Text
ASMA958U Bad terminator on parameter - check the Macro Edited Text
ASMA959U Unexpected end of data on WORK file - internal storage management suspect
ASMA960U A bad internal file number has been passed to the *xxxxxxxx* internal storage management routine
ASMA961U An invalid storage request has been made, or the free storage chain pointers have been destroyed
ASMA962U A zero block address or bad block number has been passed to an internal storage management routine
ASMA963U Invalid pointer at entry to utility routine
ASMA964U Macro Edited Text Flag is not ICTL

Explanation: The assembly stops because of one of the errors described in ASMA950U through ASMA964U. This usually is caused by an error in the assembler itself. Under certain conditions, however, the assembly can be rerun successfully.

System Action: The assembly stops and a formatted abnormal termination dump is produced. Depending on where the error occurred, the assembly listing up to the failing statement might also be produced. The dump usually indicates which statement was being processed at the time of abnormal termination. It also might include contents of the assembler registers and work areas and other status information for use by an IBM support representative.

Programmer Response: Check the statement that was being processed at the time of abnormal termination. Correct any errors in it or, if the statement is long or complex, rewrite it. Reassemble the program; it might assemble correctly. However, even if the program assembles correctly, there might be a problem with the assembler. Save the abnormal termination dump, the assembly listing (if one was produced), and the source program, and contact IBM for support.

Severity: 20

ASMA966U Insufficient partition GETVIS storage to load *xxxxxxxx*; increase the partition GETVIS size

Explanation: The assembler attempted to load the named phase, but there was not enough GETVIS storage available for the phase.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Increase the amount of GETVIS storage allocated to the partition.

Severity: 20

ASMA967U Insufficient partition GETVIS storage for assembly initialization; increase the partition GETVIS size

Explanation: The assembler attempted to acquire an initial block of storage, but there is not enough GETVIS storage available.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Increase the amount of GETVIS storage allocated to the partition.

Severity: 20

ASMA970U Statement complexity exceeded, break the statement into segments, and rerun the assembly

Explanation: The statement is too complex to be evaluated by the macro generator phase of the assembler. It overflowed the evaluation work area of the assembler. Normally, there is no assembler malfunction; the statement can be corrected and the program reassembled successfully.

System Action: A special abnormal termination dump (High Level Assembler interrupt and diagnostic dump) follows the message. The statement causing termination is SETA, SETB, SETC, AGO, or AIF. The dump does not indicate which statement caused termination; however, it might show the last statement generated in the macro. The dump might also include contents of the assembler registers and work areas and other status information for use by IBM or your assembler maintenance programmers in determining the cause of the termination. However, it is not needed unless the error persists. This information could be helpful in diagnosing and fixing an assembler error.

Programmer Response: Check the statement that caused termination. Rewrite the statement or split it into two or more statements. Reassemble the program; it should assemble correctly. However, if the error persists, there might be an assembler malfunction. Save the abnormal termination dump, the assembly listing (if one was produced), and the input source(s), and contact IBM for support.

Severity: 20

ASMA971U Insufficient storage available for Macro Editor work area
ASMA972U Virtual storage exhausted; increase the SIZE option

Explanation: The size of the dynamic storage area allocated for assembler buffer areas, tables, and work areas, as specified in the SIZE option, is not enough for the assembly to complete.

System Action: A special abnormal termination dump (High Level Assembler interrupt and diagnostic dump) follows the message. The dump usually indicates the statement being processed when the assembler determined there was not enough dynamic storage available to continue. Depending on where the error occurred, the assembly listing up to the statement being processed might also be produced. The other information in the dump, such as register and work area contents, is not needed.

Programmer Response: Increase the value specified in the SIZE option, or split the assembly into two or more assemblies. Check for conditional assembly language loops in open code that could cause the symbol table to overflow.

Severity: 20

ASMA973U WORK file maximum block count exceeded

Explanation: The maximum block count of 65,535 has been exceeded for SYSUT1 (MVS and CMS) or IJSYS03 (VSE).

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Increase the work file block size, or split the assembly into two or more smaller assemblies.

Severity: 20

ASMA974U Insufficient storage available to satisfy the SIZE option

Explanation: The assembler attempted to acquire the amount of storage specified in the SIZE option, but there was not enough available storage in the region (MVS), virtual machine (CMS), or partition GETVIS (VSE).

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Increase the region size (MVS), the virtual machine size (CMS), or the partition GETVIS (VSE) size, or reduce the size requested in the SIZE option.

Severity: 20

ASMA975U SIZE option specifies insufficient storage for assembly

Explanation: The SIZE option was specified as MAX-*nnn*K or MAX-*nn*M, but the amount of storage available to the assembler using this formula is not enough for the assembly to continue. The assembler requires a minimum of either 200K bytes or 10 times the work file blocksize, plus 20K, of working storage in the region (MVS), virtual machine (CMS), or partition GETVIS (VSE) to proceed.

System Action: The assembly stops and no listing is produced.

Programmer Response: Increase the region size (MVS), virtual machine size (CMS), or the partition GETVIS (VSE) size, or reduce the amount of storage to be reserved in the MAX-*nnn*K or MAX-*nn*M form of the SIZE option.

Severity: 20

ASMA976U Statement too complex for expression analysis

Explanation: The statement is too complex to be analyzed by the expression analysis routine of the assembler. It overflowed the analysis work area. The size of the analysis work area is the same as the work file block size. Normally, there is no problem with the assembler. The statement can be rewritten to simplify it, and the program reassembled successfully.

System Action: The assembly stops and a formatted abnormal termination dump is produced. The dump indicates which statement was being processed at the time of abnormal termination. It also includes the contents of the assembler registers and work areas and other status information that might be required by an IBM support representative if the problem persists.

Programmer Response: Check the statement that was being processed at the time of abnormal termination. Rewrite the statement or split it into two or more statements. Alternatively, increase the work file block size. Reassemble the program; it should assemble correctly. However, if the problem persists, there might be a problem with the assembler. Save the abnormal termination dump, the assembly listing (if one was produced), and the input source(s), and contact IBM for support.

Severity: 20

ASMA990U Location Counter does not match symbol table value

Explanation: A difference has been detected between the symbol table and the location counter. The assembly stops and a special abnormal termination dump (High Level Assembler interrupt and diagnostic dump) is taken. The listing is not completed.

System Action: The High Level Assembler interrupt and diagnostic dump shows the statement that was being printed when the difference between the location counter and the symbol table was detected.

Programmer Response: Reassemble the program using NOALIGN. If alignment is needed, use CNOP or DS to force alignment.

Severity: 20

ASMA998U The assembler could not resume reading a LIBRARY member because it could not FIND the member again

Explanation: The assembly stops, because the assembler cannot find a COPY member that it has already read. This usually is caused by an error in the assembler itself or by an Operating System I/O error. Under certain conditions, however, the assembly can be rerun successfully.

System Action: A special abnormal termination dump (High Level Assembler interrupt and diagnostic dump) follows the message. The dump usually indicates which statement caused termination. It also might include contents of the assembler registers and work areas and other status information for use by IBM or your assembler maintenance programmers in determining the cause of the termination.

Programmer Response: Reassemble the program; it might assemble correctly. If it does not reassemble without error, save the abnormal termination dump, the assembly listing (if one was produced), and the input source(s), and contact IBM for support.

Severity: 20

ASMA999U Assembly terminated - SYNAD Exit taken - Permanent I/O error on xxxxxxx data set

Explanation: The assembly was stopped because of a permanent I/O error on the data set indicated in the message. This is usually caused by a machine or an operating system error. The assembly usually can be rerun successfully. This message also appears on the console output device.

System Action: A special abnormal termination dump (High Level Assembler interrupt and diagnostic dump) follows the message. Depending on where the error occurred, the assembly listing up to the bad statement might also be produced. The dump usually indicates which statement caused termination. It also might include contents of the assembler registers and work areas and other status information for use by IBM or your assembler maintenance programmers in determining the cause of the termination.

Programmer Response: If the I/O error is on SYSIN or SYSLIB, you might have concatenated the input or library data sets incorrectly. Make sure that all input or library data sets have the same device class (all DASD or all tape). Please also check that file attributes such as DSORG, RECFM, LRECL, and BLKSIZE have been correctly specified.

If the I/O error is on SYSUT1, check that SYSUT1 is allocated to a single volume—the assembler does not support a multivolume work file.

Reassemble the program; it might assemble correctly. If it does not reassemble without error, save the abnormal termination dump, the assembly listing (if one was produced), and the input source(s), and contact IBM for support. Also, if the program assembles correctly, submit a copy of the listing and input source(s) of the correct assembly.

Severity: 20

ASMAHL Command Error Messages (CMS)

ASMACMS002E File *fn ft fm* **not found**

Explanation: The file name you included in the ASMAHL command does not correspond to the names of any of the files on your disks.

Supplemental Information: The variable file name, file type, and file mode in the text of the message indicate the file that could not be found.

System Action: RC=28. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Reissue the ASMAHL with the correct file name.

ASMACMS003E Invalid option *option*

Explanation: You have included an option that is not correct with your ASMAHL command.

Supplemental Information: The variable option in the text of the message indicates the option that is not correct.

System Action: RC=24. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Check the format of the ASMAHL command, and reissue the command with the correct option.

ASMACMS004E Improperly formed option *option*

Explanation: You have included an improperly formed option with your ASMAHL command.

Supplemental Information: The variable option in the text of the message indicates the improperly formed option.

System Action: RC=24. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Check the format of the ASMAHL command, and reissue the command with the correct option.

ASMACMS005E Truncation of options may have occurred because of tokenized PLIST format

Explanation: The options have been passed to the ASMAHL command in tokenized PLIST format. Any options passed might have been truncated to 8 characters. This message is only issued when an error has been detected in one of the options that was specified.

System Action: The options are accepted as entered but might have been truncated.

Programmer Response: If the options have been truncated, invoke the ASMAHL command with the extended parameter list. If the SYSPARM option has been truncated, specify SYSPARM(?).

ASMACMS006E No read/write disk accessed

Explanation: Your virtual machine configuration does not include a read/write disk for this terminal session, or you failed to specify a read/write disk.

System Action: RC=36. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Issue an ACCESS command specifying a read/write disk.

ASMACMS007E File '*fn ft fm***' does not contain fixed length 80 character records**

Explanation: The source file you specified in the ASMAHL command does not contain fixed-length records of 80 characters.

Supplemental Information: The variable file name, file type, and file mode in the text of the message indicate the file that is in error.

System Action: RC=32. The command cannot be processed.

Programmer Response: You must reformat your file into the correct record length. CMS XEDIT or COPYFILE can be used to reformat the file.

ASMACMS010E file name omitted and FILEDEF '*ddname***' is undefined**

Explanation: You have not included a file name in the ASMAHL command, and no FILEDEF could be found for the *ddname* specified.

System Action: RC=24. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Reissue the ASMAHL command and specify a file name, or issue a FILEDEF for the *ddname* specified.

ASMACMS011E file name omitted and FILEDEF '*ddname***' is not for DISK**

Explanation: You have not included a file name in the ASMAHL command, and the FILEDEF for the *ddname* specified is not for DISK.

System Action: RC=24. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Reissue the ASMAHL command and specify a file name, or reissue the FILEDEF for the ddname specified with a device type of 'DISK'.

ASMACMS038E Filename conflict for the SYSIN FILEDEF.

Explanation: The file name specified on the ASMAHL command conflicts with the file name on the FILEDEF for the SYSIN ddname.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Reissue the FILEDEF command or the ASMAHL command specifying the same file name.

ASMACMS040E Saved segment *xxxxxxxx* **does not exist**

Explanation: The specified saved segment has not been included in the System Names Table (SNT).

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates.

Programmer Response: See your system administrator.

ASMACMS041E The storage for saved segment *xxxxxxxx* **is already in use**

Explanation: The storage for the specified saved segment has already been used by another saved segment.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates.

Programmer Response: See your system administrator.

ASMACMS042E SEGMENT error *nnn* loading saved segment *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An error occurred when the ASMAHL command attempted to load the specified saved segment.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates.

Programmer Response: See your system administrator.

ASMACMS043E DIAGNOSE error *nnn* loading saved segment *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: An error occurred when the ASMAHL command attempted to load the specified saved segment.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates.

Programmer Response: See your system administrator.

ASMACMS044E NUCXLOAD error *nnn* loading *xxxxxxxx* module

Explanation: An error occurred when the ASMAHL command attempted to load the specified module.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates.

Programmer Response: See your system administrator.

ASMACMS052E Option list exceeds 512 characters.

Explanation: The string of options that you specified with your ASMAHL command exceeded 512 characters in length.

System Action: RC=24. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Reissue your ASMAHL command with fewer options specified.

ASMACMS062E Invalid character *c* in file name *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: A character that is not permitted was specified in the file name specified on the ASMAHL command.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Check the format of the option with its correct parameters, and reissue the command with the correct parameter.

ASMACMS070E Left parenthesis '(' required before option list

Explanation: An option was specified after the file name but before the left parenthesis on the ASMAHL command.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Issue the ASMAHL command again with the option specified after the left parenthesis. Only the file name can be specified before the left parenthesis.

ASMACMS074E Required module *xxxxxxxx* MODULE not found

Explanation: The ASMAHL command was unable to load the specified module.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Verify you have accessed the disk containing the assembler and issue the ASMAHL command again.

ASMACMS075E Device *device* invalid for *xxxxxxxx*

Explanation: The device specified in your FILEDEF command cannot be used for the input or output operation that is requested in your program. For example, you have tried to read data from the printer or write data to the reader.

Supplemental Information: The variable device name in the text of the message indicates the incorrect device that was specified.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates. The system remains in the same status as before the command was entered.

Programmer Response: Reissue your FILEDEF command, specifying the correct device for the required input operation.

ASMACMS076E *xxxxxxxx* MODULE IS NOT IN RELEASE 4 FORMAT

Explanation: The module *xxxxxxxx* is not in the required format for Release 4.

Note: This message is only produced in uppercase English.

System Action: RC=40. Processing of the command terminates.

Programmer Response: Ensure that you have the correct version of the module available. Check the disks you have linked, and make sure you are not accessing modules from an earlier release of High Level Assembler. If the module is ASMADOPT, you

might need to reassemble your default options module with the ASMAOPT macro provided with High Level Assembler Release 4. If you cannot resolve the problem, contact your High Level Assembler maintenance programmer, or your IBM service representative.

Appendix H. User Interface Macros

The macros identified in this appendix are provided as programming interfaces by High Level Assembler.

Attention: Do not use any High Level Assembler macros, other than those identified in this appendix, as programming interfaces.

The following macros intended for customers are all General-Use Programming Interfaces.

ASMADATA Maps the records in the associated data file.

ASMAEFNP Maps the parameter list passed to external function routines for the SETAF and SETCF conditional assembler instructions.

ASMAXFMB On MVS and CMS, generates the Filter Management Table used by the sample ADATA user exit ASMAXADT.

ASMAXITP Maps the parameter list passed to the assembler user exits.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Appendix I. Sample ADATA User Exit (MVS and CMS)

ASMAXADT is a sample ADATA exit supplied with High Level Assembler.

Function

The sample ADATA exit handles the details of interfaces to the assembler, and provides associated data (ADATA) records to any of a number of *filter modules* that inspect the records to extract the information they require. This allows filter modules to be added or modified without impacting either the exit or the other filter modules.

The design of the exit:

- Supports multiple simultaneous filter modules.
- Simplifies the ADATA record interface for each filter, because you don't need to know about the complex details of interacting directly with the assembler.
- Supports filter modules written in high level languages.

The three components that make up the functional ADATA exit are:

1. The exit routine, ASMAXADT, which is invoked by High Level Assembler
2. A table of filter module names, contained in a *Filter Management Table* (FMT) module ASMAXFMT. The FMT is loaded by the exit routine.
3. The filter modules. These are loaded by the exit as directed by the FMT. A sample filter module, ASMAXFLU, is provided with High Level Assembler.

Preparing the Exit

Before the exit can be used it must be assembled and link-edited, and the load module placed in a library in the standard search order. ASMAXADT, as supplied, has the following attributes: reusable, reenterable, amode(24), rmode(24).

Refer to Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79 for further information about coding and preparing user exits.

Preparing the Filter Management Table

The names of the filter modules to be invoked by the user exit are contained in the Filter Management Table (FMT). The FMT is generated by using the macro ASMAXFMB. The names of the filter modules are specified as operands to the ASMAXFMB macro. Figure 99 shows an example of how to create an FMT that causes the filters `MYFILT`, `YOURFILT`, `HERFILT`, `HISFILT`, and `OURFILT` to be invoked by the exit.

```
ASMAXFMT Title 'ADATA Exit Filter Management Table'
         ASMAXFMB MYFILT,YOURFILT,HERFILT,HISFILT,OURFILT
         END
```

Figure 99. Creating a Filter Management Table

The object file produced from the assembly must be link-edited, and the load module placed in a library in the standard search order. ASMAXFMT, as supplied, has the following attributes: reusable, non-reenterable, non-shareable.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

You can specify an initial character string as part of the filter operand that is passed to the filter routine during initialization. Figure 100 on page 363 shows two filter routines: MYFILT, that receives the characters “A,B,C”, and ASMAXFLU, that receives the characters “DUMP”.

```
ASMAXFMT Title 'ADATA Exit Filter Management Table'
         ASMAXFMB (MYFILT,'A,B,C'),(ASMAXFLU,'DUMP')
         END
```

Figure 100. Passing Initial Character String to Filter Routines

The default FMT control section (CSECT) name is ASMAXFMT. You can specify a different CSECT name using the SECT keyword on the ASMAXFMB macro. Figure 101 shows how to generate a CSECT name of MYFMT.

```
ASMAXFMT Title 'ADATA Exit Filter Management Table'
         ASMAXFMB SECT=MYFMT,(MYFILT,'A,B,C'),YOURFILT
         END
```

Figure 101. Generating an Alternative CSECT Name

Preparing the Filter Modules

The exit routine loads the Filter Management Table (FMT) module. The filter modules specified in the FMT are then loaded by the exit routine. Each filter module is called by the exit in three ways: once to process an OPEN request, multiple times to process ADATA records, and once to process a CLOSE request.

Call Interface: The filter modules must be placed in a library in the standard search order.

Each filter is called by the exit using the standard call interface in the following form:

```
CALL filter(exit_type,action,return_code,handle,record_length,record)
```

The exit branches to the filter module using the BASR assembler instruction.

Registers on Entry: Standard OS linkage conventions are used, and the registers on entry to the filter module are:

- R13 contains the address of a standard 18-word save area
- R14 contains the return address to the exit
- R15 contains the filter's entry point address
- R1 contains the address of a list of six fullwords that address:
  1. A fullword containing the `exit_type`
  2. A fullword integer containing the `action` code
  3. A fullword integer where the filter puts the `return_code`
  4. A 4-fullword `handle` area
  5. A fullword integer containing the ADATA `record_length`
  6. The ADATA `record`

The high-order bit of the last fullword address is set to one.

Figure 102 shows the six fullwords in the parameter list.

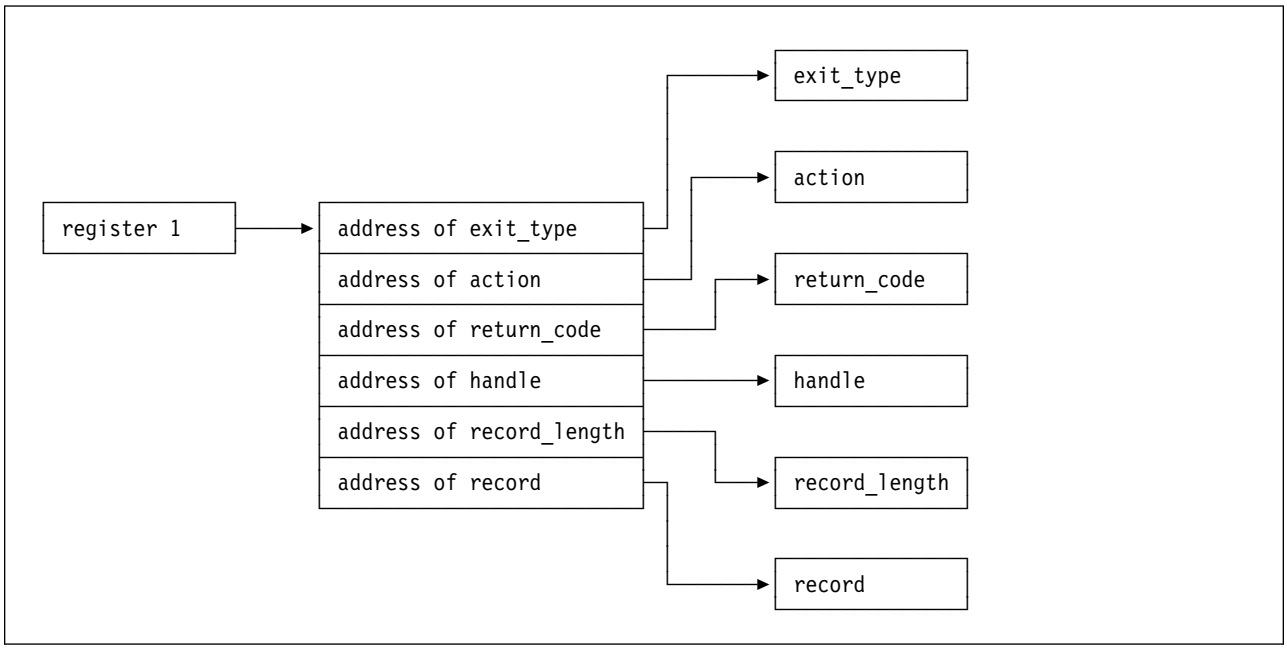


Figure 102. Filter Module Parameter List Format

Parameters on Entry: The six parameters are:

exit_type (Input) The address of a fullword of storage that indicates the exit type. The value is always 4, to indicate an ADATA exit.

action (Input) The address of a fullword integer that can be one of the following three values:

0 OPEN Request. Open and initialize the filter. No ADATA record is available with this call, although there may be initial character string data supplied.

The exit accepts the following return codes:

0 The open action was successful. The exit subsequently calls the filter module to inspect and process each ADATA record.

12 The open action was unsuccessful. The filter module is assumed to have closed itself, and is not called again.

1 CLOSE Request. The exit is requesting the filter module to close itself. No ADATA record is available with this call and no further calls are made to the filter module.

The exit accepts the following return codes:

0 The filter module has closed successfully. The exit can delete the filter.

12 The filter module is assumed to have closed itself, and is not called again. The exit can delete the filter.

3 PROCESS Request. A record is available to the filter module for processing. The ADATA record should not be modified.

The exit accepts the following return codes:

0 The filter module has completed its processing of this record, and is ready to accept further records.

12 The filter module is assumed to have closed itself, and is not called again.

return_code (Output) The address of a fullword integer where the filter module should place a return code. Valid return codes are described under each `action`.

handle (Input/Output) The address of a 4-fullword area of storage that is initialized to zero before the OPEN (`action=0`) call to the filter. Its contents are preserved across subsequent calls. The `handle` can be used in any way by the filter module; for example, to address working storage for a reenterable filter module.

record_length (Input) The address of a fullword integer containing the length of the ADATA `record`. A length is provided for PROCESS (`action=3`) calls, and for OPEN (`action=0`) calls when you supply an initial character string.

record (Input) The address of the ADATA record. This points to the ADATA record for PROCESS (`action=3`) calls, and to the initial character string for OPEN (`action=0`) calls.

Information Messages: If all the filter modules request termination before the last ADATA record is processed, the following message is issued and the assembly continues:

```
ASMA700I All SYSADATA filter modules requested early termination
```

Error Diagnostic Messages: When the Filter Management Table routine detects an error it directs the assembler to issue message ASMA940U and the assembly stops. The following text might be included in the ASMA940U message:

```
SYSADATA exit not coded at same level of interface definition (2) as
assembler
```

The exit uses version 2 of the exit definition, but the assembler uses a different version.

```
SYSADATA exit called for other than SYSADATA
```

The exit was invoked with a valid type, but the type is not one that the exit can process. This is probably caused by an incorrect ADEXIT() suboption of the EXIT assembler option.

```
SYSADATA exit not initialized, and not entered for OPEN
```

The exit has not yet been initialized, but was not entered with an OPEN request (`action=0`). There may be a failure in communication between the assembler and the exit.

```
SYSADATA exit initialized, but was entered for OPEN
```

The exit has been initialized, but was unexpectedly entered with an OPEN request (`action=0`). There may be a failure in communication between the assembler and the exit.

`SYSADATA exit - Invalid action or operation type requested`

An action was requested that is inconsistent with the type of action the exit is able or was expecting to take. There may be a failure in communication between the assembler and the exit.

`SYSADATA exit - Expecting input record, zero record length found`

The exit was expecting an input record, but the record length was zero. There may be a failure in communication between the assembler and the exit.

`Unable to load xxxxxxxx module. SYSADATA exit failed`

The assembler was unable to load the Filter Management Table module *xxxxxxxx*. No SYSADATA processing is possible.

`All SYSADATA filter modules failed to open`

All of the filter modules loaded by the exit failed to open. No SYSADATA processing is possible.

Preparing the Sample Filter Module ASMAXFLU

You can use the supplied filter routine, ASMAXFLU, to:

- Write the names of the primary input and library data sets to a data set.
- Dump the first 32 bytes of each ADATA record to a data set. This function is only performed if you specify DUMP as the initial character string, as shown in Figure 103.

```
ASMAXFMT Title 'ADATA Exit Filter Management Table'
         ASMAXFMB (ASMAXFLU,'DUMP')
         END
```

Figure 103. Initial Character String for ASMAXFLU

Output from ASMAXFLU: The output from ASMAXFLU is written to a data set defined by the ddname XFLUOUT. The data set record length is 80 bytes. The first record in the data set is a header record, and the last record in the data set is a trailer record. The dump, header, and trailer records are prefixed with an asterisk.

The data set records have one of the following formats:

Columns	Contents
1	Record type: “P”=Primary Input, “L”=Library
2	Blank
3–10	Date, in *YYYYMMDD* format (blank for type “L”)
11–14	Time, in *HHMM* format (blank for type “L”)
15–58	Data set name
59–66	Member name
67–72	Volume ID where file was found
73-80	Sequencing information

or

Columns	Contents
1	Record type: “M”=Inline MACRO
2	Blank
3–15	“PRIMARY INPUT”
16–17	Blank
18–80	Macro name (can be up to 63 characters)

Figure 104 shows a sample data set containing records written by ASMAXFLU:

```
----+----1----+----2----+----3----+----4----+----5----+----6----+----7----+----8

* ASMAXFLU Filter Header Record
*Dump 10000203 00000000 00000008 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
*Dump 10000103 00000000 0000000A B0CC4378 E50BF900 00250000 00000000 00000000
*Dump 10000003 00000000 00000077 F1F9F9F8 F0F7F2F4 F1F9F3F3 F5F6F9F6 60F2F3F4
P 199807241933AINSERT3 ASSEMBLE A1                                  ADISK 00000001
*Dump 10001003 00000000 00000068 A0CF0049 84BC0601 0F008000 40404040 40404040
*Dump 10002003 00000000 00000028 00000000 00000001 00000000 00000000 00000000
*Dump 10003003 00000000 0000009C 00000001 00000000 00000001 00000000 00010000
*Dump 10003003 00000000 0000009C 00000002 00000000 00000002 00000000 00010000
*Dump 10003003 00000000 0000009C 00000003 00000000 00000003 00000000 00010000
*Dump 10003003 00000000 0000009C 00000004 00000000 00000004 00000000 00010000
*Dump 10003003 00000000 0000009C 00000005 00000000 00000005 00000000 00010000
*Dump 10003003 00000000 0000009C 00000006 00000000 00000006 00000000 00010000
*Dump 10004203 00000000 0000002A 00000001 0000000F 01D10000 00010001 00000000
*Dump 10004403 00000000 0000001D 00080000 000F0001 40000000 00000000 C1C9D5E3
*Dump 10006003 00000000 0000003B 0002000D 0000FFFF 00060000 0000D7D9 C9D4C1D9
M PRIMARY INPUT  AINSERT_TEST_MACRO
M PRIMARY INPUT  MAC1
*Dump 10006003 00000000 00000039 00020014 00050001 00060000 0000E3C5 E2E34040
L             TEST     MACLIB   A1                       XIT1    ADISK
L             TEST     MACLIB   A1                       XIT3    ADISK
*Dump 10006003 00000000 00000033 00010014 00050002 00060000 0000C4E2 C5C3E340
L             DSECT    MACLIB   A1                       XIT2    ADISK
*Dump 10006203 00000000 000000A6 00000000 00000003 D7400000 00000000 0000C1C9
*Dump 10006203 00000000 000000A6 00000000 0000001C D7400000 00000000 0000D4C1
*Dump 10006203 00000000 000000A6 00000002 00000000 D3400000 00000000 0000E7C9
*Dump 10006203 00000000 000000A6 00000003 00000000 D3400000 00000000 0000E7C9
*Dump 10006203 00000000 000000A6 00000002 00000000 D3400000 00000000 0000E7C9
*Dump 10009003 00000000 000000B0 00000DF3 000000C8 00000012 00000000 00000000
*Dump 10000203 00000000 00000008 00010000 0000003D 00000000 00000000 00000000
* ASMAXFLU Filter Trailer Record
```

Figure 104. Sample Output Data Set from ASMAXFLU

Error Messages: When ASMAXFLU detects an error, it writes an error message to the XFLUOUT data set. The following messages might be written:

- `ASMAXFLU called with unknown ADATA Definition Level.`

  Check the value of ADATA_LEVEL in the ADATA record header.

- `ASMAXFLU called for other than Assembler ADATA?`

  Check the value of ADATA_VERSION in the ADATA record header.

- `ASMAXFLU library record has no member names?`

  Check the value of ADMXREF_NUM in the X'0060' ADATA record.

- `ASMAXFLU library record missing member data?`

  Check the value of the member name length in the X'0060' ADATA record.

- `ASMAXFLU Job-ID record has no file names?`

  Check the value of ADJID_NUM_INPUT_FILES in the X'0000' ADATA record.

- `ASMAXFLU called with unrecognized action code.`

  The `action` code is not 0, 1, or 3.

- `ASMAXFLU called with unrecognized exit type.`

  The `exit_type` is not 4.

Assembling and Link-Editing ASMAXFLU: You must assemble and link-edit ASMAXFLU, placing the load module in a library in the standard search order. ASMAXFLU, as supplied, has the following attributes: non-reusable, non-reenterable, amode(24), rmode(24). See page 363 for details about preparing filter modules.

Invoking the Exit

To invoke the exit, specify the EXIT assembler option as follows:

```
EXIT(ADEXIT(ASMAXADT))
```

If you don't want to use the default filter management table ASMAXFMT, you can specify a different name as follows:

```
EXIT(ADEXIT(ASMAXADT(fmt_name))
```

where *fmt_name* is the load module name of the filter management table. See Figure 101 on page 363, which shows you how to generate an alternative filter management table.

Appendix J. Sample LISTING User Exit (MVS and CMS)

ASMAXPRT is a sample LISTING exit supplied with High Level Assembler.

Function

The sample LISTING exit suppresses printing of the High Level Assembler Options Summary, or the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary, or both. It can also print the Options Summary page at the end of the listing, instead of its normal position at the beginning of the listing.

Preparing the Exit

Before the exit can be used it must be assembled and link-edited, and the load module (phase) placed in a library in the standard search order. ASMAXPRT, as supplied, has the following attributes: reusable, reenterable, amode(31), rmode(any).

Refer to Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79 for further information about coding and preparing user exits.

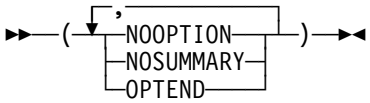
Invoking the Exit

To invoke the exit, specify the EXIT assembler option as follows:

```
EXIT(PRTEXIT(ASMAXPRT(parameter-string)))
```

where *parameter-string* controls what action the exit performs.

Parameter String



Default

None. At least one keyword is required.

Abbreviations

NOOP, NOSUM

The abbreviations shown here are the minimum number of characters allowed. You can, for example, specify NOOPTI or NOSUMM.

NOOPTION

Suppress the Options Summary

NOSUMMARY

Suppress the Diagnostic Cross Reference and Assembler Summary

OPTEND

Print the Options Summary at the end of the assembler listing, instead of at the beginning.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Messages

ASMAXPRT might issue message ASMA701W as follows:

```
** ASMA701W LISTING: ASMAXPRT - Invalid Option Specified: xxxxxxxx
```

This message is issued because the value *xxxxxxxx*, specified as an exit string of the EXIT assembler option, is not recognized by ASMAXPRT.

The exit uses the keyword options processed until the error was detected. Any values in the exit string after *xxxxxxxx* are ignored.

```
** ASMA701W LISTING: ASMAXPRT - No options specified
```

This message is issued because ASMAXPRT expects one or more keyword options in the exit string of the EXIT assembler option.

```
** ASMA701W LISTING: ASMAXPRT - Exit buffer is full
```

This message is issued because ASMAXPRT, as supplied, only supports a maximum of 60 lines for the Options Summary page. To increase this value, or change it to allow an unlimited number of lines, modify the exit source then assemble and link-edit it.

This error might cause an incomplete Options Summary page.

Appendix K. Sample SOURCE User Exit (MVS and CMS)

ASMAXINV is a sample SOURCE exit supplied with High Level Assembler.

Function

The sample SOURCE exit reads variable-length source data sets. Each record that is read is passed to the assembler as an 80-byte source statement. If any record in the input data set is longer than 71 characters, the remaining part of the record is converted into continuation records.

The exit also reads a data set with a fixed record length of 80 bytes.

Preparing the Exit

Before the exit can be used it must be assembled and link-edited, and the load module (phase) placed in a library in the standard search order. ASMAXINV, as supplied, has the following attributes: reusable, reenterable, amode(24), rmode(24).

Refer to Chapter 4, “Providing User Exits” on page 79 for further information about coding and preparing user exits.

Invoking the Exit

To invoke the exit specify the EXIT assembler option as follows:

```
EXIT(INEXIT(ASMAXINV))
```

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Appendix L. How to Generate a Translation Table

High Level Assembler uses the EBCDIC character set to represent characters contained in character (C-type) data constants (DCs) and literals. The TRANSLATE assembler option lets you specify a module containing a translation table which the assembler uses to convert these characters into another character set.

High Level Assembler provides an ASCII translation table; however, you can supply your own translation table. The translation table module must be named ASMALT*xx*, where *xx* is the suffix specified in the TRANSLATE assembler option. See "TRANSLATE" on page 74.

Preparing the Translation Table: The user-supplied translation table must be assembled and link-edited into a library in the standard load module search order. The full name of the translation table load module name must occupy bytes 257 to 264 of the module. The first byte of the module must be the first byte of the translation table.

A sample translation table to convert a subset of EBCDIC characters into ASCII characters is shown in Figure 105 on page 373. Specify the TRANSLATE(U1) assembler option to use this translation table.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

```
&LT      SETC  'ASMALTU1'
&LT      CSECT
         DC    256X'00'
         ORG   &LT+64
         DC    X'20'            EBCDIC: X'40' blank
         ORG   &LT+75
         DC    X'2E3C282B'      EBCDIC: .<(+
         ORG   &LT+80
         DC    X'26'            EBCDIC: &
         ORG   &LT+90
         DC    X'21242A293B'    EBCDIC: !$*);
         ORG   &LT+96
         DC    X'2D2F'          EBCDIC: -/
         ORG   &LT+106
         DC    X'7C2C255F3E3F'  EBCDIC: ],%_>?
         ORG   &LT+121
         DC    X'603A23402C3D'  EBCDIC:  :#@'=
         ORG   &LT+127
         DC    X'22'            EBCDIC: "
         ORG   &LT+129
         DC    X'616263646566'  EBCDIC: abcdef
         ORG   &LT+135
         DC    X'676869'        EBCDIC: ghi
         ORG   &LT+145
         DC    X'6A6B6C6D6E6F'  EBCDIC: jklmno
         ORG   &LT+151
         DC    X'707172'        EBCDIC: pqr
         ORG   &LT+161
         DC    X'7E7374757677'  EBCDIC: ~stuvw
         ORG   &LT+167
         DC    X'78797A'        EBCDIC: xyz
         ORG   &LT+192
         DC    X'7B41424344'    EBCDIC: {ABCD
         ORG   &LT+197
         DC    X'4546474849'    EBCDIC: EFGHI
         ORG   &LT+208
         DC    X'7D4A4B4C4D'    EBCDIC: }JKLM
         ORG   &LT+213
         DC    X'4E4F505152'    EBCDIC: NOPQR
         ORG   &LT+224
         DC    X'5C'            EBCDIC: \
         ORG   &LT+226
         DC    X'53545556'      EBCDIC: STUV
         ORG   &LT+230
         DC    X'5758595A'      EBCDIC: WXYZ
         ORG   &LT+240
         DC    X'3031323334'    EBCDIC: 01234
         ORG   &LT+245
         DC    X'3536373839'    EBCDIC: 56789
         ORG   &LT+256
         DC    CL8'&LT'         Table name = Module name
         END
```

Figure 105. Sample Translation Table

Appendix M. How to Generate a Unicode Translation Table

High Level Assembler supports the definition of EBCDIC SBCS data constants which are converted to Unicode data constants. A Unicode character (CU-type) data constant (DC) is converted to a Unicode DBCS constant using a code page module. This module is identified using the CODEPAGE assembler option (see "CODEPAGE" on page 44). The code page module must be named ASMA*xxxx*, where *xxxx* is the value supplied to the CODEPAGE assembler option.

Preparing the Unicode Translation Table: The user-supplied Unicode translation table must be assembled and link-edited into a library in the standard load module search order. The full name of the translation table load module name must occupy bytes 1 to 8 of the module. The address of the translation table must be in bytes 65 to 68 of the module. The translation table must begin in byte 133 of the module and must be 512 bytes in length.

A sample Unicode translation table is shown in Figure 105 on page 373. Specify the CODEPAGE(X'FFFF') assembler option to use this translation table.

The first five DCs in this module are an eye-catcher, which is information that is easy to read from a dump. The eye-catcher includes useful information such as the date and time the module was built, and the PTF level.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

```
ASMAFFFF CSECT
ASMAFFFF AMODE 31
ASMAFFFF RMODE ANY
         DC    C'ASMAFFFF'       Module name
         DC    CL8'&SYSPARM '    PTF
         DC    CL8'&SYSDATC'     Date
         DC    CL8'&SYSTIME'     Time
         DC    CL32'Module Description'
         DC    A(UNICODE)        Address of UNICODE translation table
UNICODE  DS    0H
         DC    X'0000'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 00
         DC    X'0001'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 01
         DC    X'0002'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 02
         DC    X'0003'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 03
         DC    X'009C'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 04
         DC    X'0009'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 05
         DC    X'0086'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 06
         DC    X'007F'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 07
         DC    X'0097'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 08
         DC    X'008D'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 09
         DC    X'008E'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 0A
         DC    X'000B'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 0B
         DC    X'000C'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 0C
         DC    X'000D'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 0D
         DC    X'000E'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 0E
         DC    X'000F'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 0F
         DC    X'0010'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 10
         DC    X'0011'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 11
         DC    X'0012'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 12
         DC    X'0013'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 13
         DC    X'009D'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 14
         DC    X'0085'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 15
         DC    X'0008'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 16
         DC    X'0087'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 17
         DC    X'0018'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 18
         DC    X'0019'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 19
         DC    X'0092'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 1A
         DC    X'008F'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 1B
         DC    X'001C'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 1C
         DC    X'001D'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 1D
         DC    X'001E'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 1E
         DC    X'001F'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 1F
         DC    X'0080'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 20
         DC    X'0081'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 21
         DC    X'0082'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 22
         DC    X'0083'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 23
         DC    X'0084'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 24
         DC    X'000A'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 25
         DC    X'0017'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 26
         DC    X'001B'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 27
         DC    X'0088'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 28
         DC    X'0089'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 29
         DC    X'008A'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 2A
         DC    X'008B'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 2B
         DC    X'008C'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 2C
         DC    X'0005'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 2D
         DC    X'0006'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 2E
         DC    X'0007'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 2F
         DC    X'0090'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 30
         DC    X'0091'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 31
         DC    X'0016'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 32
         DC    X'0093'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 33
         DC    X'0094'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 34
         DC    X'0095'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 35
         DC    X'0096'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 36
         DC    X'0004'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 37
         DC    X'0098'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 38
         DC    X'0099'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 39
         DC    X'009A'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value 3A
```

Figure 106 (Part 1 of 4). Sample Unicode Translation Table

```
DC    X'009B'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 3B
DC    X'0014'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 3C
DC    X'0015'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 3D
DC    X'009E'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 3E
DC    X'001A'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 3F
DC    X'0020'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 40
DC    X'00A0'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 41
DC    X'00E2'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 42
DC    X'00E4'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 43
DC    X'00E0'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 44
DC    X'00E1'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 45
DC    X'00E3'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 46
DC    X'00E5'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 47
DC    X'00E7'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 48
DC    X'00F1'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 49
DC    X'005B'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 4A
DC    X'002E'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 4B
DC    X'003C'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 4C
DC    X'0028'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 4D
DC    X'002B'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 4E
DC    X'0021'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 4F
DC    X'0026'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 50
DC    X'00E9'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 51
DC    X'00EA'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 52
DC    X'00EB'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 53
DC    X'00E8'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 54
DC    X'00ED'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 55
DC    X'00EE'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 56
DC    X'00EF'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 57
DC    X'00EC'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 58
DC    X'00DF'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 59
DC    X'005D'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 5A
DC    X'0024'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 5B
DC    X'002A'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 5C
DC    X'0029'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 5D
DC    X'003B'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 5E
DC    X'005E'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 5F
DC    X'002D'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 60
DC    X'002F'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 61
DC    X'00C2'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 62
DC    X'00C4'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 63
DC    X'00C0'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 64
DC    X'00C1'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 65
DC    X'00C3'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 66
DC    X'00C5'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 67
DC    X'00C7'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 68
DC    X'00D1'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 69
DC    X'00A6'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 6A
DC    X'002C'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 6B
DC    X'0025'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 6C
DC    X'005F'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 6D
DC    X'003E'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 6E
DC    X'003F'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 6F
DC    X'00F8'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 70
DC    X'00C9'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 71
DC    X'00CA'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 72
DC    X'00CB'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 73
DC    X'00C8'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 74
DC    X'00CD'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 75
DC    X'00CE'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 76
DC    X'00CF'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 77
DC    X'00CC'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 78
DC    X'0060'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 79
DC    X'003A'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 7A
DC    X'0023'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 7B
DC    X'0040'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 7C
DC    X'0027'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 7D
DC    X'003D'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 7E
DC    X'0022'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 7F
```

Figure 106 (Part 2 of 4). Sample Unicode Translation Table

```
DC    X'00D8'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 80
DC    X'0061'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 81
DC    X'0062'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 82
DC    X'0063'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 83
DC    X'0064'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 84
DC    X'0065'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 85
DC    X'0066'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 86
DC    X'0067'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 87
DC    X'0068'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 88
DC    X'0069'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 89
DC    X'00AB'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 8A
DC    X'00BB'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 8B
DC    X'00F0'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 8C
DC    X'00FD'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 8D
DC    X'00FE'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 8E
DC    X'00B1'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 8F
DC    X'00B0'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 90
DC    X'006A'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 91
DC    X'006B'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 92
DC    X'006C'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 93
DC    X'006D'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 94
DC    X'006E'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 95
DC    X'006F'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 96
DC    X'0070'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 97
DC    X'0071'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 98
DC    X'0072'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 99
DC    X'00AA'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 9A
DC    X'00BA'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 9B
DC    X'00E6'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 9C
DC    X'00B8'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 9D
DC    X'00C6'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 9E
DC    X'20AC'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value 9F
DC    X'00B5'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A0
DC    X'007E'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A1
DC    X'0073'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A2
DC    X'0074'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A3
DC    X'0075'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A4
DC    X'0076'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A5
DC    X'0077'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A6
DC    X'0078'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A7
DC    X'0079'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A8
DC    X'007A'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value A9
DC    X'00A1'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value AA
DC    X'00BF'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value AB
DC    X'00D0'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value AC
DC    X'00DD'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value AD
DC    X'00DE'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value AE
DC    X'00AE'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value AF
DC    X'00A2'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B0
DC    X'00A3'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B1
DC    X'00A5'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B2
DC    X'00B7'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B3
DC    X'00A9'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B4
DC    X'00A7'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B5
DC    X'00B6'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B6
DC    X'00BC'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B7
DC    X'00BD'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B8
DC    X'00BE'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value B9
DC    X'00AC'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value BA
DC    X'007C'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value BB
DC    X'00AF'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value BC
DC    X'00A8'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value BD
DC    X'00B4'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value BE
DC    X'00D7'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value BF
DC    X'007B'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value C0
DC    X'0041'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value C1
DC    X'0042'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value C2
DC    X'0043'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value C3
DC    X'0044'          EBCDIC hexadecimal value C4
```

Figure 106 (Part 3 of 4). Sample Unicode Translation Table

```
         DC    X'0045'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value C5
         DC    X'0046'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value C6
         DC    X'0047'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value C7
         DC    X'0048'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value C8
         DC    X'0049'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value C9
         DC    X'00AD'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value CA
         DC    X'00F4'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value CB
         DC    X'00F6'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value CC
         DC    X'00F2'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value CD
         DC    X'00F3'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value CE
         DC    X'00F5'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value CF
         DC    X'007D'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D0
         DC    X'004A'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D1
         DC    X'004B'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D2
         DC    X'004C'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D3
         DC    X'004D'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D4
         DC    X'004E'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D5
         DC    X'004F'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D6
         DC    X'0050'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D7
         DC    X'0051'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D8
         DC    X'0052'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value D9
         DC    X'00B9'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value DA
         DC    X'00FB'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value DB
         DC    X'00FC'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value DC
         DC    X'00F9'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value DD
         DC    X'00FA'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value DE
         DC    X'00FF'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value DF
         DC    X'005C'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E0
         DC    X'00F7'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E1
         DC    X'0053'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E2
         DC    X'0054'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E3
         DC    X'0055'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E4
         DC    X'0056'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E5
         DC    X'0057'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E6
         DC    X'0058'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E7
         DC    X'0059'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E8
         DC    X'005A'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value E9
         DC    X'00B2'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value EA
         DC    X'00D4'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value EB
         DC    X'00D6'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value EC
         DC    X'00D2'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value ED
         DC    X'00D3'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value EE
         DC    X'00D5'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value EF
         DC    X'0030'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F0
         DC    X'0031'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F1
         DC    X'0032'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F2
         DC    X'0033'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F3
         DC    X'0034'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F4
         DC    X'0035'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F5
         DC    X'0036'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F6
         DC    X'0037'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F7
         DC    X'0038'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F8
         DC    X'0039'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value F9
         DC    X'00B3'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value FA
         DC    X'00DB'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value FB
         DC    X'00DC'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value FC
         DC    X'00D9'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value FD
         DC    X'00DA'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value FE
         DC    X'009F'           EBCDIC hexadecimal value FF
         END
```

Figure 106 (Part 4 of 4). Sample Unicode Translation Table

Notices

This information was developed for products and services offered in the U.S.A.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
U.S.A.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Corporation
Mail Station P300
522 South Road
Poughkeepsie New York 12601-5400
U.S.A.

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation
Licensing
2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku
Tokyo 106, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law: INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM Web sites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those Web sites. The materials at those Web sites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those Web sites is at your own risk.

If you are viewing this information softcopy, the photographs and color illustrations may not appear.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

Trademarks

The following are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation in the United States, or other countries, or both:

DFSMS
DFSMS/MVS
Enterprise System/9000
Enterprise Systems Architecture/370
Enterprise Systems Architecture/390
ES/9000
ESA/390
IBM
MVS/DFP
MVS/ESA
MVS/XA
OpenEdition
OS/390
S/370
SP
System/370
System/390
VM/ESA
VSE/ESA
400
3090

Glossary

This glossary defines terms that are used in the High Level Assembler publications. Some of these terms might not be used in this publication.

This glossary has three main types of definitions that apply:

- To the assembler language in particular (usually distinguished by reference to the words "assembler," "assembly," etc.)
- To programming in general
- To data processing as a whole

If you do not understand the meaning of a data processing term used in any of the definitions below, refer to *Vocabulary for Data Processing, Telecommunications, and Office Systems*, GC20-1699.

IBM is grateful to the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) for permission to reprint its definitions from the American National Standard Vocabulary for Information Processing, which was prepared by Subcommittee X3K5 on Terminology and Glossary of American National Standards Committee X3. ANSI definitions are preceded by an asterisk (*).

absolute expression. An expression is absolute if its value does not change upon program relocation.

absolute value. Is the value of a term when that value does not change upon program relocation.

addressing mode (24-bit). A System/370 addressing mode (AMODE) of the extended architecture that allows a program to run using 24-bit addresses. When operating in 24-bit mode, S/370 addressing architecture is applied. Other facilities of the extended architecture (see below) may be utilized. Only the low-order 24 bits of an address are used; the high-order bits are ignored.

addressing mode (31-bit). An extended architecture addressing mode (AMODE) that allows a program to run using 31-bit addresses, other facilities of the extended architecture, or both. When operating in 31-bit mode, extended architecture addressing is applied, and all but the high-order bit of an address are used to address storage.

assemble. To prepare a machine language program from a symbolic language program by substituting machine operation codes for symbolic operation codes and absolute or relocatable addresses for symbolic addresses.

***assembler**. A computer program that assembles.

assembler instruction. An assembler language source statement that causes the assembler to do a specific operation. Assembler instructions are not translated into machine instructions.

assembler language. A source language that includes symbolic machine language statements in which there is a one-to-one correspondence with the instruction formats and data formats of the computer. The assembler language also contains statements that represent assembler instructions and macro instructions.

automatic library call. The process by which the linkage editor or binder resolves external references by including additional members from the automatic call library.

bimodal program execution. A function of the extended architecture (see "addressing mode (31-bit)") that allows a program to run in 24-bit or 31-bit addressing mode. The addressing mode is under program control.

binder. The component of DFSMS/MVS which is responsible for linking and editing programs, to create either record format load modules or program objects. The DFSMS/MVS binder is a functional replacement for the MVS/DFP linkage editor.

bracketed DBCS. DBCS characters enclosed with a shift-out (SO) character and a shift-in character (SI) to identify them from SBCS, and containing no SBCS characters except SO and SI.

code page. An assignment of graphic characters and control function meanings to all code points.

code point. A 1-byte code representing one of 256 potential characters.

conditional assembly language. A programming language that the assembler processes during conditional assembly. The conditional assembly language can be used to perform general arithmetic and logical computations, generate machine and assembler instructions from model statements, and provide variable symbols to represent data and vary the content of model statements during generation. It can be used in macro definitions, and in open code.

CONTROL PROGRAM.. A program that is designed to schedule and supervise the performance of data processing work by a computing system; an operating system.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

control section (CSECT). That part of a program specified by the programmer to be a relocatable unit, all elements of which are to be loaded into adjoining main storage locations.

data attributes. Values assigned by the assembler which describe the characteristics of ordinary symbols and variable symbols that represent data.

***diagnostic**. Pertaining to the detection and isolation of a malfunction or mistake.

double-byte character set (DBCS). DBCS is a means of providing support for Ideographic Languages which contain too many symbols to be represented by a single byte character set such as EBCDIC. A valid double-byte character is defined as either DBCS blank (X'4040'), or a pair of bytes, each of which must be in the range X'41' to X'FE', inclusive.

double-byte data. Double-byte character strings are commonly referred to as double-byte data.

dummy control section (DSECT). A control section that an assembler can use to map an area of storage without producing any object code or data for that area. Synonymous with dummy section.

edited text. Source statements modified by the assembler for internal use. The initial processing of the assembler is referred to as editing.

enterprise systems architecture. A hardware architecture for the IBM 3090™ processor. A major characteristic is 31-bit addressing. See also "addressing mode (31-bit)."

***entry point**. A location in a module to which control can be passed from another module or from the control program.

extended architecture. A hardware architecture for systems beginning with the IBM 3081. A major characteristic is 31-bit addressing. See also "addressing mode (31-bit)."

external symbol dictionary (ESD). Control information associated with an object or load module which identifies the external symbols in the module.

global dictionary. An internal table used by the assembler during macro generation to contain the current values of all unique global SETA, SETB, and SETC variables from all text segments.

global vector table. A table of pointers in the skeleton dictionary of each text segment showing where the global variables are located in the global dictionary.

hierarchical file system. In MVS/ESA OpenEdition, a Hierarchical File System (HFS) is a collection of files organized in a hierarchy, as in a UNIX system. All files are members of a directory, and each directory is in turn a member of another directory at a higher level in the hierarchy. The highest level of the hierarchy is the root directory. MVS views an entire file hierarchy as a collection of hierarchical file system data sets (HFS data sets). Each HFS data set is a mountable file system. The Hierarchical File System is described in the *MVS/ESA OpenEdition MVS User's Guide*, SC23-3013.

instruction. *(1) A statement that specifies an operation and the values and locations of its operands. (2) See also "assembler instruction," "machine instruction," and "macro instruction."

job control language (JCL). A language used to code job control statements.

***job control statement**. A statement in a job that is used in identifying the job or describing its requirements to the operating system.

language. A set of representations, conventions, and rules used to convey information.

***language translator**. A general term for any assembler, compiler, or other routine that accepts statements in one language and produces equivalent statements in another language.

library macro definition. A macro definition that is stored in a macro library. The IBM-supplied supervisor and data management macro definitions are examples of library macro definitions.

linkage editor. A processing program that prepares the output of language translators to enable it to run. It combines separately produced object or load modules; resolves symbolic cross references among them; replaces, deletes, and adds control sections; generates overlay structures on request; and produces executable code (a load module) that is ready to be fetched into main storage and run.

linker. Used in this publication as collective term for *binder* and *linkage editor*.

load module. The output of a single linkage editor run. A load module is in a format suitable for loading into virtual storage and running.

loader. A processing program that does the basic editing functions of the linkage editor, and also fetches and gives control to the processed program. It accepts object modules and load modules created by the linkage editor and generates executable code directly in storage. The loader does not produce load modules for program libraries.

local dictionary. An internal table used by the assembler during macro generation to contain the

current values of all local SET symbols. There is one local dictionary for open code, and one for each macro definition.

location counter. A counter whose value indicates the assembled address of a machine instruction or a constant or the address of an area of reserved storage, relative to the beginning of the control section.

***machine instruction**. An instruction that a machine can recognize and execute.

***machine language**. A language that is used directly by the machine.

macro definition. A set of statements that defines the name of, format of, and conditions for generating a sequence of assembler language statements from a single source statement. This statement is a macro instruction that calls the definition. (See also "library macro definition" and "source macro definition.")

macro generation (macro expansion). An operation in which the assembler generates a sequence of assembler language statements from a single macro instruction, under conditions described by a macro definition.

macro instruction (macro call). An assembler language statement that causes the assembler to process a predefined set of statements (called a macro definition). The statements normally produced from the macro definition replace the macro instruction in the source program.

macro library. A library containing macro definitions. The supervisor and data management macro definitions supplied by IBM (GET, LINK, etc.) are contained in the system macro library. Private macro libraries can be concatenated with the system macro library.

macro prototype statement. An assembler language statement that specifies the mnemonic operation code and the format of all macro instructions that are used to call a macro definition.

MACRO statement. An assembler language statement that indicates the beginning of a macro definition. (Also known as a macro definition header).

main storage. All program addressable storage from which instructions may be executed and from which data can be loaded directly into registers.

MEND statement. An assembler language statement that indicates the end of a macro definition. (Also known as a macro definition trailer).

model statement. A statement from which assembler language statements are generated during conditional assembly.

object module. The machine-language output of a single run of an assembler or a compiler. An object module is used as input to the linkage editor, loader, or binder.

open code. The portion of a source module that lies outside of and after any source macro definitions that may be specified.

***operating system**. Software that controls the running of computer programs and which may provide scheduling, debugging, input/output control, accounting, compilation, storage assignment, data management, and related services. (see "control program.")

ordinary symbol attribute reference dictionary. A dictionary used by the assembler. The assembler puts an entry in it for each ordinary symbol encountered in the name field of a statement. The entry contains the attributes (type, length, etc.) of the symbol.

partitioned data set (PDS). A data set on direct access storage that is divided into partitions, called members, each of which can contain a program, part of a program, or data.

PDSE (partitioned data set extended). A system-managed data set that contains an indexed directory and members that are similar to the directory and members of partitioned data sets.

phase. The output of a single VSE linkage editor run. A phase is in a format suitable for loading into virtual storage

processing program. (1) A general term for any program that is not a control program. (2) Any program capable of operating in the problem program state. This includes IBM-distributed language translators, application programs, service programs, and user-written programs.

program. A general term for any combination of statements that can be interpreted by a computer or language translator, and that serves to do a specific function.

program fetch. A program that prepares programs for execution by loading them at specific storage locations and readjusting each (relocatable) address constant.

program library. A partitioned data set or PDSE (MVS), or Librarian library (VSE), that always contains named members.

program management binder. See *binder*.

program module. Used in this publication as collective term for *load module* and *program object*.

program object. All or part of a computer program in a form suitable for loading into main storage for execution. Program objects are stored in PDSE program libraries, and are produced by the Program Management Binder.

pure DBCS. DBCS characters not delimited by SO and SI. These characters must be known to be DBCS by some other method, such as the position in a record, or a field type descriptor in a database environment.

real storage. The storage of a System/370 computer from which the central processing unit can directly obtain instructions and data, and to which it can directly return results.

read-only control section (RSECT). That part of a program specified by the programmer to be a read-only executable control section. The assembler automatically checks the control section for possible coding violations of program reenterability, regardless of the setting of the RENT assembler option.

reenterable. An attribute that allows a program to be used concurrently by more than one task. This attribute is sometimes called *reentrant*.

refreshable. An attribute that allows a program to be replaced with a new copy without affecting its operation.

reusability. An attribute of a program that defines the scope to which it can be reused or shared by multiple tasks within an address space.

relocatable expression. An expression is relocatable if its value changes because the control section in which it appears is relocated.

relocatable value. Is the value of a term when that value changes because the control section in which it appears is relocated.

***relocation dictionary**. The part of an object or load module that identifies all addresses that must be adjusted when a relocation occurs.

residence mode. An extended architecture addressing mode (RMODE) that allows a program to specify the residence mode (below 16 megabytes or anywhere) to be associated with a control section.

return code. A value placed in the return code register at the completion of a program. The value is established by the user and may be used to influence the running of succeeding programs or, in the case of an abnormal end of task, may simply be printed for programmer analysis.

severity code. A code assigned by the assembler to each error detected in the source code. The highest code encountered during assembly becomes the return code of the assembly step.

shift-in (SI). The shift-in (SI) EBCDIC character (X'0F') delimits the end of double-byte data.

shift-out (SO). The shift-out (SO) EBCDIC character (X'0E') delimits the start of double-byte data.

skeleton dictionary. A dictionary built by the assembler for each text segment. It contains the global vector table, the sequence symbol reference dictionary, and the local dictionary.

source macro definition. A macro definition included in a source module, either physically or as the result of a COPY instruction.

source module. The source statements that constitute the input to a language translator for a particular translation.

source statement. A statement written in a programming language.

***statement**. A meaningful expression or generalized instruction in a programming language.

symbol file. A data set used by the assembler for symbol definitions and references and literals.

symbolic parameter. In assembler programming, a variable symbol declared in the prototype statement of a macro definition.

system macro definition. Loosely, an IBM-supplied library macro definition which provides access to operating system facilities.

text segment. The range over which a local dictionary has meaning. The source module is divided into text segments with a segment for open code and one for each macro definition.

***translate**. To transform statements from one language into another without significantly changing the meaning.

translate table. A table used to replace one or more characters with alternative characters.

virtual storage. Address space appearing to the user as real storage from which instructions and data are mapped into real storage locations. The size of virtual storage is limited by the addressing scheme of the computing system and by the amount of auxiliary storage available, rather than by the actual number of real storage locations.

ward. A set of DBCS characters which have the same high-order byte value. The first byte of a double-byte

character is known as the ward byte. A ward contains 190 characters. Ward X'42' defines the double-byte representation of those EBCDIC characters which are in the range X'41' to X'FE'.

Bibliography

High Level Assembler Publications

HLASM General Information, GC26-4943

HLASM Installation and Customization Guide, SC26-3494

HLASM Language Reference, SC26-4940

HLASM Licensed Program Specifications, GC26-4944

HLASM Programmer's Guide, SC26-4941

Toolkit Feature Publications

HLASM Toolkit Feature User's Guide, GC26-8710

HLASM Toolkit Feature Debug Reference Summary, GC26-8712

HLASM Toolkit Feature Interactive Debug Facility User's Guide, GC26-8709

HLASM Toolkit Feature Installation Guide, GC26-8711

Related Publications (Architecture)

Enterprise Systems Architecture/390 Principles of Operation, SA22-7201

Vector Operations, SA22-7207

System/370 Enterprise Systems Architecture Principles of Operation, SA22-7200

System/370 Principles of Operation, GA22-7000

System/370 Extended Architecture Principles of Operation, SA22-7085

Related Publications for MVS

OS/390 MVS:

OS/390 MVS JCL Reference, GC28-1757

OS/390 MVS JCL User's Guide, GC28-1758

OS/390 MVS Programming: Assembler Services Guide, GC28-1757

OS/390 MVS Programming: Assembler Services Reference, GC28-1910

OS/390 MVS Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Guide, GC28-1763

OS/390 MVS Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Reference ALE-DYN, GC28-1764

OS/390 MVS Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Reference ENF-IXG, GC28-1765

OS/390 MVS Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Reference LLA-SDU, GC28-1766

OS/390 MVS Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Reference SET-WTO, GC28-1767

OS/390 MVS System Codes, GC28-1780

OS/390 MVS System Commands, GC28-1781

OS/390 MVS System Messages, Vol 1 (ABA-ASA), GC28-1784

OS/390 MVS System Messages, Vol 2 (ASB-ERB), GC28-1785

OS/390 MVS System Messages, Vol 3 (EWX-IEB), GC28-1786

OS/390 MVS System Messages, Vol 4 (IEC-IFD), GC28-1787

OS/390 MVS System Messages, Vol 5 (IGD-IZP), GC28-1788

MVS/ESA Version 5:

MVS/ESA JCL Reference, GC28-1479

MVS/ESA JCL User's Guide, GC28-1473

MVS/ESA Programming: Assembler Services Guide, GC28-1466

MVS/ESA Programming: Assembler Services Guide, GC28-1474

MVS/ESA Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Guide, GC28-1467

MVS/ESA Programming: Authorized Assembler Services Reference Volumes 1 - 4, GC28-1475, GC28-1476, GC28-1477, GC28-1478

MVS/ESA System Codes, GC28-1486

MVS/ESA System Commands, GC28-1442

MVS/ESA System Messages Volumes 1 - 5 , GC28-1480, GC28-1481, GC28-1482, GC28-1483, GC28-1484

MVS/ESA OpenEdition®:

MVS/ESA OpenEdition MVS User's Guide, SC23-3013

OS/390 OpenEdition:

OS/390 UNIX System Services User's Guide, SC28-1891

MVS/DFP™:

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

MVS/DFP Version 3.3: Utilities, SC26-4559

MVS/DFP Version 3.3: Linkage Editor and Loader, SC26-4564

DFSMS/MVS®:

OS/390 DFSMS Program Management, SC27-0806

TSO/E (MVS):

TSO/E Command Reference, SC28-1881

TSO/E (OS/390):

OS/390 TSO/E Command Reference, SC28-1969

MVS SMP/E:

SMP/E Messages and Codes, SC28-1108

SMP/E Reference, SC28-1107

SMP/E Reference Summary, SX22-0006

SMP/E User's Guide, SC28-1302

OS/390 SMP/E:

OS/390 SMP/E Messages and Codes, SC28-1738

OS/390 SMP/E Reference, SC28-1806

OS/390 SMP/E User's Guide, SC28-1740

Related Publications for VM

VM/ESA CMS Application Development Guide, SC24-5761

VM/ESA CMS Application Development Guide for Assembler, SC24-5763

VM/ESA CMS Application Development Reference, SC24-5762

VM/ESA CMS Application Development Reference for Assembler, SC24-5764

VM/ESA CMS User's Guide, SC24-5775

VM/ESA XEDIT Command and Macro Reference, SC24-5780

VM/ESA XEDIT User's Guide, SC24-5779

VM/ESA CP Command and Utility Reference, SC24-5750

VM/ESA Planning and Administration, SC24-5773

VMSES/E Introduction and Reference, SC24-5837

VM/ESA Service Guide, SC24-5838

VM/ESA CMS Command Reference, SC24-5776

VM/ESA CMS File Pool Planning, Administration, and Operation, SC24-5751

VM/ESA System Messages and Codes Reference, SC24-5841

Related Publications for VSE

VSE/ESA Administration, SC33-6505

VSE/ESA Guide to System Functions, SC33-6511

VSE/ESA Installation, SC33-6504

VSE/ESA Planning, SC33-6503

VSE/ESA System Control Statements, SC33-6513

General Publications

BRIEF OS/390 Software Management Cookbook, SG24-4775

Index

Special Characters

*PROCESS OVERRIDE assembler options 39
*PROCESS statements
  OVERRIDE 40
  precedence of assembler options 38
&SYSNDX system variable symbol, controlling its value
  using MHELP 302

Numerics

121-character format, source and object listing 15
121, LIST assembler suboption 59
133-character format, source and object listing 15
133, LIST assembler suboption 59
370, OPTABLE assembler suboption 62

A

abnormal assembly termination 148
ABOVE, suboption of SIZE 69
accessing the assembler (CMS) 188
ACONTROL statement
  COMPAT/NOCOMPAT option 45
  FLAG option 52
  LIBMAC/NOLIBMAC option 58
  RA2/NORA2 option 67
active USINGs
  in the assembler listing 20
  UHEAD, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
ADATA assembler option 42, 255
ADATA DC extension record 280
ADATA exit processing 111
ADATA, GOFF assembler suboption 255
adding definitions to a macro Library
adding macro definitions to libraries 222
  CMS 202
  MVS 173
addressing mode 171
ADEXIT installation option 51
ALIGN assembler option 43, 211
ALIGN, FLAG assembler suboption 52
ALIGNWARN installation option 54
alternate ddnames 155
AMODE
  in ESD section of listing 14
  linker option 169
  processing option 171
architecture level in ADATA records 262
ASA assembler option 43
ASA assembler option (CMS) 193
ASA assembler option (MVS) 159
ASCII translation table 74
ASMAC
  cataloged procedure for assembly 152, 174
ASMACG
  cataloged procedure for assembly and run, using the
    loader 178
ASMACL
  cataloged procedure for assembly and link 176
ASMACLG
  cataloged procedure for assembly, link, and
    run 178
ASMADATA macro 255, 361
ASMAEFNP macro 136, 361
ASMAHL command
  by FILEDEF for SYSIN 194
  error messages 357
  with filename of source 194
  with the EXIT option 195
ASMAHL command-error messages 309
ASMAOPT macro 39
ASMAOPT options file/library member 39
ASMAPROF, default profile member name 66
ASMAXADT (ADATA user exit) 362
ASMAXFMB macro 361, 362
ASMAXINV (SOURCE user exit) 371
ASMAXITP macro 82, 361
ASMAXPRT (LISTING user exit) 369
assembler
  language differences 227
  sample program 290
assembler cataloged procedures 174
assembler data sets (MVS)
  characteristics of 158
  list of 157
assembler diagnostics
  abnormal assembly termination 148
  cross reference 22
  differences 243
  error messages 143
  facilities 143
  macro trace facility (MHELP) 148
  MNOTE statements 145
  National Language Support 57
  reference information for statements in error 147
  register cross reference 31
  suppression of error messages and MNOTE
    statements 147
assembler files (CMS)
  characteristics of 192
  list of 191
assembler files (VSE)
  characteristics of 213

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1982, 2000

assembler files (VSE) *(continued)*
list of 212
Assembler H Version 2 compatibility 6
assembler language support 6
assembler listing
*PROCESS statements 9
121-character format 15
133-character format 15
CMS options that affect 9
diagnostic cross reference and assembler summary 32
differences 241
DSECT cross reference 29
external symbol dictionary 12
general purpose register cross reference 31
macro and copy code cross reference 25
macro and copy code source summary 25
option summary 9
options that affect 8
parts of 8
relocation dictionary 22
source and object 15, 16
source and object, 121 character format 15
source and object, 133 character format 21
symbol and literal cross reference 22
unreferenced symbols defined in CSECTs 24
USING map 30
assembler macros
on CMS 202
on MVS 173
assembler option
OBJECT 56
assembler options
*PROCESS OVERRIDE 39
*PROCESS statements 40
ADATA 42, 255
ALIGN 43, 211
ASA 43, 159, 193
ASMAOPT 39
at invocation 39
BATCH 44
CODEPAGE 44
coding rules 41
COMPAT 45
conflicting 38
DBCS 46
DECK 47, 211
default 41
differences 239
DISK (CMS) 66
DXREF 47
ERASE (CMS) 48
ESD 48
EXIT 49, 79
external source 39
external sources 38
assembler options *(continued)*
fixed defaults 39
FLAG 52
FOLD 55
GOFF 55
in a parameter list 41
INFO 56
JCL options 211
LANGUAGE 57
LIBMAC 58
LINECOUNT 58
LIST 59, 211
MXREF 61
NOADATA 42, 255
NOALIGN 43, 211
NOASA 43, 159, 193
NOBATCH 44
NOCOMPAT 45
NODBCS 46
NODECK 47, 211
NODXREF 47
NOERASE (CMS) 48
NOESD 48
NOEXIT 49, 79
NOFOLD 55
NOGOFF 55
NOINFO 56
NOLIBMAC 58
NOLIST 59, 211
NOMXREF 61
NOOBJECT 62, 211
NOPCONTROL 64
NOPRINT (CMS) 66
NOPROFILE 66
NORA2 67
NORENT 68
NORLD 68, 211
NORXREF 68
NOSEG 69
NOTERM 72, 211
NOTEST 73
NOTHREAD 73
NOTRANSLATE 74
NOUSING 75
NOXOBJECT 77
NOXREF 78, 211
OBJECT 62, 211
on CMS 190
OPTABLE 62
override 39
OVERRIDE on *PROCESS statement 40
overriding 180
overriding defaults 41, 180
overriding statements in cataloged procedures 180
PCONTROL 64
PESTOP 66

assembler options *(continued)*
precedence 38
PRINT (CMS) 66
processing 169
PROFILE 66
RA2 67
RENT 68
restricted options 40
RLD 68, 211
RXREF 68
sample of use 291
SEG 69
SIZE 69
source 38
SYSPARM 71
TERM 72, 211
TEST 73
THREAD 73
TRANSLATE 74
types of 38
USING 75
XOBJECT 77
XREF 78, 211
assembler statistics 36
assembler summary 32
assembling your program 206
assembly abnormal-termination messages 309
assembly and link, JCL for
See ASMACL
assembly and run using the loader, JCL for
See ASMACG
assembly error diagnostic messages 312
assembly error-diagnostic messages 309
assembly, JCL for
See ASMAC
assembly, link, and run, JCL for
See ASMACLG
associated data records
ADATA compilation unit start/end record - X'0002' 265
ADATA identification record - X'0001' 264
architecture level 255, 262
ASMADATA macro 255
common header section 262
DC extension record - X'0035' 280
DC/DS record - X'0034' 275
external symbol dictionary record - X'0020' 271
job identification record - X'0000' 264
library member and macro cross reference record - X'0062' 284
library record - X'0060' 283
machine instruction record - X'0036' 281
options file information - X'000B' 268
options record - X'0010' 268
output file information record - X'000a' 265
register cross reference record - X'0045' 283
associated data records *(continued)*
relocation dictionary record - X'0040' 281
source analysis record - X'0030' 272
statistics record - X'0090' 286
symbol cross reference record - X'0044' 282
symbol record - X'0042' 281
user-supplied information record - X'0070' 285
USING map record - X'0080' 285
ATTACH macro instruction, (MVS) 154
automatic call library
definition 381
secondary data set 167

B

BATCH assembler option 44
batch assembling 210
CMS 190
MVS 156
batch facility on CMS 201
binder
generalized object format 77
sample JCL 165
BLKSIZE for assembler files 214
CMS 193
MVS 159
books, High Level Assembler xiv

C

C0ATTR instruction
interaction with GOFF 56
CALL linker option 169
CALL macro instruction 210
CALL macro instruction (MVS) 154
calling the assembler from a problem program 210
calling the assembler from program (MVS) 154
CASE, COMPAT assembler suboption 45
cataloged procedures
for assembling (ASMAC) 174
for assembling and linking (ASMACL) 176
for assembling and running using the loader (ASMACG) 178
for assembling, linking, and run (ASMACLG) 178
invoking 174
overriding 180
CD-ROM publications xv
CDLOAD macro instruction 210
characteristics of assembler data sets (MVS) 158
characteristics of assembler files (CMS) 192
characteristics of assembler files (VSE) 213
CLOSE calls to user exit 84
CMS
ASMAHL command error messages 357
assembler macros supported by 202
assembling on 189

CMS *(continued)*
batch facility 201
diagnostic messages 357
logical saved segments 69
relationship to assembler 188
running on 199
CMS assembler options 190
CMS diagnostic messages 197
CMSBATCH command 201
CODEPAGE assembler option 44
codes
See return codes
coding rules for assembler options 41
COM instruction
interaction with GOFF 56
COMPAT assembler option 45
compatibility with earlier assemblers 6
concatenation of sublibraries 215
concatenation of SYSLIB data sets 161, 196
COND parameter 162, 180
conditional assembly external functions 135
CONT, FLAG assembler suboption 52
CONTWARN installation option 54
create, phase 217
cross reference
See also diagnostic cross reference and assembler summary
binder (MVS) 169
data variables (MVS) 169
examples 8, 300
linkage editor 220
linkage editor (MVS) 169
cross reference list
DSECT 29
CSECT instruction
interaction with GOFF 56
Customization book xiv

D

data
variables, cross reference 169
data sets, assembler (MVS)
characteristics of 158
list of 157
DATA, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
DBCS assembler option 46
DD statements, overriding in cataloged procedures 180
ddnamelist 155
ddnames
SYSADATA 162, 197
SYSIN 160, 195
SYSLIB 161, 168, 196
SYSLIN 161, 168, 196
SYSLMOD 168
ddnames *(continued)*
SYSPRINT 161, 168, 196
SYSPUNCH 161, 196
SYSTERM 161, 168, 196
SYSUT1 168
user-specified 168
ddnames alternate 155
DE, LANGUAGE assembler suboption 57
DECK assembler option 47, 211
default options 41
default profile member name 66
diagnostic cross reference and assembler summary 32
diagnostic facilities
See assembler diagnostics
diagnostic messages written by CMS 197, 357
diagnostic messages, assembly error 312
DISK assembler option (CMS) 66
documentation
High Level Assembler 386
related publications 387
documentation, High Level Assembler xiv
DOS, OPTABLE assembler suboption 62
DOS/VSE assembler compatibility 6
DSECT cross reference listing format 29
DXREF assembler option 47
dynamic invocation of assembler 210
dynamic invocation of assembler (MVS) 154

E

E-Decks, processing 222
EN, LANGUAGE assembler suboption 57
END Record format 252
entry point restatement 185
ERASE assembler option (CMS) 48
erasing files (CMS) 48
error messages
abnormal assembly termination messages 352
ASMAHL command error messages (CMS) 357
assembly error diagnostic messages 143, 312
reference information 147
suppression of 52, 147
error, link-edit 220
error, linker (MVS) 172
ES, LANGUAGE assembler suboption 57
ESA
OPTABLE assembler suboption 62
ESD assembler option 48
ESD Record format 249
ESDID, external symbol dictionary ID
in Ordinary Symbol and Literal Cross Reference 23
in USING Map 30
examples
cataloged procedures coding 180
register saving and restoring coding 224
register saving and restoring coding (CMS) 203

examples *(continued)*
register saving and restoring coding (MVS) 183
EXEC statements, overriding in cataloged procedures 180
EXIT assembler option 49, 79
EXIT option with the ASMAHL command 195
exit parameter list 82
exit types 79
exit-specific information block 92
EXITCTL assembler instruction 79
exits
user-supplied 79
extended architecture instructions 246
external functions 135
external symbol dictionary (ESD)
entry types 12
examples 13, 291
listing format 12

F

FILEDEF with the ASMAHL command 194
filename with ASMAHL command 194
files, assembler (CMS)
characteristics of 192
list of 191
files, assembler (VSE)
characteristics of 213
list of 212
files, linkage editor
SYSIPT 219
SYSLNK 219
SYSLOG 219
SYSLST 219
SYSRDR 219
filter management table (ADATA user exit) 362
filter modules (ADATA user exit) 362
FIND COPY calls to user exit 84
FIND MACRO calls to user exit 84
FLAG assembler option 52
FOLD assembler option 55
format notation, description xv—xvii
FULL
MXREF assembler suboption 61
XREF assembler suboption 78
function calls, external 135

G

GEN, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
General Information book xiv
general purpose register cross reference 31
generalized object format data set 77
generate a translation table 372
generate a Unicode translation table 374
GENMOD command (CMS) 199
GOFF assembler option 55
graphic constants 46

H

hardcopy publications xiv
hierarchical file system
definition 382
object data sets 159
High Level Assembler
publications xiv
High Level Assembler messages 309
See also assembler diagnostics
See also error messages
High Level Assembler option summary 9

I

I/O Exit Usage Statistics
in the listing 36
ICCF, assembling on 208
identification-sequence field 18
IF statement 216
IJSYS01 218
IJSYS03 207, 213, 214
INCLUDE control statement 168, 219
INEXIT installation option 51
INFO assembler option 56
input, linkage editor 218
input, linker (MVS) 166
installation and customization
book information xiv
invoking cataloged procedures 174
invoking the assembler from a problem program 210
invoking the assembler from a program (MVS) 154

J

job control language cataloged procedures
See cataloged procedures
JP, LANGUAGE assembler suboption 57

L

LANGUAGE assembler option 57
Language Reference xiv
LET linker option 169
LIBEXIT installation option 51
LIBMAC assembler option 58
Library 213, 215
LIBRARY control statement 168
LIBRARY exit processing 99
license inquiry 379
Licensed Program Specifications xv
LIMIT installation option 77

LIMIT, USING assembler suboption 75
LINECOUNT assembler option 58
LINK macro instruction (MVS) 154
linkage conventions for external functions 136
linkage editor
  CMS
    See GENMOD command (CMS)
  control statements 219
  errors 220
  files 218
  INCLUDE statement 219
  input 218
  libraries 219
  MVS
    AMODE option 169
    call library 167
    CALL option 169
    data sets used 168
    ddnames 167
    errors 172
    INCLUDE statement 168
    input 166
    LET option 169
    LIBRARY statement 168
    LIST option 169
    MAP option 169
    output 169
    primary 167
    PRINT option 169
    processing options 169
    RMODE option 169
    sample 165
    secondary 167
    TSO LINK command 170
    XREF option 169
  on TSO 166
  output 220
  sample 217
linkage, object module 184
linker
  definition 382
  options (MVS) 169
LIST assembler option 59, 211
LIST linker option 169
listing control instructions, printing of 18
LISTING exit processing 104
listing format 13
LKED command (CMS) 200
LOAD command (CMS) 199
load module
  on TSO 166
  sample 165
load module modification 185
loader 165
loading user exits 81
LOADLIB (CMS) 200
logical saved segments (CMS) 69
LRECL for assembler files 214
  CMS 193
  MVS 159
LSEG
  See logical saved segments (CMS)

M

machine instructions, publications 386
macro and copy code cross reference listing format 25
macro and copy code cross reference with LIBMAC option 26
macro and copy code source summary listing format 25
macro definition libraries, additions to 222
  CMS 202
  MVS 173
macro trace facility
  See MHELP
macro-generated statements
  format of 18
  in diagnostic messages 312
MACROCASE, COMPAT assembler suboption 45
macros
  ASMADATA 255, 361
  ASMAEFNP 136, 361
  ASMAXFMB 361
  ASMAXITP 82, 361
macros, error messages in 143
macros, external function calls 135
manuals
  High Level Assembler 386
  related publications 387
manuals, High Level Assembler xiv
map
  link-edit option 220
  linker option (MVS) 169
  load module 169
  processing option 169
MAP installation option 77
MAP, USING assembler suboption 75
MAX, LIST assembler suboption 59
MCALL, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
message code format 309
messages
  See assembler diagnostics
MHELP
  description 148
  global suppression—operand=32 301
  macro AIF dump—operand=4 301
  macro branch trace—operand=2 301
  macro call trace—operand=1 301
  macro entry dump—operand=16 301
  macro exit dump—operand=8 301

MHELP *(continued)*
macro hex dump—operand=64 301
MHELP control on &SYSNDX 302
MHELP suppression—operand=128 301
sample program and listing 301
MHELP instruction
format 148
migration considerations 7
migration to High Level Assembler 227
MNOTE statements 145
MSOURCE, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
MVS/ESA 173
assembler macros supported by 173
assembling on 151
running 172
MXREF assembler option 61

N

National Language Support 57
NLS
See National Language Support
NOADATA assembler option 42, 255
NOALIGN assembler option 43, 211
NOASA assembler option 43
NOASA assembler option (CMS) 193
NOASA assembler option (MVS) 159
NOBATCH assembler option 44
NOCALL link-edit option 169
NOCOMPAT assembler option 45
NODBCS assembler option 46
NODECK assembler option 47, 211
NODXREF assembler option 47
NOERASE assembler option (CMS) 48
NOESD assembler option 48
NOEXIT assembler option 49
NOFOLD assembler option 55
NOGOFF assembler option 55
NOINFO assembler option 56
NOLET linker option 169
NOLIBMAC assembler option 58
NOLIST assembler option 59, 211
NOMAP linker option 169
NOMXREF assembler option 61
NOOBJECT assembler option 62, 211
NOPCONTROL assembler option 64
NOPRINT assembler option (CMS) 66
NOPRINT linker option 169
NOPROFILE assembler option 66
NORA2 assembler option 67
NORENT assembler option 68
NORLD assembler option 68, 211
NORXREF assembler option 68
NOSEG assembler option 69
notation, description xv—xvii
NOTERM assembler option 72, 211
NOTEST assembler option 73
NOTHREAD assembler option 73
NOTRANSLATE assembler option 74
NOUSING assembler option 75
NOXOBJECT assembler option 77
NOXREF assembler option 78, 211

O

OBJECT assembler option 56, 62, 211
OBJECT exit processing 108
object module linkage 184
object modules 168, 218, 219, 246
object program migration 7
object, extended format 77
OBJEXIT installation option 51
OFF, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
ON statement 216
ON, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
online publications xv
OPEN calls to user exit 84
OPTABLE assembler option 62
option summary listing format 9
options
assembler
See assembler options
linker (MVS) 169
options file
overriding *PROCESS OVERRIDE option 39
options library member
overriding *PROCESS OVERRIDE option 39
ordinary symbol and literal cross reference 22, 78
organization of this manual xi
OSRUN command (CMS) 200
output format listing 13
output, linkage editor 169, 220
OVERRIDE on *PROCESS statement 40
overriding ddname 155
overriding default options 41, 180
overriding statements in cataloged procedures 180

P

PARM field 38
partitioned data set definition 383
PCONTROL assembler option 64
PDSE definition 383
PESTOP assembler option 66
phase
create 217
sample 217
portability
extended architecture instructions 246
object modules 246
system macros 246

precedence of assembler options 38
primary linker data set 167
PRINT assembler option (CMS) 66
PRINT linker option 169
procedures
  See cataloged procedures
PROCESS calls to user exit 84
PROCESS COPY calls to user exit 84
PROCESS MACRO calls to user exit 84
PROCESS statements
  See *PROCESS statements
processing E-Decks 222
processor time for the assembly 36
PROFILE assembler option 66
PROFMEM, default profile member name 66
program execution 172
program fetch definition 383
program library definition 383
program management binder definition 383
program module definition 383
program module modification 185
program object definition 384
program termination 224
  CMS 203
  MVS 183
Programmer's Guide xv
PRTEXIT installation option 51
publications
  general 387
  High Level Assembler xiv, 386
  HLASM Toolkit 386
  machine instructions 386
  MVS 386
  online (CD-ROM) xv
PUNCH exit processing 108
PUSH level
  in the assembler listing 20

R

RA2 assembler option 67
railroad track format, how to read xv—xvii
range, in USING Map 30
READ calls to user exit 84
RECFM for assembler files 214
  CMS 193
  MVS 159
RECORD, FLAG assembler suboption 52
RECORDINFO installation option 54
reference information for statements in error 147
register cross reference 31
registers, saving and restoring
  CMS 202
  MVS 182, 185
  VSE 223
relocation dictionary
  examples 13, 296
  listing format 22
RENT assembler option 68
residency mode 171
restoring registers
  CMS 202
  MVS 182
  VSE 223
return codes 162, 216
  See also FLAG assembler option
RETURN macro instruction
  CMS 202
  MVS 182
  VSE 223
RLD assembler option 68, 211
RLD Record format 251
RMODE
  in ESD section of listing 14
  linker option 169
  processing option 171
RSECT instruction
  interaction with GOFF 56
running
  CMS 199
  MVS/ESA 172
  TSO 172
  using batch facility 201
  using LKED and OSRUN commands 200
  using LOAD and START commands 199
  using the GENMOD command 199
running programs on CMS 199
running your program 221
RXREF assembler option 68

S

sample ADATA user exit 362
sample LISTING user exit 369
sample program to call the assembler dynamically 210
  MVS 156
sample programs and listings
  assembler language features, using 290
  assembler listing description 9
  diagnostic error messages 147
  MHELP 301
sample SOURCE user exit 371
SAVE macro instruction
  CMS 202
  MVS 182
  VSE 223
saving registers
  CMS 202
  MVS 182
  VSE 223

SDB
See system-determined blocksize
secondary data set 167
SEG assembler option 69
sequence number 18
severity codes
See FLAG assembler option
See return codes
SHORT, XREF assembler suboption 78
SIZE assembler option 69
SIZE installation option 71
softcopy publications xv
source and object assembler listing format 15
source and object listing 15
source and object listing, 121 character format 15
source and object listing, 133 character format 21
SOURCE exit processing 97
source program migration 7
SOURCE, MXREF assembler suboption 61
stacked items xvi
START command (CMS) 199
start time of assembly 36
Static Assembler Information Pointer 91
statistics, assembler 36
stop time of assembly 36
STORAGE installation option 71
SUBLIB JCL option 215
SUBSTR, FLAG assembler suboption 52
suppression of error messages and MNOTE statements 147
SYM Record format 252
syntax notation, description xv—xvii
SYSADAT 213, 216
SYSADATA data set 158, 162
SYSADATA file 192, 197
SYSIN data set 158, 160
SYSIN file 192, 195
SYSIPT 213, 215, 219
SYSLIB data set 158, 161, 168
SYSLIB file 192, 196
SYSLIN data set 158, 161, 168
SYSLIN file 192, 196
SYSLIST, COMPAT assembler suboption 45
SYSLMOD data set 168
SYSLNK 207, 213, 216, 218, 219
SYSLOG 213, 215, 219
SYSLST 213, 215, 219
SYSPARM assembler option 71
SYSPCH 213, 216
SYSPRINT data set 158, 161, 168
SYSPRINT file 192, 196
SYSPUNCH data set 158, 161
SYSPUNCH file 192, 196
SYSRDR 219
system macros 246
system variable symbols
comparison with earlier assemblers 230
in diagnostic messages 312
MHELP numbering system 302
setting data set information 94
system-determined blocksize 159
SYSTERM data set 158, 161, 168
SYSTERM file 192, 196
SYSUT1 data set 158, 160, 168
SYSUT1 file 192, 193

T

TERM assembler option 72, 211
TERM exit processing 112
termination
abnormal assembly 147, 148
program 224
CMS 203
MVS 183
TEST assembler option 73
THREAD assembler option 73
Toolkit Customization book xv
Toolkit installation and customization
book information xv
TRANSLATE assembler option 74
translation table generation 372
TRMEXIT installation option 51
TSO
assembling on 153
LINK command 170
link-edit options 170
running 172
TXT Record format 250

U

UE, LANGUAGE assembler suboption 57
UHEAD, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
UNI, OPTABLE assembler suboption 62
Unicode translation table generation 374
unreferenced symbols defined in CSECTs 78
unreferenced symbols defined in CSECTs listing format 24
UNREFS, XREF assembler suboption 78
user exit
ADATA exit processing 111
addressing mode (AMODE) 81
ASMAXADT (ADATA user exit) 362
ASMAXFMB (ADATA user exit) 362
ASMAXFMT (ADATA user exit) 362
ASMAXINV (SOURCE user exit) 371
ASMAXPRT (LISTING user exit) 369
calling 81
coding example 115
error handling 92

user exit *(continued)*
  EXIT assembler option 49
  exit parameter list 82
  exit-specific information block 82, 92
  failure handling 92
  filter management table (ADATA user exit) 362
  filter modules (ADATA user exit) 362
  LIBRARY exit processing 99
  linkage conventions 81
  LISTING exit processing 104
  loading 81
  locating 81
  OBJECT exit processing 108
  PUNCH exit processing 108
  reason codes 87
  residency mode (RMODE) 81
  return codes 86
  sample ADATA user exit 362
  sample LISTING user exit 369
  sample SOURCE user exit 371
  samples 115
  SOURCE exit processing 97
  specifying 80
  TERM exit processing 112
  types 79
  user error handling 92
user-specified data set 168
USING assembler option 75
USING map listing format 30
using the assembler 206
  CMS 188
  MVS 151
  TSO 153
  VSE 206
using the assembler (ICCF) 208
USINGs, active
  in the assembler listing 20
  UHEAD, PCONTROL assembler suboption 64
utility data set 158
utility file 192, 213

V

variable symbols, system
  comparison with earlier assemblers 230
VSE 206
  relationship to assembler 206
VSE/ESA
  JCL options 211
  running your program 221

W

WARN installation option 77
WARN, USING assembler suboption 75
WRITE calls to user exit 84

X

XA, OPTABLE assembler suboption 62
XCTL macro instruction (MVS) 154
XOBJADATA installation option 77
XOBJECT assembler option 77
XREF assembler option 78, 211
XREF linker option (MVS) 169
XREF, MXREF assembler suboption 61

We'd Like to Hear from You

High Level Assembler for MVS® & VM & VSE
Programmer's Guide
Release 4

Publication No. SC26-4941-03

Please use one of the following ways to send us your comments about this book:

- Mail—Use the Readers' Comments form on the next page. If you are sending the form from a country other than the United States, give it to your local IBM branch office or IBM representative for mailing.
- Fax—Use the Readers' Comments form on the next page and fax it to this U.S. number: 800-426-7773.
- Electronic mail—Use one of the following network IDs:
  - IBMLink: HLASMPUB at STLVM27
  - Internet: COMMENTS@VNET.IBM.COM

  Be sure to include the following with your comments:
  - Title and publication number of this book
  - Your name, address, and telephone number if you would like a reply

Your comments should pertain only to the information in this book and the way the information is presented. To request additional publications, or to comment on other IBM information or the function of IBM products, please give your comments to your IBM representative or to your IBM authorized remarketer.

IBM may use or distribute your comments without obligation.

Readers' Comments

High Level Assembler for MVS® & VM & VSE
Programmer's Guide
Release 4

Publication No. SC26-4941-03

How satisfied are you with the information in this book?

	Very Satisfied	Satisfied	Neutral	Dissatisfied	Very Dissatisfied
Technically accurate	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Complete	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Easy to find	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Easy to understand	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Well organized	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Applicable to your tasks	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Grammatically correct and consistent	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Graphically well designed	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐
Overall satisfaction	☐	☐	☐	☐	☐

Please tell us how we can improve this book:

May we contact you to discuss your comments? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Name

Address

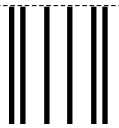
Company or Organization

Phone No.

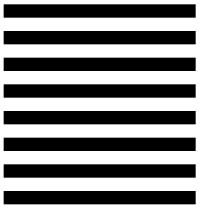
Readers' Comments
SC26-4941-03

Cut or Fold
Along Line

Fold and Tape **Please do not staple** Fold and Tape



NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED IN THE
UNITED STATES



BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

Department J58
International Business Machines Corporation
PO BOX 49023
SAN JOSE CA 95161-9945

Fold and Tape **Please do not staple** Fold and Tape

SC26-4941-03

Cut or Fold
Along Line

Program Number: 5696-234

Printed in the United States of America
on recycled paper containing 10%
recovered post-consumer fiber.

High Level Assembler Publications

SC26-4941 *HLASM Programmer's Guide*.
GC26-4943 *HLASM General Information*.
GC26-4944 *HLASM Licensed Program Specifications*.
SC26-4940 *HLASM Language Reference*.
SC26-3494 *HLASM Installation and Customization Guide*.

High Level Assembler Toolkit Feature Publications

GC26-8709 *HLASM Toolkit Feature Interactive Debug Facility User's Guide*.
GC26-8710 *HLASM Toolkit Feature User's Guide*.
GC26-8711 *HLASM Toolkit Feature Installation Guide*.
GC26-8712 *HLASM Toolkit Feature Debug Reference Summary*.

SC26-4941-03

Spine information:

HLASM Programmer's Guide *Release 4*